



- (51) **International Patent Classification:**
C07D 487/04 (2006.01)
- (21) **International Application Number:**
PCT/US2016/043414
- (22) **International Filing Date:**
21 July 2016 (21.07.2016)
- (25) **Filing Language:** English
- (26) **Publication Language:** English
- (30) **Priority Data:**
62/195,023 21 July 2015 (21.07.2015) US
62/327,973 26 April 2016 (26.04.2016) US
- (71) **Applicant:** IMMUNOGEN, INC [US/US]; 830 Winter Street, Waltham, MA 02451 (US).
- (72) **Inventors:** GERARD, Baudouin; 69 Dartmouth Street, Belmont, MA 02478 (US). SHIZUKA, Manami; 253 Payson Road, Belmont, MA 02478 (US). MILLER, Michael, Louis; 4 Maymont Drive, Framingham, MA 01701 (US). SILVA, Richard, A.; 587 Greendale Avenue, Needham, MA 02492 (US).
- (74) **Agents:** LU, Yu et al.; McCarter & English, LLP, 265 Franklin Street, Boston, MA 02110 (US).

- (81) **Designated States** (*unless otherwise indicated, for every kind of national protection available*): AE, AG, AL, AM, AO, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BH, BN, BR, BW, BY, BZ, CA, CH, CL, CN, CO, CR, CU, CZ, DE, DK, DM, DO, DZ, EC, EE, EG, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, GT, HN, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IR, IS, JP, KE, KG, KN, KP, KR, KZ, LA, LC, LK, LR, LS, LU, LY, MA, MD, ME, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, MY, MZ, NA, NG, NI, NO, NZ, OM, PA, PE, PG, PH, PL, PT, QA, RO, RS, RU, RW, SA, SC, SD, SE, SG, SK, SL, SM, ST, SV, SY, TH, TJ, TM, TN, TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, US, UZ, VC, VN, ZA, ZM, ZW.
- (84) **Designated States** (*unless otherwise indicated, for every kind of regional protection available*): ARIPO (BW, GH, GM, KE, LR, LS, MW, MZ, NA, RW, SD, SL, ST, SZ, TZ, UG, ZM, ZW), Eurasian (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, RU, TJ, TM), European (AL, AT, BE, BG, CH, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, HR, HU, IE, IS, IT, LT, LU, LV, MC, MK, MT, NL, NO, PL, PT, RO, RS, SE, SI, SK, SM, TR), OAPI (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GQ, GW, KM, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).

Published:

- with international search report (Art. 21(3))
— with amended claims (Art. 19(1))

(54) **Title:** METHODS OF PREPARING CYTOTOXIC BENZODIAZEPINE DERIVATIVES

(57) **Abstract:** The invention relates to novel methods for preparing indolinobenzodiazepine dimer compounds and their synthetic precursors.



WO 2017/015502 A1

METHODS OF PREPARING CYTOTOXIC BENZODIAZEPINE DERIVATIVES

REFERENCE TO RELATED APPLICATIONS

This application claims the benefit of the filing date, under 35 U.S.C. §119(e), of
5 U.S. Provisional Application No. 62/327,973, filed on April 26, 2016, and
U.S. Provisional Application No. 62/195,023, filed on July 21, 2015. The entire
contents of each of the above-referenced applications are incorporated herein by
reference.

FIELD OF THE INVENTION

10 The present invention relates to novel methods for preparing cytotoxic
indolinobenzodiazepine derivatives.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

It has been shown that cell-binding agent conjugates of indolinobenzodiazepine
15 dimers that have one imine functionality and one amine functionality display a much
higher therapeutic index (ratio of maximum tolerated dose to minimum effective dose)
in vivo compared to previously disclosed benzodiazepine derivatives having two imine
functionalities. See, for example, WO 2012/128868. The previously disclosed method
for making the indolinobenzodiazepine dimers with one imine functionality and one
20 amine functionality involves partial reduction of indolinobenzodiazepine dimers having
two imine functionalities. The partial reduction step generally leads to the formation of
fully reduced by-product and unreacted starting material, which requires cumbersome
purification step and results in low yield.

Thus, there exists a need for improved methods for preparing the
25 indolinobenzodiazepine dimers that are more efficient and suitable for large scale
manufacturing process.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

The present invention provides various methods for preparing
indolinobenzodiazepine dimer compounds and their synthetic precursors. Compared to
30 the previously disclosed method, the methods of the present invention can produce the

desired dimer compounds with higher yield without the need of cumbersome purification steps. These methods are more suitable for large scale manufacturing process.

The present invention provides methods of the first through forty-fourth
5 embodiments described in detail below.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE FIGURES

FIGs. 1–19 show exemplary schemes for the methods of the present invention.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

10 Reference will now be made in detail to certain embodiments of the invention, examples of which are illustrated in the accompanying structures and formulas. While the invention will be described in conjunction with the enumerated embodiments, it will be understood that they are not intended to limit the invention to those embodiments. On the contrary, the invention is intended to cover all alternatives, modifications, and
15 equivalents which may be included within the scope of the present invention as defined by the claims. One skilled in the art will recognize many methods and materials similar or equivalent to those described herein, which could be used in the practice of the present invention.

It should be understood that any of the embodiments described herein can be
20 combined with one or more other embodiments of the invention, unless explicitly disclaimed or improper. Combination of embodiments are not limited to those specific combinations claimed via the multiple dependent claims.

DEFINITIONS

As used herein, the term “**cell-binding agent**” or “**CBA**” refers to a compound
25 that can bind a cell (*e.g.*, on a cell-surface ligand) or bind a ligand associated with or proximate to the cell, preferably in a specific manner. In certain embodiments, binding to the cell or a ligand on or near the cell is specific. The CBA may include peptides and non-peptides.

“**Linear or branched alkyl**” as used herein refers to a saturated linear or
30 branched-chain monovalent hydrocarbon radical of one to twenty carbon atoms. Examples of alkyl include, but are not limited to, methyl, ethyl, 1-propyl, 2-propyl, 1-butyl, 2-methyl-1-propyl, -CH₂CH(CH₃)₂, 2-butyl, 2-methyl-2-propyl, 1-pentyl,

2-pentyl 3-pentyl, 2-methyl-2-butyl, 3-methyl-2-butyl, 3-methyl-1-butyl, 2-methyl-1-butyl, 1-hexyl), 2-hexyl, 3-hexyl, 2-methyl-2-pentyl, 3-methyl-2-pentyl, 4-methyl-2-pentyl, 3-methyl-3-pentyl, 2-methyl-3-pentyl, 2,3-dimethyl-2-butyl, 3,3-dimethyl-2-butyl, 1-heptyl, 1-octyl, and the like. Preferably, the alkyl has one to ten carbon atoms.

5 More preferably, the alkyl has one to four carbon atoms.

“**Linear or branched alkenyl**” refers to linear or branched-chain monovalent hydrocarbon radical of two to twenty carbon atoms with at least one site of unsaturation, *i.e.*, a carbon-carbon, double bond, wherein the alkenyl radical includes radicals having “cis” and “trans” orientations, or alternatively, “E” and “Z” orientations. Examples
10 include, but are not limited to, ethylenyl or vinyl ($-\text{CH}=\text{CH}_2$), allyl ($-\text{CH}_2\text{CH}=\text{CH}_2$), and the like. Preferably, the alkenyl has two to ten carbon atoms. More preferably, the alkyl has two to four carbon atoms.

“**Linear or branched alkynyl**” refers to a linear or branched monovalent hydrocarbon radical of two to twenty carbon atoms with at least one site of unsaturation, *i.e.*, a carbon-carbon, triple bond. Examples include, but are not limited to, ethynyl,
15 propynyl, 1-butylnyl, 2-butylnyl, 1-pentylnyl, 2-pentylnyl, 3-pentylnyl, hexynyl, and the like. Preferably, the alkynyl has two to ten carbon atoms. More preferably, the alkynyl has two to four carbon atoms.

The term “**carbocycle**,” “**carbocyclyl**” and “**carbocyclic ring**” refer to a
20 monovalent non-aromatic, saturated or partially unsaturated ring having 3 to 12 carbon atoms as a monocyclic ring or 7 to 12 carbon atoms as a bicyclic ring. Bicyclic carbocycles having 7 to 12 atoms can be arranged, for example, as a bicyclo [4,5], [5,5], [5,6], or [6,6] system, and bicyclic carbocycles having 9 or 10 ring atoms can be arranged as a bicyclo [5,6] or [6,6] system, or as bridged systems such as
25 bicyclo[2.2.1]heptane, bicyclo[2.2.2]octane and bicyclo[3.2.2]nonane. Examples of monocyclic carbocycles include, but are not limited to, cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, 1-cyclopent-1-enyl, 1-cyclopent-2-enyl, 1-cyclopent-3-enyl, cyclohexyl, 1-cyclohex-1-enyl, 1-cyclohex-2-enyl, 1-cyclohex-3-enyl, cyclohexadienyl, cycloheptyl, cyclooctyl, cyclononyl, cyclodecyl, cycloundecyl, cyclododecyl, and the like.

30 The terms “**cyclic alkyl**” and “**cycloalkyl**” can be used interchangeably. They refer to a monovalent saturated carbocyclic ring radical. Preferably, the cyclic alkyl is 3 to 7 membered monocyclic ring radical. More preferably, the cyclic alkyl is cyclohexyl.

The term “**cyclic alkenyl**” refers to a carbocyclic ring radical having at least one double bond in the ring structure.

The term “**cyclic alkynyl**” refers to a carbocyclic ring radical having at least one triple bond in the ring structure.

5 “**Aryl**” means a monovalent aromatic hydrocarbon radical of 6-18 carbon atoms derived by the removal of one hydrogen atom from a single carbon atom of a parent aromatic ring system. Some aryl groups are represented in the exemplary structures as “Ar.” Aryl includes bicyclic radicals comprising an aromatic ring fused to a saturated, partially unsaturated ring, or aromatic carbocyclic or heterocyclic ring. Typical aryl
10 groups include, but are not limited to, radicals derived from benzene (phenyl), substituted benzenes, naphthalene, anthracene, indenyl, indanyl, 1,2-dihydronaphthalene, 1,2,3,4-tetrahydronaphthyl, and the like. Preferably, aryl is phenyl group.

The terms “**heterocycle**,” “**heterocyclyl**,” and “**heterocyclic ring**” are used interchangeably herein and refer to a saturated or a partially unsaturated (*i.e.*, having one
15 or more double and/or triple bonds within the ring) carbocyclic radical of 3 to 18 ring atoms in which at least one ring atom is a heteroatom selected from nitrogen, oxygen, phosphorus, and sulfur, the remaining ring atoms being C, where one or more ring atoms is optionally substituted independently with one or more substituents described below. A heterocycle may be a monocycle having 3 to 7 ring members (2 to 6 carbon atoms and
20 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from N, O, P, and S) or a bicycle having 7 to 10 ring members (4 to 9 carbon atoms and 1 to 6 heteroatoms selected from N, O, P, and S), for example: a bicyclo [4,5], [5,5], [5,6], or [6,6] system. Heterocycles are described in Paquette, Leo A.; “Principles of Modern Heterocyclic Chemistry” (W. A. Benjamin, New York, 1968), particularly Chapters 1, 3, 4, 6, 7, and 9; “The Chemistry of
25 Heterocyclic Compounds, A series of Monographs” (John Wiley & Sons, New York, 1950 to present), in particular Volumes 13, 14, 16, 19, and 28; and J. Am. Chem. Soc. (1960) 82:5566. “**Heterocyclyl**” also includes radicals where heterocycle radicals are fused with a saturated, partially unsaturated ring, or aromatic carbocyclic or heterocyclic ring. Examples of heterocyclic rings include, but are not limited to, pyrrolidinyl,
30 tetrahydrofuranyl, dihydrofuranyl, tetrahydrothienyl, tetrahydropyranyl, dihydropyranyl, tetrahydrothiopyranyl, piperidino, morpholino, thiomorpholino, thioxanyl, piperazinyl, homopiperazinyl, azetidiny, oxetanyl, thietanyl, homopiperidiny, oxepanyl, thiepanyl, oxazepiny, diazepiny, thiazepiny, 2-pyrroliny, 3-pyrroliny, indoliny, 2H-pyranyl,

4H-pyranyl, dioxanyl, 1,3-dioxolanyl, pyrazolinyl, dithianyl, dithiolanyl, dihydropyranyl, dihydrothienyl, dihydrofuranyl, pyrazolidinylimidazolinyl, imidazolidinyl, 3-azabicyclo[3.1.0]hexanyl, 3-azabicyclo[4.1.0]heptanyl, and azabicyclo[2.2.2]hexanyl. Spiro moieties are also included within the scope of this definition. Examples of a heterocyclic group wherein ring atoms are substituted with oxo (=O) moieties are pyrimidinonyl and 1,1-dioxo-thiomorpholinyl.

The term “**heteroaryl**” refers to a monovalent aromatic radical of 5- or 6-membered rings, and includes fused ring systems (at least one of which is aromatic) of 5-18 atoms, containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur. Examples of heteroaryl groups are pyridinyl (including, for example, 2-hydroxypyridinyl), imidazolyl, imidazopyridinyl, pyrimidinyl (including, for example, 4-hydroxypyrimidinyl), pyrazolyl, triazolyl, pyrazinyl, tetrazolyl, furyl, thienyl, isoxazolyl, thiazolyl, oxazolyl, isothiazolyl, pyrrolyl, quinolinyl, isoquinolinyl, indolyl, benzimidazolyl, benzofuranyl, cinnolinyl, indazolyl, indoliziny, phthalazinyl, pyridazinyl, triazinyl, isoindolyl, pteridinyl, purinyl, oxadiazolyl, triazolyl, thiadiazolyl, furazanyl, benzofurazanyl, benzothiophenyl, benzothiazolyl, benzoxazolyl, quinazolinyl, quinoxalinyl, naphthyridinyl, and furopyridinyl.

The heterocycle or heteroaryl groups may be carbon (carbon-linked) or nitrogen (nitrogen-linked) attached where such is possible. By way of example and not limitation, carbon bonded heterocycles or heteroaryls are bonded at position 2, 3, 4, 5, or 6 of a pyridine, position 3, 4, 5, or 6 of a pyridazine, position 2, 4, 5, or 6 of a pyrimidine, position 2, 3, 5, or 6 of a pyrazine, position 2, 3, 4, or 5 of a furan, tetrahydrofuran, thiofuran, thiophene, pyrrole or tetrahydropyrrole, position 2, 4, or 5 of an oxazole, imidazole or thiazole, position 3, 4, or 5 of an isoxazole, pyrazole, or isothiazole, position 2 or 3 of an aziridine, position 2, 3, or 4 of an azetidine, position 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, or 8 of a quinoline or position 1, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, or 8 of an isoquinoline. By way of example and not limitation, nitrogen bonded heterocycles or heteroaryls are bonded at position 1 of an aziridine, azetidine, pyrrole, pyrrolidine, 2-pyrroline, 3-pyrroline, imidazole, imidazolidine, 2-imidazoline, 3-imidazoline, pyrazole, pyrazoline, 2-pyrazoline, 3-pyrazoline, piperidine, piperazine, indole, indoline, 1H-indazole, position 2 of a isoindole, or isoindoline, position 4 of a morpholine, and position 9 of a carbazole, or O-carboline.

The heteroatoms present in heteroaryl or heterocyclyl include the oxidized forms such as NO, SO, and SO₂.

The term “**halo**” or “**halogen**” refers to F, Cl, Br or I.

The alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, cyclic alkyl, cyclic alkenyl, cyclic alkynyl, carbocyclyl, aryl, heterocyclyl and heteroaryl described above can be optionally substituted with one more (*e.g.*, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6 or more) substituents.

If a substituent is described as being “**substituted**,” a non-hydrogen substituent is in the place of a hydrogen substituent on a carbon, oxygen, sulfur or nitrogen of the substituent. Thus, for example, a substituted alkyl substituent is an alkyl substituent wherein at least one non-hydrogen substituent is in the place of a hydrogen substituent on the alkyl substituent. To illustrate, monofluoroalkyl is alkyl substituted with a fluoro substituent, and difluoroalkyl is alkyl substituted with two fluoro substituents. It should be recognized that if there is more than one substitution on a substituent, each non-hydrogen substituent may be identical or different (unless otherwise stated).

If a substituent is described as being “**optionally substituted**,” the substituent may be either (1) not substituted, or (2) substituted. If a carbon of a substituent is described as being optionally substituted with one or more of a list of substituents, one or more of the hydrogens on the carbon (to the extent there are any) may separately and/or together be replaced with an independently selected optional substituent. If a nitrogen of a substituent is described as being optionally substituted with one or more of a list of substituents, one or more of the hydrogens on the nitrogen (to the extent there are any) may each be replaced with an independently selected optional substituent. One exemplary substituent may be depicted as -NR'R'', wherein R' and R'' together with the nitrogen atom to which they are attached, may form a heterocyclic ring. The heterocyclic ring formed from R' and R'' together with the nitrogen atom to which they are attached may be partially or fully saturated. In one embodiment, the heterocyclic ring consists of 3 to 7 atoms. In another embodiment, the heterocyclic ring is selected from the group consisting of pyrrolyl, imidazolyl, pyrazolyl, triazolyl, tetrazolyl, isoxazolyl, pyridyl and thiazolyl.

If a group of substituents are collectively described as being optionally substituted by one or more of a list of substituents, the group may include: (1) unsubstitutable substituents, (2) substitutable substituents that are not substituted by the

optional substituents, and/or (3) substitutable substituents that are substituted by one or more of the optional substituents.

If a substituent is described as being optionally substituted with up to a particular number of non-hydrogen substituents, that substituent may be either (1) not substituted; or (2) substituted by up to that particular number of non-hydrogen substituents or by up to the maximum number of substitutable positions on the substituent, whichever is less.

Thus, for example, if a substituent is described as a heteroaryl optionally substituted with up to 3 non-hydrogen substituents, then any heteroaryl with less than 3 substitutable positions would be optionally substituted by up to only as many non-hydrogen substituents as the heteroaryl has substitutable positions. Such substituents, in non-limiting examples, can be selected from a linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, aryl, heteroaryl, heterocyclyl, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, $-OR^{100}$, $NR^{101}R^{102}$, $-NO_2$, $-NR^{101}COR^{102}$, $-SR^{100}$, a sulfoxide represented by $-SOR^{101}$, a sulfone represented by $-SO_2R^{101}$, a sulfonate $-SO_3M$, a sulfate $-OSO_3M$, a sulfonamide represented by $-SO_2NR^{101}R^{102}$, cyano, an azido, $-COR^{101}$, $-OCOR^{101}$, $-OCONR^{101}R^{102}$ and a polyethylene glycol unit $(-CH_2CH_2O)_nR^{101}$ wherein M is H or a cation (such as Na^+ or K^+); R^{101} , R^{102} and R^{103} are each independently selected from H, linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $(-CH_2CH_2O)_nR^{104}$, wherein n is an integer from 1 to 24, an aryl having from 6 to 10 carbon atoms, a heterocyclic ring having from 3 to 10 carbon atoms and a heteroaryl having 5 to 10 carbon atoms; and R^{104} is H or a linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, wherein the alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, aryl, heteroaryl and heterocyclyl in the groups represented by R^{100} , R^{101} , R^{102} , R^{103} and R^{104} are optionally substituted with one or more (e.g., 2, 3, 4, 5, 6 or more) substituents independently selected from halogen, $-OH$, $-CN$, $-NO_2$ and unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms. Preferably, the substituents for the optionally substituted alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, cyclic alkyl, cyclic alkenyl, cyclic alkynyl, carbocyclyl, aryl, heterocyclyl and heteroaryl described above include halogen, $-CN$, $-NR^{102}R^{103}$, $-CF_3$, $-OR^{101}$, aryl, heteroaryl, heterocyclyl, $-SR^{101}$, $-SOR^{101}$, $-SO_2R^{101}$ and $-SO_3M$.

The term “**compound**” or “**cytotoxic compound**,” “**cytotoxic dimer**” and “**cytotoxic dimer compound**” are used interchangeably. They are intended to include compounds for which a structure or formula or any derivative thereof has been disclosed

in the present invention or a structure or formula or any derivative thereof that has been incorporated by reference. The term also includes, stereoisomers, geometric isomers, tautomers, solvates, metabolites, salts (*e.g.*, pharmaceutically acceptable salts) and prodrugs, and prodrug salts of a compound of all the formulae disclosed in the present invention. The term also includes any solvates, hydrates, and polymorphs of any of the foregoing. The specific recitation of “stereoisomers,” “geometric isomers,” “tautomers,” “solvates,” “metabolites,” “salt” “prodrug,” “prodrug salt,” “conjugates,” “conjugates salt,” “solvate,” “hydrate,” or “polymorph” in certain aspects of the invention described in this application shall not be interpreted as an intended omission of these forms in other aspects of the invention where the term “compound” is used without recitation of these other forms.

The term “**linkable to a cell binding agent**” or “**capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent**” as used herein refers to the compounds described herein or derivatives thereof comprising at least one linking group or a precursor thereof suitable to bond these compounds or derivatives thereof to a cell binding agent.

The term “**precursor**” of a given group refers to any group which may lead to that group by any deprotection, a chemical modification, or a coupling reaction.

The term “**chiral**” refers to molecules which have the property of non-superimposability of the mirror image partner, while the term “achiral” refers to molecules which are superimposable on their mirror image partner.

The term “**stereoisomer**” refers to compounds which have identical chemical constitution and connectivity, but different orientations of their atoms in space that cannot be interconverted by rotation about single bonds.

“**Diastereomer**” refers to a stereoisomer with two or more centers of chirality and whose molecules are not mirror images of one another. Diastereomers have different physical properties, *e.g.* melting points, boiling points, spectral properties, and reactivities. Mixtures of diastereomers may separate under high resolution analytical procedures such as crystallization, electrophoresis and chromatography.

“**Enantiomers**” refer to two stereoisomers of a compound which are non-superimposable mirror images of one another.

Stereochemical definitions and conventions used herein generally follow S. P. Parker, Ed., McGraw-Hill Dictionary of Chemical Terms (1984) McGraw-Hill Book Company, New York; and Eliel, E. and Wilen, S., “Stereochemistry of Organic Compounds,” John

Wiley & Sons, Inc., New York, 1994. The compounds of the invention may contain asymmetric or chiral centers, and therefore exist in different stereoisomeric forms. It is intended that all stereoisomeric forms of the compounds of the invention, including but not limited to, diastereomers, enantiomers and atropisomers, as well as mixtures thereof
 5 such as racemic mixtures, form part of the present invention. Many organic compounds exist in optically active forms, *i.e.*, they have the ability to rotate the plane of plane-polarized light. In describing an optically active compound, the prefixes D and L, or R and S, are used to denote the absolute configuration of the molecule about its chiral center(s). The prefixes d and l or (+) and (-) are employed to designate the sign of
 10 rotation of plane-polarized light by the compound, with (-) or l meaning that the compound is levorotatory. A compound prefixed with (+) or d is dextrorotatory. For a given chemical structure, these stereoisomers are identical except that they are mirror images of one another. A specific stereoisomer may also be referred to as an enantiomer, and a mixture of such isomers is often called an enantiomeric mixture. A
 15 50:50 mixture of enantiomers is referred to as a racemic mixture or a racemate, which may occur where there has been no stereoselection or stereospecificity in a chemical reaction or process. The terms “racemic mixture” and “racemate” refer to an equimolar mixture of two enantiomeric species, devoid of optical activity.

The term “**tautomer**” or “**tautomeric form**” refers to structural isomers of
 20 different energies which are interconvertible via a low energy barrier. For example, proton tautomers (also known as prototropic tautomers) include interconversions via migration of a proton, such as keto-enol and imine-enamine isomerizations. Valence tautomers include interconversions by reorganization of some of the bonding electrons.

The term “**imine reactive reagent**” refers to a reagent that is capable of reacting
 25 with an imine group. Examples of imine reactive reagent includes, but is not limited to, sulfites (H_2SO_3 , H_2SO_2 or a salt of HSO_3^- , SO_3^{2-} or HSO_2^- formed with a cation), metabisulfite ($\text{H}_2\text{S}_2\text{O}_5$ or a salt of $\text{S}_2\text{O}_5^{2-}$ formed with a cation), mono, di, tri, and tetra-thiophosphates (PO_3SH_3 , $\text{PO}_2\text{S}_2\text{H}_3$, POS_3H_3 , PS_4H_3 or a salt of PO_3S^{3-} , $\text{PO}_2\text{S}_2^{3-}$, POS_3^{3-} or PS_4^{3-} formed with a cation), thio phosphate esters ($(\text{R}^i\text{O})_2\text{PS}(\text{OR}^i)$, R^iSH , R^iSOH ,
 30 $\text{R}^i\text{SO}_2\text{H}$, $\text{R}^i\text{SO}_3\text{H}$), various amines (hydroxyl amine (*e.g.*, NH_2OH), hydrazine (*e.g.*, NH_2NH_2), $\text{NH}_2\text{O}-\text{R}^i$, $\text{R}^i\text{NH}-\text{R}^i$, NH_2-R^i), $\text{NH}_2-\text{CO}-\text{NH}_2$, $\text{NH}_2-\text{C}(=\text{S})-\text{NH}_2$, thiosulfate ($\text{H}_2\text{S}_2\text{O}_3$ or a salt of $\text{S}_2\text{O}_3^{2-}$ formed with a cation), dithionite ($\text{H}_2\text{S}_2\text{O}_4$ or a salt of $\text{S}_2\text{O}_4^{2-}$ formed with a cation), phosphorodithioate ($\text{P}(=\text{S})(\text{OR}^k)(\text{SH})(\text{OH})$ or a salt thereof

formed with a cation), hydroxamic acid ($R^kC(=O)NHOH$ or a salt formed with a cation), hydrazide ($R^kCONHNH_2$), formaldehyde sulfoxylate ($HOCH_2SO_2H$ or a salt of $HOCH_2SO_2^-$ formed with a cation, such as $HOCH_2SO_2^-Na^+$), glycosylated nucleotide (such as GDP-mannose), fludarabine or a mixture thereof, wherein R^i and $R^{i'}$ are each
5 independently a linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 10 carbon atoms and are substituted with at least one substituent selected from $-N(R^j)_2$, $-CO_2H$, $-SO_3H$, and $-PO_3H$; R^i and $R^{i'}$ can be further optionally substituted with a substituent for an alkyl described herein; R^j is a linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 6 carbon atoms; and R^k is a linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having 1 to 10 carbon atoms, aryl, heterocyclyl or
10 heteroaryl (preferably, R^k is a linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms; more preferably, R^k is methyl, ethyl or propyl). Preferably, the cation is a monovalent cation, such as Na^+ or K^+ . Preferably, the imine reactive reagent is selected from sulfites, hydroxyl amine, urea and hydrazine. More preferably, the imine reactive reagent is $NaHSO_3$ or $KHSO_3$.

15 As used herein, the term “**imine reducing reagent**” refers to a reagent that is capable of reducing an imine functional group to an amine functional group. In certain embodiments, the imine reducing reagent is a hydride reducing reagent. Examples of such imine reducing reagents include, but are not limited to, borohydrides (*e.g.*, sodium borohydride, sodium triacetoxy borohydride, sodium cyanoborohydride, lithium
20 borohydride ($LiBH_4$), potassium borohydride (KBH_4)), hydrogen gas, and lithium aluminum hydride, ammonium formate, borane, 9-borabicyclo[3.3.1]nonane (9-BBN), diisobutylaluminum hydride (DIBAL), and sodium bis(2-methoxyethoxy)aluminumhydride (Red-Al). In certain embodiments, the imine reducing reagent is sodium triacetoxy borohydride.

25 The term “**protecting group**” or “**protecting moiety**” refers to a substituent that is commonly employed to block or protect a particular functionality while reacting other functional groups on the compound, a derivative thereof, or a conjugate thereof. For example, an “**amine protecting group**” or an “**amino-protecting moiety**” is a substituent attached to an amino group that blocks or protects the amino functionality in
30 the compound. Such groups are well known in the art (see for example P. Wuts and T. Greene, 2007, Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis, Chapter 7, J. Wiley & Sons, NJ) and exemplified by carbamates such as methyl and ethyl carbamate, Fmoc, substituted ethyl carbamates, carbamates cleaved by 1,6- β -elimination (also termed “**self**

immolative”), ureas, amides, peptides, alkyl and aryl derivatives. Suitable amino-protecting groups include, but are not limited to, acetyl, trifluoroacetyl, t-butoxycarbonyl (BOC), benzyloxycarbonyl (CBZ) and 9-fluorenylmethylenoxycarbonyl (Fmoc), 2-trimethylsilylethyl, (2-phenyl-2-trimethylsilyl)ethyl, triisopropylsiloxy, 2-
5 (trimethylsilyl)ethoxymethyl, allyloxycarbonyl, 9-fluorenylmethoxycarbonyl, 2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxycarbonyl, or 2, 2,2,2-trichloroethoxycarbonyl. For a general description of protecting groups and their use, *see* P. G.M. Wuts & T. W. Greene, Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis, John Wiley & Sons, New York, 2007.

An “**alcohol protecting group**” or an “**alcohol-protecting moiety**” is a
10 substituent attached to an alcohol group that blocks or protects the alcohol functionality in the compound. Such groups are well known in the art (see for example, P. Wuts and T. Greene, 2007, Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis, Chapter 2, J. Wiley & Sons, NJ). Suitable alcohol protecting group include, but are not limited to, pivaloyl, methoxymethyl, 2-methoxyethoxymethyl, *p*-methoxybenzyl, 3,4-dimethoxybenzyl,
15 2,6-dimethoxybenzyl, diphenylmethyl, benzyloxymethyl, 2,2,2-trichloroethoxycarbonyl, tetrahydrofuranyl, tetrahydropyranyl, benzyl, benzoyl, *para*-phenylbenzoyl, 2,4,6-trimethylbenzoyl, *para*-bromobenzoyl, *para*-nitrobenzoyl, picolinoyl, nicotinoyl, 5-dibenzosuberyl, trityl/triphenylmethyl, or tris(4-*tert*-butylphenyl)methyl and various silyl protecting groups (for example,
20 dimethylisopropylsilyl, diethylisopropylsilyl, dimethylhexylsilyl, trimethylsilyl, triisopropylsilyl, tribenzylsilyl, triphenylsilyl, 2-norbornyldimethylsilyl, *tert*-butyldimethylsilyl, *tert*-butyldiphenylsilyl, 2-trimethylethylsilyl (TEOC), or [2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxy]methyl). In certain embodiments, the alcohol protecting group is sterically hindered. In certain embodiments, the alcohol protecting group is preferably
25 methoxymethyl, tetrahydropyranyl, 2-methoxyethoxymethyl, *p*-methoxybenzyl, benzyloxymethyl, or 2,2,2-trichloroethoxycarbonyl. More preferably, the alcohol protecting group is 2,2,2-trichloroethoxycarbonyl. In certain embodiments, the alcohol protecting group is a silyl protecting group, preferably, triethylsilyl, triisopropylsilyl, or *tert*-butyldimethylsilyl. More preferably, the alcohol protecting group is *tert*-
30 butyldimethylsilyl.

An “**alcohol protecting reagent**” as used herein refers to a reagent that introduces an alcohol protecting group onto an alcohol group.

An “**acid labile alcohol protecting group**” is an alcohol protecting group that is not stable under acidic condition and releases the alcohol protecting group to form free alcohol. Examples of an acid labile alcohol protecting group include, but are not limited to, acetate, allyl, methoxymethyl, tetrahydrofuranyl, tetrahydropyranyl, 5-dibenzosuberyl, 1-ethoxyethyl, 1-methyl-1-methoxyethyl, 2-(phenylselenyl)ethyl, trityl/triphenylmethyl, tris(4-*tert*-butylphenyl)methyl, and various silyl protecting group (for example, dimethylisopropylsilyl, diethylisopropylsilyl, dimethylhexylsilyl, trimethylsilyl, triethylsilyl, triisopropylsilyl, tribenzylsilyl, triphenylsilyl, 2-norbornyldimethylsilyl, *tert*-butyldimethylsilyl, *tert*-butyldiphenylsilyl, or 2-trimethylethylsilyl (TEOC), [2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxy]methyl). In certain embodiments, 10 the alcohol protecting group is a silyl protecting group, preferably, triethylsilyl, triisopropylsilyl, or *tert*-butyldimethylsilyl. More preferably, the alcohol protecting group is *tert*-butyldimethylsilyl.

As used herein, the term “**alcohol deprotecting reagent**” refers to a reagent that 15 is capable of cleaving an alcohol protecting group to form free alcohol. Such reagents are well known in the art (see for example P. Wuts and T. Greene, 2007, Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis, Chapter 2, J. Wiley & Sons, NJ). Examples of such alcohol deprotecting reagents include, but are not limited to, tetra-*n*-butylammonium fluoride, tris(dimethylamino)sulfonium difluorotrimethylsilicate, hydrogen fluoride or a 20 solvate thereof, hydrogen fluoride pyridine, silicon tetrafluoride, hexafluorosilicic acid, cesium fluoride, hydrochloric acid, acetic acid, trifluoroacetic acid, pyridinium *p*-toluenesulfonate, *p*-toluenesulfonic acid (*p*-TsOH), formic acid, periodic acid. In certain embodiments, the alcohol deprotecting reagent is hydrochloric acid or tetra-*n*-butylammonium fluoride (TBAF). In certain embodiments, the alcohol deprotecting 25 agent is hydrogen fluoride-pyridine (HF-pyridine).

As used herein, “**amine deprotecting group**” refers a reagent that is capable of cleaving an amine protecting group to form free amine. Such reagents are well known in the art (see for example P. Wuts and T. Greene, 2007, Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis, Chapter 7, J. Wiley & Sons, NJ). Examples of such amine deprotecting 30 reagents include, but are not limited to, tetra-*n*-butylammonium fluoride, acetic acid, hydrogen fluoride pyridine, cesium fluoride, piperidine, morpholine, or trifluoroacetic acid.

As used herein, “**alcohol activating agent**” refers a reagent that increases the reactivity of a hydroxyl group thereby making the hydroxyl group a better leaving group. Examples of such alcohol activating agents include p-toluenesulfonyl chloride, thionyl chloride, triflic anhydride, mesyl chloride, mesyl anhydride, triphenylphosphine, acyl chloride, 4-dimethylaminopyridine, and others. In certain embodiments, the alcohol activating agent is thionyl chloride. In certain embodiment, the alcohol activating agent is triphenylphosphine.

The phrase “**pharmaceutically acceptable salt**” as used herein, refers to pharmaceutically acceptable organic or inorganic salts of a compound of the invention. Exemplary salts include, but are not limited, to sulfate, citrate, acetate, oxalate, chloride, bromide, iodide, nitrate, bisulfate, phosphate, acid phosphate, isonicotinate, lactate, salicylate, acid citrate, tartrate, oleate, tannate, pantothenate, bitartrate, ascorbate, succinate, maleate, gentisinate, fumarate, gluconate, glucuronate, saccharate, formate, benzoate, glutamate, methanesulfonate “mesylate,” ethanesulfonate, benzenesulfonate, p-toluenesulfonate, pamoate (*i.e.*, 1,1'-methylene-bis-(2-hydroxy-3-naphthoate)) salts, alkali metal (*e.g.*, sodium and potassium) salts, alkaline earth metal (*e.g.*, magnesium) salts, and ammonium salts. A pharmaceutically acceptable salt may involve the inclusion of another molecule such as an acetate ion, a succinate ion or other counter ion. The counter ion may be any organic or inorganic moiety that stabilizes the charge on the parent compound. Furthermore, a pharmaceutically acceptable salt may have more than one charged atom in its structure. Instances where multiple charged atoms are part of the pharmaceutically acceptable salt can have multiple counter ions. Hence, a pharmaceutically acceptable salt can have one or more charged atoms and/or one or more counter ion.

If the compound of the invention is a base, the desired pharmaceutically acceptable salt may be prepared by any suitable method available in the art, for example, treatment of the free base with an inorganic acid, such as hydrochloric acid, hydrobromic acid, sulfuric acid, nitric acid, methanesulfonic acid, phosphoric acid and the like, or with an organic acid, such as acetic acid, maleic acid, succinic acid, mandelic acid, fumaric acid, malonic acid, pyruvic acid, oxalic acid, glycolic acid, salicylic acid, a pyranosidyl acid, such as glucuronic acid or galacturonic acid, an alpha hydroxy acid, such as citric acid or tartaric acid, an amino acid, such as aspartic acid or glutamic acid,

an aromatic acid, such as benzoic acid or cinnamic acid, a sulfonic acid, such as p-toluenesulfonic acid or ethanesulfonic acid, or the like.

If the compound of the invention is an acid, the desired pharmaceutically acceptable salt may be prepared by any suitable method, for example, treatment of the free acid with an inorganic or organic base, such as an amine (primary, secondary or tertiary), an alkali metal hydroxide or alkaline earth metal hydroxide, or the like. Illustrative examples of suitable salts include, but are not limited to, organic salts derived from amino acids, such as glycine and arginine, ammonia, primary, secondary, and tertiary amines, and cyclic amines, such as piperidine, morpholine and piperazine, and inorganic salts derived from sodium, calcium, potassium, magnesium, manganese, iron, copper, zinc, aluminum and lithium.

The phrase “**pharmaceutically acceptable**” indicates that the substance or composition must be compatible chemically and/or toxicologically, with the other ingredients comprising a formulation, and/or the mammal being treated therewith.

The term “**leaving group**” refers to a group of charged or uncharged moiety that departs during a nucleophilic substitution or displacement. Such leaving groups are well known in the art and include, but not limited to, halogens, esters, alkoxy, hydroxyl, tosylates, triflates, mesylates, nitriles, azide, carbamate, disulfides, thioesters, thioethers and diazonium compounds.

The term “**bifunctional crosslinking agent**,” “**bifunctional linker**” or “**crosslinking agents**” refers to modifying agents that possess two reactive groups; one of which is capable of reacting with a cell binding agent while the other one reacts with the cytotoxic compound to link the two moieties together. Such bifunctional crosslinkers are well known in the art (see, for example, Isalm and Dent in *Bioconjugation* chapter 5, p218-363, Groves Dictionaries Inc. New York, 1999). For example, bifunctional crosslinking agents that enable linkage via a thioether bond include *N*-succinimidyl-4-(*N*-maleimidomethyl)-cyclohexane-1-carboxylate (SMCC) to introduce maleimido groups, or with *N*-succinimidyl-4-(iodoacetyl)-aminobenzoate (SIAB) to introduce iodoacetyl groups. Other bifunctional crosslinking agents that introduce maleimido groups or haloacetyl groups on to a cell binding agent are well known in the art (see US Patent Applications 2008/0050310, 20050169933, available from Pierce Biotechnology Inc. P.O. Box 117, Rockland, IL 61105, USA) and include, but not limited to, bis-maleimidopolyethyleneglycol (BMPEO), BM(PEO)₂, BM(PEO)₃,

N-(β -maleimidopropoxy)succinimide ester (BMPS), γ -maleimidobutyric acid N-succinimidyl ester (GMBS), ϵ -maleimidocaproic acid N-hydroxysuccinimide ester (EMCS), 5-maleimidovaleric acid NHS, HBVS, N-succinimidyl-4-(N-maleimidomethyl)-cyclohexane-1-carboxy-(6-amidocaproate), which is a “long chain” analog of SMCC (LC-SMCC), m-maleimidobenzoyl-N-hydroxysuccinimide ester (MBS), 4-(4-N-maleimidophenyl)-butyric acid hydrazide or HCl salt (MPBH), N-succinimidyl 3-(bromoacetamido)propionate (SBAP), N-succinimidyl iodoacetate (SIA), κ -maleimidoundecanoic acid N-succinimidyl ester (KMUA), N-succinimidyl 4-(p-maleimidophenyl)-butyrate (SMPB), succinimidyl-6-(β -maleimidopropionamido)hexanoate (SMPH), succinimidyl-(4-vinylsulfonyl)benzoate (SVSB), dithiobis-maleimidoethane (DTME), 1,4-bis-maleimidobutane (BMB), 1,4 bismaleimidyl-2,3-dihydroxybutane (BMDB), bis-maleimidoethane (BMH), bis-maleimidoethane (BMOE), sulfosuccinimidyl 4-(N-maleimido-methyl)cyclohexane-1-carboxylate (sulfo-SMCC), sulfosuccinimidyl(4-iodo-acetyl)aminobenzoate (sulfo-SIAB), m-maleimidobenzoyl-N-hydroxysulfosuccinimide ester (sulfo-MBS), N-(γ -maleimidobutryloxy)sulfosuccinimide ester (sulfo-GMBS), N-(ϵ -maleimidocaproxyloxy)sulfosuccinimide ester (sulfo-EMCS), N-(κ -maleimidoundecanoyloxy)sulfosuccinimide ester (sulfo-KMUS), and sulfosuccinimidyl 4-(p-maleimidophenyl)butyrate (sulfo-SMPB).

Heterobifunctional crosslinking agents are bifunctional crosslinking agents having two different reactive groups. Heterobifunctional crosslinking agents containing both an amine-reactive N-hydroxysuccinimide group (NHS group) and a carbonyl-reactive hydrazine group can also be used to link the cytotoxic compounds described herein with a cell-binding agent (*e.g.*, antibody). Examples of such commercially available heterobifunctional crosslinking agents include succinimidyl 6-hydrazinonicotinamide acetone hydrazone (SANH), succinimidyl 4-hydrazidoterephthalate hydrochloride (SHTH) and succinimidyl hydrazinium nicotinate hydrochloride (SHNH). Conjugates bearing an acid-labile linkage can also be prepared using a hydrazine-bearing benzodiazepine derivative of the present invention. Examples of bifunctional crosslinking agents that can be used include succinimidyl-p-formyl benzoate (SFB) and succinimidyl-p-formylphenoxyacetate (SFPA).

Bifunctional crosslinking agents that enable the linkage of cell binding agent with cytotoxic compounds via disulfide bonds are known in the art and include

N-succinimidyl-3-(2-pyridyldithio)propionate (SPDP), *N*-succinimidyl-4-(2-pyridyldithio)pentanoate (SPP), *N*-succinimidyl-4-(2-pyridyldithio)butanoate (SPDB), *N*-succinimidyl-4-(2-pyridyldithio)2-sulfo butanoate (sulfo-SPDB) to introduce dithiopyridyl groups. Other bifunctional crosslinking agents that can be used to introduce disulfide groups are known in the art and are disclosed in U.S. Patents 6,913,748, 6,716,821 and US Patent Publications 20090274713 and 20100129314, all of which are incorporated herein by reference. Alternatively, crosslinking agents such as 2-iminothiolane, homocysteine thiolactone or S-acetylsuccinic anhydride that introduce thiol groups can also be used.

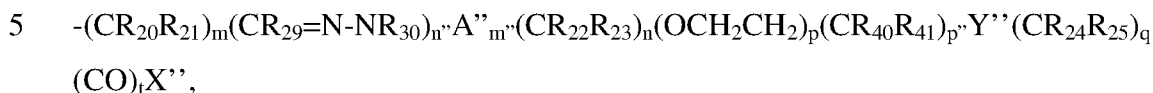
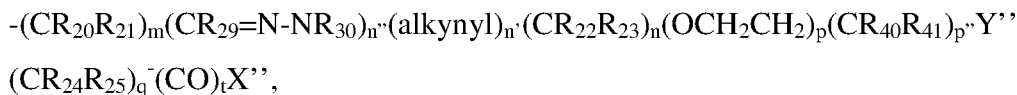
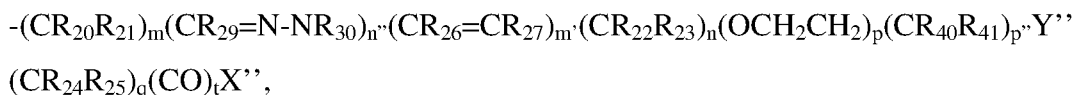
10 A “**linker**,” “**linker moiety**,” or “**linking group**” as defined herein refers to a moiety that connects two groups, such as a cell binding agent and a cytotoxic compound, together. Typically, the linker is substantially inert under conditions for which the two groups it is connecting are linked. In certain embodiments, the linking group is a part of the cytotoxic compound described herein. The linking group may comprise a reactive group, which can react with a cell binding agent, or a precursor thereof. The linking moiety may contain a chemical bond that allows for the release of the cytotoxic moiety at a particular site. Suitable chemical bonds are well known in the art and include disulfide bonds, thioether bonds, acid labile bonds, photolabile bonds, peptidase labile bonds and esterase labile bonds (see for example US Patents 5,208,020; 5,475,092; 15 6,441,163; 6,716,821; 6,913,748; 7,276,497; 7,276,499; 7,368,565; 7,388,026 and 7,414,073). Preferred are disulfide bonds, thioether and peptidase labile bonds. Non-cleavable linking moiety can also be used.

 A “**reactive group**” or “**reactive moiety**” as defined herein refers to a moiety that readily forms a covalent bond with a cell binding agent, *e.g.*, an amide bond with lysine amine group on an antibody, or a bifunctional crosslinking agent, *e.g.* through thioether or disulfide bond. The reactive group is inert to reactions described in the methods of the present invention. Also included is functional groups that can be converted to the reactive group. For example, a reactive group can be a *N*-hydroxysuccinimide ester or an methyl ester group that can be converted to a *N*-hydroxysuccinimide ester. In another example, a reactive group can be a thiol (-SH) group that can readily forms a covalent bond with a bifunctional crosslinking agent through a disulfide bond or a thioether bond. It can also be an alkyldisulfide or 25 30

pyridyldisulfide (R-S-S-, wherein R is alkyl or pyridyl) that can be converted to a thiol group.

In one embodiment, the linking group with a reactive group attached at one end, such as a reactive ester, is selected from the following:

- 5 -O(CR₂₀R₂₁)_m(CR₂₂R₂₃)_n(OCH₂CH₂)_p(CR₄₀R₄₁)_pY''(CR₂₄R₂₅)_q(CO)_tX'',
- O(CR₂₀R₂₁)_m(CR₂₆=CR₂₇)_{m'}(CR₂₂R₂₃)_n(OCH₂CH₂)_p(CR₄₀R₄₁)_pY''(CR₂₄R₂₅)_q(CO)_tX'',
- O(CR₂₀R₂₁)_m(alkynyl)_{n'}(CR₂₂R₂₃)_n(OCH₂CH₂)_p(CR₄₀R₄₁)_pY''(CR₂₄R₂₅)_q(CO)_tX'',
- O(CR₂₀R₂₁)_m(piperazino)_{t'}(CR₂₂R₂₃)_n(OCH₂CH₂)_p(CR₄₀R₄₁)_pY''(CR₂₄R₂₅)_q(CO)_tX'',
- O(CR₂₀R₂₁)_m(pyrrolo)_{t'}(CR₂₂R₂₃)_n(OCH₂CH₂)_p(CR₄₀R₄₁)_pY''(CR₂₄R₂₅)_q(CO)_tX'',
- 10 -O(CR₂₀R₂₁)_mA''_{m''}(CR₂₂R₂₃)_n(OCH₂CH₂)_p(CR₄₀R₄₁)_pY''(CR₂₄R₂₅)_q(CO)_tX'',
- S(CR₂₀R₂₁)_m(CR₂₂R₂₃)_n(OCH₂CH₂)_p(CR₄₀R₄₁)_pY''(CR₂₄R₂₅)_q(CO)_tX'',
- S(CR₂₀R₂₁)_m(CR₂₆=CR₂₇)_{m'}(CR₂₂R₂₃)_n(OCH₂CH₂)_p(CR₄₀R₄₁)_pY''(CR₂₄R₂₅)_q(CO)_tX'',
- S(CR₂₀R₂₁)_m(alkynyl)_{n'}(CR₂₂R₂₃)_n(OCH₂CH₂)_p(CR₄₀R₄₁)_pY''(CR₂₄R₂₅)_q(CO)_tX'',
- S(CR₂₀R₂₁)_m(piperazino)_{t'}(CR₂₂R₂₃)_n(OCH₂CH₂)_p(CR₄₀R₄₁)_pY''(CR₂₄R₂₅)_q(CO)_tX'',
- 15 -S(CR₂₀R₂₁)_m(pyrrolo)_{t'}(CR₂₂R₂₃)_n(OCH₂CH₂)_p(CR₄₀R₄₁)_pY''(CR₂₄R₂₅)_q(CO)_tX'',
- S(CR₂₀R₂₁)_mA''_{m''}(CR₂₂R₂₃)_n(OCH₂CH₂)_p(CR₄₀R₄₁)_pY''(CR₂₄R₂₅)_q(CO)_tX'',
- NR₃₃(C=O)_pY''(CR₂₀R₂₁)_m(CR₂₂R₂₃)_n(OCH₂CH₂)_p(CR₄₀R₄₁)_pY''(CR₂₄R₂₅)_q(CO)_tX'',
- NR₃₃(C=O)_pY''(CR₂₀R₂₁)_m(CR₂₆=CR₂₇)_{m'}(CR₂₂R₂₃)_n(OCH₂CH₂)_p(CR₄₀R₄₁)_pY''
- (CR₂₄R₂₅)_q(CO)_tX'',
- 20 -NR₃₃(C=O)_pY''(CR₂₀R₂₁)_m(alkynyl)_{n'}(CR₂₂R₂₃)_n(OCH₂CH₂)_p(CR₄₀R₄₁)_pY''(CR₂₄R₂₅)_q(CO)_tX'',
- NR₃₃(C=O)_pY''(CR₂₀R₂₁)_m(piperazino)_{t'}(CR₂₂R₂₃)_n(OCH₂CH₂)_p(CR₄₀R₄₁)_pY''(CR₂₄R₂₅)_q(CO)_tX'',
- NR₃₃(C=O)_pY''(CR₂₀R₂₁)_m(pyrrolo)_{t'}(CR₂₂R₂₃)_n(OCH₂CH₂)_p(CR₄₀R₄₁)_pY''(CR₂₄R₂₅)_q(CO)_tX'',
- 25 -NR₃₃(C=O)_pY''(CR₂₀R₂₁)_mA''_{m''}(CR₂₂R₂₃)_n(OCH₂CH₂)_p(CR₄₀R₄₁)_pY''(CR₂₄R₂₅)_q(CO)_tX'',
- (CR₂₀R₂₁)_m(CR₂₂R₂₃)_n(OCH₂CH₂)_p(CR₄₀R₄₁)_pY''(CR₂₄R₂₅)_q(CO)_tX'',
- (CR₂₀R₂₁)_m(CR₂₆=CR₂₇)_{m'}(CR₂₂R₂₃)_n(OCH₂CH₂)_p(CR₄₀R₄₁)_pY''(CR₂₄R₂₅)_q(CO)_tX'',
- 30 -(CR₂₀R₂₁)_m(alkynyl)_{n'}(CR₂₂R₂₃)_n(OCH₂CH₂)_p(CR₄₀R₄₁)_pY''(CR₂₄R₂₅)_q(CO)_tX'',
- (CR₂₀R₂₁)_m(piperazino)_{t'}(CR₂₂R₂₃)_n(OCH₂CH₂)_p(CR₄₀R₄₁)_pY''(CR₂₄R₂₅)_q(CO)_tX'',
- (CR₂₀R₂₁)_mA''_{m''}(CR₂₂R₂₃)_n(OCH₂CH₂)_p(CR₄₀R₄₁)_pY''(CR₂₄R₂₅)_q(CO)_tX'',
- (CR₂₀R₂₁)_m(CR₂₉=N-NR₃₀)_{n''}(CR₂₂R₂₃)_n(OCH₂CH₂)_p(CR₄₀R₄₁)_pY''(CR₂₄R₂₅)_q(CO)_tX'',



wherein:

m, n, p, q, m', n', t' are integer from 1 to 10, or are optionally 0;

t, m'', n'', and p'' are 0 or 1;

- 10 X'' is selected from OR₃₆, SR₃₇, NR₃₈R₃₉, wherein R₃₆, R₃₇, R₃₈, R₃₉ are H, or linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 20 carbon atoms and, or, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}_2)_n$, R₃₇, optionally, is a thiol protecting group when t = 1, COX'' forms a reactive ester selected from N-hydroxysuccinimide esters, N-hydroxyphthalimide esters, N-hydroxy sulfo-succinimide esters, para-
 15 nitrophenyl esters, dinitrophenyl esters, pentafluorophenyl esters and their derivatives, wherein said derivatives facilitate amide bond formation;

Y'' is absent or is selected from O, S, S-S or NR₃₂, wherein R₃₂ has the same definition as given above for R; or

when Y'' is not S-S and t = 0, X'' is selected from a maleimido group, a

- 20 haloacetyl group or SR₃₇, wherein R₃₇ has the same definition as above;

A'' is an amino acid residue or a polypeptide containing between 2 to 20 amino acid residues;

R₂₀, R₂₁, R₂₂, R₂₃, R₂₄, R₂₅, R₂₆, and R₂₇ are the same or different, and are -H or a linear or branched alkyl having from 1 to 5 carbon atoms;

- 25 R₂₉ and R₃₀ are the same or different, and are -H or alkyl from 1 to 5 carbon atoms;

- R₃₃ is -H or linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 12 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $\text{R}-(\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}_2)_n-$, or R₃₃ is -COR₃₄, -CSR₃₄, -SOR₃₄, or -SO₂R₃₄, wherein R₃₄ is H or linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or
 30 alkynyl having from 1 to 20 carbon atoms or, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}_2)_n$; and

one of R₄₀ and R₄₁ is optionally a negatively or positively charged functional group and the other is H or alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms.

Any of the above linking groups may be present in any of the compounds, drug-linker compounds, or conjugates of the invention, including replacing the linking groups of any of the formulas described herein.

The term “**amino acid**” refers to naturally occurring amino acids or non-naturally occurring amino acid. In one embodiment, the amino acid is represented by $\text{NH}_2\text{-C(R}^{\text{aa}}\text{R}^{\text{aa}}\text{)-C(=O)OH}$, wherein R^{aa} and R^{aa} are each independently H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having 1 to 10 carbon atoms, aryl, heteroaryl or heterocyclyl, or R^{aa} and the N-terminal nitrogen atom can together form a heterocyclic ring (*e.g.*, as in proline). The term “**amino acid residue**” refers to the corresponding residue when one hydrogen atom is removed from the amine and/or carboxy end of the amino acid, such as $\text{-NH-C(R}^{\text{aa}}\text{R}^{\text{aa}}\text{)-C(=O)O-}$.

The term “**cation**” refers to an ion with positive charge. The cation can be monovalent (*e.g.*, Na^+ , K^+ , *etc.*), bi-valent (*e.g.*, Ca^{2+} , Mg^{2+} , *etc.*) or multi-valent (*e.g.*, Al^{3+} *etc.*). Preferably, the cation is monovalent.

As used herein, the term “**halogenating reagent**” refers to a reagent that converts an alcohol group to a halide group. A “**brominating reagent**” is a reagent that converts an alcohol group to a bromide group. A “**iodinating reagent**” is a reagent that converts an alcohol group to a iodide group. A “**chlorinating reagent**” is a reagent that converts an alcohol group to a chloride group. Exemplary brominating reagents include, but are not limited to, bromine, hydrobromic acid, carbon tetrabromide, phosphorus tribromide, and potassium bromide. Exemplary iodinating reagent include, but are not limited to, hydroiodic acid, iodine, carbon tetraiodide, phosphorus triiodide, sodium iodide, or potassium iodide. Exemplary chlorinating reagent include, but are not limited to, carbon tetrachloride, methanesulfonyl chloride, sulfuryl chloride, thionyl chloride, cyanuric chloride, *N*-chlorosuccinimide, phosphorus(V) oxychloride, phosphorus pentachloride, and phosphorus trichloride. In a specific embodiment, the chlorinating reagent is methanesulfonyl chloride.

As used herein, a “**sulfonating reagent**” refers to a reagent that converts an alcohol group to a sulfonate ester group. Preferably, the sulfonating reagent is a sulfonic anhydride, such as methanesulfonic anhydride, or a sulfonic chloride, such as methanesulfonyl chloride (MsCl).

As used herein, an “**activated ester**” refers to an ester group that is readily displaced by a hydroxyl or an amine group. Exemplary activated esters include, but are

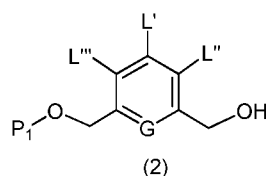
not limited to nitrophenyl (*e.g.*, 2 or 4-nitrophenyl) ester, dinitrophenyl (*e.g.*, 2,4-dinitrophenyl) ester, sulfo-tetrafluorophenyl (*e.g.*, 4-sulfo-2,3,5,6-tetrafluorophenyl) ester, pentafluorophenyl ester, nitropyridyl (*e.g.*, 4-nitropyridyl) ester, trifluoroacetate, and acetate.

5 As used herein, an “**esterification reagent**” refers to a reagent that converts an alcohol group to an ester group. Exemplary esterification reagent include, but are not limited to, nitrobenzoic acid (*e.g.*, 2 or 4-nitrobenzoic acid), dinitrobenzoic acid (*e.g.*, 2,4-dinitrobenzoic acid), sulfo-tetrafluorobenzoic acid (*e.g.*, 4-sulfo-2,3,5,6-tetrafluorobenzoic acid), pentafluorobenzoic acid, nitropyridine carboxylic acid (*e.g.*, 4-
10 nitro-2-pyridine carboxylic acid, trifluoroacetic acid, and acetic acid, or acyl chloride, acid anhydride or other activated carboxylic acid derivatives thereof.

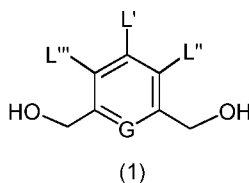
METHODS OF THE PRESENT INVENTION

The present invention provides novel methods for preparing
15 indolinobenzodiazepine dimer compounds that have one imine functionality and one amine functionality. As compared to the methods known in the art, the present methods can produce the desired dimer compounds with higher yield and without the use of HPLC purification.

In a first embodiment, the present invention provides a method of preparing a
20 compound of formula (2),



or a salt thereof, comprising introducing an alcohol protecting group onto one of the primary alcohols of a compound of formula (1) by reacting the compound of formula (I) with an alcohol protecting reagent,



25

wherein:

L', L'', and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1

to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}_2)_n-\text{R}^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-\text{NH}(\text{C}=\text{NH})\text{NH}_2]$, $-\text{OR}$, $-\text{NR}'\text{R}''$, $-\text{NO}_2$, $-\text{NR}'\text{COR}''$, $-\text{SR}$, $-\text{SOR}'$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{R}'$, $-\text{SO}_3\text{M}$, $-\text{OSO}_3\text{M}$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{NR}'\text{R}''$, cyano, an azido, $-\text{COR}'$, $-\text{OCOR}'$, $-\text{OCONR}'\text{R}''$, or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that only one of L' , L'' , and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is $-\text{H}$ or a cation;

R , for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of $-\text{H}$, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O})_n-\text{R}^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O , S , N and P ;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from $-\text{H}$, $-\text{OH}$, $-\text{OR}$, $-\text{NHR}$, $-\text{N}(\text{R})_2$, $-\text{COR}$, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O})_n-\text{R}^c$, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O , S , N and P ;

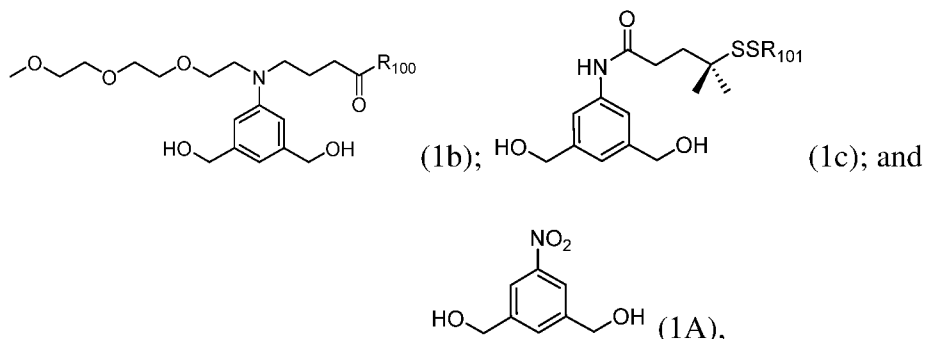
R^c is $-\text{H}$ or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

G is selected from $-\text{CH}-$ or $-\text{N}-$; and

P_1 is the alcohol protecting group.

In one embodiment, the compound of formula (1) is represented by a formula selected from the the following:



wherein R₁₀₀ is a (C₁-C₃)alkoxy; and R₁₀₁ is a (C₁-C₃)alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl (*e.g.*, 4-nitropyridyl).

In a specific embodiment, the alcohol protecting group is sterically hindered. In another specific embodiment, the alcohol protecting group is pivaloyl, methoxymethyl, 2-methoxyethoxymethyl, *p*-methoxybenzyl, 3,4-dimethoxybenzyl, 2,6-dimethoxybenzyl, diphenylmethyl, benzyloxymethyl, 2,2,2-trichloroethoxycarbonyl, tetrahydrofuranyl, tetrahydropyranyl, benzyl, benzoyl, *para*-phenylbenzoyl, 2,4,6-trimethylbenzoyl, *para*-bromobenzoyl, *para*-nitrobenzoyl, picolinoyl, nicotinoyl, 5-dibenzosuberyl, trityl/triphenylmethyl, or tris(4-*tert*-butylphenyl)methyl. Preferably, the alcohol protecting group is methoxymethyl, tetrahydropyranyl, 2-methoxyethoxymethyl, *p*-methoxybenzyl, benzyloxymethyl, or 2,2,2-trichloroethoxycarbonyl. Even more preferably, the alcohol protecting group is 2,2,2-trichloroethoxycarbonyl.

In another specific embodiment, the alcohol protecting group is a silyl protecting group. For example, the silyl protecting group is dimethylisopropylsilyl, diethylisopropylsilyl, dimethylhexylsilyl, trimethylsilyl, triisopropylsilyl, tribenzylsilyl, triphenylsilyl, 2-norbornyldimethylsilyl, *tert*-butyldimethylsilyl, *tert*-butyldiphenylsilyl, 2-trimethylethylsilyl (TEOC), or [2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxy]methyl. Preferably, the silyl protecting group is triethylsilyl, triisopropylsilyl, or *tert*-butyldimethylsilyl. More preferably, the silyl protecting group is *tert*-butyldimethylsilyl.

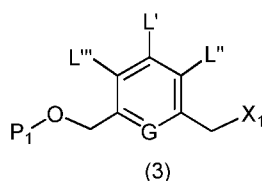
The silyl protecting group can be introduced by reacting the compound of formula (1) with R³-Cl, R³-Br, R³-I or R³-OSO₂CF₃ (collectively the alcohol protecting reagent) in the presence of a base, wherein R³ is dimethylisopropylsilyl, diethylisopropylsilyl, dimethylhexylsilyl, trimethylsilyl, triisopropylsilyl, tribenzylsilyl, triphenylsilyl, 2-norbornyldimethylsilyl, *tert*-butyldimethylsilyl, *tert*-butyldiphenylsilyl or [2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxy]methyl. In certain embodiments, the molar ratio of the alcohol protecting reagent to the compound of formula (1) is between 0.8-1.2, between 1 to 5, between 1 to 2, between 1 to 1.5, between 1 to 1.4, between 1 to 1.3, between 1 to 1.2, or between 1 to 1.1. In certain embodiment, less than 2 molar equivalents of the alcohol protecting reagent is used relative to the compound of formula (I). Preferably, 1.5, 1.4, 1.3, 1.2, 1.1 or 1.0 molar equivalent of the alcohol protecting reagent relative to the compound of formula (1) is used.

In one embodiment, the base can be a non-nucleophilic base. Examples of non-nucleophilic base include, but are not limited to, imidazole, triethylamine, diisopropylethylamine, pyridine, 2,6-lutidine, 1,8-diazabicycloundec-7-ene, or tetramethylpiperidine. Preferably, the non-nucleophilic base is imidazole. Molar excess amount of the base can be used. In certain embodiments, more than 2 molar equivalents of the base (e.g., non-nucleophilic base) are used relative to the compound of formula (1).

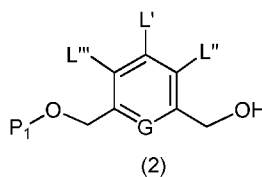
In another embodiment, the reaction between the compound of formula (1) and $R^3\text{-Cl}$, $R^3\text{-Br}$, $R^3\text{-I}$ or $R^3\text{-OSO}_2\text{CF}_3$ is carried out in the presence of a catalyst that facilitates the introduction of the silyl protecting group. Any suitable catalysts known in the art (see, for example, P. Wuts and T. Greene, 2007, Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis, Chapter 2, J. Wiley & Sons, NJ) can be used in the reaction. Exemplary catalysts include, but are not limited to, 4-dimethylaminopyridine (DMAP), 1,1,3,3-tetramethylguanidine and 1,8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undec-7-ene (DBU).

Any suitable organic solvents can be used for the methods of the first embodiment. Exemplary solvents include, but are not limited to, DMF, CH_2Cl_2 , dichloroethane, THF, dimethylacetamide, etc. In certain embodiments, DMF is used as the solvent.

In a second embodiment, the present invention provides a method of preparing a compound of formula (3),

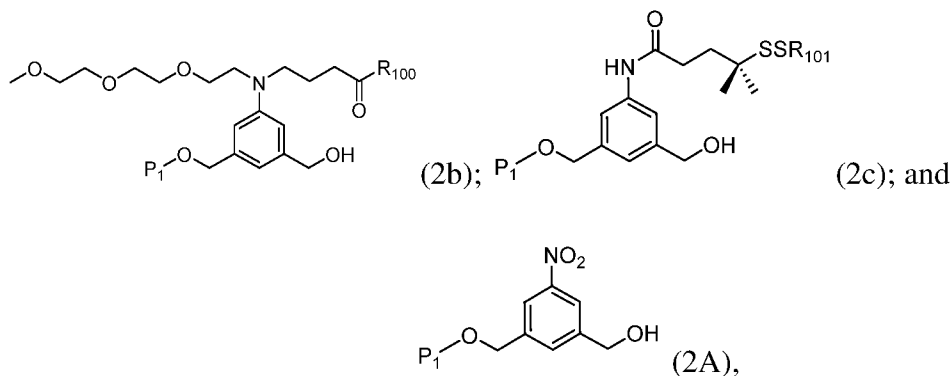


or a salt thereof, comprising reacting the compound of formula (2) with a halogenating reagent, a sulfonating reagent or an esterification reagent,



wherein L' , L'' , L''' , G and P_1 are as defined in the first embodiment, and X_1 is a leaving group selected from the group consisting of: $-\text{Br}$, $-\text{I}$, $-\text{Cl}$, a sulfonate ester, and an activated ester.

In a specific embodiment, the compound of formula (2) is represented by a formula selected from the the following:



- 5 wherein R₁₀₀ is a (C₁-C₃)alkoxy; and R₁₀₁ is a (C₁-C₃)alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl (*e.g.*, 4-nitropyridyl).

In another specific embodiment, for methods of preparing compound of formula (3d) or (3A) described above, X₁ is -Br, -I or a sulfonate ester.

In another specific embodiment, X₁ is mesylate, tosylate, brosylate, or triflate.

- 10 Preferably, X₁ is mesylate.

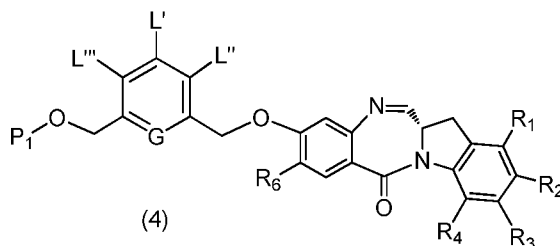
In another specific embodiment, the method of the second embodiment comprises reacting the compound of formula (2) with a halogenating reagent. Exemplary halogenating reagents include, but are not limited to, bromine, hydrobromic acid, carbon tetrabromide, phosphorus tribromide, potassium bromide, hydroiodic acid, iodine, carbon tetraiodide, phosphorus triiodide, sodium iodide, or potassium iodide.

In yet another specific embodiment, the method of the second embodiment comprises reacting the compound of formula (2) with a sulfonating reagent. Preferably, the sulfonating reagent is a sulfonic anhydride, such as methanesulfonic anhydride, or a sulfonic chloride, such as methanesulfonyl chloride (MsCl).

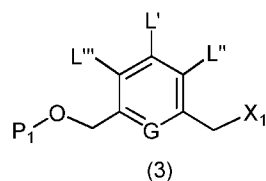
- 20 In certain embodiment, the reaction between the compound of formula (2) and the sulfonating reagent can be carried out in the presence of a base. In one embodiment, the base is a non-nucleophilic base. Exemplary non-nucleophilic bases include, but are not limited to, triethylamine, imidazole, triethylamine, diisopropylethylamine, pyridine, 2,6-lutidine, dimethylformamide, 1,8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undec-7-ene (DBU), or tetramethylpiperidine. Preferably, the base is triethylamine or diisopropylethylamine.

Any suitable organic solvents can be used in the method of the second embodiment. In one embodiment, the solvent is dichloromethane.

In a third embodiment, the present invention provides a method of preparing a compound of formula (4),

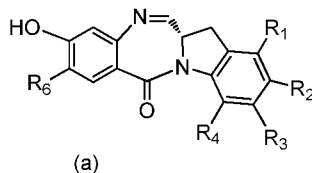


or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula (3)



5

with a monomer compound of the formula (a),

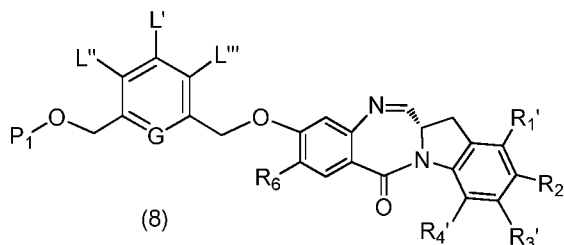


wherein:

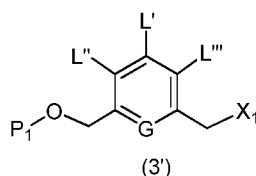
R_1 , R_2 , R_3 , and R_4 are each independently selected from the group consisting of
 10 -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R_c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R''; and

15 R_6 is -H, -R, -OR, -SR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, or halogen; and the remaining variables are as described in the second embodiment.

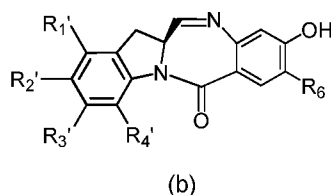
Alternatively, the third embodiment provides a method of preparing a compound of formula (8),



20 or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula (3')

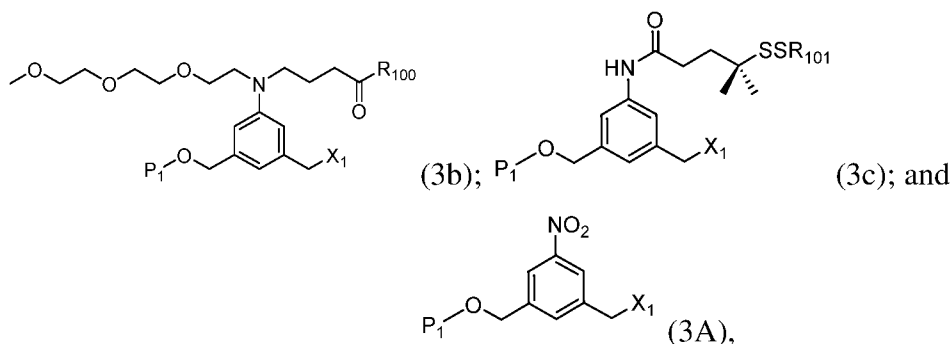


with a monomer compound of the formula (b),



- wherein R_1' , R_2' , R_3' , and R_4' are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R_c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R''; R_6 is -H, -R, -OR, -SR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, or halogen; and the remaining variables are as described in the second embodiment.

In a specific embodiment, the the compound of formula (3) is represented by a formula selected from the the following:

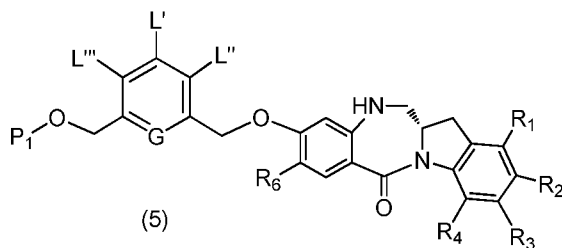


- wherein R_{100} is a (C₁-C₃)alkoxy; and R_{101} is a (C₁-C₃)alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl (*e.g.*, 4-nitropyridyl).

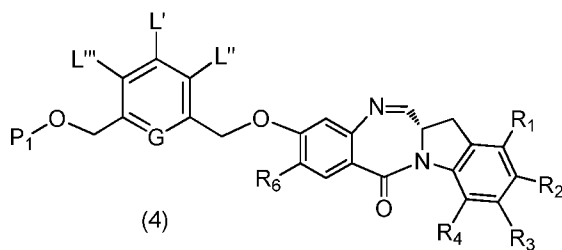
In a specific embodiment, for methods of the third embodiment, X_1 is -Br, -I, or a sulfonate ester.

- In a specific embodiment, the compound of formula (3) is reacted with the monomer compound of formula (b) in the presence of a base. Any suitable base can be used. Exemplary bases include, but are not limited to, sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, cesium carbonate, sodium hydride, or potassium hydride. In one embodiment, the base is potassium carbonate.

In a fourth embodiment, the present invention provides a method of preparing a compound of formula (5),



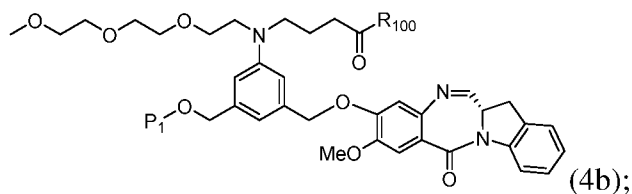
or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula (4),



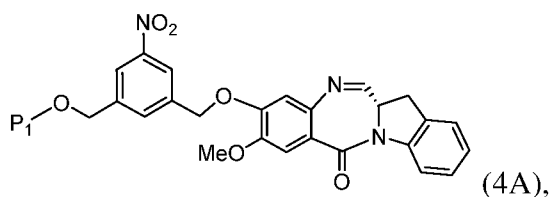
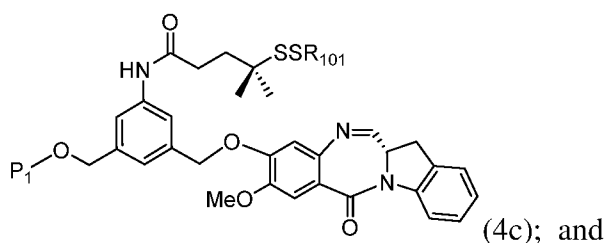
5

with an imine reducing agent, wherein the variables are as described above in the third embodiment.

In a specific embodiment, the compound of formula (4) is represented by a formula selected from the the following:



10



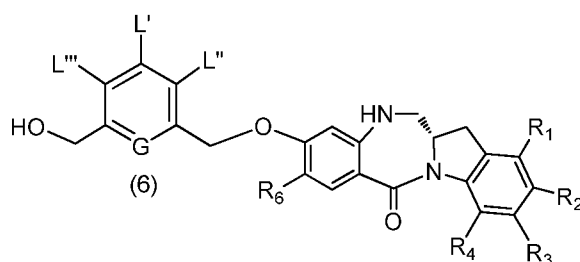
wherein R₁₀₀ is a (C₁-C₃)alkoxy; and R₁₀₁ is a (C₁-C₃)alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl (*e.g.*, 4-nitropyridyl).

In a specific embodiment, the imine reducing reagent is a hydride reducing reagent.

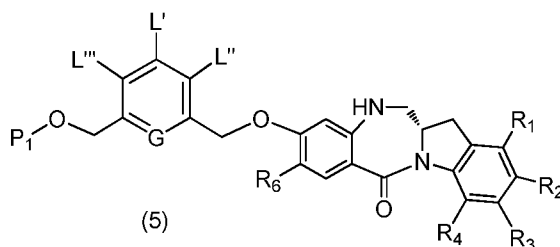
In another specific embodiment, the imine reducing reagent is sodium borohydride, sodium triacetoxy borohydride, sodium cyanoborohydride, lithium aluminum hydride, hydrogen gas, ammonium formate, borane, 9-borabicyclo[3.3.1]nonane (9-BBN), diisobutylaluminum hydride (DIBAL), lithium borohydride (LiBH_4), potassium borohydride (KBH_4), or sodium bis(2-methoxyethoxy)aluminumhydride (Red-Al). Preferably, the imine reducing reagent is sodium triacetoxy borohydride ($\text{NaBH}(\text{OAc})_3$).

Any suitable solvents can be used in the method of fourth embodiment. In one embodiment, the solvent is dichloroethane.

In a fifth embodiment, the present invention provides a method preparing a compound of formula (6),

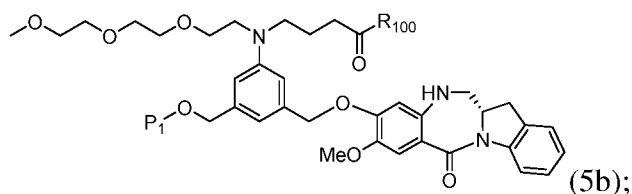


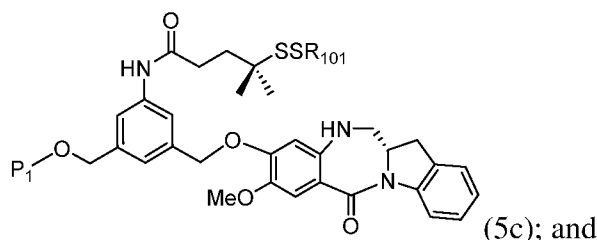
or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula (5),



with an alcohol deprotecting reagent, wherein the variables are as described above in the fourth embodiment.

In a specific embodiment, the compound of formula (5) is represented by a formula selected from the following:



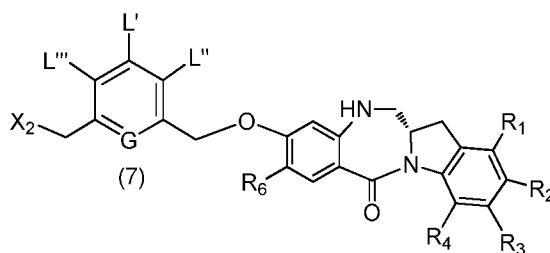


wherein R_{100} is a (C_1-C_3) alkoxy; and R_{101} is a (C_1-C_3) alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl (*e.g.*, 4-nitropyridyl).

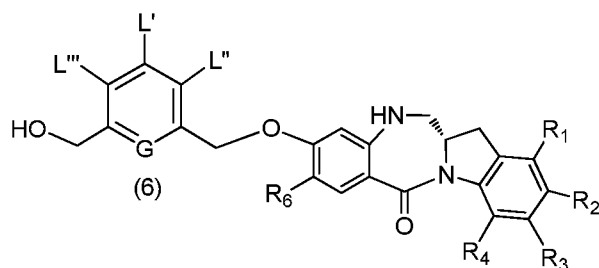
- 5 In a specific embodiment, the alcohol deprotecting reagent is tetra-*n*-butylammonium fluoride, tris(dimethylamino)sulfonium difluorotrimethylsilicate, hydrogen fluoride or a solvate thereof, hydrogen fluoride pyridine, silicon tetrafluoride, hexafluorosilicic acid, cesium fluoride, hydrochloric acid, acetic acid, trifluoroacetic acid, pyridinium *p*-toluenesulfonate, *p*-toluenesulfonic acid (*p*-TsOH), formic acid, or
- 10 periodic acid. Preferably, the alcohol deprotecting reagent is hydrochloric acid or tetra-*n*-butylammonium fluoride.

Any suitable solvents can be used in the deprotection reaction described above. In one embodiment, the solvent is THF.

- In a sixth embodiment, the present invention provides a method of preparing a
- 15 compound of formula (7),

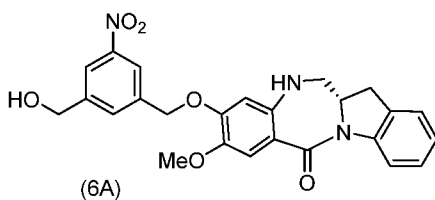
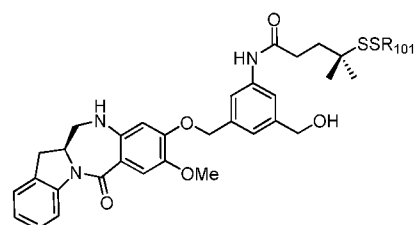
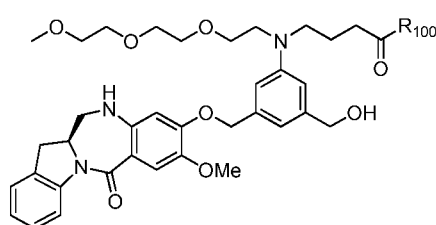


or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a halogenating reagent, a sulfonating reagent or an esterification reagent with the primary alcohol compound of formula (6),



wherein X_2 is $-\text{Br}$, $-\text{I}$, $-\text{Cl}$, a sulfonate ester or an activated ester; and the remaining variables are as described above in the fifth embodiment.

In a specific embodiment, the compound of formula (6) is represented by a
5 formula selected from the following:



wherein R_{100} is a $(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_3)$ alkoxy; and R_{101} is a $(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_3)$ alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl (*e.g.*, 4-nitropyridyl).

10 In a specific embodiment, for methods of the sixth embodiment, X_2 is $-\text{Br}$, $-\text{I}$ or a sulfonate ester.

In a specific embodiment, X_2 is mesylate, tosylate, brosylate, or triflate.
Preferably, X_2 is mesylate.

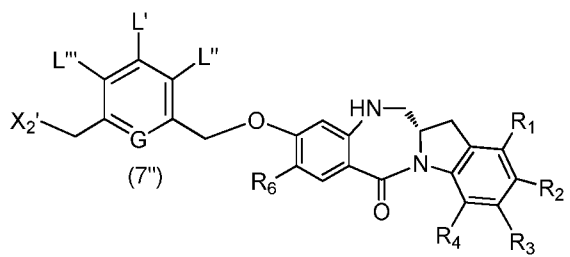
In another specific embodiment, the method of the sixth embodiment comprises
15 reacting the compound of formula (6) with a halogenating reagent. Exemplary halogenating reagent include, but are not limited to, bromine, hydrobromic acid, carbon tetrabromide, phosphorus tribromide, potassium bromide, hydroiodic acid, iodine, carbon tetraiodide, phosphorus triiodide, sodium iodide, or potassium iodide.

In yet another specific embodiment, the method of the sixth embodiment comprises
20 reacting the compound of formula (6) with a sulfonating reagent. Preferably, the

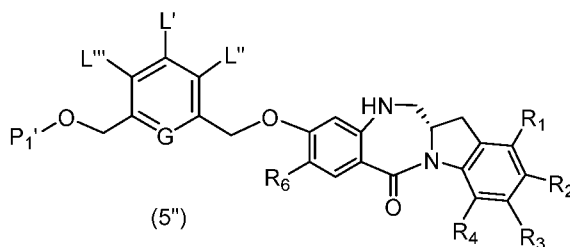
sulfonating reagent is a sulfonic anhydride, such as methanesulfonic anhydride, or a sulfonic chloride, such as methanesulfonyl chloride (MsCl).

In one embodiment, the reaction between the compound of formula (6) and the sulfonating reagent is carried out in the presence of a base. Preferably, the base is a non-nucleophilic base. Exemplary non-nucleophilic base include, but are not limited to, triethylamine, imidazole, triethylamine, diisopropylethylamine, pyridine, 2,6-lutidine, dimethylformamide, 1,8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undec-7-ene (DBU), or tetramethylpiperidine. Preferably, the base is triethylamine or diisopropylethylamine. Any suitable solvents can be used in reaction described above. In one embodiment, the solvent is dichloromethane.

In a seventh embodiment, the present invention provides a method of preparing a compound of formula (7'')

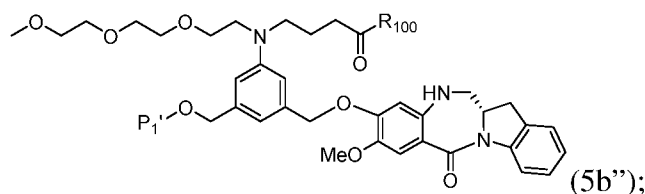


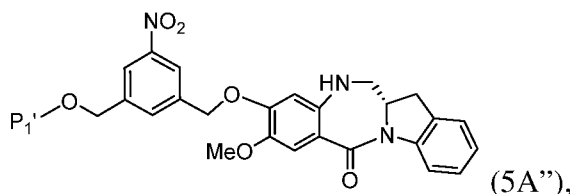
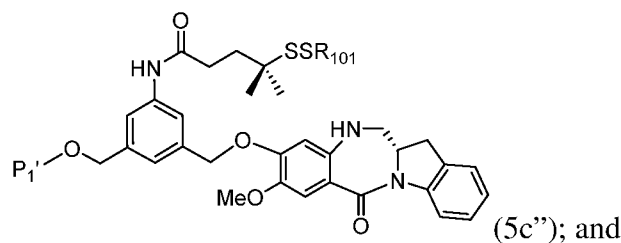
or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula (5'')



with an alcohol deprotecting reagent and a halogenating reagent, wherein P₁' is an acid labile alcohol protecting group; X₂' is -Br or -I; and the remaining variables are as described above in the sixth embodiment.

In a specific embodiment, the compound of formula (5'') is represented by a formula selected from the following:

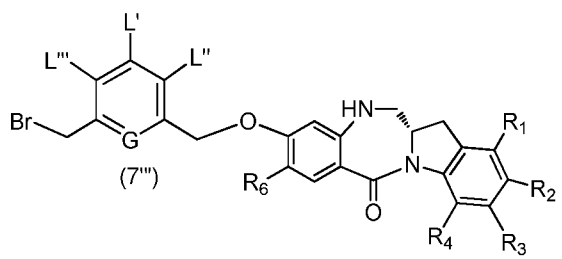




wherein R₁₀₀ is a (C₁-C₃)alkoxy; and R₁₀₁ is a (C₁-C₃)alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl (*e.g.*, 4-nitropyridyl).

5 The method of the seventh embodiment combines the alcohol deprotection step described in the fifth embodiment and the halogenation reaction of the resulting alcohol described in the sixth embodiment into one step.

In a specific embodiment, for the method of the seventh embodiment, the compound of formula (7'') is represented by the following formula:



10

and the method comprising reacting the compound of formula (5'') with an alcohol deprotecting reagent and a bromination reagent.

In one embodiment, the acid labile alcohol protecting group is acetate, allyl, methoxymethyl, tetrahydrofuranyl, tetrahydropyranyl, 5-dibenzosuberyl, 1-ethoxyethyl, 1-methyl-1-methoxyethyl, 2-(phenylselenenyl)ethyl, trityl/triphenylmethyl, or tris(4-tert-butylphenyl)methyl.

15

In another embodiment, the acid labile alcohol protecting group is a silyl protecting group. Exemplary silyl protecting groups include, but are not limited to, dimethylisopropylsilyl, diethylisopropylsilyl, dimethylhexylsilyl, trimethylsilyl, triethylsilyl, triisopropylsilyl, tribenzylsilyl, triphenylsilyl, 2-norbornyldimethylsilyl, *tert*-butyldimethylsilyl, *tert*-butyldiphenylsilyl, 2-trimethylethylsilyl (TEOC), or [2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxy]methyl. Preferably, the silyl protecting group is triethylsilyl,

20

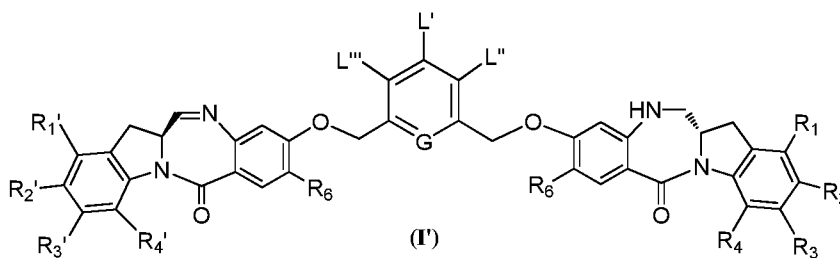
triisopropylsilyl, or tert-butyldimethylsilyl. More preferably, the silyl protecting group is tert-butyldimethylsilyl.

In one embodiment, the alcohol deprotecting reagent is tetra-n-butylammonium fluoride, tris(dimethylamino)sulfonium difluorotrimethylsilicate, hydrogen fluoride or a solvate thereof, hydrogen fluoride pyridine, silicon tetrafluoride, hexafluorosilicic acid, cesium fluoride, hydrochloric acid, acetic acid, pyridinium p-toluenesulfonate, formic acid, periodic acid, trifluoroacetic acid, or p-toluenesulfonic acid (p-TsOH). Preferably, the alcohol deprotecting reagent is acetic acid.

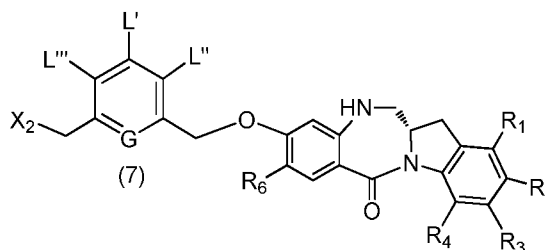
In yet another embodiment, the bromination reagent is HBr.

In one specific embodiment, the method of the seventh embodiment comprises reacting the compound of formula (5'') with a mixture of acetic acid and HBr to give the compound of formula (7').

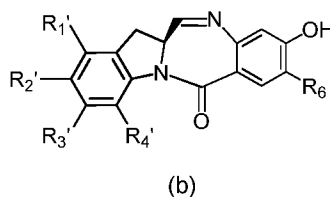
In an eighth embodiment, the present invention provides a method of preparing a compound of formula (I'),



or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula (7)



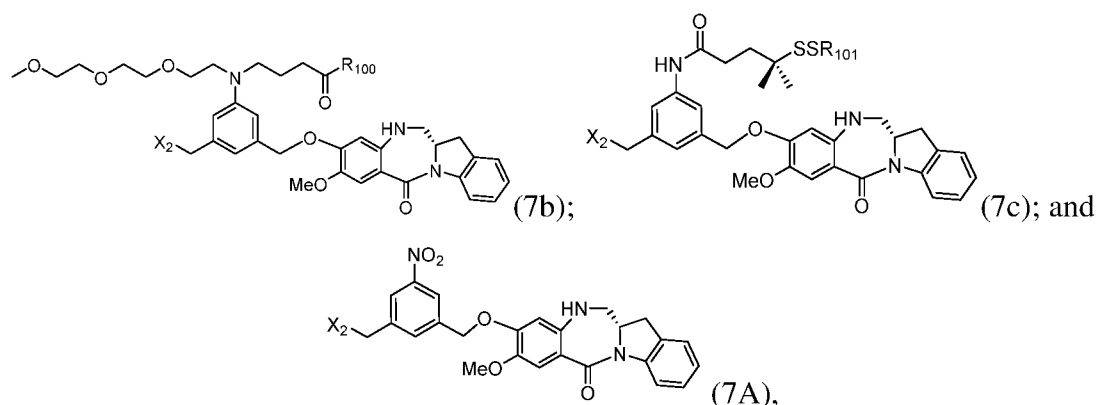
with a monomer compound of the formula (b),



wherein R₁', R₂', R₃', and R₄' are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit -(CH₂CH₂O)_n-R_c, halogen,

guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, $-OR$, $-NR'R''$, $-NO_2$, $-NCO$, $-NR'COR''$, $-SR$, $-SOR'$, $-SO_2R'$, $-SO_3^-H$, $-OSO_3H$, $-SO_2NR'R''$, cyano, an azido, $-COR'$, $-OCOR'$, and $-OCONR'R''$; and the remaining variables are as describe above in the seventh embodiment.

- 5 In a specific embodiment, the compound of formula (7) is represented by a formula selected from the the following:



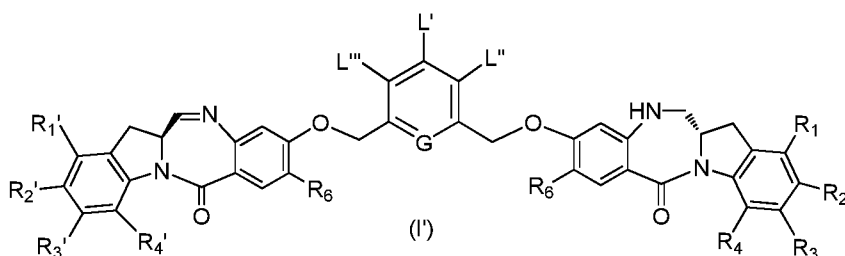
- wherein X_2 is a leaving group selected from the group consisting of: $-Br$, $-I$, $-Cl$, a sulfonate ester, and an activated ester; R_{100} is a (C_1-C_3) alkoxy; and R_{101} is a (C_1-C_3) alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl (*e.g.*, 4-nitropyridyl).

In one embodiment, for methods of the eighth embodiment, X_2 is $-Br$, $-I$ or a sulfonate ester.

- In one embodiment, the compound of formula (7) is reacted with the monomer compound of formula (b) in the presence of a base. Examples of the base include, but are not limited to, sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, cesium carbonate, sodium hydride, or potassium hydride. In one embodiment, the base is potassium carbonate.

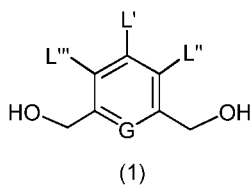
Any suitable solvents can be used in the methods described above. In one embodiment, the solvent is DMF.

- 20 In a ninth embodiment, the present invention provides a method of preparing a compound of formula (I'),

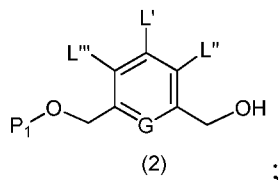


or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:

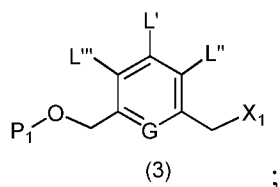
(1) introducing an alcohol protecting group onto one of the primary alcohols of a compound of formula (1),



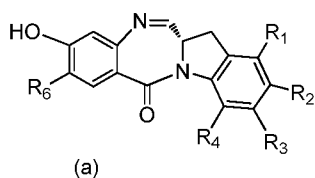
to form a compound of formula (2),



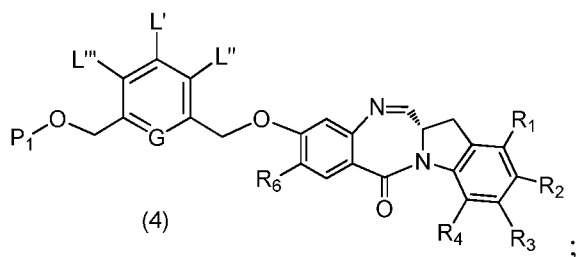
(2) reacting the compound of formula (2) with a halogenating reagent, a sulfonating reagent or an esterification reagent to form a compound of formula (3),



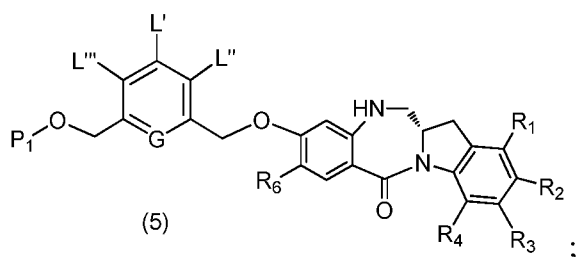
(3) reacting the compound of formula (3) with a monomer compound of the formula (a),



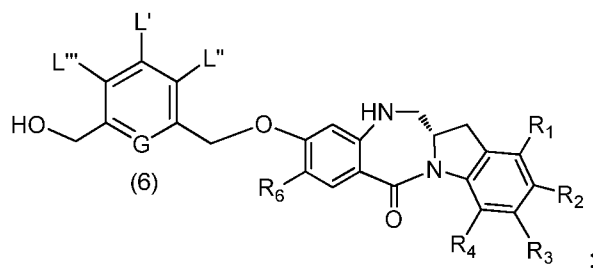
to form a compound of formula (4),



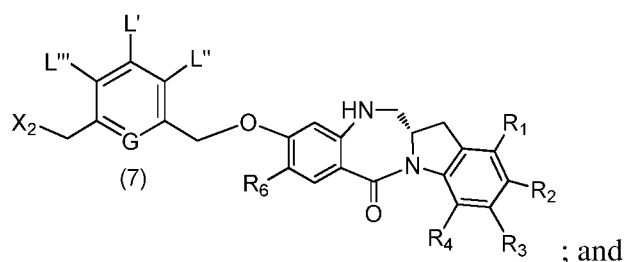
(4) reacting the compound of formula (4) with an imine reducing agent to form a compound of formula (5),



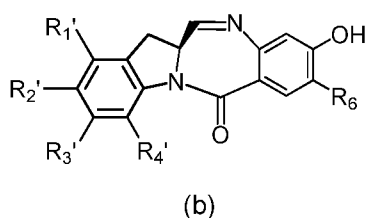
(5) reacting the compound of formula (5) with an alcohol deprotecting reagent to form a compound of formula (6),



5 (6) reacting a second halogenating reagent, a second sulfonating reagent or a second esterification reagent with the compound of formula (6) to form a compound of formula (7),

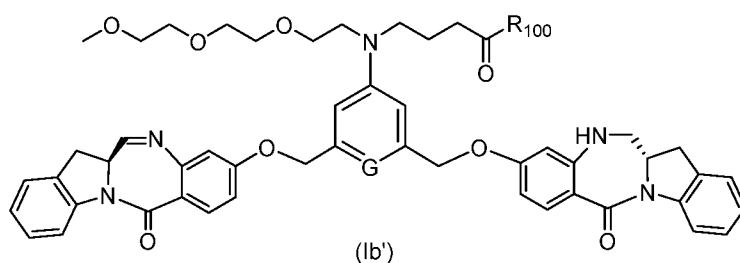


(7) reacting the compound of formula (7) with a monomer compound of the
10 formula (b),



to form the compound of formula (I'), wherein the variables are as described above in the first, second, third, fourth, fifth, sixth, and eighth embodiments.

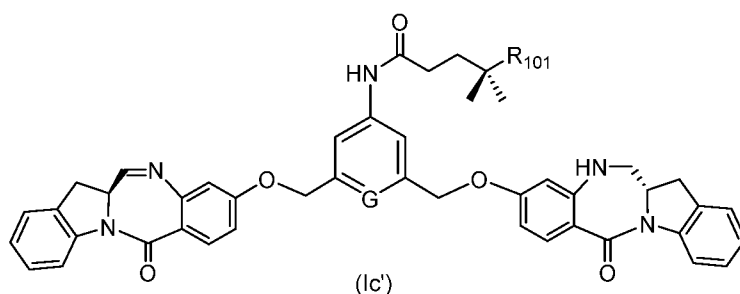
In one specific embodiment, the method of the ninth embodiment involves
15 preparing a compound of formula (Ib')



or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:

- (1) introducing an alcohol protecting group onto one of the primary alcohols of a compound of formula (1b) to form a compound of formula (2b);
- 5 (2) reacting the compound of formula (2b) with a halogenating reagent, a sulfonating reagent or an esterification reagent to form a compound of formula (3b);
- (3) reacting the compound of formula (3b) with a monomer compound of the formula (a), to form a compound of formula (4b),
- (4) reacting the compound of formula (4b) with an imine reducing agent to form
- 10 a compound of formula (5b),
- (5) reacting the compound of formula (5b) with an alcohol deprotecting reagent to form a compound of formula (6b),
- (6) reacting the compound of formula (6b) with a second halogenating reagent, a second sulfonating reagent or a second esterification reagent to form a compound of
- 15 formula (7b),
- (7) reacting the compound of formula (7b) with a monomer compound of the formula (b), to form the compound of formula (Ib').

In one specific embodiment, the method of the ninth embodiment involves preparing a compound of formula (Ic')



or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:

- (1) introducing an alcohol protecting group onto one of the primary alcohols of a compound of formula (1c) to form a compound of formula (2c);

(2) reacting the compound of formula (2c) with a halogenating reagent, a sulfonating reagent or an esterification reagent to form a compound of formula (3c);

(3) reacting the compound of formula (3c) with a monomer compound of the formula (a), to form a compound of formula (4c),

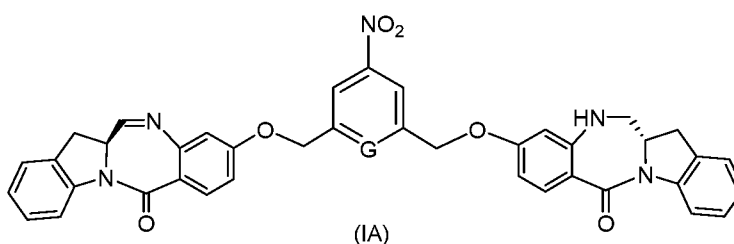
5 (4) reacting the compound of formula (4c) with an imine reducing agent to form a compound of formula (5c),

(5) reacting the compound of formula (5c) with an alcohol deprotecting reagent to form a compound of formula (6c),

(6) reacting the compound of formula (6c) with a second halogenating reagent, a second sulfonating reagent or a second esterification reagent to form a compound of formula (7c),

(7) reacting the compound of formula (7c) with a monomer compound of the formula (b), to form the compound of formula (Ic').

In one specific embodiment, the method of the ninth embodiment involves preparing a compound of formula (IA)



or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:

(1) introducing an alcohol protecting group onto one of the primary alcohols of a compound of formula (1A) to form a compound of formula (2A);

20 (2) reacting the compound of formula (2A) with a halogenating reagent, a sulfonating reagent or an esterification reagent to form a compound of formula (3A);

(3) reacting the compound of formula (3A) with a monomer compound of the formula (a), to form a compound of formula (4A),

(4) reacting the compound of formula (4A) with an imine reducing agent to form a compound of formula (5A),

(5) reacting the compound of formula (5A) with an alcohol deprotecting reagent to form a compound of formula (6A),

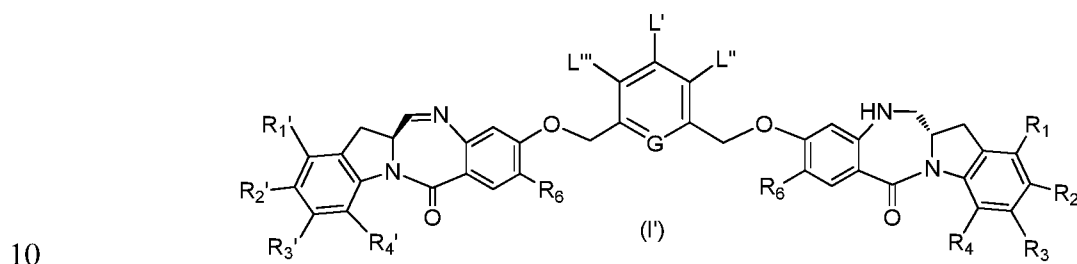
(6) reacting the compound of formula (6A) with a second halogenating reagent, a second sulfonating reagent or a second esterification reagent to form a compound of formula (7A),

(7) reacting the compound of formula (7A) with a monomer compound of the formula (b), to form the compound of formula (IA).

In one embodiment, for methods of the ninth embodiment, X_1 and X_2 are each independently $-\text{Br}$, $-\text{Cl}$ or a sulfonate ester.

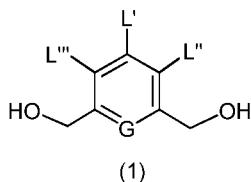
5 The reaction conditions and reagents for each step in the method of the ninth embodiment are as described in the first, second, third, fourth, fifth, sixth and/or eighth embodiment or any specific embodiments described therein.

In a tenth embodiment, the present invention provides a method of preparing a compound of formula (I'),

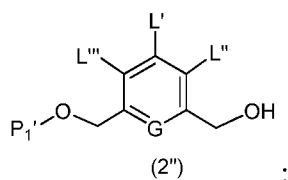


or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:

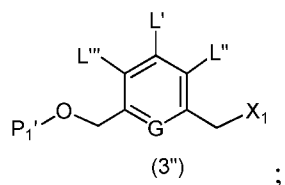
(1) introducing an alcohol protecting group onto one of the primary alcohols of a compound of formula (1),



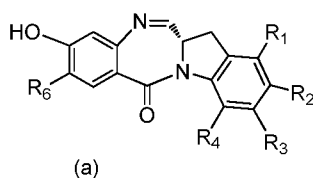
15 to form a compound of formula (2''),



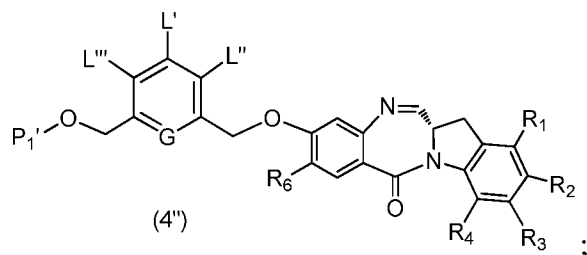
(2) reacting the compound of formula (2'') with a halogenating reagent, a sulfonating reagent or an esterification reagent to form a compound of formula (3''),



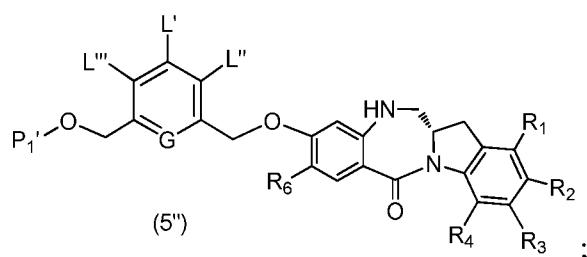
20 (3) reacting the compound of formula (3'') with a monomer compound of the formula (a),



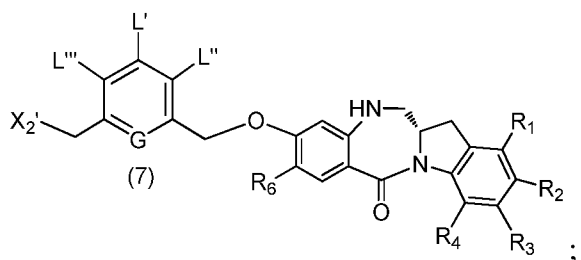
to form a compound of formula (4''),



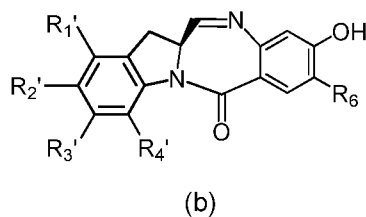
- (4) reacting the compound of formula (4'') with an imine reducing agent to form
5 a compound of formula (5''),



- (5) reacting the compound of formula (5'') with an alcohol deprotecting reagent
and a halogenating reagent to form a compound of formula (7''),

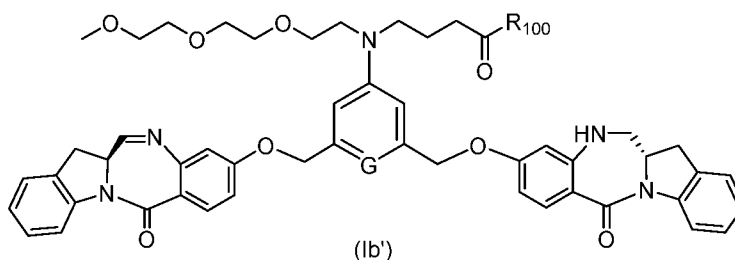


- 10 (6) reacting a compound of formula (7'') with a monomer compound of the
formula (b),



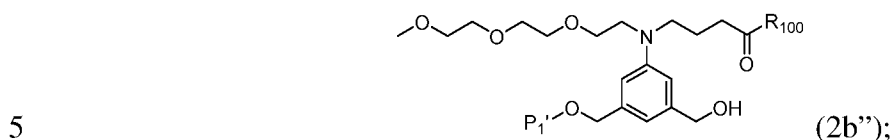
to form the compound of formula (I'), wherein X₂' is -Br or -I; and the remaining
variables are as described above in the ninth embodiment.

- 15 In one embodiment, the method of the tenth embodiment involves preparing a
compound of formula (Ib'),

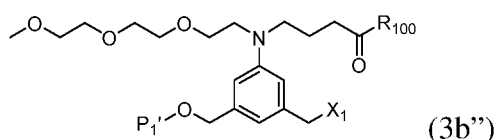


or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:

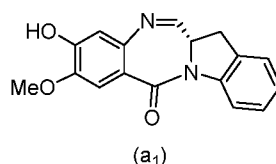
(1) introducing an alcohol protecting group onto one of the primary alcohols of a compound of formula (1b), to form a compound of formula (2b'')



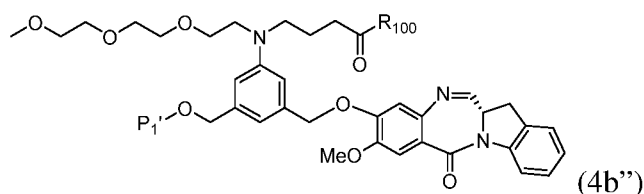
(2) reacting the compound of formula (2b'') with a halogenating reagent or a sulfonating reagent to form a compound of formula (3b'');



10 (3) reacting the compound of formula (3b'') with a monomer compound of the formula (a₁):



to form a compound of formula (4b'');

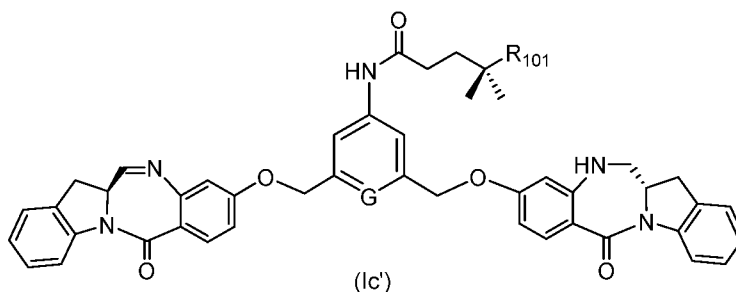


15 (4) reacting the compound of formula (4b'') with an imine reducing agent to form a compound of formula (5b'');

(5) reacting the compound of formula (5b'') with an alcohol deprotecting reagent and a halogenating reagent to form a compound of formula (7b'');

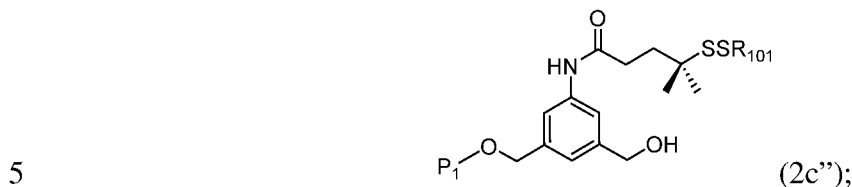
(6) reacting a compound of formula (7b'') with a monomer compound of the formula (a₁), to form the compound of formula (Ib').

20 In another embodiment, the method of the tenth embodiment involves preparing a compound of formula (Ic'),

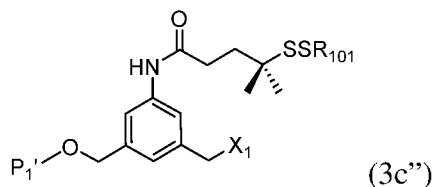


or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:

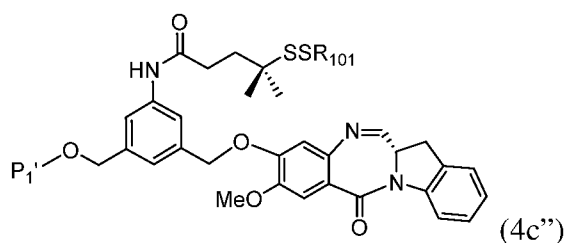
(1) introducing an alcohol protecting group onto one of the primary alcohols of a compound of formula (1c), to form a compound of formula (2c'');



(2) reacting the compound of formula (2c'') with a halogenating reagent or a sulfonating reagent to form a compound of formula (3c'');



10 (3) reacting the compound of formula (3c'') with a monomer compound of the formula (a₁) to form a compound of formula (4c'');

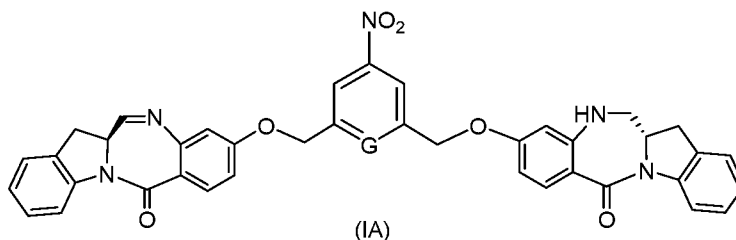


(4) reacting the compound of formula (4c'') with an imine reducing agent to form a compound of formula (5c'');

15 (5) reacting the compound of formula (5c'') with an alcohol deprotecting reagent and a halogenating reagent to form a compound of formula (7c'');

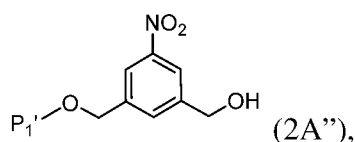
(6) reacting a compound of formula (7c'') with a monomer compound of the formula (a₁), to form the compound of formula (Ic').

In still another embodiment, the method of the tenth embodiment involves preparing a compound of formula (IA),



or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:

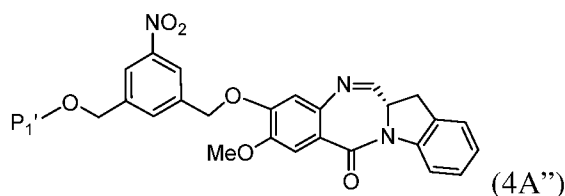
- 5 (1) introducing an alcohol protecting group onto one of the primary alcohols of a compound of formula (1A), to form a compound of formula (2A'');



- (2) reacting the compound of formula (2A'') with a halogenating reagent or a sulfonating reagent to form a compound of formula (3A'');



- 10 (3) reacting the compound of formula (3A'') with a monomer compound of the formula (a₁) to form a compound of formula (4A'');



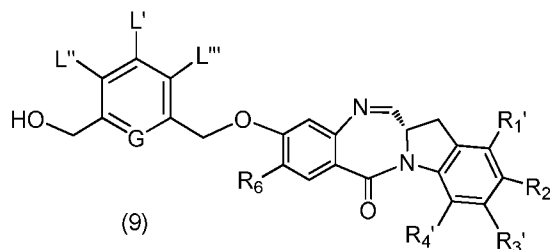
- 15 (4) reacting the compound of formula (4A'') with an imine reducing agent to form a compound of formula (5A'');

- (5) reacting the compound of formula (5A'') with an alcohol deprotecting reagent and a halogenating reagent to form a compound of formula (7A'');

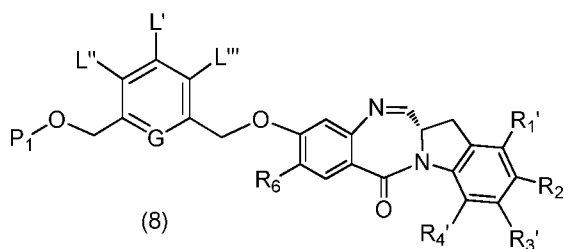
- (6) reacting a compound of formula (7A'') with a monomer compound of the formula (a₁), to form the compound of formula (IA').

- 20 The conditions and reagents for the method of tenth embodiment are as described above in the first, second, third, fourth, seventh and/or eighth embodiment(s) and any specific embodiments described therein.

In an eleventh embodiment, the present invention provides a method of preparing a compound of formula (9),



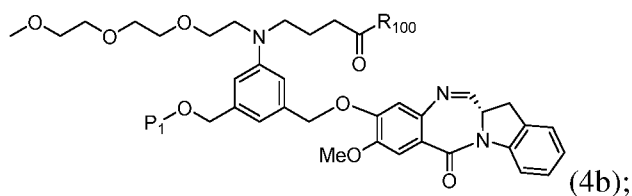
or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula (8),



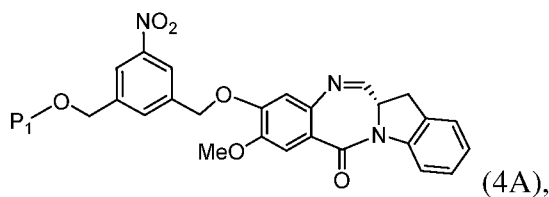
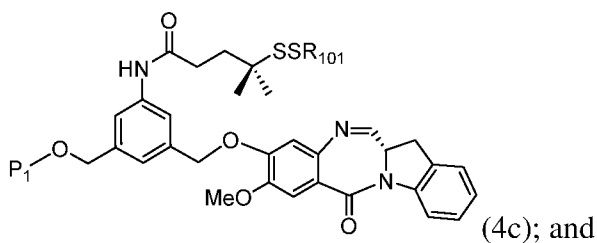
5

with an alcohol deprotecting reagent, wherein the variables are as described above in the third embodiment.

In a specific embodiment, the compound of formula (8) is represented by a formula selected from the the following:



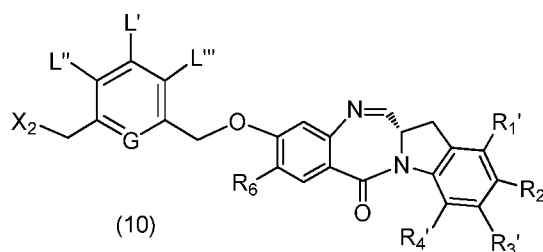
10



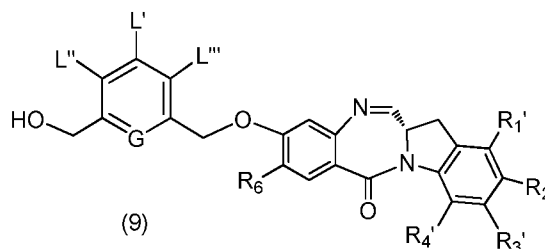
wherein R_{100} is a (C_1-C_3) alkoxy; and R_{101} is a (C_1-C_3) alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl (*e.g.*, 4-nitropyridyl).

In a specific embodiment, the alcohol deprotecting reagent is tetra-n-butylammonium fluoride, tris(dimethylamino)sulfonium difluorotrimethylsilicate, hydrogen fluoride or a solvate thereof, hydrogen fluoride pyridine, silicon tetrafluoride, hexafluorosilicic acid, cesium fluoride, hydrochloric acid, acetic acid, pyridinium p-toluenesulfonate, formic acid, periodic acid, trifluoroacetic acid, or p-toluenesulfonic acid (p-TsOH). More specifically, the alcohol deprotecting reagent is hydrochloric acid or tetra-n-butylammonium fluoride.

In a twelfth embodiment, the present invention provides a method of preparing a compound of formula (10),

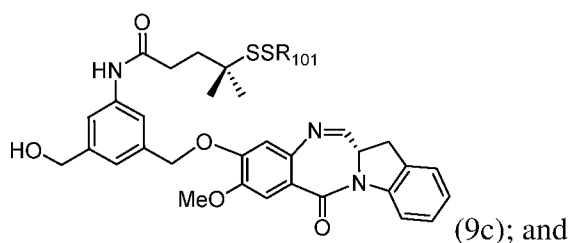
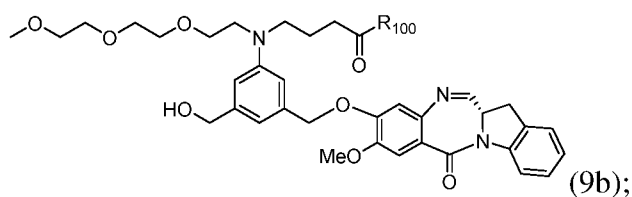


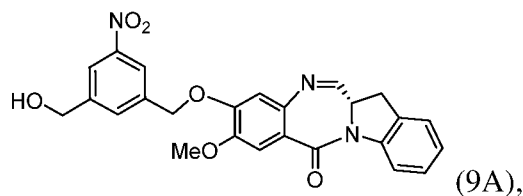
or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting the compound of formula (9) with a halogenating reagent, a sulfonating reagent or an esterification reagent,



wherein X₂ is -Br, -I, -Cl, a sulfonate ester or an activated ester; and the remaining variables are as described above in the eleventh embodiment.

In one embodiment, the compound of formula (9) is represented by a formula selected from the the following:





wherein R_{100} is a (C_1-C_3) alkoxy; and R_{101} is a (C_1-C_3) alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl (*e.g.*, 4-nitropyridyl).

In a specific embodiment, for the methods of the twelfth embodiment, X_2 is $-Br$,
 5 $-I$ or a sulfonate ester.

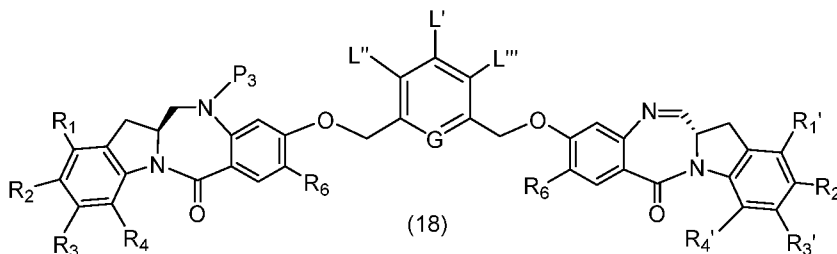
In a specific embodiment, X_2 is mesylate, tosylate, brosylate, or triflate.
 Preferably, X_2 is mesylate.

In another specific embodiment, the method described in the sixth embodiment
 comprises reacting the compound of formula (9) with a halogenating reagent.
 10 Exemplary halogenating reagent include, but are not limited to, bromine, hydrobromic
 acid, carbon tetrabromide, phosphorus tribromide, potassium bromide, hydroiodic acid,
 iodine, carbon tetraiodide, phosphorus triiodide, sodium iodide, or potassium iodide.

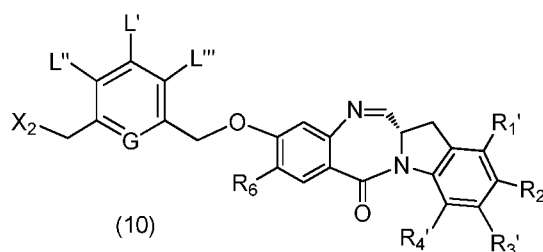
In yet another specific embodiment, the method of the sixth embodiment
 comprises reacting the compound of formula (9) with a sulfonating reagent. Preferably,
 15 the sulfonating reagent is a sulfonic anhydride, such as methanesulfonic anhydride, or a
 sulfonic chloride, such as methanesulfonyl chloride ($MsCl$).

In one embodiment, the reaction between the compound of formula (9) and the
 sulfonating reagent is carried out in the presence of a base. Preferably, the base is a non-
 nucleophilic base. Exemplary non-nucleophilic base include, but are not limited to,
 20 triethylamine, imidazole, triethylamine, diisopropylethylamine, pyridine, 2,6-lutidine,
 dimethylformamide, 1,8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undec-7-ene (DBU), or
 tetramethylpiperidine. Preferably, the base is triethylamine or diisopropylethylamine.

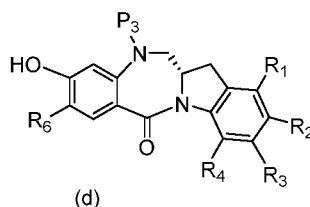
In a thirteenth embodiment, the present invention provides a method of preparing
 a compound of formula (18),



or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula (10)



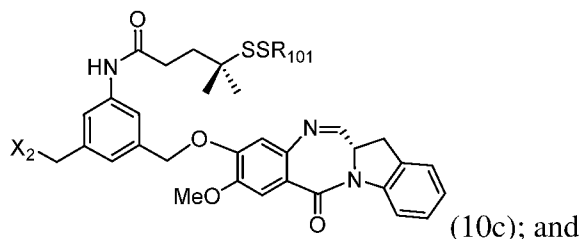
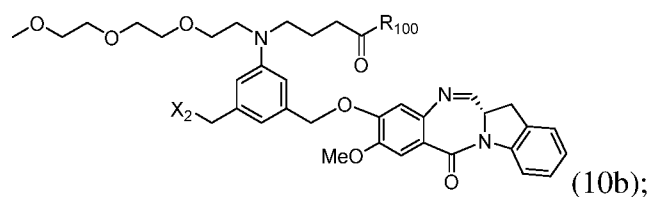
with a monomer compound of the formula (d),

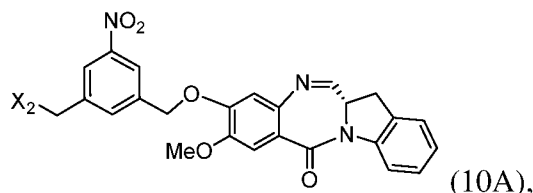


- 5 wherein X_2 is a leaving group selected from the group consisting of: -Br, -I, -Cl, a sulfonate ester and an activated ester; P_3 is H or P_2 ; P_2 is an amine protecting group; R_1' , R_2' , R_3' , and R_4' are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R_c$, halogen, guanidinium
- 10 $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R''; and the remaining variables are as describe above in the twelveth embodiment. In one embodiment, X_2 is -Br, -I, or a sulfonate ester.

In a specific embodiment, the compound of formula (10) is represented by a

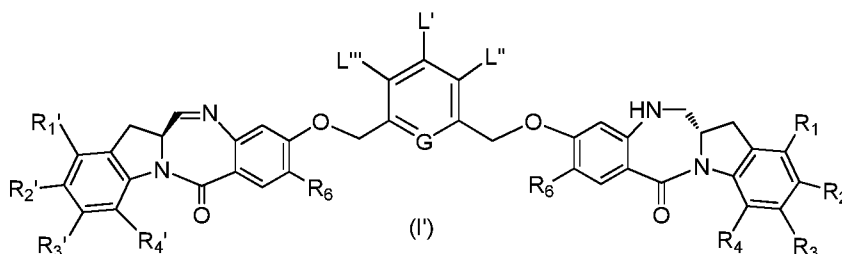
15 formula selected from the the following:



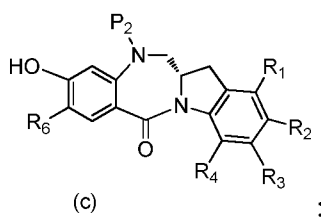


wherein R_{100} is a (C_1-C_3) alkoxy; and R_{101} is a (C_1-C_3) alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl (*e.g.*, 4-nitropyridyl).

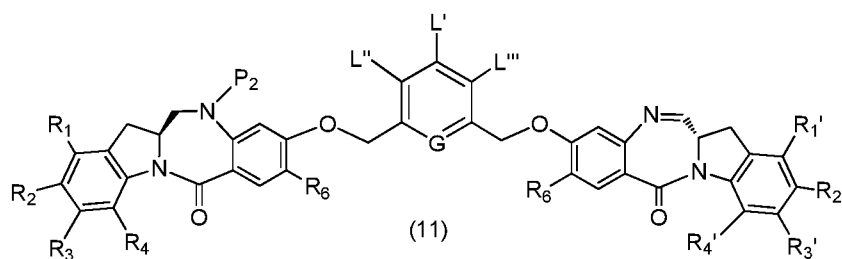
In a specific embodiment, P_3 is H and the compound of (10) is reacted with the
5 monomer compound of (d) to form a compound of (I'):



In another specific embodiment, P_3 is P_2 ; the monomer compound is represented by formula (c):



10 and the compound of formula (18) is represented by formula (11),



Any suitable amine protecting group can be used in the method described above.

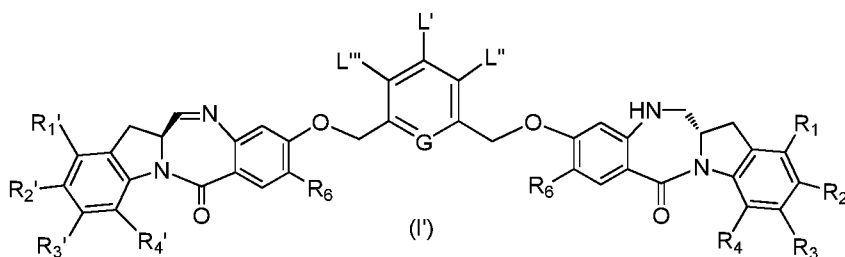
In one embodiment, the amine protecting group is 2-trimethylsilylethyl, (2-phenyl-2-trimethylsilyl)ethyl, triisopropylsiloxy, 2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxymethyl,
15 allyloxycarbonyl, 9-fluorenylmethoxycarbonyl, 2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxycarbonyl, or 2,2,2-trichloroethoxycarbonyl.

In a specific embodiment, the compound of formula (10) is reacted with the monomer compound of formula (d) or (c) in the presence of a base. Examples of the

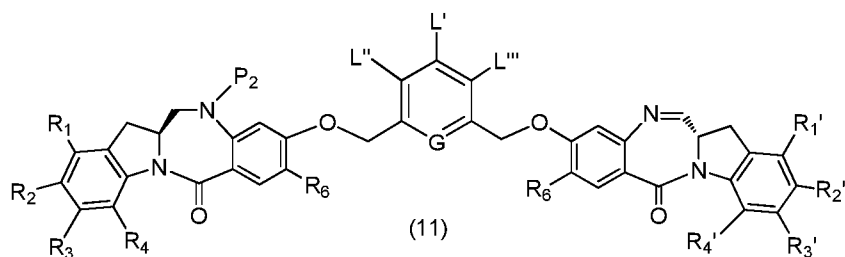
base include, but are not limited to sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, cesium carbonate, sodium hydride, or potassium hydride.

Any suitable solvents can be used in the reaction described above. In one embodiment, the solvent is DMF.

- 5 In a fourteenth embodiment, the present invention provides a method of preparing a compound of formula (I'),



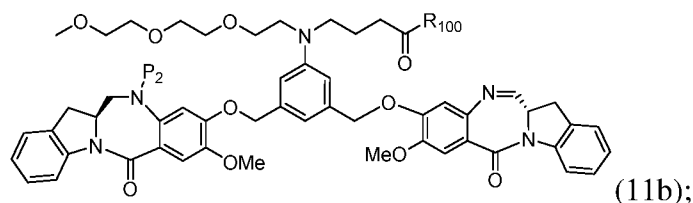
or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula (11),



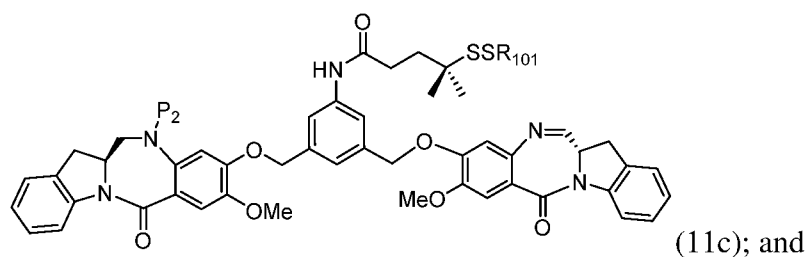
10

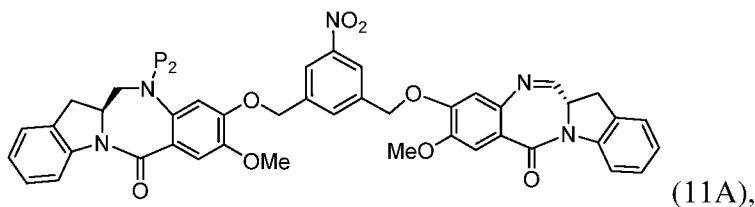
with an amine deprotecting reagent, wherein the variables are as described above in the thirteenth embodiment.

In a specific embodiment, the compound of formula (11) is represented by a formula selected from the the following:



15

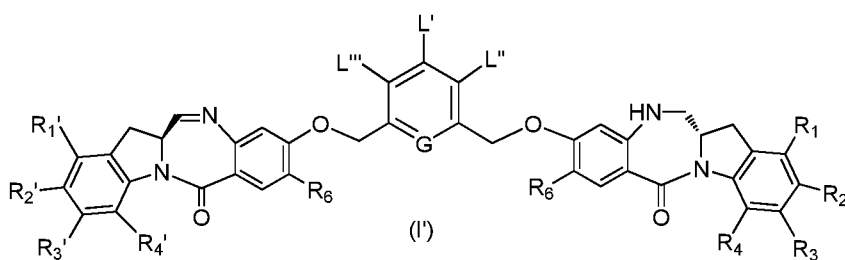




wherein R₁₀₀ is a (C₁-C₃)alkoxy; and R₁₀₁ is a (C₁-C₃)alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl (*e.g.*, 4-nitropyridyl).

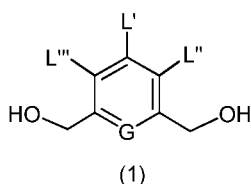
Any suitable amine deprotecting reagent can be used in the method described above. In one embodiment, the amine deprotecting reagent is tetra-*n*-butylammonium fluoride, acetic acid, hydrogen fluoride pyridine, cesium fluoride, piperidine, morpholine, or trifluoroacetic acid.

In a fifteenth embodiment, the present invention provides a method of preparing a compound of formula (I'),

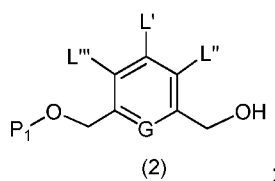


or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:

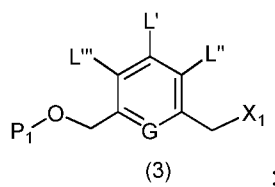
(1) introducing an alcohol protecting group onto one of the primary alcohols of the compound of formula (1),



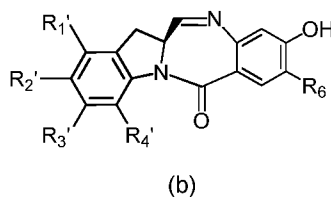
to form a compound of formula (2),



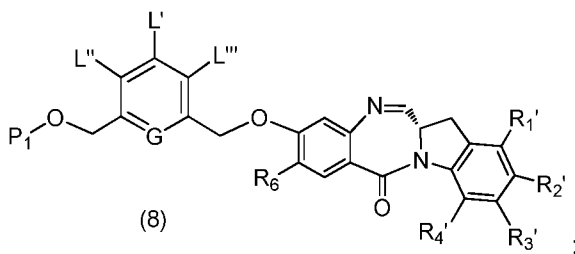
(2) reacting a halogenating reagent, a sulfonating reagent or an esterification reagent with the compound of formula (2) to form a compound of formula (3),



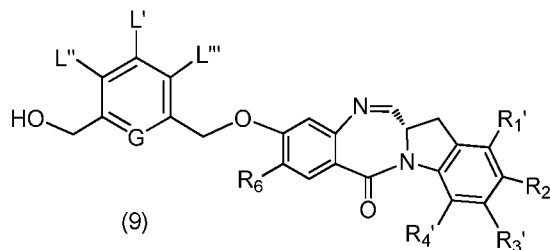
(3) reacting the compound of formula (3) with a monomer compound of the formula (b),



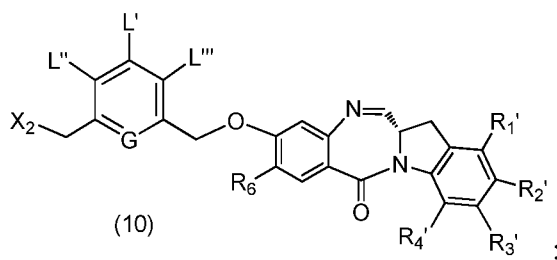
5 to form a compound of formula (8),



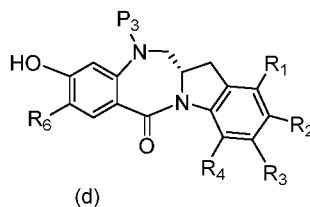
(4) reacting the compound of formula (8) with an alcohol deprotecting reagent to form a compound of formula (9),



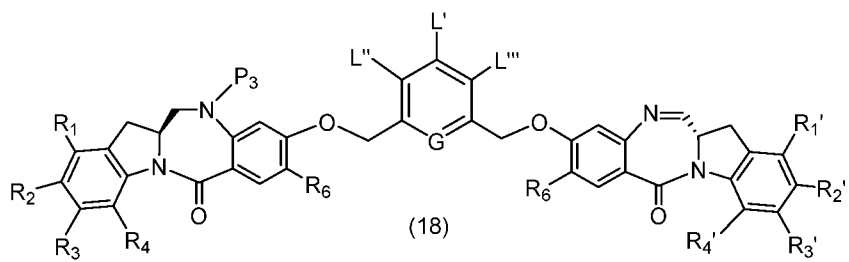
10 (5) reacting a second halogenating reagent, a second sulfonating reagent or a second esterification reagent with the compound of formula (9) to form a compound of formula (10),



15 (6) reacting the compound of formula (10) with a monomer compound of the formula (d)

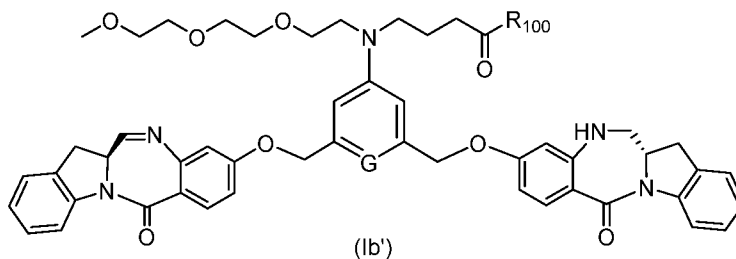


to form a compound of formula (18),



- (7) when P_3 is an amine protecting group; reacting the compound of formula (18) with an amine deprotecting reagent to form the compound of formula (I'), wherein the variables are as described above in the fourteenth embodiment. In one embodiment, X_1 and X_2 are each independently $-Br$, $-I$ or a sulfonate ester.

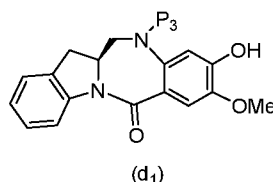
In one embodiment, the method of the fifteenth embodiment involves preparing a compound of formula (Ib'),



or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:

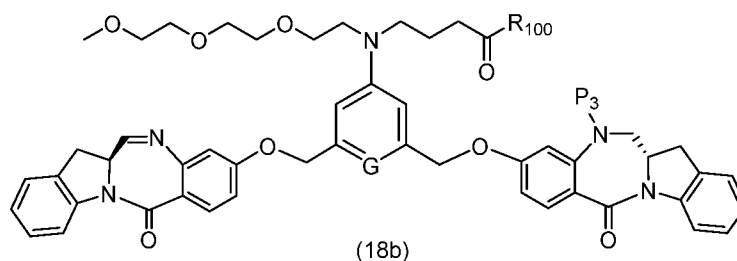
- (1) introducing an alcohol protecting group onto one of the primary alcohols of the compound of formula (1b), to form a compound of formula (2b);
- (2) reacting a halogenating reagent or a sulfonating reagent with the compound of formula (2b) to form a compound of formula (3b);
- (3) reacting the compound of formula (3b) with a monomer compound of the formula (b₁), to form a compound of formula (4b);
- (4) reacting the compound of formula (4b) with an alcohol deprotecting reagent to form a compound of formula (9b);
- (5) reacting a second halogenating reagent or a second sulfonating reagent with the compound of formula (9b) to form a compound of formula (10b);

(6) reacting the compound of formula (10b) with a monomer compound of the formula (d₁):



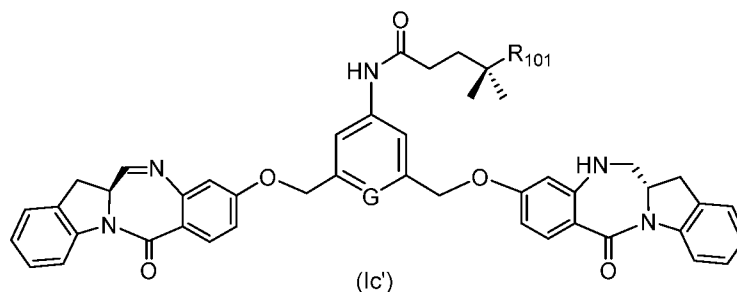
to form a compound of formula (18b);

5 (7) when P₃ is an amine protecting group; reacting the compound of formula (18b):



with an amine deprotecting reagent to form the compound of formula (Ib'),

10 In another embodiment, the method of the fifteenth embodiment involves preparing a compound of formula (Ic'),

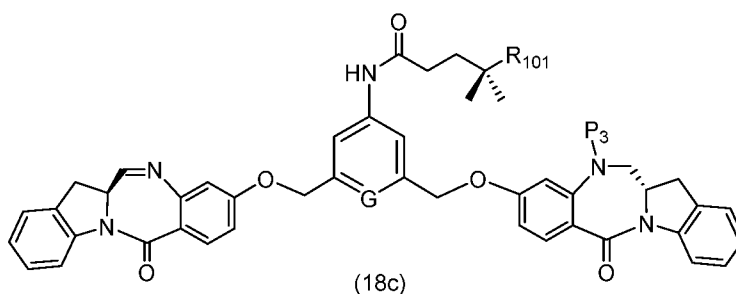


or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:

- (1) introducing an alcohol protecting group onto one of the primary alcohols of the compound of formula (1c), to form a compound of formula (2c);
- 15 (2) reacting a halogenating reagent or a sulfonating reagent with the compound of formula (2c) to form a compound of formula (3c);
- (3) reacting the compound of formula (3b) with a monomer compound of the formula (b₁), to form a compound of formula (4c);
- (4) reacting the compound of formula (4c) with an alcohol deprotecting reagent
- 20 to form a compound of formula (9c);
- (5) reacting a second halogenating reagent or a second sulfonating reagent with the compound of formula (9c) to form a compound of formula (10c);

(6) reacting the compound of formula (10c) with a monomer compound of the formula (d₁) to form a compound of formula (18c);

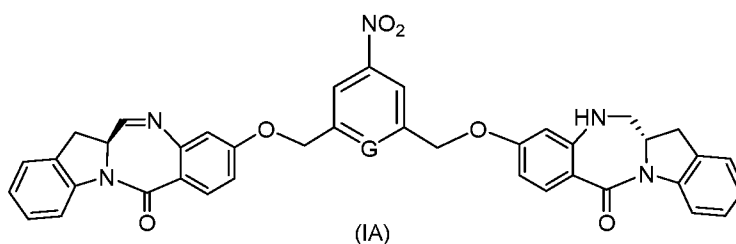
(7) when P₃ is an amine protecting group; reacting the compound of formula (18c):



5

with an amine deprotecting reagent to form the compound of formula (Ic').

In still another embodiment, the method of the fifteenth embodiment involves preparing a compound of formula (IA),



10 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:

(1) introducing an alcohol protecting group onto one of the primary alcohols of the compound of formula (1A), to form a compound of formula (2A);

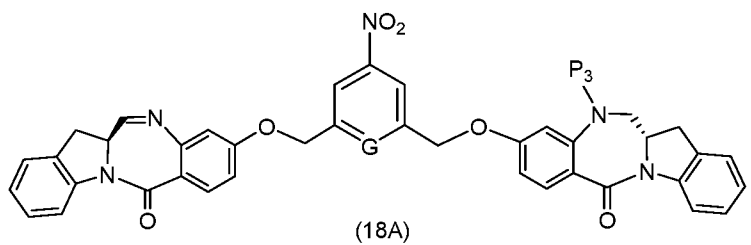
(2) reacting a halogenating reagent or a sulfonating reagent with the compound of formula (2A) to form a compound of formula (3A);

15 (3) reacting the compound of formula (3A) with a monomer compound of the formula (b₁), to form a compound of formula (4A);

(4) reacting the compound of formula (4A) with an alcohol deprotecting reagent to form a compound of formula (9A);

(5) reacting a second halogenating reagent or a second sulfonating reagent with the compound of formula (9A) to form a compound of formula (10A);

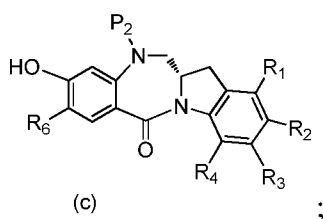
20 (6) reacting the compound of formula (10A) with a monomer compound of the formula (d₁) to form a compound of formula (18A):



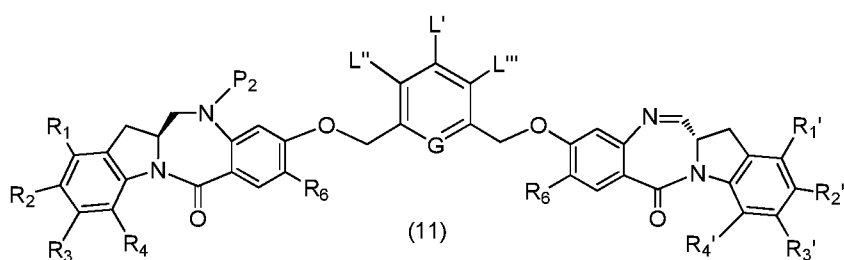
(7) when P_3 is an amine protecting group; reacting the compound of formula (18A) with an amine deprotecting reagent to form the compound of formula (IA').

In one embodiment, P_3 is H and the compound of (10) is reacted with the
5 monomer compound of (d) to form a compound of (I').

In another embodiment, P_3 is P_2 ; the monomer compound is represented by formula (c):

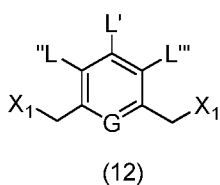


and the compound of formula (18) is represented by formula (11),

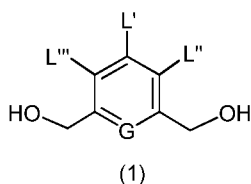


wherein P_2 is an amine protecting group.

In a sixteenth embodiment, the present invention provides a method of preparing a compound of formula (12),

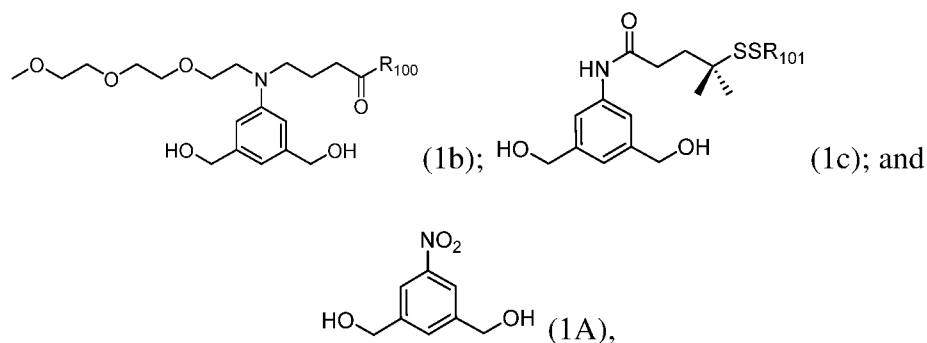


15 or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula (1),



with a halogenating reagent, a sulfonating reagent or an esterification reagent, wherein X_1 is -Br, -I, -Cl, a sulfonate ester or an activated ester; and the remaining variables are as described above in the first embodiment. In one embodiment, X_1 is -Br, -I, or a sulfonate ester.

- 5 In one embodiment, the compound of formula (1) is represented by a formula selected from the the following:



- wherein R_{100} is a (C_1-C_3) alkoxy; and R_{101} is a (C_1-C_3) alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl (*e.g.*,
10 4-nitropyridyl).

In a specific embodiment, X_1 is -Br or -I. In another specific embodiment, X_1 is -Cl.

In another specific embodiment, the halogenating reagent reacts with the primary alcohols of the compound of formula (1) in the presence of an alcohol activating agent.

- 15 In one embodiment, the alcohol activating agent is thionyl chloride.

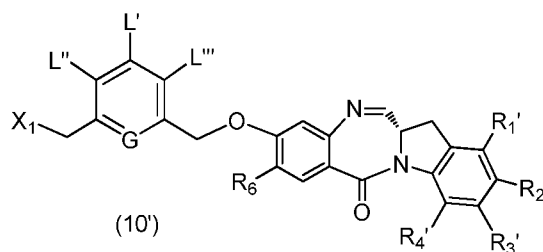
In another specific embodiment, halogenating reagent is lithium bromide, sodium bromide, potassium bromide, potassium iodide, or sodium iodide. In another specific embodiment, the halogenating reagent is carbon tetrachloride/triphenylphosphine, methanesulfonyl (mesyl) chloride/lithium chloride, or methanesulfonyl (mesyl)

- 20 chloride/pyridine.

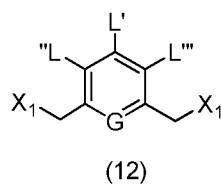
In yet another specific embodiment, the method comprises reacting the compound of formula (1) with LiBr in the presence of thionyl chloride.

Any suitable solvents can be used in the method described above. Exemplary solvents include, but are not limited to, DMF, CH_2Cl_2 , THF, dichloroethane, etc.

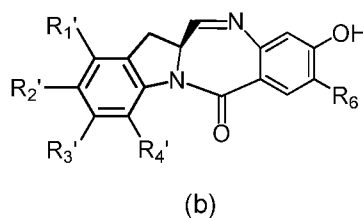
- 25 In a seventeenth embodiment, the present invention provides a method of preparing a compound of formula (10'),



or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula (12),



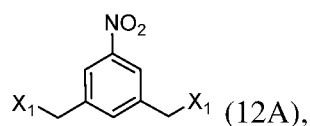
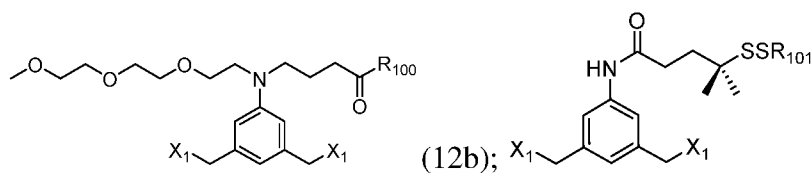
with a monomer compound of the formula (b),



5

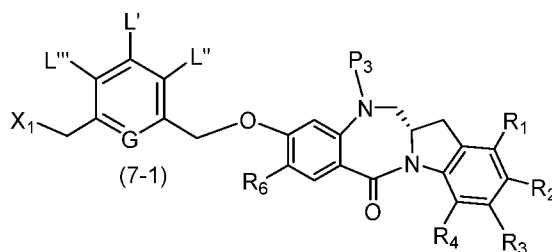
wherein L', L'', L''', X₁, G are as described above in the seventeenth embodiment; and R₁', R₂', R₃', R₄' and R₆ are as describe above in the eleventh embodiment. In one embodiment, X₁ is -Br, -I, or a sulfonate ester.

10 In a specific embodiment, the compound of formula (12) is represented by a formula selected from the the following:



wherein R₁₀₀ is a (C₁-C₃)alkoxy; and R₁₀₁ is a (C₁-C₃)alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl (*e.g.*, 4-nitropyridyl).

15 Also provided in the seventeenth embodiment is a method of preparing a compound of formula (7-1)



or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula (12) with a monomer compound of formula (d), wherein X_1 is -Br, -I, -Cl, a sulfonate ester or an activated ester; P_3 is H or an amine protecting group; and R_{100} is a (C_1-C_3) alkoxy.

5 In a specific embodiment, the compound of formula (12) is represented by formula (12b), (12c) or (12A).

In a specific embodiment, for formula (7-1'), P_3 is H. In another specific embodiment, P_3 is an amine protecting group as described herein.

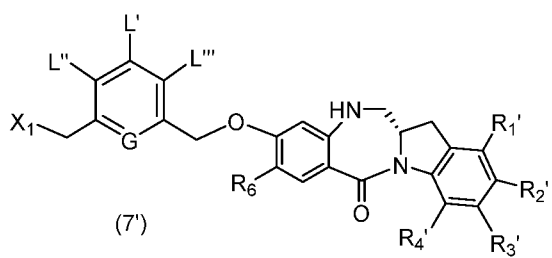
10 In a specific embodiment, for the methods of the seventeenth embodiment, the compound of formula (12) is reacted with the monomer compound of formula (b) in the presence of a base. Examples of suitable base include, but are not limited to, sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, cesium carbonate, sodium hydride, or potassium hydride. In one embodiment, the base is potassium carbonate.

15 In another specific embodiment, the compound of formula (12d) or (12A) is reacted with the monomer compound of formula (d) in the presence of a base. Examples of suitable base include, but are not limited to, sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, cesium carbonate, sodium hydride, or potassium hydride. In one embodiment, the base is potassium carbonate.

20 For the methods of the seventeenth embodiment, any suitable solvents can be used. In one embodiment, the solvent is DMF.

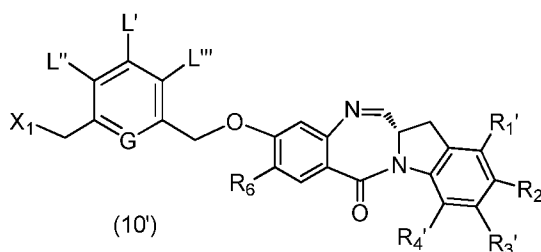
In another specific embodiment, excess molar equivalent of the compound of formula (12) relative to the monomer compound of formula (b) is used in the reaction.

In an eighteenth embodiment, the present invention provides a method of preparing a compound of formula (7'),



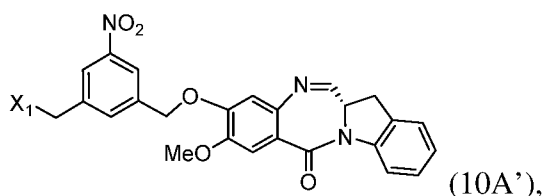
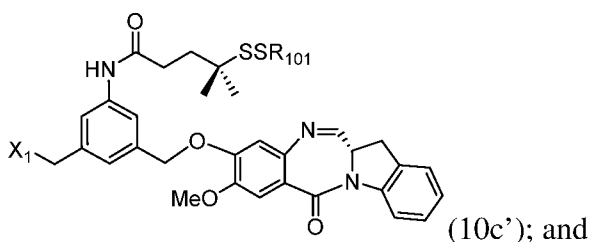
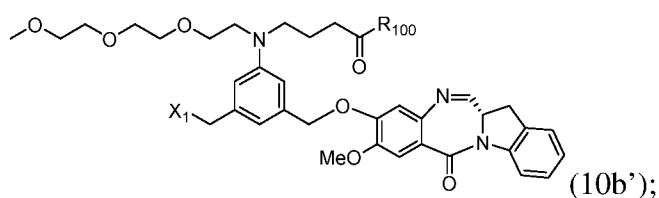
25

or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula (10'),



or a salt thereof, with an imine reducing agent, wherein X_1 is -Br, -I, -Cl, a sulfonate ester or an activated ester and the remaining variables are the same as described above in
5 the eleventh embodiment. In one embodiment, X_1 is -Br, -I, or a sulfonate ester.

In a specific embodiment, a compound of formula (10') is represented by one of the following formulas:



10

In a specific embodiment, for methods of the eighteenth embodiment, X_1 is a sulfonate ester. Preferably, X_1 is mesylate.

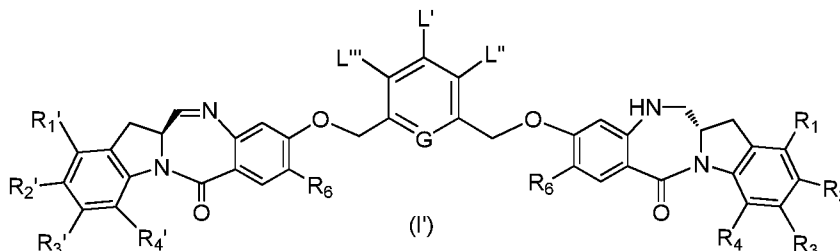
In one embodiment, for methods of the eighteenth embodiment, the imine
15 reducing reagent is a hydride reducing reagent. Alternatively, the imine reducing reagent is sodium borohydride, sodium triacetoxy borohydride, sodium cyanoborohydride, lithium aluminum hydride, hydrogen gas, ammonium formate, borane, 9-borabicyclo[3.3.1]nonane (9-BBN), diisobutylaluminium hydride (DIBAL), lithium borohydride (LiBH_4), potassium borohydride (KBH_4), or sodium bis(2-

methoxyethoxy)aluminumhydride (Red-Al). In a preferred embodiment, the imine reducing reagent is sodium triacetoxo borohydride ($\text{NaBH}(\text{OAc})_3$).

Any suitable solvents can be used in the methods of the eighteenth embodiment.

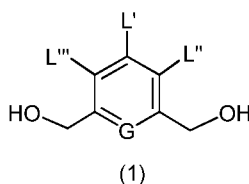
In one embodiment, the solvent is dichloroethane.

- 5 In a nineteenth embodiment, the present invention provides a method of preparing a compound of formula (I'),

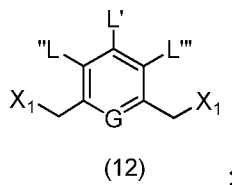


or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:

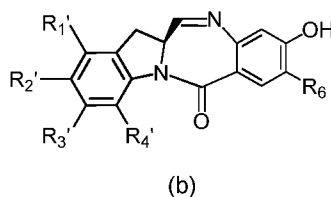
- (1) reacting a halogenating reagent, a sulfonating reagent or an esterification
10 reagent with a compound of formula (1),



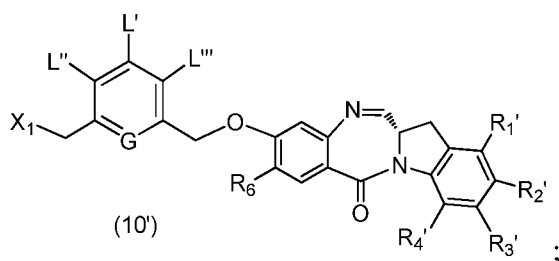
to form a compound of formula (12),



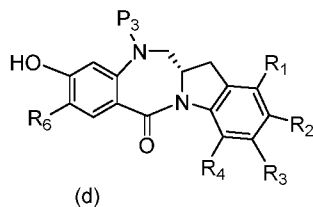
- (2) reacting the compound of formula (12) with a monomer compound of the
15 formula (b),



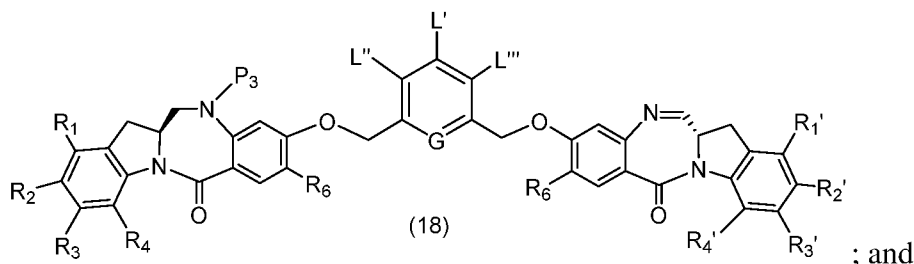
to form a compound of a formula (10'),



(3) reacting the compound of formula (10') with a monomer compound of the formula (d),

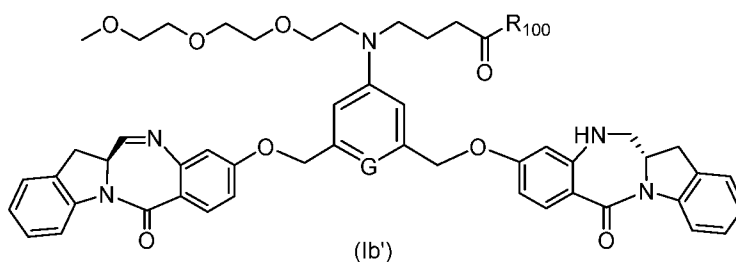


5 to form a compound of formula (18),



(4) when P_3 is an amine protecting group, reacting the compound of formula (18) with an amine deprotecting reagent to form the compound of formula (I'); wherein X_1 is $-\text{Br}$, $-\text{I}$, $-\text{Cl}$, a sulfonate ester or an activated ester; P_3 is H or an amine protecting group, and the remaining variables are the same as described in the eleventh embodiment. In one embodiment, X_1 is $-\text{Br}$, $-\text{I}$, or a sulfonate ester.

In one embodiment, the method of the nineteenth embodiment involves preparing a compound of formula (Ib'),



15 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:

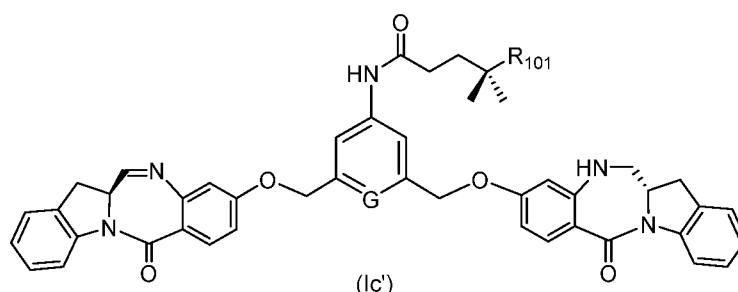
(1) reacting a halogenating reagent or a sulfonating reagent with a compound of formula (1b) to form a compound of formula (12b);

(2) reacting the compound of formula (12b) with a monomer compound of the formula (b₁) to form a compound of a formula (10b');;

(3) reacting the compound of formula (10b') with a monomer compound of the formula (d₁) to form a compound of formula (18b); and

5 (4) when P₃ is an amine protecting group, reacting the compound of formula (18b) with an amine deprotecting reagent to form the compound of formula (Ib').

In another embodiment, the method of the nineteenth embodiment involves preparing a compound of formula (Ic'),



10 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:

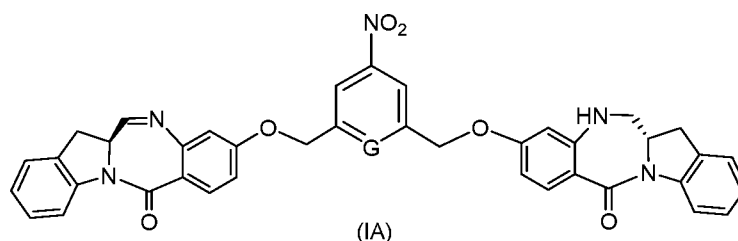
(1) reacting a halogenating reagent or a sulfonating reagent with a compound of formula (1c) to form a compound of formula (12c);

15 (2) reacting the compound of formula (12c) with a monomer compound of the formula (b₁) to form a compound of a formula (10c');

(3) reacting the compound of formula (10c') with a monomer compound of the formula (d₁) to form a compound of formula (18c); and

(4) when P₃ is an amine protecting group, reacting the compound of formula (18c) with an amine deprotecting reagent to form the compound of formula (Ic').

20 In still another embodiment, the method of the nineteenth embodiment involves preparing a compound of formula (IA),



or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:

(1) reacting a halogenating reagent or a sulfonating reagent with a compound of formula (1A) to form a compound of formula (12A);

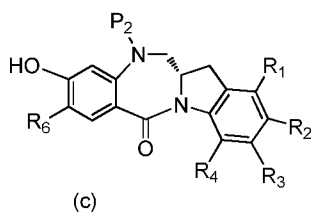
(2) reacting the compound of formula (12A) with a monomer compound of the formula (b₁) to form a compound of a formula (10A');;

5 (3) reacting the compound of formula (10A') with a monomer compound of the formula (d₁) to form a compound of formula (18A); and

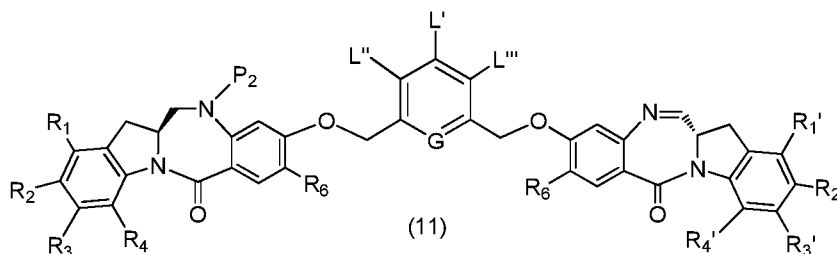
(4) when P₃ is an amine protecting group, reacting the compound of formula (18A) with an amine deprotecting reagent to form the compound of formula (IA').

10 In one embodiment, for methods of the nineteenth embodiment, P₃ is H and the compound of (10') is reacted with the monomer compound of (d) to form a compound of (I').

In another embodiment, for methods of the nineteenth embodiment, P₃ is P₂; the monomer compound is represented by formula (c):



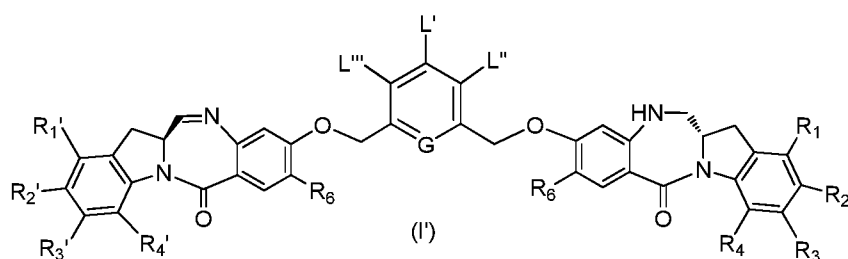
15 and the compound of formula (18) is represented by formula (11),



wherein P₂ is an amine protecting group.

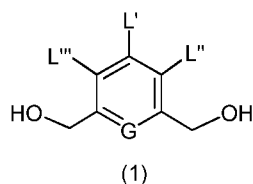
The conditions and reagents for the method of nineteenth embodiment are as described above in the sixteenth, seventeenth, thirteenth and/or fourteenth
20 embodiment(s) and any specific embodiments described therein.

In a twentieth embodiment, the present invention provides a method of preparing a compound of formula (I'),



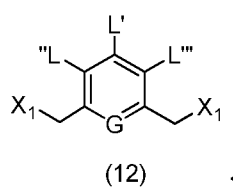
or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:

(1) reacting a halogenating reagent, a sulfonating reagent or an esterification reagent with a compound of formula (1),

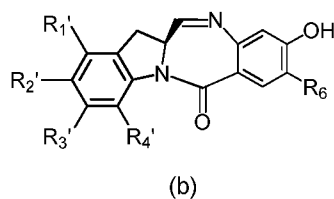


5

to form a compound of formula (12),

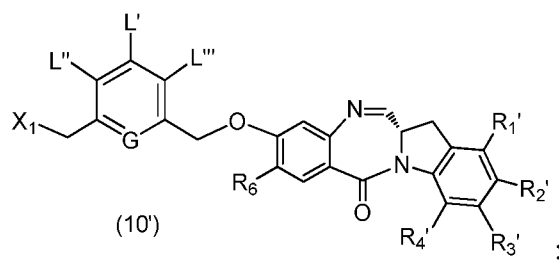


(2) reacting the compound of formula (12) with a monomer compound of the formula (b),

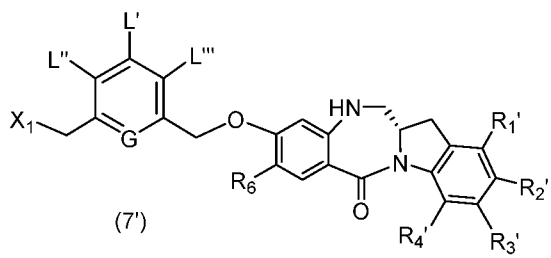


10

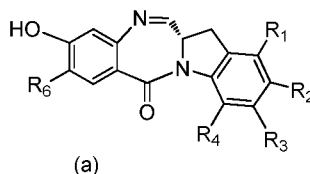
to form a compound of a formula (10'),



(3) reacting the compound (10') with an imine reducing reagent to form a compound (7'),

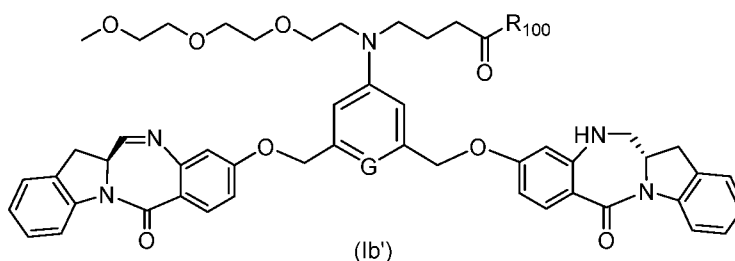


(4) reacting the compound of formula (7') with a monomer compound of the formula (a),



- 5 to form a compound of formula (I'), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein X₁ is -Br, -I, -Cl, a sulfonate ester or an activated ester and the remaining variables are the same as described above in the eleventh embodiment. In one embodiment, X₁ is -Br, -I, or a sulfonate ester.

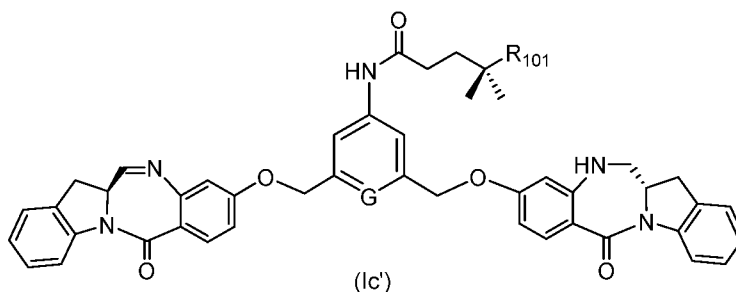
In one embodiment, the method of the twentieth embodiment involves preparing
10 a compound of formula (Ib'),



or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:

- (1) reacting a halogenating reagent or a sulfonating reagent with a compound of formula (1b) to form a compound of formula (12b);
- 15 (2) reacting the compound of formula (12b) with a monomer compound of the formula (a₁) to form a compound of a formula (10b');
 - (3) reacting the compound (10b') with an imine reducing reagent to form a compound (7b');
 - (4) reacting the compound of formula (7b') with a monomer compound of the
20 formula (a₁) to form a compound of formula (Ib').

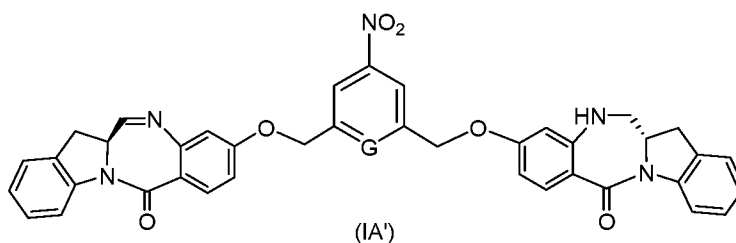
In another embodiment, the method of the twentieth embodiment involves preparing a compound of formula (Ic'),



or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:

- (1) reacting a halogenating reagent or a sulfonating reagent with a compound of formula (1c) to form a compound of formula (12c);
- 5 (2) reacting the compound of formula (12c) with a monomer compound of the formula (a₁) to form a compound of a formula (10c');
 - (3) reacting the compound (10c') with an imine reducing reagent to form a compound (7c');
 - (4) reacting the compound of formula (7c') with a monomer compound of the
- 10 formula (a₁) to form a compound of formula (Ic').

In still another embodiment, the method of the twentieth embodiment involves preparing a compound of formula (IA'),



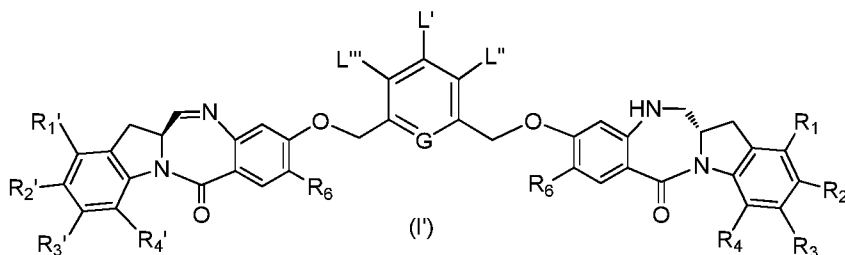
or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:

- 15 (1) reacting a halogenating reagent or a sulfonating reagent with a compound of formula (1A) to form a compound of formula (12A);
 - (2) reacting the compound of formula (12A) with a monomer compound of the formula (a₁) to form a compound of a formula (10A');
 - (3) reacting the compound (10A') with an imine reducing reagent to form a
- 20 compound (7A');
 - (4) reacting the compound of formula (7A') with a monomer compound of the formula (a₁) to form a compound of formula (IA').

In a specific embodiment, X₁ is mesylate.

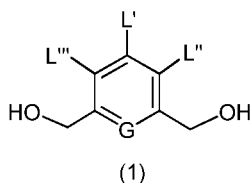
The conditions and reagents for the method of twentieth embodiment are as described above in the sixteenth, seventeenth, eighteenth and/or eighth embodiment(s) and any specific embodiments described therein.

In a twenty-first embodiment, the present invention provides a method of
5 preparing a compound of formula (I'),



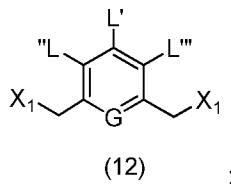
or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:

(1) reacting a halogenating reagent, a sulfonating reagent or an esterification reagent with a compound of formula (1),

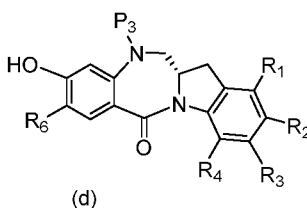


10

to form a compound of formula (12),

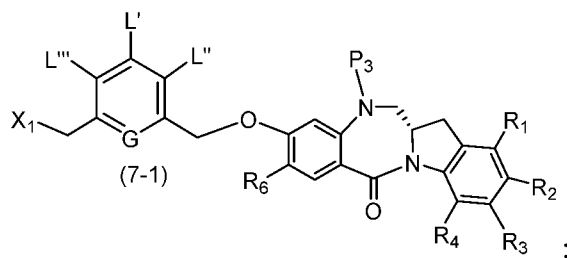


(2) reacting the compound of formula (12) with a monomer compound of the formula (d),

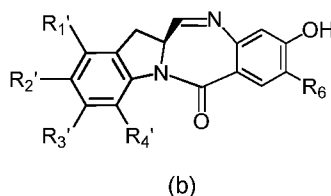


15

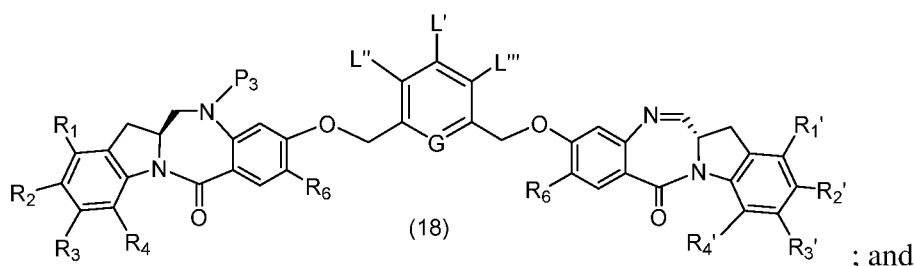
to form a compound of a formula (7-1),



(3) reacting the compound of formula (7-1) with a monomer compound of the formula (b),

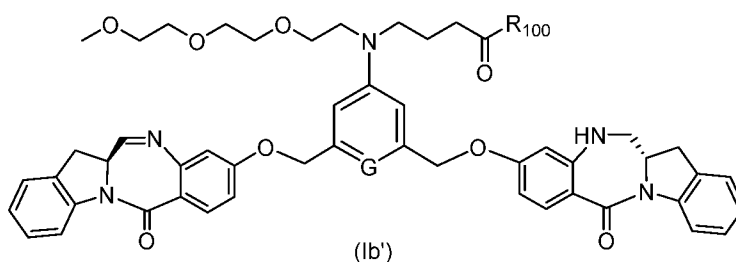


5 to form a compound of formula (18),



(4) when P₃ is an amine protecting group, reacting the compound of formula (18) with an amine deprotecting reagent to form the compound of formula (I'); wherein X₁ is -Br, -I, -Cl, a sulfonate ester or an activated ester; P₃ is H or an amine protecting group, and the remaining variables are the same as described above in the eleventh embodiment. In one embodiment, X₁ is -Br, -I, or a sulfonate ester.

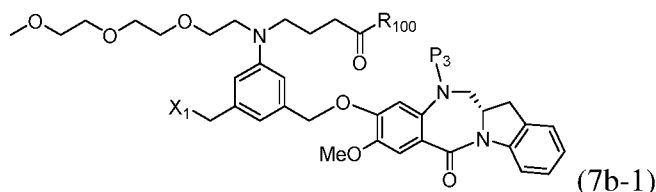
In one embodiment, the method of the twenty-first embodiment involves preparing a compound of formula (Ib'),



15 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:

(1) reacting a halogenating reagent or a sulfonating reagent with a compound of formula (1b) to form a compound of formula (12b);

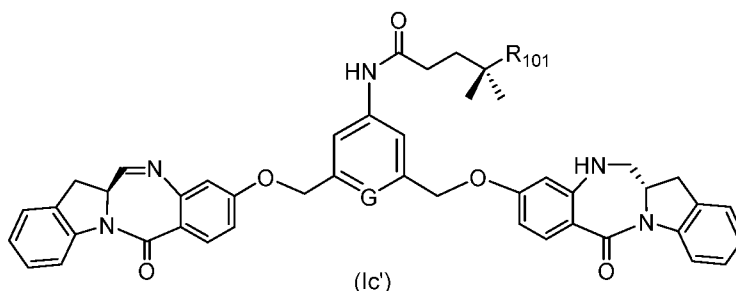
(2) reacting the compound of formula (12b) with a monomer compound of the formula (d₁) to form a compound of a formula (7b-1);



(3) reacting the compound of formula (7b-1) with a monomer compound of the formula (a₁) to form a compound of formula (18b); and

(4) when P₃ is an amine protecting group, reacting the compound of formula (18b) with an amine deprotecting reagent to form the compound of formula (Ib').

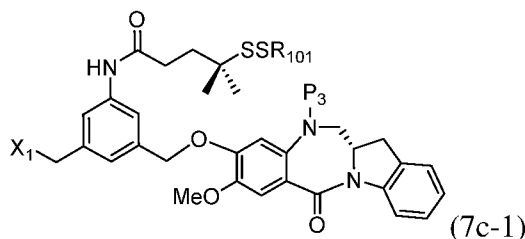
In another embodiment, the method of the twenty-first embodiment involves preparing a compound of formula (Ic'),



or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:

(1) reacting a halogenating reagent or a sulfonating reagent with a compound of formula (1c) to form a compound of formula (12c);

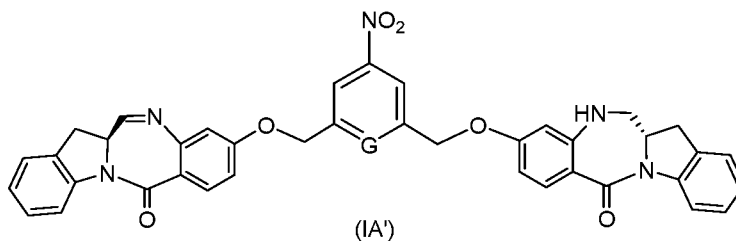
(2) reacting the compound of formula (12c) with a monomer compound of the formula (d₁) to form a compound of a formula (7c-1);



(3) reacting the compound of formula (7c-1) with a monomer compound of the formula (a₁) to form a compound of formula (18c); and

(4) when P₃ is an amine protecting group, reacting the compound of formula (18c) with an amine deprotecting reagent to form the compound of formula (Ic').

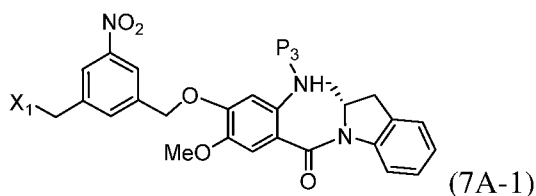
In still another embodiment, the method of the twenty-first embodiment involves preparing a compound of formula (IA'),



or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:

(1) reacting a halogenating reagent or a sulfonating reagent with a compound of formula (1A) to form a compound of formula (12A);

5 (2) reacting the compound of formula (12A) with a monomer compound of the formula (d₁) to form a compound of a formula (7A-1);



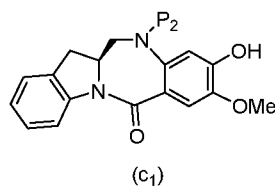
(3) reacting the compound of formula (7A-1) with a monomer compound of the formula (a₁) to form a compound of formula (18A); and

10 (4) when P₃ is an amine protecting group, reacting the compound of formula (18A) with an amine deprotecting reagent to form the compound of formula (IA').

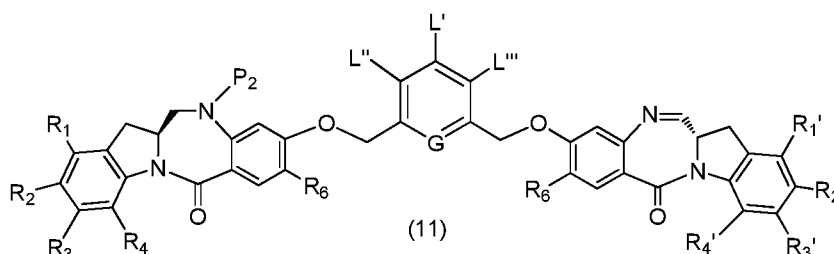
In one embodiment, for methods of the twenty-first embodiment, P₃ is H

In one embodiment, P₃ is H and the compound of (7-1) is reacted with the monomer compound of (b) to form a compound of (I').

15 In another embodiment, P₃ is P₂; the monomer compound is represented by formula (c):



and the compound of formula (18) is represented by formula (11),

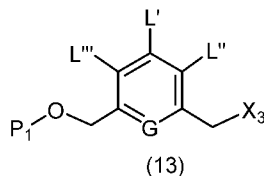


wherein P₂ is an amine protecting group.

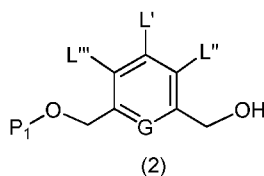
In a specific embodiment, X₁ is mesylate.

The conditions and reagents for the methods of twenty-first embodiment are as described above in the sixteenth, seventeenth, eighteenth, eighth and/or fourteenth
5 embodiment(s) and any specific embodiments described therein.

In a twenty-second embodiment, the present invention provides a method of preparing a compound of formula (13),

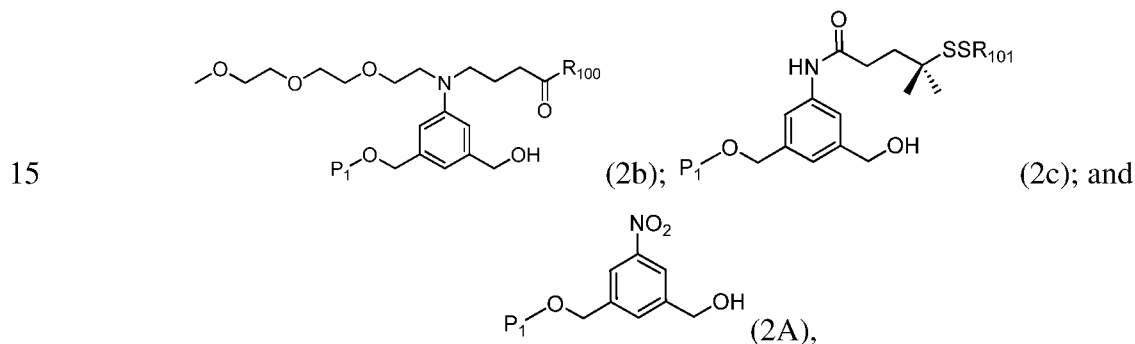


or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a chlorinating reagent with a
10 compound of formula (2),



wherein X₃ is Cl, and the remaining variables are the same as described above.

In a specific embodiment, the compound of formula (2) is selected from the group consisting of:



wherein R₁₀₀ is a (C₁-C₃)alkoxy; and R₁₀₁ is a (C₁-C₃)alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl (*e.g.*, 4-nitropyridyl).

In another specific embodiment, the alcohol protecting group is pivoloxy,
20 methoxymethyl, 2-methoxyethoxymethyl, *p*-methoxybenzyl, 3,4-dimethoxybenzyl, 2,6-dimethoxybenzyl, diphenylmethyl, benzyloxymethyl, 2,2,2-trichloroethoxycarbonyl, tetrahydrofuranyl, tetrahydropyranyl, benzyl, benzoyl, *para*-phenylbenzoyl, 2,4,6-trimethylbenzoyl, *para*-bromobenzoyl, *para*-nitrobenzoyl, picolinoyl, nicotinoyl, 5-dibenzosuberyl, trityl/triphenylmethyl, or tris(4-*tert*-

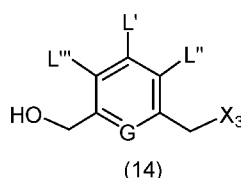
butylphenyl)methyl. Preferably, the alcohol protecting group is methoxymethyl, tetrahydropyranyl, 2-methoxyethoxymethyl, p-methoxybenzyl, benzyloxymethyl, or 2,2,2-trichloroethoxycarbonyl. Even more preferably, the alcohol protecting group is 2,2,2-trichloroethoxycarbonyl.

5 In another specific embodiment, the alcohol protecting group is a silyl protecting group. For example, the silyl protecting group is dimethylisopropylsilyl, diethylisopropylsilyl, dimethylhexylsilyl, trimethylsilyl, triisopropylsilyl, tribenzylsilyl, triphenylsilyl, 2-norbornyldimethylsilyl, *tert*-butyldimethylsilyl, *tert*-butyldiphenylsilyl, 2-trimethylethylsilyl (TEOC), or [2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxy]methyl. Preferably, the silyl
10 protecting group is triethylsilyl, triisopropylsilyl, or *tert*-butyldimethylsilyl. More preferably, the silyl protecting group is *tert*-butyldimethylsilyl.

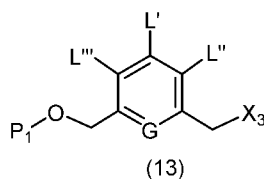
In one embodiment, the base is used. The base can be a non-nucleophilic base. Examples of non-nucleophilic base include, but are not limited to, triethylamine, imidazole, diisopropylethylamine (DIPEA), pyridine, 2,6-lutidine, dimethylformamide,
15 1,8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undec-7-ene (DBU), or tetramethylpiperidine. Preferably, the non-nucleophilic base is pyridine.

Any suitable organic solvents can be used for the methods of the twentieth embodiment. Exemplary solvents include, but are not limited to, DMF, CH₂Cl₂, dichloroethane, THF, dimethylacetamide, etc. In certain embodiments, DMF is used as
20 the solvent.

In a twenty-third embodiment, the present invention provides a method of preparing a compound of formula (14),

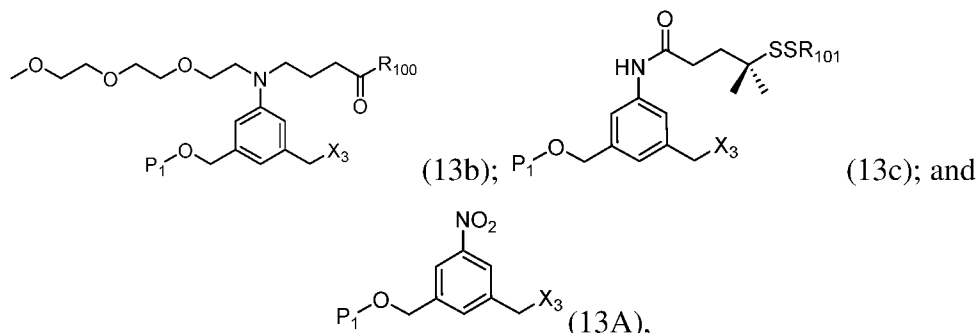


or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula (13)



25 with an alcohol deprotecting reagent, wherein the variables are the same as described in the twentieth embodiment.

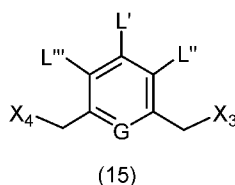
In a specific embodiment, the compound of formula (13) is selected from the group consisting of:



5 wherein R_{100} and R_{101} are the same as defined above.

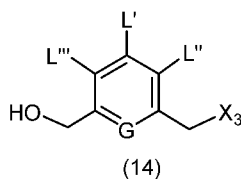
In another specific embodiment, the alcohol deprotecting reagent is tetra-n-butylammonium fluoride, tris(dimethylamino)sulfonium difluorotrimethylsilicate, hydrogen fluoride or a solvate thereof, hydrogen fluoride pyridine, silicon tetrafluoride, hexafluorosilicic acid, cesium fluoride, hydrochloric acid, acetic acid, trifluoroacetic acid, pyridinium p-toluenesulfonate, p-toluenesulfonic acid (p-TsOH), formic acid, or periodic acid. Preferably, the alcohol deprotecting reagent is hydrogen fluoride pyridine.

In a twenty-fourth embodiment, the present invention provides a method of preparing a compound of formula (15):



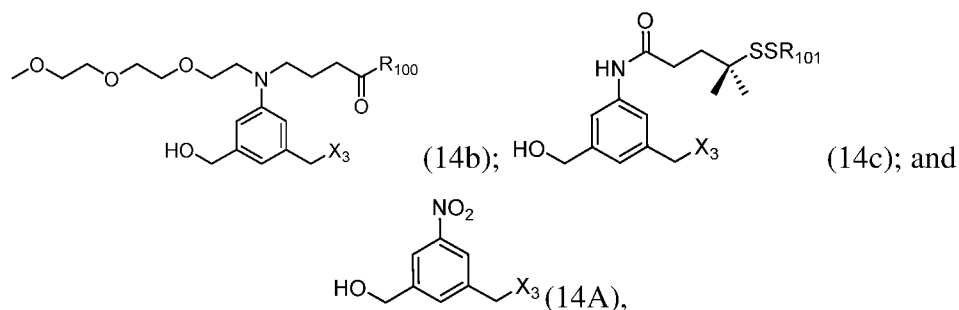
15

or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a sulfonating reagent or an esterification reagent with a compound of formula (14),



wherein X₄ is a sulfonate ester or an activated ester and the remaining variables are the same as described in the twentieth embodiment.

In a specific embodiment, the compound of formula (14) is selected from the group consisting of:



wherein R_{100} and R_{101} are the same as defined above.

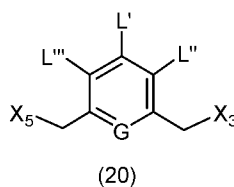
In a specific embodiment, for methods of the twenty-fourth embodiment, X_4 is a sulfonate ester.

In another specific embodiment, methanesulfonyl anhydride, methanesulfonyl chloride, p-toluenesulfonyl chloride, 4-bromobenzenesulfonyl chloride, or trifluoromethanesulfonyl anhydride.

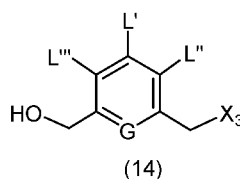
In another specific embodiment, the sulfonate ester is mesylate, tosylate, brosylate, or triflate. Preferably, the sulfonate ester is mesylate.

In another embodiment, a base is used. The base can be a non-nucleophilic base. Examples of non-nucleophilic base include, but are not limited to, triethylamine, imidazole, diisopropylethylamine, pyridine, 2,6-lutidine, dimethylformamide, 1,8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undec-7-ene (DBU), or tetramethylpiperidine. Preferably, the non-nucleophilic base is diisopropylethylamine.

In a twenty-fifth embodiment, the present invention provides a method of preparing a compound of formula (20):

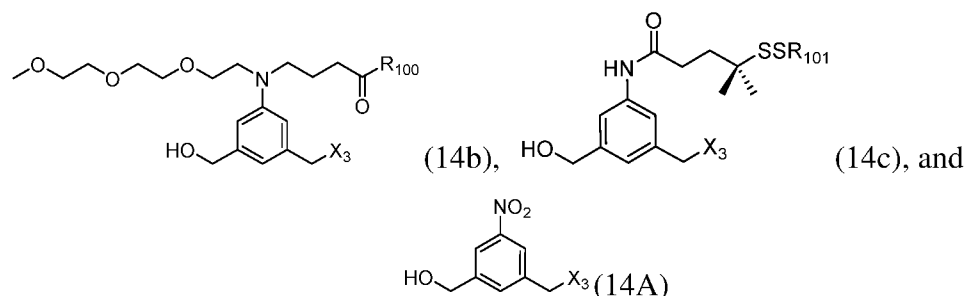


or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a brominating or iodinating reagent with a compound of formula (14),



wherein the variables are the same as described above.

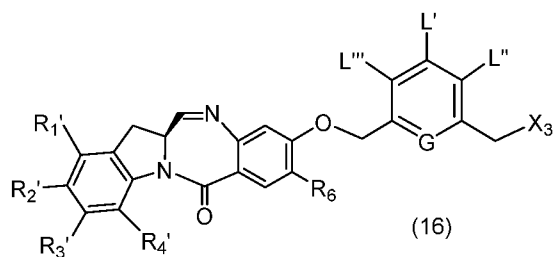
In a specific embodiment, the compound of formula (14) is selected from the group consisting of:



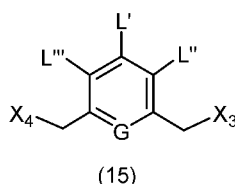
wherein R₁₀₀ is a (C₁-C₃)alkoxy; and R₁₀₁ is a (C₁-C₃)alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl (*e.g.*, 4-nitropyridyl).

5 In a particular embodiment, the brominating or iodinating reagent is bromine, hydrobromic acid, carbon tetrabromide, phosphorus tribromide, potassium bromide, hydroiodic acid, iodine, carbon tetraiodide, phosphorus triiodide, sodium iodide, or potassium iodide.

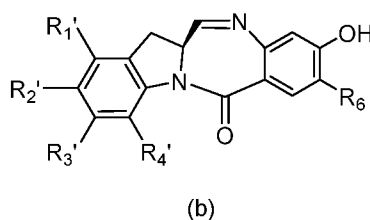
In a twenty-sixth embodiment, the present invention provides a method of
10 preparing a compound of formula (16):



or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula (15)

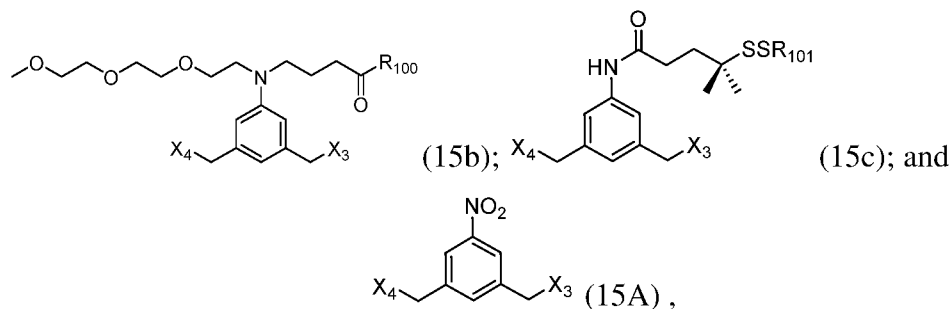


with a monomer compound of formula (b),

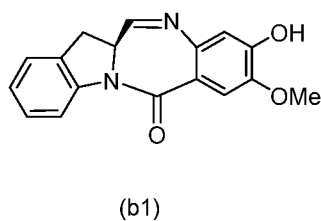


wherein the variables of X₃, X₄, L', L'', L'', and G are as described in the the twenty-fifth embodiment, and the variables of R₁', R₂', R₃', R₄', and R₆ are the same as described above. In one embodiment, X₄ is a sulfonate ester

In a specific embodiment, the compound of formula (15) is selected from the group consisting of:



5 and the monomer compound of formula (b) is represented by the following formula:

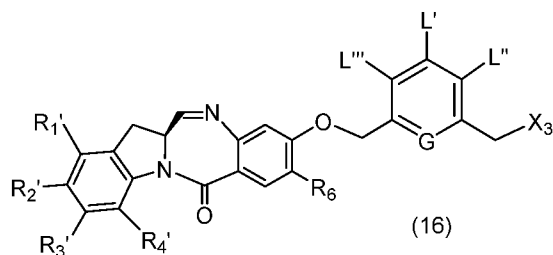


wherein R_{100} and R_{101} are the same as defined above.

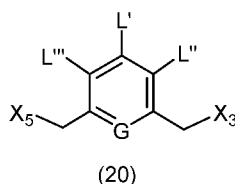
In an embodiment, a base is used. In specific embodiment, the base is sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, cesium carbonate, sodium hydride, or potassium
10 hydride. Preferably, the base is potassium carbonate.

Any suitable organic solvents can be used for the methods of the twentieth embodiment. Exemplary solvents include, but are not limited to, DMF, CH_2Cl_2 , dichloroethane, THF, dimethylacetamide, etc. In certain embodiments, dimethylacetamide is used as the solvent.

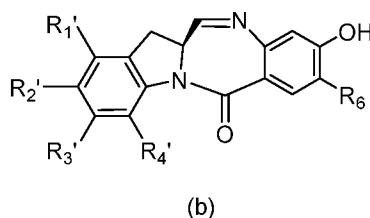
15 In a twenty-seventh embodiment, the present invention provides a method of preparing a compound of formula (16):



or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula (20)

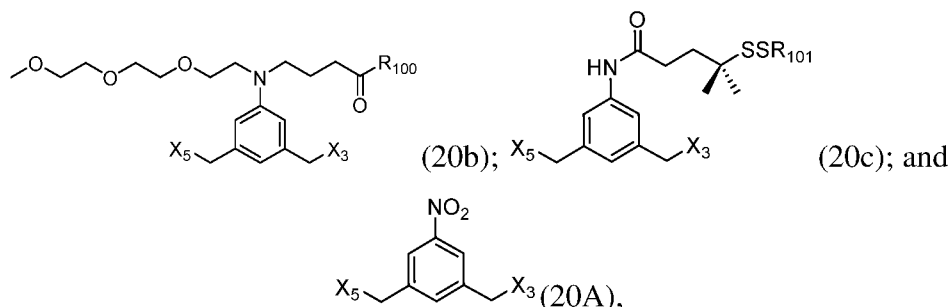


with a monomer compound of formula (b),

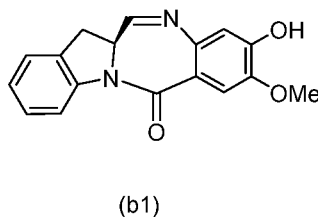


wherein the variables are the same as described above.

In one embodiment, the compound of formula (20) is selected from the group
5 consisting of:



and the monomer compound of formula (b) is represented by the following formula:

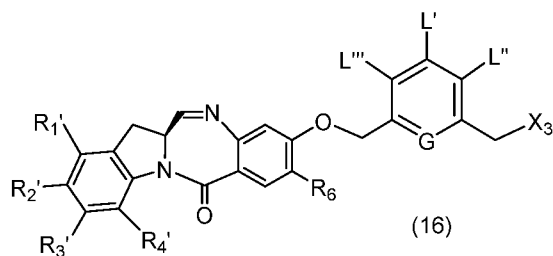


10 wherein X_3 is $-Cl$; X_5 is $-Br$ or $-I$; R_{100} is a (C_1-C_3) alkoxy; and R_{101} is a (C_1-C_3) alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl (*e.g.*, 4-nitropyridyl).

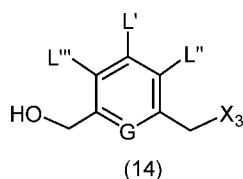
In a particular embodiment, the compound of formula (20) is reacted with a monomer compound of formula (b) in the presence of a base. Suitable bases include sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, cesium carbonate, sodium hydride, or potassium
15 hydride. In a preferred embodiment, the base is potassium carbonate.

In another embodiment, the compound of formula (20) is reacted with a monomer compound of formula (b) in the presence of a polar aprotic solvent. In a preferred embodiment, the polar aprotic solvent is dimethylacetamide.

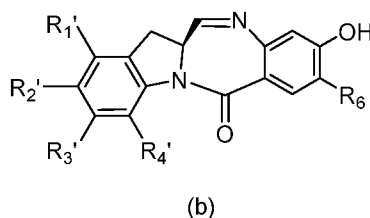
In a twenty-eighth embodiment, the present invention provides a method of
20 preparing a compound of formula (16):



or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula (14)

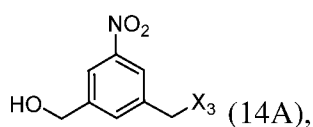
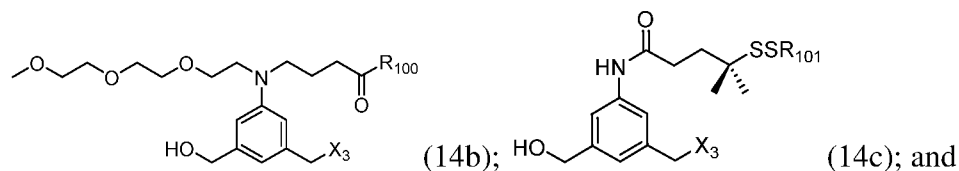


with a monomer compound of formula (b),

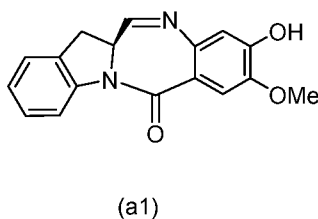


wherein the variables are the same as described above.

In one embodiment, the compound of formula (14) is selected from the group consisting of:



and the monomer compound of formula (b) is represented by the following formula:



wherein R₁₀₀ is a (C₁-C₃)alkoxy; and R₁₀₁ is a (C₁-C₃)alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl (*e.g.*, 4-nitropyridyl).

In one embodiment, for the methods of the twenty-eighth embodiment, the compound of formula (14) is reacted with a monomer of formula (b) in the presence of

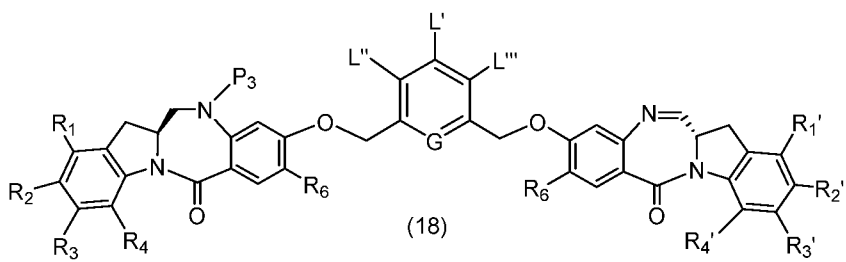
an alcohol activating agent. In one embodiment, the alcohol activating agent is a trialkylphosphine, triarylphosphine, or triheteroarylphosphine. In a specific embodiment, the alcohol activating agent is trimethylphosphine, tributylphosphine, tri(o-tolyl)phosphine, tri(m-tolyl)phosphine, tri(p-tolyl)phosphine, tri(2-pyridyl)phosphine, tri(3-pyridyl)phosphine, tri(4-pyridyl)phosphine, or [4-(3,3,4,4,5,5,6,6,7,7,8,8,9,9,10,10,10-Heptafluorodecyl)phenyl] diphenylphosphine. In another embodiment, the alcohol activating agent can be a phosphine-like reagent, such as (tributylphosphoranylidene)acetonitrile, (cyanomethylene)tributylphosphorane (CMBP), or (cyanomethylene)trimethylphosphorane (CMMP). In a more specific embodiment, the alcohol activating agent is triphenylphosphine. In one embodiment, the alcohol activating agent can be polymer-bound or polymer-supported, such as polymer-bound or polymer-supported trialkyl phosphine, triarylphosphine (e.g., triphenylphosphine), or triheteroarylphosphine.

In another embodiment, for the methods of the twenty-eighth embodiment, the compound of formula (14) is reacted with a monomer of formula (b) in the presence of an azodicarboxylate. In one embodiment, the azodicarboxylate is selected from the group consisting of: diethyl azodicarboxylate (DEAD), diisopropyl azodicarboxylate (DIAD), 1,1'-(azodicarbonyl)dipiperidine (ADDP), ditertbutyl azodicarboxylate (DTAD), 1,6-dimethyl-1,5,7-hexahydro-1,4,6,7-tetrazocin-2,5-dione (DHTD), di-(4-chlorobenzyl)azodicarboxylate (DCAD), azodicarboxylic dimorpholide, N,N,N',N'-tetramethylazodicarboxamide (TMAD), N,N,N',N'-tetraisopropylazodicarboxamide (TIPA), 4,4'-azopyridine, bis (2,2,2-trichloroethyl) azodicarboxylate, o-(tert-Butyldimethylsilyl)-N-tosylhydroxylamine, di-(4-chlorobenzyl)azodicarboxylate, cyclic 1,6-dimethyl-1,5,7-hexahydro-1,4,6,7-tetrazocin-2,5-dione (DHTD), dimethyl acetylenedicarboxylate (DMAD), di-2-methoxyethyl azodicarboxylate, di-(4-chlorobenzyl)azodicarboxylate and bis(4,4,5,5,6,6,7,7,8,8,9,9,9-tridecafluorononyl) azodicarboxylate, . More specifically, the azodicarboxylate is DIAD. In one embodiment, the azodicarboxylate is polymer-bound or polymer supported, such as polymer-supported alkylazodicarboxylate (e.g. polymer-bound DEAD, DIAD, DTAD or ADDP).

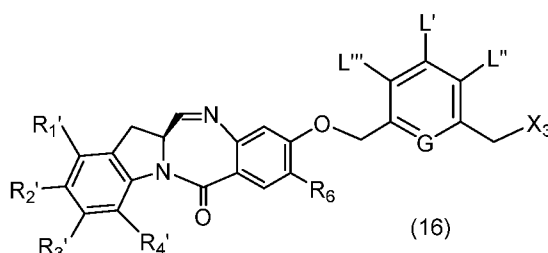
In yet another specific embodiment, for methods of the twenty-eighth embodiment, the compound of formula (14) is reacted with a monomer of formula (b) in the presence of triphenylphosphine and an azodicarboxylate. In one embodiment, the

azodicarboxylate is selected from the group consisting of: diethyl azodicarboxylate (DEAD), diisopropyl azodicarboxylate (DIAD), 1,1'-(azodicarbonyl)dipiperidine (ADDP), and ditertbutyl azodicarboxylate (DTAD). More specifically, the azodicarboxylate is DIAD.

5 In a twenty-ninth embodiment, the present invention provides a method of preparing a compound of formula (18):

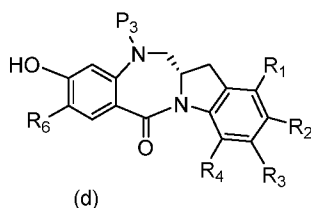


a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula of (16):



10

with a reduced monomer of formula (d):



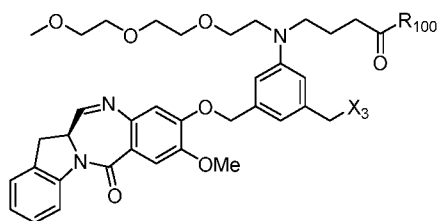
wherein the variables R_1 , R_2 , R_3 , R_4 , R_6 and P_2 are as described in the twenty-third embodiment; and wherein

15 R_1 , R_2 , R_3 , and R_4 are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R_c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and
20 -OCONR'R'';

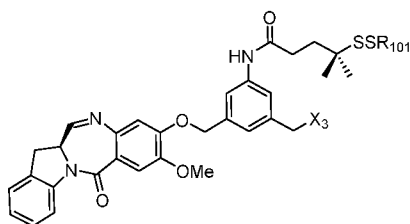
R_6 is -H, -R, -OR, -SR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, or halogen; and

P_3 is H or an amine protecting group.

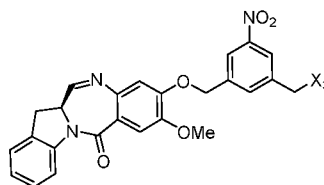
In a specific embodiment, the compound of formula (16) is selected from the group consisting of:



(16b);

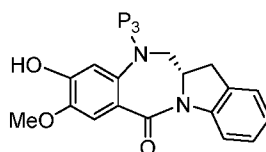


(16c); and



(16A),

5 and the reduced monomer of formula (d) is represented by the following formula:



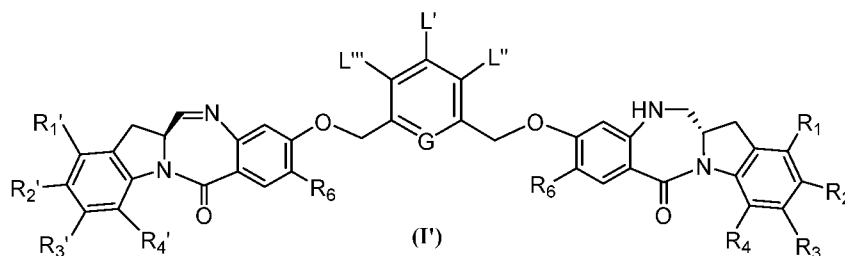
(d₁)

wherein X₃ is -Cl; P₃ is H or an amine protecting group; R₁₀₀ and R₁₀₁ are the same as defined above.

In one embodiment, for methods of the twenty-ninth embodiment, the reaction between the compound of formula (16d) or (16A) and the reduced monomer of formula (d₁) is carried out in the presence of a base. In specific embodiment, the base is sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, cesium carbonate, sodium hydride, or potassiumhydride. Preferably, the base is potassium carbonate.

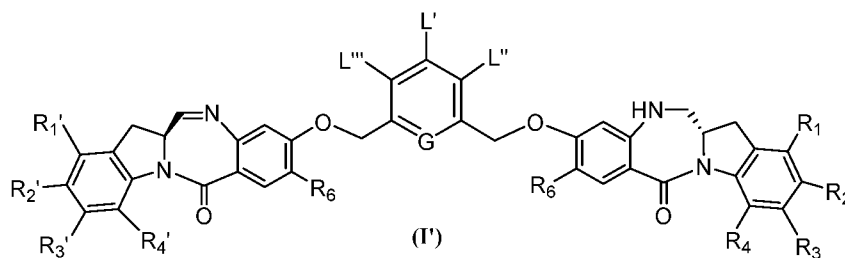
Any suitable organic solvents can be used for the methods of the twentieth
15 embodiment. Exemplary solvents include, but are not limited to, dimethylformamide
(DMF), CH₂Cl₂, dichloroethane, THF, dimethylacetamide, etc. In certain embodiments,
dimethylformamide or dimethylacetamide is used as the solvent.

In a specific embodiment of the twenty-fourth embodiment, the compound of formula (16) is reacted with reduced monomer of formula (d), wherein P_3 is H, to form a compound of formula (I'):



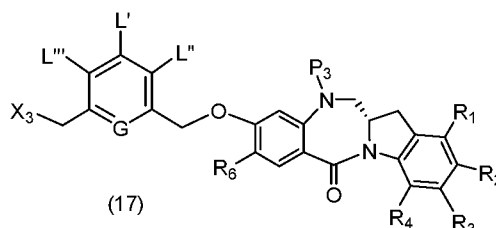
In another specific embodiment of the twenty-fourth embodiment, P₃ is an amine protecting group. Any suitable amine protecting group can be used in the method described above. In one embodiment, the amine protecting group is 2-trimethylsilylethyl, (2-phenyl-2-trimethylsilyl)ethyl, triisopropylsiloxy, 2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxymethyl, allyloxycarbonyl, 9-fluorenylmethoxycarbonyl, 2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxycarbonyl, or 2, 2,2,2-trichloroethoxycarbonyl.

When P₃ is an amine protecting group, the compound of formula (18) is further reacted with an amine deprotecting reagent to form a compound of formula (I'):

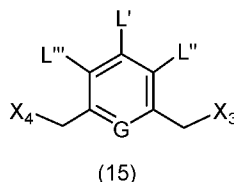


Examples of suitable amine deprotecting reagent include, but are not limited to, the amine deprotecting reagent is selected from the group consisting of tetra-n-butylammonium fluoride, acetic acid, hydrogen fluoride pyridine, cesium fluoride, piperidine, morpholine, or trifluoroacetic acid.

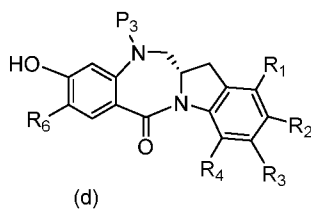
In a thirtieth embodiment, the present invention provides a method for preparing a compound of formula (17):



or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula (15)

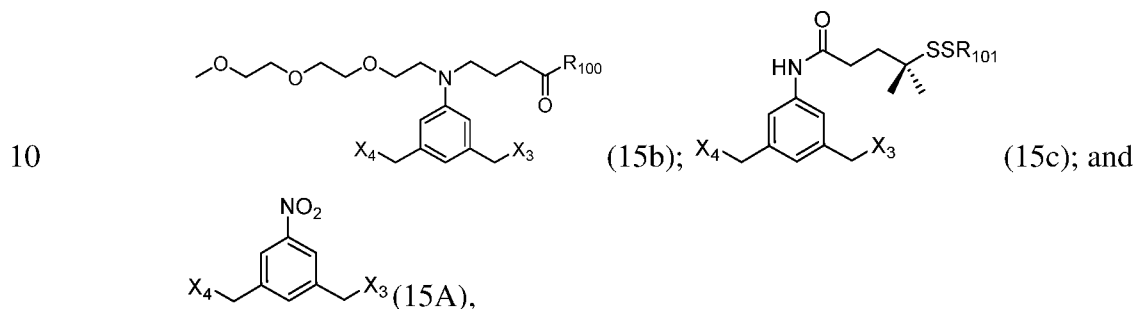


with a monomer compound of formula (d),



wherein X_3 is $-\text{Cl}$; X_4 is a sulfonate ester or an activated ester; P_3 is H or an amine protecting group; L' , L'' , L''' , and G are as described in the the twenty-second embodiment, and the variables R_1 , R_2 , R_3 , R_4 , R_6 and P_3 are the same as described in the twenty-fourth embodiment. In one embodiment, X_4 is an activated ester.

In a specific embodiment, the compound of formula (15) is selected from the group consisting of:



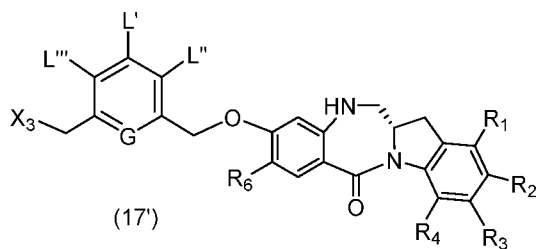
wherein X_3 is $-\text{Cl}$; X_4 is a sulfonate ester or an activated ester; R_{100} and R_{101} are the same as defined above. In one embodiment, X_4 is an activated ester.

In an embodiment, for methods of the thirtieth embodiment, a base is used. In specific embodiment, the base is sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, cesium carbonate, sodium hydride, or potassium hydride. Preferably, the base is potassium carbonate.

Any suitable organic solvents can be used for the methods of the thirtieth embodiment. Exemplary solvents include, but are not limited to, DMF, CH_2Cl_2 , dichloroethane, THF, dimethylacetamide, etc. In certain embodiments, dimethylacetamide is used as the solvent.

In a specific embodiment of the thirtieth embodiment, P_3 is H and the compound of formula (15) is reacted with the monomer compound of formula (d) to form a compound of formula (17').

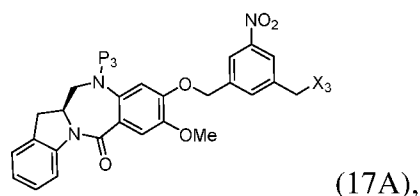
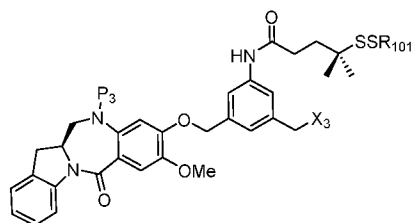
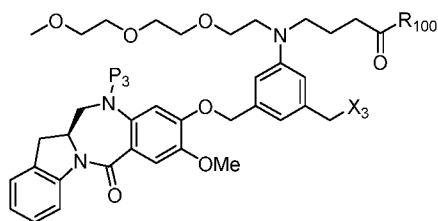
In another specific embodiment of the thirtieth embodiment, P_3 is an amine protecting group and the method further comprises the step of reacting the compound of formula (17) with an amine deprotecting reagent to form a compound of formula (17'):



5

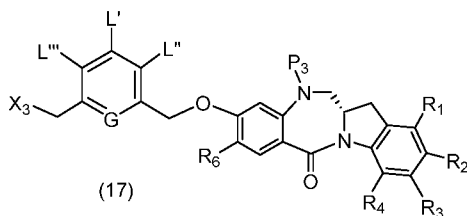
Examples of suitable amine deprotecting reagent include, but are not limited to, the amine deprotecting reagent is selected from the group consisting of tetra-n-butylammonium fluoride, acetic acid, hydrogen fluoride pyridine, cesium fluoride, piperidine, morpholine, or trifluoroacetic acid.

10 In a specific embodiment, the compound of formula (17) is selected from the group consisting of:

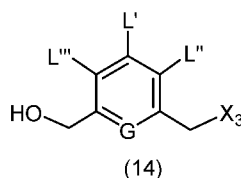


wherein R_{100} and R_{101} are the same as defined above.

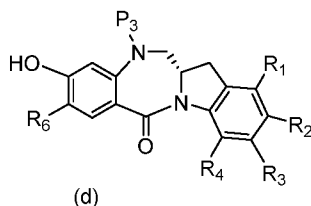
15 In a thirty-first embodiment, the present invention provides a method of preparing a compound of formula (17):



or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula (14)

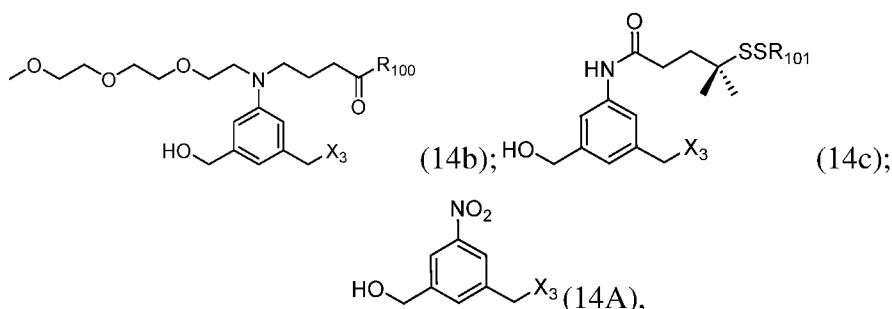


with a monomer compound of formula (d),



Wherein X_3 is $-Cl$; P_3 is H or an amine protecting group and the remaining variables are as described above.

In a specific embodiment, the compound of formula (14) is selected from the group consisting of:



and the monomer compound of formula (d) is represented by formula (d₁), wherein X_3 is $-Cl$; R_{100} is a (C_1-C_3) alkoxy; and R_{101} is a (C_1-C_3) alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl (e.g., 4-nitropyridyl).

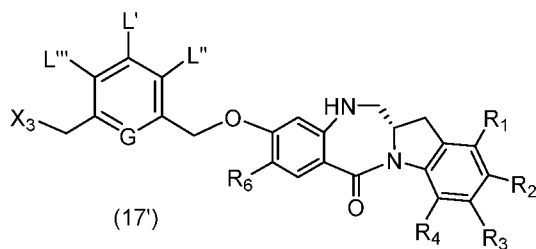
In a specific embodiment, the compound of formula (14) is reacted with a monomer of formula (b) in the presence of an alcohol activating agent. In one embodiment, the alcohol activating agent is a trialkylphosphine, triarylphosphine, or triheteroarylphosphine. In a specific embodiment, the alcohol activating agent is trimethylphosphine, tributylphosphine, tri(o-tolyl)phosphine, tri(m-tolyl)phosphine, tri(p-tolyl)phosphine, tri(2-pyridyl)phosphine, tri(3-pyridyl)phosphine, tri(4-pyridyl)phosphine, or [4-(3,3,4,4,5,5,6,6,7,7,8,8,9,9,10,10,10-Heptafluorodecyl)phenyl] diphenylphosphine. In another embodiment, the alcohol activating agent can be a phosphine-like reagent, such as (tributylphosphoranylidene)acetonitrile, (cyanomethylene)tributylphosphorane (CMBP), or (cyanomethylene)trimethylphosphorane (CMMP). In a more specific embodiment, the alcohol activating agent is triphenylphosphine. In one embodiment, the alcohol

activating agent can be polymer-bound or polymer-supported, such as polymer-bound or polymer-supported trialkyl phosphine, triarylphosphine (e.g., triphenylphosphine), or triheteroarylphosphine.

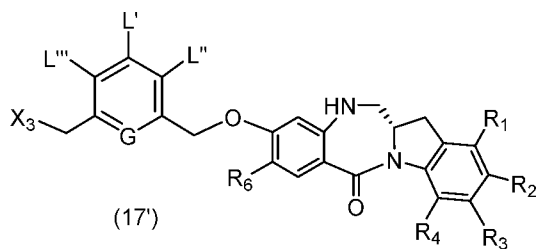
In another specific embodiment, the compound of formula (14) is reacted with a monomer of formula (b) in the presence of an azodicarboxylate. In one embodiment, the azodicarboxylate is selected from the group consisting of: diethyl azodicarboxylate (DEAD), diisopropyl azodicarboxylate (DIAD), 1,1'-(azodicarbonyl)dipiperidine (ADDP), ditertbutyl azodicarboxylate (DTAD), 1,6-dimethyl-1,5,7-hexahydro-1,4,6,7-tetrazocin-2,5-dione (DHTD), di-(4-chlorobenzyl)azodicarboxylate (DCAD), azodicarboxylic dimorpholide, N,N,N',N'-tetramethylazodicarboxamide (TMAD), N,N,N',N'-tetraisopropylazodicarboxamide (TIPA), 4,4'-azopyridine, bis(2,2,2-trichloroethyl) azodicarboxylate, o-(tert-Butyldimethylsilyl)-N-tosylhydroxylamine, di-(4-chlorobenzyl)azodicarboxylate, cyclic 1,6-dimethyl-1,5,7-hexahydro-1,4,6,7-tetrazocin-2,5-dione (DHTD), dimethyl acetylenedicarboxylate (DMAD), di-2-methoxyethyl azodicarboxylate, di-(4-chlorobenzyl)azodicarboxylate and bis(4,4,5,5,6,6,7,7,8,8,9,9,9-tridecafluorononyl) azodicarboxylate. More specifically, the azodicarboxylate is DIAD. In one embodiment, the azodicarboxylate is polymer-bound or polymer supported, such as polymer-supported alkylazodicarboxylate (e.g. polymer-bound DEAD, DIAD, DTAD or ADDP).

In yet another specific embodiment, for methods of the twenty-eighth embodiment, the compound of formula (14) is reacted with a monomer of formula (d) in the presence of triphenylphosphine and an azodicarboxylate. In one embodiment, the azodicarboxylate is selected from the group consisting of: diethyl azodicarboxylate (DEAD), diisopropyl azodicarboxylate (DIAD), 1,1'-(azodicarbonyl)dipiperidine (ADDP), and ditertbutyl azodicarboxylate (DTAD). More specifically, the azodicarboxylate is DIAD.

In yet another embodiment, the compound of formula (15) is reacted with the monomer compound of formula (d), wherein P_3 is H, to form a compound of formula (17'):

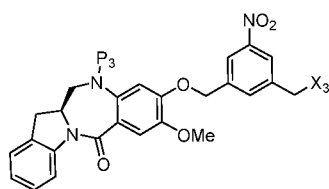
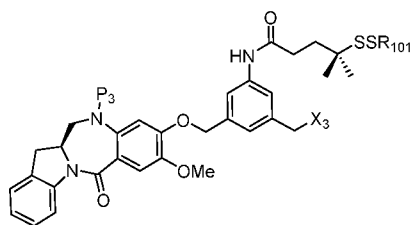
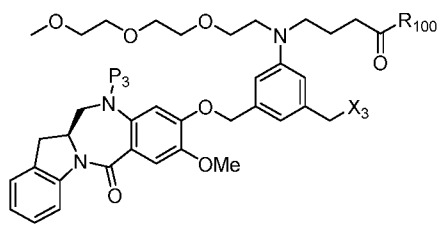


In a specific embodiment, P_3 is an amine protecting group and the method further comprises the step of reacting the compound of formula (17) with an amine deprotecting reagent to form a compound of formula (17'):



5

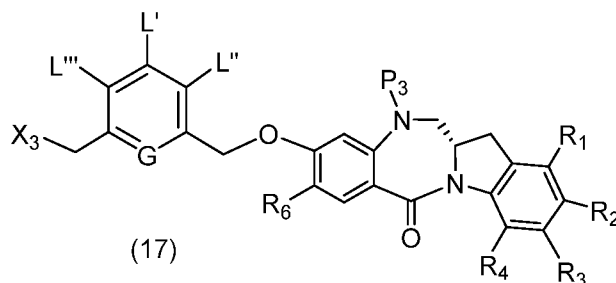
In a specific embodiment, the compound of formula (17) is selected from the group consisting of:



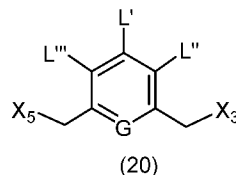
10 wherein R_{100} is a (C_1-C_3) alkoxy; and R_{101} is a (C_1-C_3) alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl (*e.g.*, 4-nitropyridyl).

Examples of suitable amine deprotecting reagent include, but are not limited to, tetra-*n*-butylammonium fluoride, acetic acid, hydrogen fluoride pyridine, cesium fluoride, piperidine, morpholine, or trifluoroacetic acid.

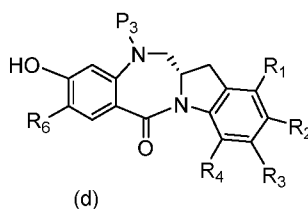
15 In a thirty-second embodiment, the present invention provides a method of preparing a compound of formula (17):



or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula (20)



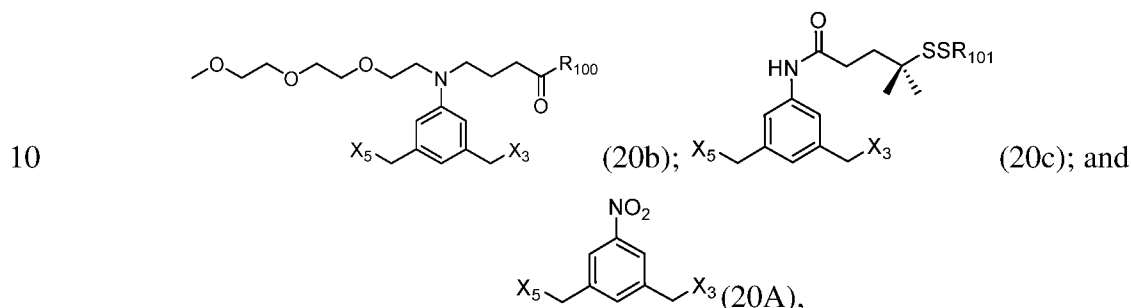
with a monomer compound of formula (d),



5

wherein X_3 is $-Cl$; X_5 is $-Br$ or $-I$, P_3 is H or an amine protecting group; and the remaining variables are the same as described above.

In a specific embodiment, the compound of formula (20) is selected from the group consisting of:



10

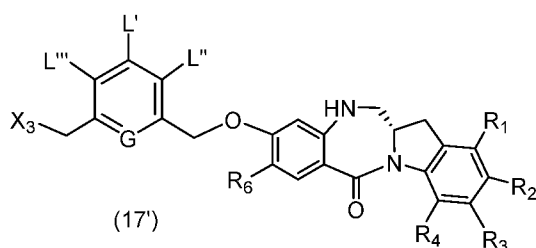
wherein X_3 is $-Cl$; X_5 is $-Br$ or $-I$; R_{100} is a (C_1-C_3) alkoxy; and R_{101} is a (C_1-C_3) alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl (*e.g.*, 4-nitropyridyl).

In one embodiment, the compound of formula (20) is reacted with a monomer compound of formula (d) in the presence of a base. Any suitable base can be used. Suitable bases include, but are not limited to, sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, cesium carbonate, sodium hydride, or potassium hydride. Preferably, the base is potassium carbonate.

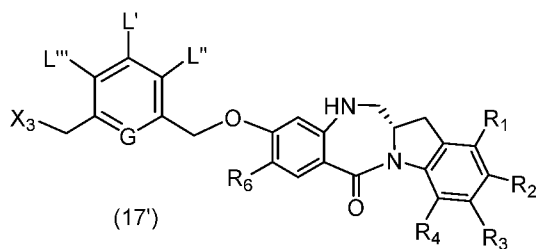
15

In another embodiment, the compound of formula (20) is reacted with a monomer compound of formula (d) in the presence of a polar aprotic solvent. Preferably, the polar aprotic solvent is dimethylacetamide.

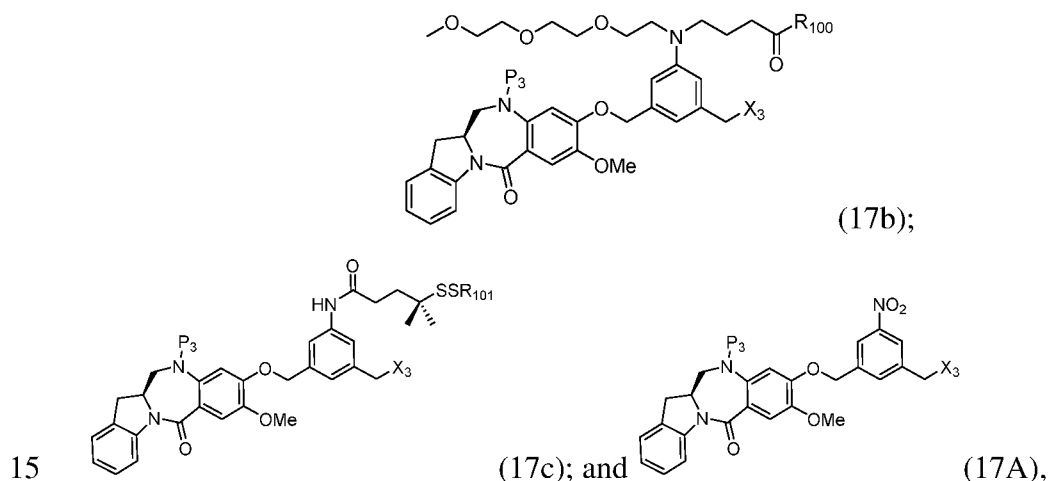
In a specific embodiment, the compound of formula (20) is reacted with the monomer compound of formula (d), wherein P_3 is H, to form a compound of formula (17'):



In another specific embodiment, P_3 is an amine protecting group and the method further comprises the step of reacting the compound of formula (17) with an amine deprotecting reagent to form a compound of formula (17'):



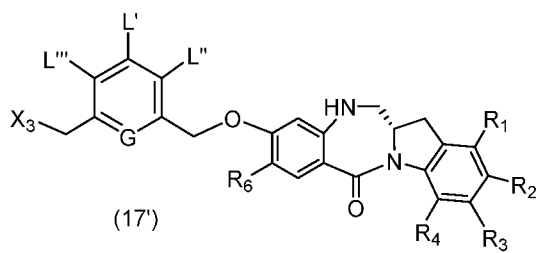
In one embodiment, the compound of formula (17) is selected from the group consisting of:



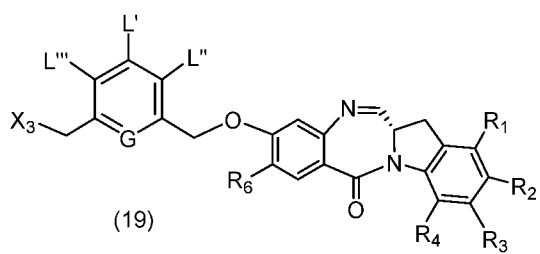
wherein X_3 is $-Cl$; P_3 is H or an amine protecting group; R_{100} is a (C_1-C_3) alkoxy; and R_{101} is a (C_1-C_3) alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl (*e.g.*, 4-nitropyridyl).

Suitable amine deprotecting reagent include, but are not limited to, tetra-n-butylammonium fluoride, acetic acid, hydrogen fluoride pyridine, cesium fluoride, piperidine, morpholine, or trifluoroacetic acid.

In a thirty-third embodiment, the present invention provides a method of
5 preparing a compound of formula (17'):

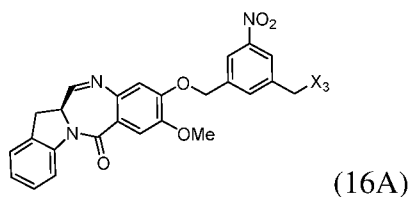
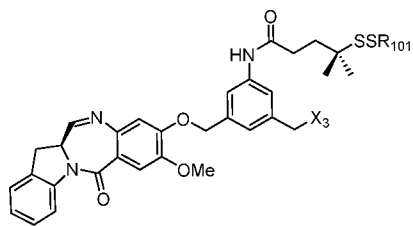
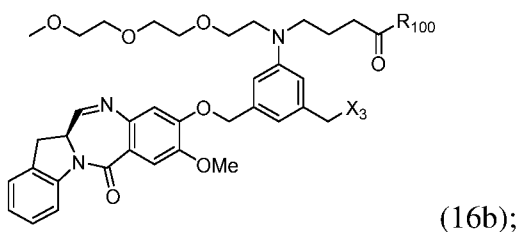


or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula (19)



wherein X_3 is $-Cl$; the remaining variables are the same as described above.

10 In a specific embodiment, the compound of formula (19) is selected from the group consisting of:

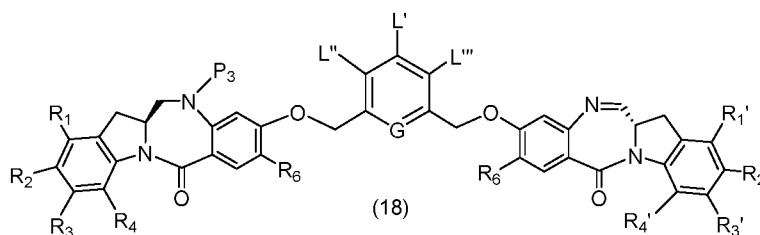


wherein X_3 is $-Cl$; R_{100} and R_{101} are the same as defined above.

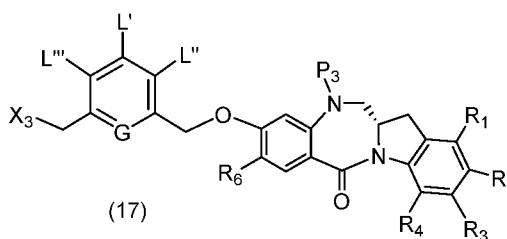
15 In another specific embodiment, the imine reducing agent is a hydride reducing agent. Examples of suitable hydride reducing agents include, but are not limited to, sodium borohydride, sodium triacetoxy borohydride, sodium cyanoborohydride, lithium aluminum hydride, hydrogen gas, ammonium formate, borane, 9-

borabicyclo[3.3.1]nonane (9-BBN), diisobutylaluminium hydride (DIBAL), lithium borohydride (LiBH_4), potassium borohydride (KBH_4), or sodium bis(2-methoxyethoxy)aluminumhydride (Red-Al). In one particular embodiment, the hydride reducing agent is sodium triacetoxy borohydride ($\text{NaBH}(\text{OAc})_3$).

5 In a thirty-fourth embodiment, the present invention provides a method of preparing a compound of formula (18),

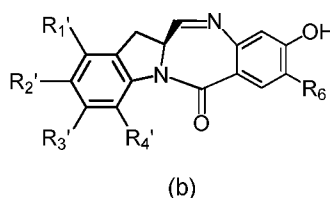


or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula of (17):



10

with a monomer of formula (b):

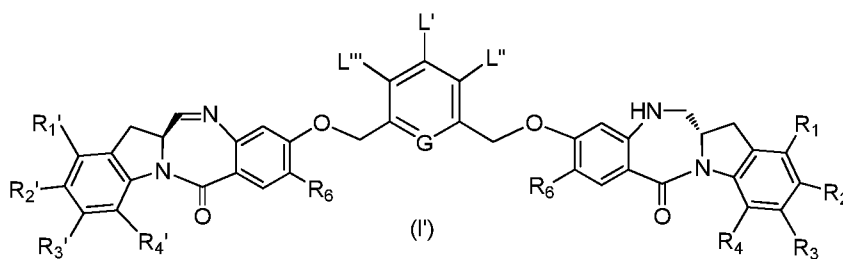


wherein X_3 is $-\text{Cl}$; P_3 is H or an amine protecting group; and the remaining variables are the same as described above.

15 In one embodiment, the compound of formula (17) is reacted with a monomer compound of formula (b) in the presence of a base. Suitable bases include, but are not limited to, sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, cesium carbonate, sodium hydride, or potassium hydride. Preferably, the base is potassium carbonate.

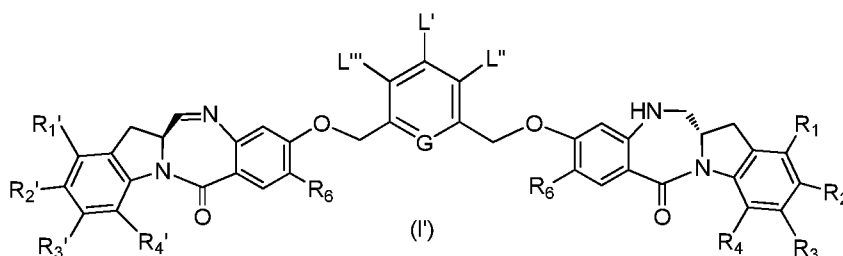
20 In another embodiment, the compound of formula (17) is reacted with a monomer compound of formula (b) in the presence of a polar aprotic solvent. Preferable polar aprotic solvent include dimethylformamide or dimethylacetamide.

In yet another embodiment, the compound of formula (17) is reacted with reduced monomer of formula (b), wherein P_3 is H, to form a compound of formula (I'):



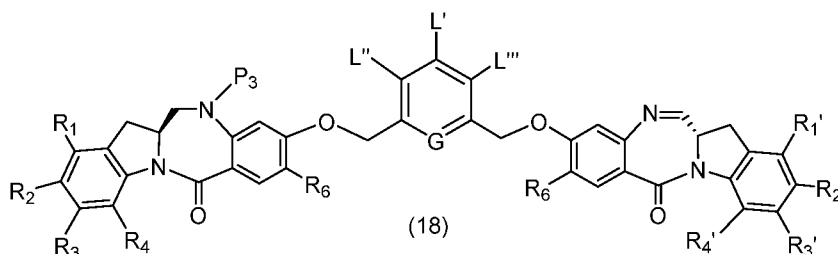
In a specific embodiment, P_3 is an amine protecting group. Suitable amine protecting groups include, but are not limited to, 2-trimethylsilylethyl, (2-phenyl-2-trimethylsilyl)ethyl, triisopropylsiloxy, 2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxymethyl, allyloxycarbonyl, 9-fluorenylmethoxycarbonyl, 2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxycarbonyl, or 2,2,2-trichloroethoxycarbonyl.

In still another embodiment, when P_3 is an amine protecting group, the compound of formula (18) is further reacted with an amine deprotecting reagent to form a compound of formula (I'):



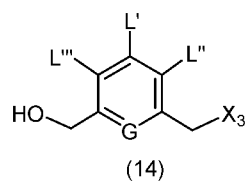
Examples of suitable amine deprotecting reagent include, but are not limited to, the amine deprotecting reagent is selected from the group consisting of tetra-n-butylammonium fluoride, acetic acid, hydrogen fluoride pyridine, cesium fluoride, piperidine, morpholine, or trifluoroacetic acid.

In a thirty-fifth embodiment, the present invention provides a method of preparing a compound of formula (18),

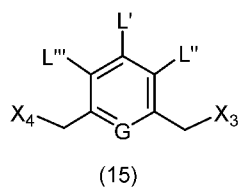


or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:

(1) reacting a sulfonating reagent or an esterification reagent with the compound of formula (14),

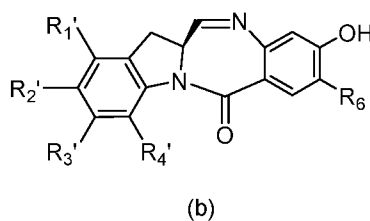


5 to form a compound of formula (15):



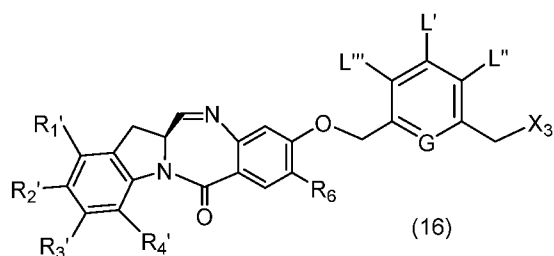
or a salt thereof;

(2) reacting the compound of formula (15) with a monomer compound of formula (b),



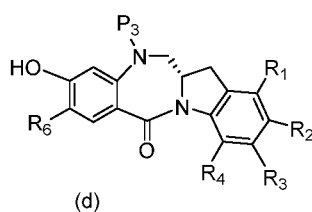
10

to form a compound of formula (16):



or a salt thereof;

(3) reacting the compound of formula of (16) with a reduced monomer of formula (d):



to form a compound of formula (18), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein X_3 is $-Cl$; X_4 is a sulfonate ester or an activated ester; P_1 is an alcohol protecting group; P_3 is H or an amine protecting group; and the remaining variables are the same as described above. In one embodiment, X_4 is a sulfonate ester.

5 In a specific embodiment, the method of the thirty-fifth embodiment involves a method of preparing a compound of formula (Ib'), said method comprising the steps of:

(1) reacting a sulfonating reagent or an esterification reagent with the compound of formula (14b), to form a compound of formula (15b);

10 (2) reacting the compound of formula (15b) with a monomer compound of formula (b_1), to form a compound of formula (16b);

(3) reacting the compound of formula of (16b) with a reduced monomer of formula (d), to form a compound of formula (18b), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein when P_3 is H, the reaction of the compound of (16b) with the reduced monomer (d_1) to form the compound of formula (Ib'); and when P_3 is an amine
15 protecting group, the method further comprising reacting the compound of formula (18b) with an amine deprotecting reagent to form the compound of formula (Ib').

In another specific embodiment, the method of the thirty-fifth embodiment involves a method of preparing a compound of formula (Ic'), said method comprising the steps of:

20 (1) reacting a sulfonating reagent or an esterification reagent with the compound of formula (14c), to form a compound of formula (15c);

(2) reacting the compound of formula (15c) with a monomer compound of formula (b_1), to form a compound of formula (16c);

25 (3) reacting the compound of formula of (16c) with a reduced monomer of formula (d_1), to form a compound of formula (18c), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein when P_3 is H, the reaction of the compound of (16c) with the reduced monomer (d_1) to form the compound of formula (Ib'); and when P_3 is an amine protecting group, the method further comprising reacting the compound of formula (18c) with an amine deprotecting reagent to form the compound of formula (Ib').

30 In yet another specific embodiment, the method of the thirty-fifth embodiment involves a method of preparing a compound of formula (IA), said method comprising the steps of:

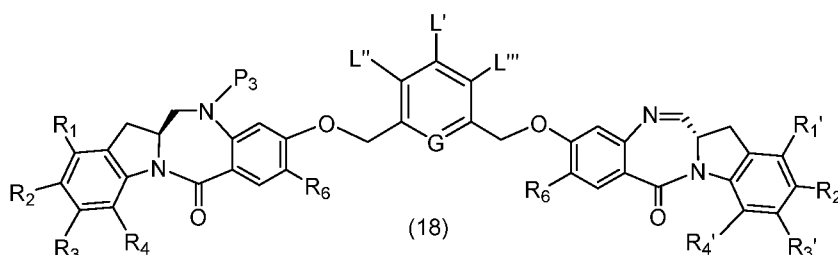
(1) reacting a sulfonating reagent or an esterification reagent with the compound of formula (14b), to form a compound of formula (15A);

(2) reacting the compound of formula (15A) with a monomer compound of formula (b₁), to form a compound of formula (16A);

5 (3) reacting the compound of formula of (16A) with a reduced monomer of formula (d₁), to form a compound of formula (18A), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein when P₃ is H, the reaction of the compound of (16A) with the reduced monomer (d₁) to form the compound of formula (IA); and when P₃ is an amine protecting group, the method further comprising reacting the compound of formula
10 (18A) with an amine deprotecting reagent to form the compound of formula (IA).

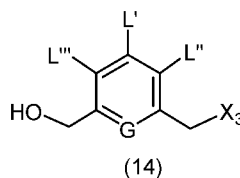
The conditions and reagents for the methods of thirty-fifth embodiment are as described above in the twenty-fourth, twenty-sixth and/or twenty-ninth embodiment(s) and any specific embodiments described therein.

In a thirty-sixth embodiment, the present invention provides a method of
15 preparing a compound of formula (18),

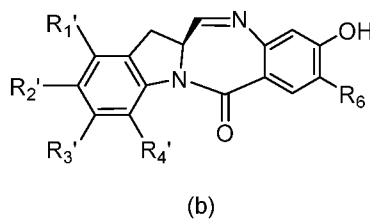


or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:

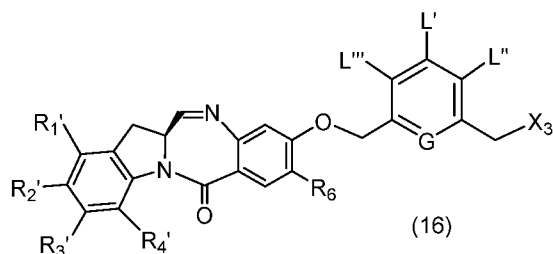
(1) reacting the compound of formula (14):



20 with a monomer compound of formula (b),

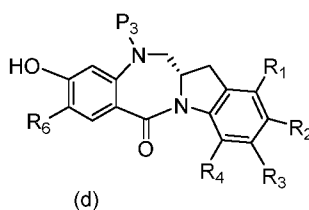


to form a compound of formula (16):



or a salt thereof; and

(2) reacting the compound of formula of (16) with a reduced monomer of formula (d):



to form a compound of formula (18), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein X_3 is $-Cl$; P_1 is an alcohol protecting group; P_3 is H or an amine protecting group; and the remaining variables are the same as described above.

In a specific embodiment, the method of the thirty-sixth embodiment involves a method of preparing a compound of formula (Ib'), said method comprising the steps of:

(1) reacting the compound of formula (14b) with a monomer compound of formula (b_1), in the presence of an alcohol activating agent to form a compound of formula (16b);

(2) reacting the compound of formula of (16b) with a reduced monomer of formula (d_1), to form a compound of formula (18b), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein when P_3 is H, the reaction of the compound of (16b) with the reduced monomer (d_1) to form the compound of formula (Ib'); and when P_3 is an amine protecting group, the method further comprising reacting the compound of formula (18b) with an amine deprotecting reagent to form the compound of formula (Ib').

In another specific embodiment, the method of the thirty-sixth embodiment involves a method of preparing a compound of formula (Ic'), said method comprising the steps of:

(1) reacting the compound of formula (14c) with a monomer compound of formula (b_1), in the presence of an alcohol activating agent to form a compound of formula (16c);

(2) reacting the compound of formula of (16c) with a reduced monomer of formula (d₁), to form a compound of formula (18c), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein when P₃ is H, the reaction of the compound of (16c) with the reduced monomer (d₁) to form the compound of formula (Ic'); and when P₃ is an amine protecting group, the method further comprising reacting the compound of formula (18c) with an amine deprotecting reagent to form the compound of formula (Ic').

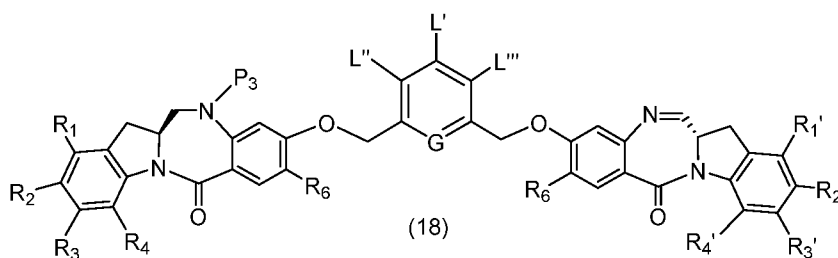
In yet another specific embodiment, the method of the thirty-sixth embodiment involves a method of preparing a compound of formula (IA), said method comprising the steps of:

(1) reacting the compound of formula (14A) with a monomer compound of formula (b₁), in the presence of an alcohol activating agent to form a compound of formula (16A);

(2) reacting the compound of formula of (16A) with a reduced monomer of formula (d₁), to form a compound of formula (18A), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein when P₃ is H, the reaction of the compound of (16A) with the reduced monomer (d₁) to form the compound of formula (IA); and when P₃ is an amine protecting group, the method further comprising reacting the compound of formula (18A) with an amine deprotecting reagent to form the compound of formula (IA).

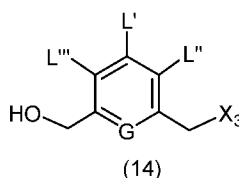
The conditions and reagents for the method of thirty-sixth embodiment are as described above in the twenty-eighth, and/or twenty-ninth embodiment(s) and any specific embodiments described therein.

In a thirty-seventh embodiment, the present invention provides a method of preparing a compound of formula (18),

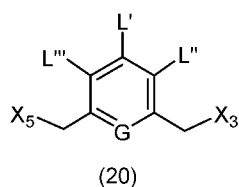


or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:

(1) reacting a halogenating reagent with the compound of formula (14),

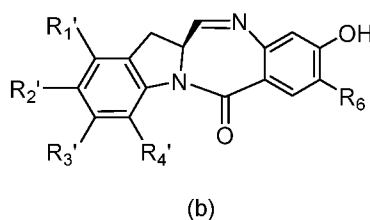


to form a compound of formula (20):

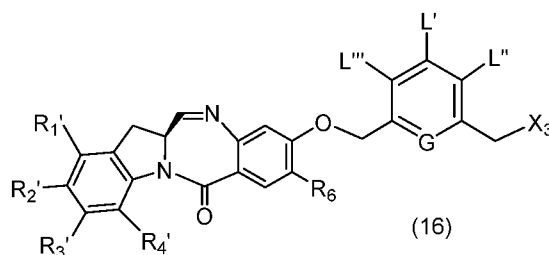


or a salt thereof;

- (2) reacting a compound of formula (20) or a salt thereof with a monomer
5 compound of formula (b),

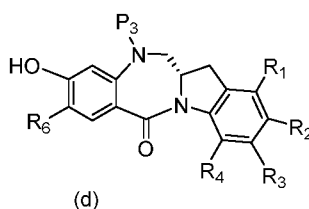


to form a compound of formula (16):



or a salt thereof; and

- (3) reacting the compound of formula of (16) with a reduced monomer of
10 formula (d):



- to form a compound of formula (18), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt
thereof, wherein X₃ is -Cl; X₅ is -Br or -I; P₃ is H or an amine protecting group; and the
15 remaining variables are the same as described above.

In a specific embodiment, the method of the thirty-seventh embodiment involves a method of preparing a compound of formula (Ib'), said method comprising the steps of:

- (1) reacting a halogenating reagent with the compound of formula (14b) to form
20 a compound of formula (20b);

(2) reacting a compound of formula (20b) or a salt thereof with a monomer compound of formula (b₁), to form a compound of formula (16b)

(3) reacting the compound of formula of (16b) with a reduced monomer of formula (d₁), to form a compound of formula (18b), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein when P₃ is H, the reaction of the compound of (16b) with the reduced monomer (d₁) to form the compound of formula (Ib'); and when P₃ is an amine protecting group, the method further comprising reacting the compound of formula (18b) with an amine deprotecting reagent to form the compound of formula (Ib').

In another specific embodiment, the method of the thirty-seventh embodiment involves a method of preparing a compound of formula (Ic'), said method comprising the steps of:

(1) reacting a halogenating reagent with the compound of formula (14c) to form a compound of formula (20c);

(2) reacting a compound of formula (20c) or a salt thereof with a monomer compound of formula (b₁), to form a compound of formula (16c)

(3) reacting the compound of formula of (16c) with a reduced monomer of formula (d₁), to form a compound of formula (18c), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein when P₃ is H, the reaction of the compound of (16c) with the reduced monomer (d₁) to form the compound of formula (Ib'); and when P₃ is an amine protecting group, the method further comprising reacting the compound of formula (18c) with an amine deprotecting reagent to form the compound of formula (Ic').

In yet another specific embodiment, the method of the thirty-seventh embodiment involves a method of preparing a compound of formula (IA), said method comprising the steps of:

(1) reacting a halogenating reagent with the compound of formula (14A) to form a compound of formula (20A);

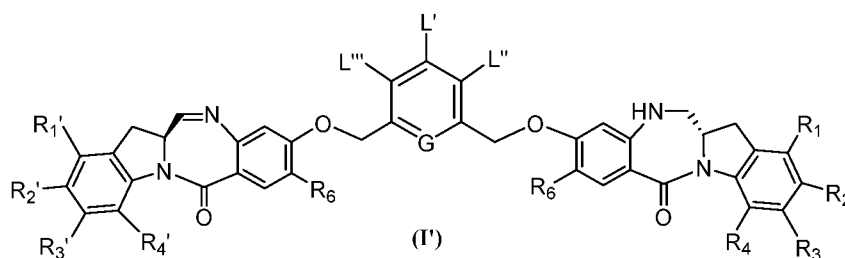
(2) reacting a compound of formula (20A) or a salt thereof with a monomer compound of formula (b₁), to form a compound of formula (16A)

(3) reacting the compound of formula of (16A) with a reduced monomer of formula (d₁), to form a compound of formula (18A), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein when P₃ is H, the reaction of the compound of (16A) with the reduced monomer (d₁) to form the compound of formula (IA); and when P₃ is an amine

protecting group, the method further comprising reacting the compound of formula (18A) with an amine deprotecting reagent to form the compound of formula (IA).

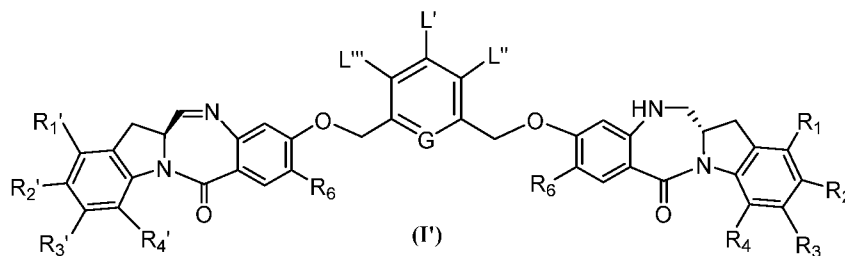
The conditions and reagents for the method of thirty-seventh embodiment are as described above in the twenty-fifth, twenty-seventh, and/or twenty-ninth embodiment(s) and any specific embodiments described therein.

In a specific embodiment of the thirty-fifth, thirty-sixth, or thirty-seventh embodiment, the compound of formula (16) is reacted with reduced monomer of formula (d), wherein P_3 is H, to form a compound of formula (I'):



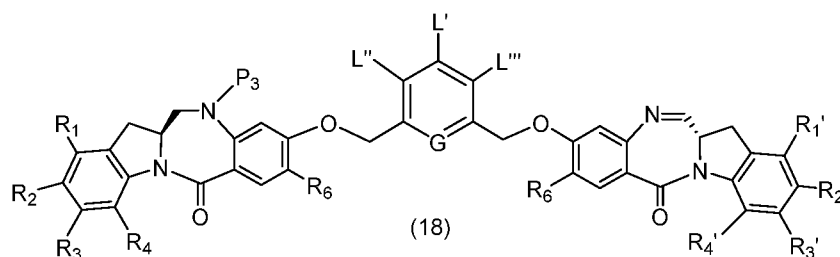
10

In another specific embodiment of the thirty-fifth, thirty-sixth, or thirty-seventh embodiment, P_3 is an amine protecting group and the compound of formula (18) is further reacted with an amine deprotecting reagent to form a compound of formula (I'):



15

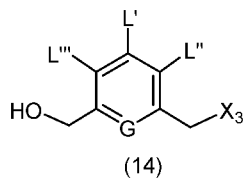
In a thirty-eighth embodiment, the present invention provides a method of preparing a compound of formula (18),



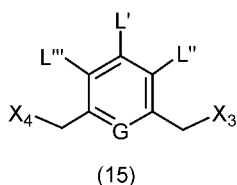
20

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:

(1) reacting a sulfonating reagent or an esterification reagent with the compound of formula (14),

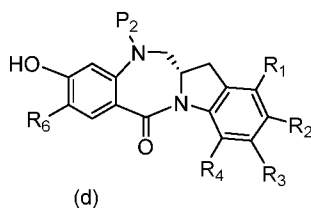


5 to form a compound of formula (15):



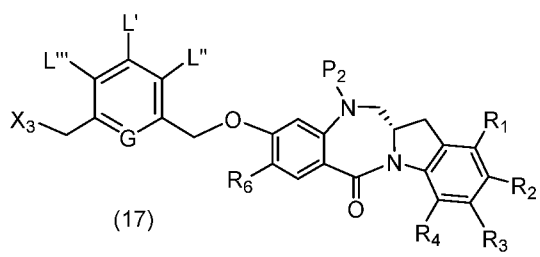
or a salt thereof;

(2) reacting the compound of formula (15) with a reduced monomer compound of formula (d),



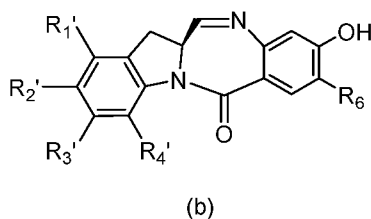
10

to form a compound of formula (17):



or a salt thereof; and

(3) reacting the compound of formula of (17) with a monomer of formula (b):



15

to form a compound of formula (18) or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein X₃ is -Cl; X₄ is a sulfonate ester or an activated ester; P₁ is an alcohol

protecting group; P_3 is H or an amine protecting group; the remaining variables are the same as described above. In one embodiment, X_4 is a sulfonate ester.

In a specific embodiment, the method of the thirty-eighth embodiment involves a method of preparing a compound of formula (Ib'), said method comprising the steps of:

- 5 (1) reacting a sulfonating reagent or an esterification reagent with the compound of formula (14b) to form a compound of formula (15b);
- (2) reacting a compound of formula (15b) or a salt thereof with with a reduced monomer compound of formula (d_1), to form a compound of formula (17b)
- (3) reacting the compound of formula of (17b) with a monomer of formula (b_1),
10 to form a compound of formula (18b), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein when P_3 is H, the reaction of the compound of (17b) with the reduced monomer (d_1) to form the compound of formula (Ib'); and when P_3 is an amine protecting group, the method further comprising reacting the compound of formula (18b) with an amine deprotecting reagent to formula the compound of formula (Ib').

15 In another specific embodiment, the method of the thirty-eighth embodiment involves a method of preparing a compound of formula (Ic'), said method comprising the steps of:

- (1) reacting a sulfonating reagent or an esterification reagent with the compound of formula (14b) to form a compound of formula (15c);
- 20 (2) reacting a compound of formula (15c) or a salt thereof with with a reduced monomer compound of formula (d_1), to form a compound of formula (17c)
- (3) reacting the compound of formula of (17c) with a monomer of formula (b_1), to form a compound of formula (18c), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein when P_3 is H, the reaction of the compound of (17c) with the reduced monomer
25 (d_1) to form the compound of formula (Ic'); and when P_3 is an amine protecting group, the method further comprising reacting the compound of formula (18c) with an amine deprotecting reagent to formula the compound of formula (Ic').

In yet another specific embodiment, the method of the thirty-eighth embodiment involves a method of preparing a compound of formula (IA), said method comprising
30 the steps of:

- (1) reacting a sulfonating reagent or an esterification reagent with the compound of formula (14A) to form a compound of formula (15A);

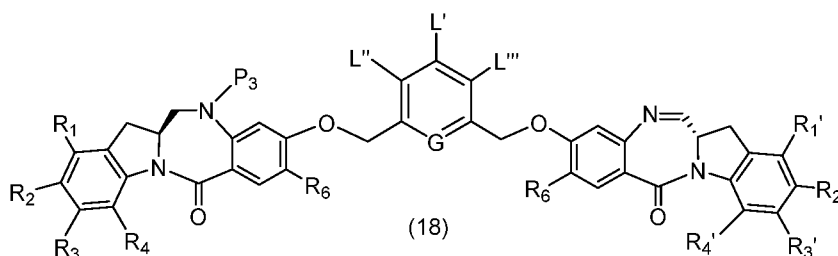
(2) reacting a compound of formula (15A) or a salt thereof with with a reduced monomer compound of formula (d₁), to form a compound of formula (17A)

(3) reacting the compound of formula of (17A) with a monomer of formula (b₁), to form a compound of formula (18A), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof,

- 5 wherein when P₃ is H, the reaction of the compound of (17A) with the reduced monomer (d₁) to form the compound of formula (IA); and when P₃ is an amine protecting group, the method further comprising reacting the compound of formula (18A) with an amine deprotecting reagent to formula the compound of formula (IA).

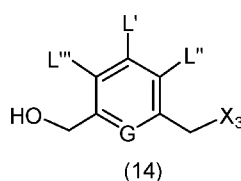
10 The conditions and reagents for the method of thirty-eighth embodiment are as described above in the twenty-fifth, thirtieth and/or thirty-fourth embodiment(s) and any specific embodiments described therein.

In a thirty-ninth embodiment, the present invention provides a method of preparing a compound of formula (18),

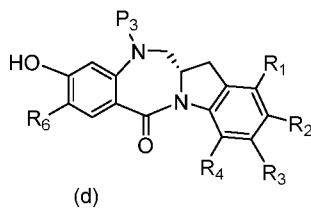


15 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:

- (1) reacting the compound of formula (14):

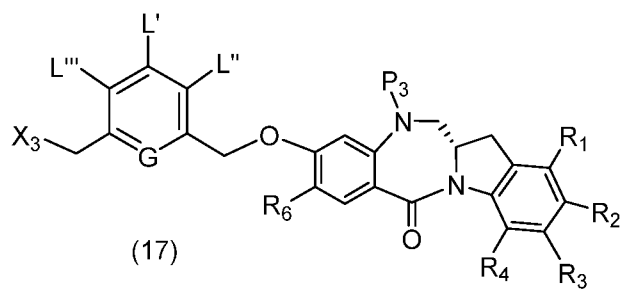


with a reduced monomer compound of formula (d),



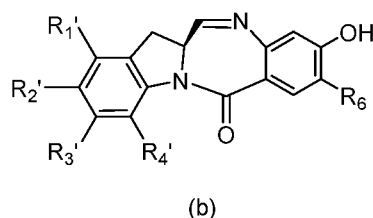
20

to form a compound of formula (17):



or a salt thereof; and

(2) reacting the compound of formula of (17) with a monomer of formula (b):



- 5 to form a compound of formula (18), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein X_3 is $-\text{Cl}$; P_1 is an alcohol protecting group; P_3 is H or an amine protecting group; and the remaining variables are the same as described above.

In a specific embodiment, the method of the thirty-ninth embodiment involves a method of preparing a compound of formula (Ib'), said method comprising the steps of:

- 10 (1) reacting a compound of formula (14b) with a reduced monomer compound of formula (d_1), to form a compound of formula (17b)

- (2) reacting the compound of formula of (17b) with a monomer of formula (b_1), to form a compound of formula (18b), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein when P_3 is H, the reaction of the compound of (17b) with the reduced monomer (d_1) to form the compound of formula (Ib'); and when P_3 is an amine protecting group, the method further comprising reacting the compound of formula (18b) with an amine deprotecting reagent to form the compound of formula (Ib').
- 15

In another specific embodiment, the method of the thirty-ninth embodiment involves a method of preparing a compound of formula (Ic'), said method comprising the steps of:

20

- (1) reacting a compound of formula (14c) with a reduced monomer compound of formula (d_1), to form a compound of formula (17c)

- (2) reacting the compound of formula of (17c) with a monomer of formula (b_1), to form a compound of formula (18c), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein when P_3 is H, the reaction of the compound of (17c) with the reduced monomer
- 25

(d₁) to form the compound of formula (Ic'); and when P₃ is an amine protecting group, the method further comprising reacting the compound of formula (18c) with an amine deprotecting reagent to form the compound of formula (Ic').

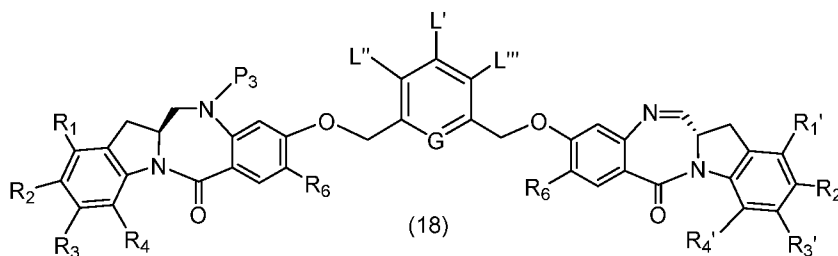
In yet another specific embodiment, the method of the thirty-ninth embodiment involves a method of preparing a compound of formula (IA), said method comprising the steps of:

(1) reacting a compound of formula (14A) with a reduced monomer compound of formula (d₁), to form a compound of formula (17A)

(2) reacting the compound of formula of (17A) with a monomer of formula (b₁), to form a compound of formula (18A), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein when P₃ is H, the reaction of the compound of (17A) with the reduced monomer (d₁) to form the compound of formula (IA'); and when P₃ is an amine protecting group, the method further comprising reacting the compound of formula (18A) with an amine deprotecting reagent to form the compound of formula (IA).

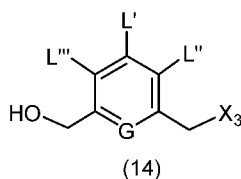
The conditions and reagents for the method of thirty-ninth embodiment are as described above in the thirty-first and/or thirty-fourth embodiment(s) and any specific embodiments described therein.

In a fortieth embodiment, the present invention provides a method of preparing a compound of formula (18),

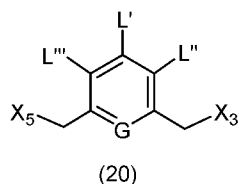


or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:

(1) reacting a halogenating reagent with the compound of formula (14):

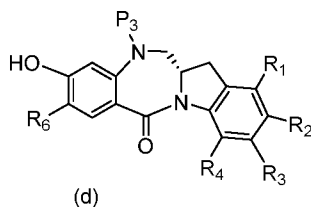


to form a compound of formula (20):

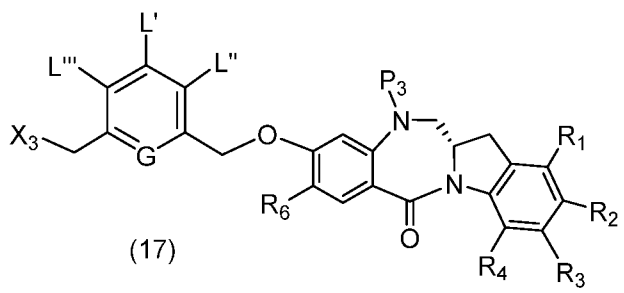


or a salt thereof;

(2) reacting the compound of formula (20) with a reduced monomer compound of formula (d),

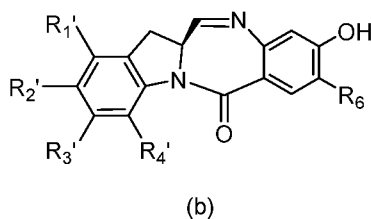


to form a compound of formula (17):



or a salt thereof; and

(3) reacting the compound of formula of (17) with a monomer of formula (b):



to form a compound of formula (18), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein X_3 is $-Cl$; X_5 is $-Br$ or $-I$; P_1 is an alcohol protecting group; P_3 is H or an amine protecting group; and the variables are the same as described above.

In a specific embodiment, the method of the fortieth embodiment involves a method of preparing a compound of formula (Ib'), said method comprising the steps of:

(1) reacting a brominating or iodinating reagent with the compound of formula (14b) to form a compound of formula (20b);

(2) reacting a compound of formula (20b) with with a reduced monomer compound of formula (d₁), to form a compound of formula (17b)

(3) reacting the compound of formula of (17b) with a monomer of formula (b₁), to form a compound of formula (18b), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein when P₃ is H, the reaction of the compound of (17b) with the reduced monomer (d₁) to form the compound of formula (Ib'); and when P₃ is an amine protecting group, the method further comprising reacting the compound of formula (18b) with an amine deprotecting reagent to form the compound of formula (Ib').

In another specific embodiment, the method of the fortieth embodiment involves a method of preparing a compound of formula (Ic'), said method comprising the steps of:

10 (1) reacting a brominating or iodinating reagent with the compound of formula (14c) to form a compound of formula (20c);

(2) reacting a compound of formula (20c) with with a reduced monomer compound of formula (d₁), to form a compound of formula (17c)

(3) reacting the compound of formula of (17c) with a monomer of formula (b₁), to form a compound of formula (18c), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein when P₃ is H, the reaction of the compound of (17c) with the reduced monomer (d₁) to form the compound of formula (Ic'); and when P₃ is an amine protecting group, the method further comprising reacting the compound of formula (18c) with an amine deprotecting reagent to form the compound of formula (Ic').

20 In yet another specific embodiment, the method of the fortieth embodiment involves a method of preparing a compound of formula (IA), said method comprising the steps of:

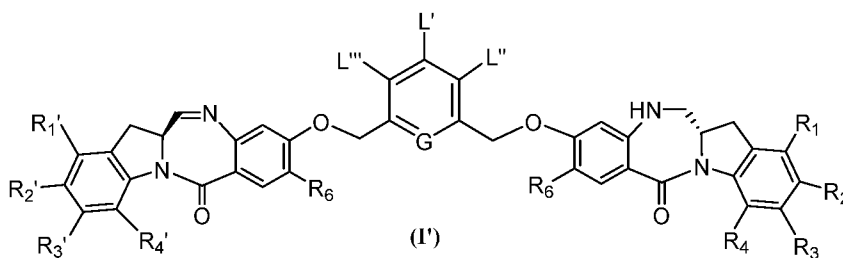
(1) reacting a brominating or iodinating reagent with the compound of formula (14A) to form a compound of formula (20A);

25 (2) reacting a compound of formula (20A) with with a reduced monomer compound of formula (d₁), to form a compound of formula (17A)

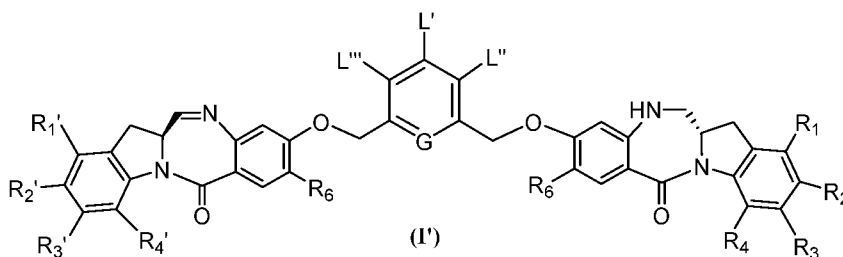
(3) reacting the compound of formula of (17A) with a monomer of formula (b₁), to form a compound of formula (18A), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein when P₃ is H, the reaction of the compound of (17A) with the reduced monomer (d₁) to form the compound of formula (Ib'); and when P₃ is an amine protecting group, the method further comprising reacting the compound of formula (18A) with an amine deprotecting reagent to form the compound of formula (Ib').

The conditions and reagents for the method of fortieth embodiment are as described above in the twenty-fifth, thirty-second and/or thirty-fourth embodiment(s) and any specific embodiments described therein.

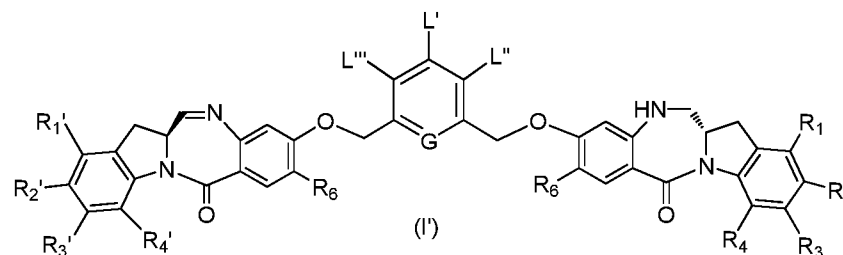
In a specific embodiment of the thirty-eighth, thirty-ninth, or fortieth embodiment, the compound of formula (17) is reacted with reduced monomer of formula (d), wherein P_3 is H, to form a compound of formula (I'):



In another specific embodiment of the thirty-sixth, thirty-seventh, or thirty-eighth embodiment, P_3 is an amine protecting group. When P_3 is an amine protecting group, the compound of formula (18) is further reacted with an amine deprotecting reagent to form a compound of formula (I'):

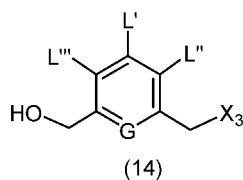


In a forty-first embodiment, the present invention provides a method of preparing a compound of formula (I'),

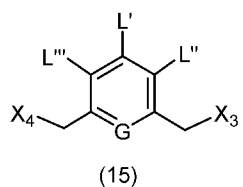


or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:

(1) reacting a sulfonating reagent or an esterification reagent with the compound of formula (14),

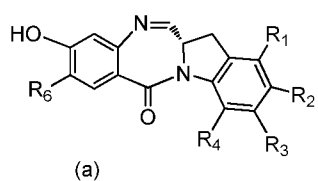


to form a compound of formula (15):

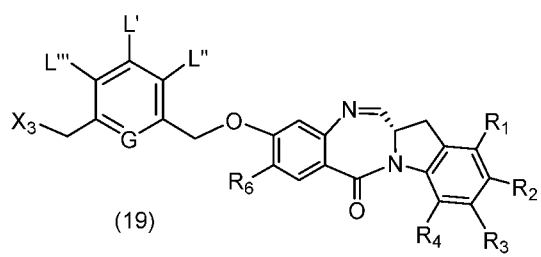


or a salt thereof;

- 5 (2) reacting the compound of formula (15) with a monomer compound of formula (a),

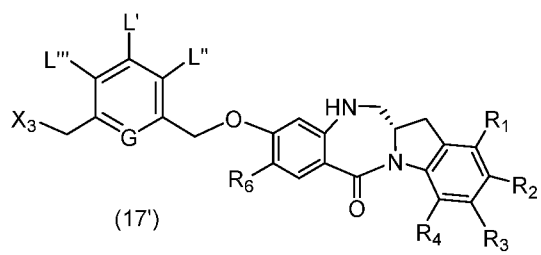


to form a compound of formula (19):



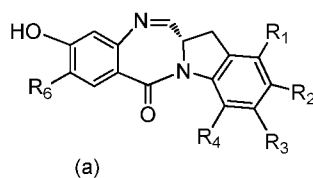
- 10 or a salt thereof;

(3) reacting the compound of formula (19) with an imine reducing agent to form a compound of formula (17'):



or a salt thereof; and

- 15 (6) reacting the compound of formula (17') with a monomer of formula (B):



to form the compound of formula (I'), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein X₃ is -Cl; X₄ is a sulfonate ester or an activated ester; P₁ is an alcohol protecting group; P₂ is an amine protecting group; and the remaining variables are the same as described above. In one embodiment, X₄ is a sulfonate ester.

In one embodiment, the method of the forty-first embodiment involves preparing a compound of formula (Ib'), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:

- (1) reacting a sulfonating reagent with the compound of formula (14b),
- 10 to form a compound of formula (15b), or a salt thereof;
- (2) reacting the compound of formula (15b) with a monomer compound of formula (a₁) to form a compound of formula (16b), or a salt thereof;
- (3) reacting the compound of formula (16b) with an imine reducing agent to form a compound of formula (17b'), or a salt thereof; and
- 15 (6) reacting the compound of formula (17b') with a monomer of formula (a₁) to form the compound of formula (Ib'), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

In another embodiment, the method of the forty-first embodiment involves preparing a compound of formula (Ic'), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:

- 20 (1) reacting a sulfonating reagent with the compound of formula (14c), to form a compound of formula (15c), or a salt thereof;
- (2) reacting the compound of formula (15c) with a monomer compound of formula (a₁) to form a compound of formula (16c), or a salt thereof;
- (3) reacting the compound of formula (16c) with an imine reducing agent to form
- 25 a compound of formula (17c'), or a salt thereof; and
- (6) reacting the compound of formula (17c') with a monomer of formula (a₁) to form the compound of formula (Ic'), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

In still another embodiment, the method of the forty-first embodiment involves preparing a compound of formula (IA'), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:

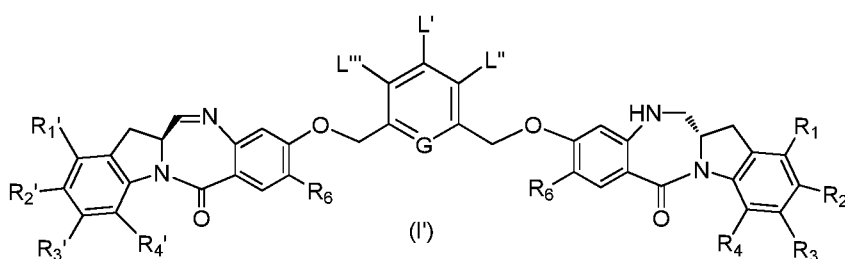
(1) reacting a sulfonating reagent with the compound of formula (14A),
to form a compound of formula (15A), or a salt thereof;

(2) reacting the compound of formula (15A) with a monomer compound of
formula (a₁) to form a compound of formula (16A), or a salt thereof;

5 (3) reacting the compound of formula (16A) with an imine reducing agent to
form a compound of formula (17A'), or a salt thereof; and

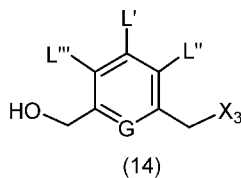
(6) reacting the compound of formula (17A') with a monomer of formula (a₁) to
form the compound of formula (IA'), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

In a forty-second embodiment, the present invention provides a method of
10 preparing a compound of formula (I'),

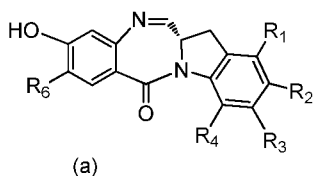


or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:

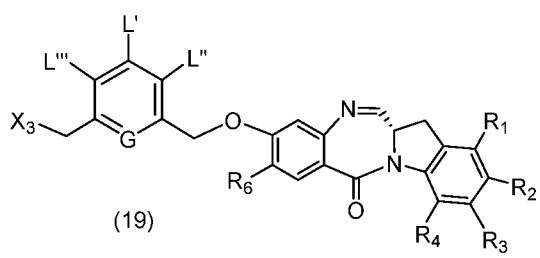
(1) reacting the compound of formula (14):



15 with a monomer compound of formula (b),

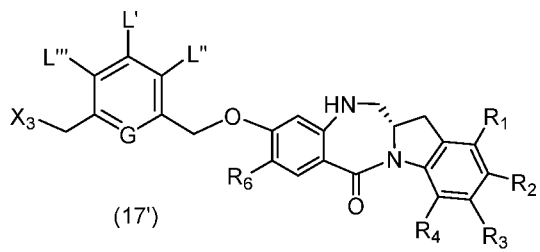


to form a compound of formula (19):



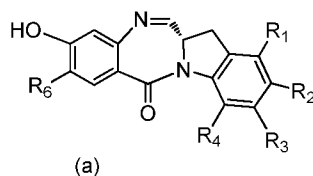
or a salt thereof;

(2) reacting the compound of formula (19) with an imine reducing agent to form a compound of formula (17'):



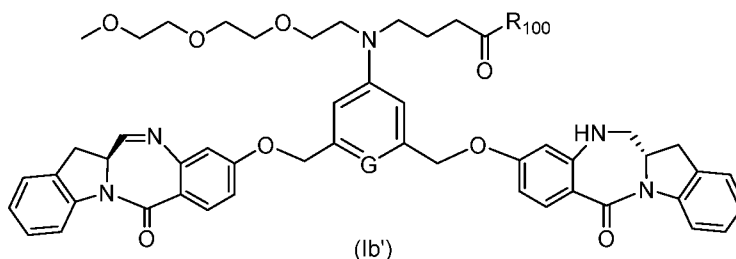
or a salt thereof; and

5 (3) reacting the compound of formula (17') with a monomer of formula (a):



to form the compound of formula (I'); wherein X₃ is -Cl; P₁ is an alcohol protecting group; the variables are the same as described above.

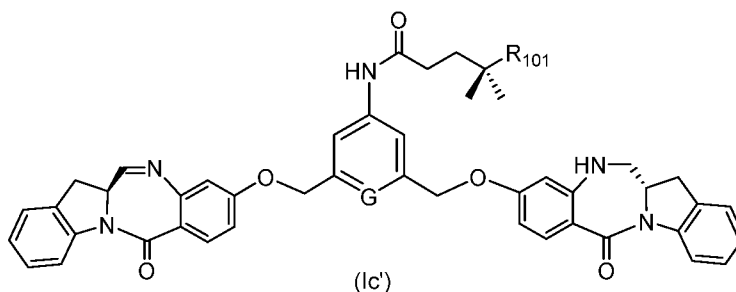
In one embodiment, the method of the forty-second embodiment involves
10 preparing a compound of formula (Ib'),



or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:

- (1) reacting the compound of formula (14b) with a monomer compound of formula (a₁) to form a compound of formula (19b), or a salt thereof;
- 15 (2) reacting the compound of formula (19b) with an imine reducing agent to form a compound of formula (17b'), or a salt thereof; and
- (3) reacting the compound of formula (17b') with a monomer of formula (a₁) to form the compound of formula (Ib').

In another embodiment, the method of the forty-second embodiment involves
20 preparing a compound of formula (Ic'),



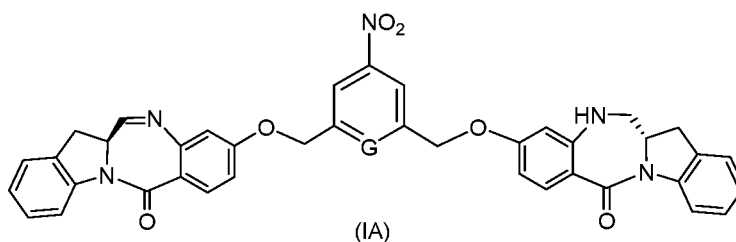
or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:

(1) reacting the compound of formula (14c) with a monomer compound of formula (a₁) to form a compound of formula (19c), or a salt thereof;

5 (2) reacting the compound of formula (19c) with an imine reducing agent to form a compound of formula (17c'), or a salt thereof; and

(3) reacting the compound of formula (17c') with a monomer of formula (a₁) to form the compound of formula (Ic').

In still another embodiment, the method of the forty-second embodiment
10 involves preparing a compound of formula (IA),



or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:

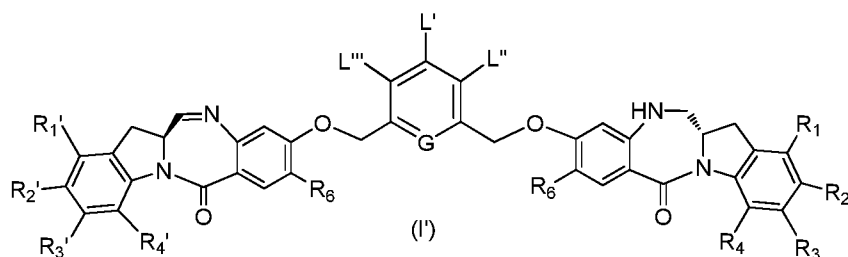
(1) reacting the compound of formula (14A) with a monomer compound of
15 formula (a₁) to form a compound of formula (19A), or a salt thereof;

(2) reacting the compound of formula (19A) with an imine reducing agent to form a compound of formula (17A'), or a salt thereof; and

(3) reacting the compound of formula (17A') with a monomer of formula (a₁) to form the compound of formula (IA').

20 The conditions and reagents for the method of forty-second embodiment are as described above in the twenty-eighth, thirty-third and/or thirty-fourth embodiment(s) and any specific embodiments described therein.

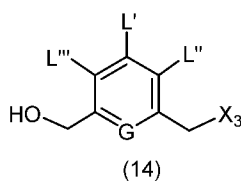
In a forty-third embodiment, the present invention provides a method of preparing a compound of formula (I'),



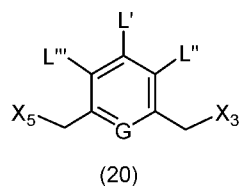
or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:

(1) reacting a brominating or iodinating reagent with a compound of formula

5 (14):

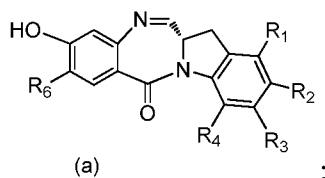


or a salt thereof, to form a compound of formula (20):

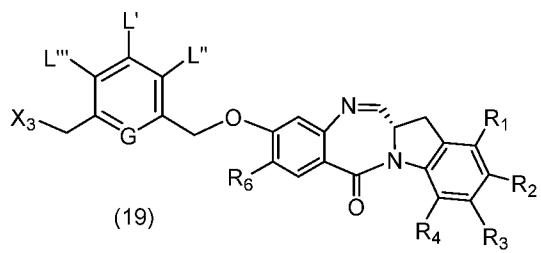


or a salt thereof;

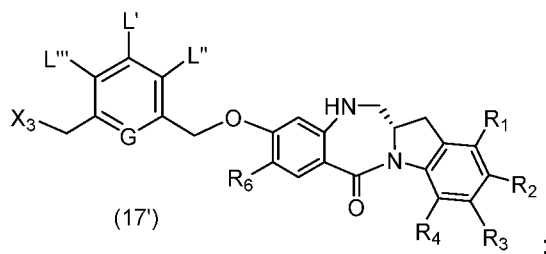
10 (2) reacting a compound of formula (20) or a salt thereof with a monomer compound of formula (a):



to form a compound of formula (19):

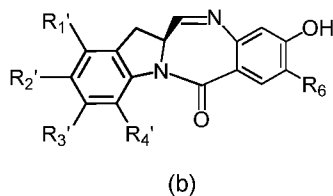


15 (3) reacting the compound of formula (19) with an imine reducing agent to form a compound of formula (17'):



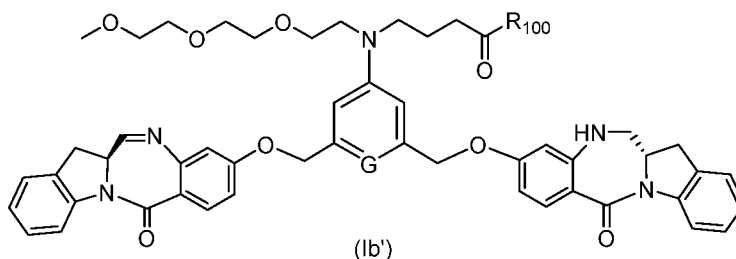
or a salt thereof, and

(4) reacting the compound of (17') with a monomer of formula (b):



- 5 to form the compound of formula (I'), wherein X₃ is -Cl; X₅ is -Br or -I; and the remaining variables are the same as described above.

In one embodiment the method of the forty-third embodiment involves preparing a compound of formula (Ib'),



- 10 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:

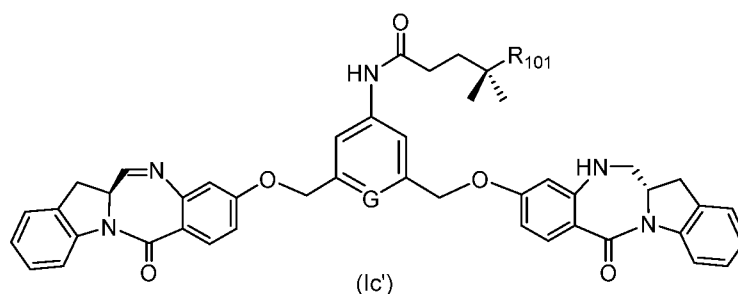
(1) reacting a brominating or iodinating reagent with a compound of formula (14b) or a salt thereof, to form a compound of formula (20b), or a salt thereof;

(2) reacting a compound of formula (20b) or a salt thereof with a monomer compound of formula (a₁) to form a compound of formula (19b);

- 15 (3) reacting the compound of formula (19b) with an imine reducing agent to form a compound of formula (17b'), or a salt thereof, and

(4) reacting the compound of (17b') with a monomer of formula (a₁) to form the compound of formula (Ib').

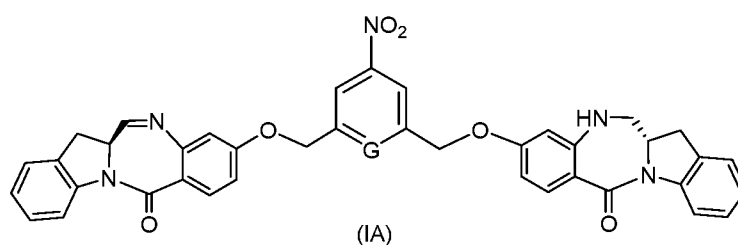
- 20 In another embodiment the method of the forty-third embodiment involves preparing a compound of formula (Ic'),



or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:

- (1) reacting a brominating or iodinating reagent with a compound of formula (14c) or a salt thereof, to form a compound of formula (20c), or a salt thereof;
- (2) reacting a compound of formula (20c) or a salt thereof with a monomer compound of formula (a₁) to form a compound of formula (19c);
- (3) reacting the compound of formula (19c) with an imine reducing agent to form a compound of formula (17c'), or a salt thereof, and
- (4) reacting the compound of (17c') with a monomer of formula (a₁) to form the compound of formula (Ic').

In still another embodiment, the method of the forty-third embodiment involves preparing a compound of formula (IA),

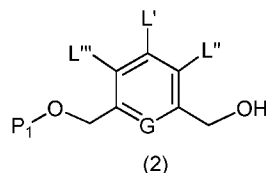


- (1) reacting a brominating or iodinating reagent with a compound of formula (14A) or a salt thereof, to form a compound of formula (20A), or a salt thereof;
- (2) reacting a compound of formula (20A) or a salt thereof with a monomer compound of formula (a₁) to form a compound of formula (19A);
- (3) reacting the compound of formula (19A) with an imine reducing agent to form a compound of formula (17A'), or a salt thereof, and
- (4) reacting the compound of (17A') with a monomer of formula (a₁) to form the compound of formula (IA').

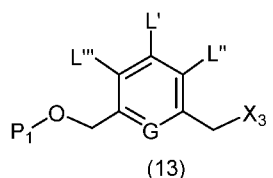
The conditions and reagents for the method of the forty-third embodiment are as described above in the twenty-fifth, twenty-seventh, thirty-third and/or thirty-fourth embodiment(s) and any specific embodiments described therein.

In one embodiment of any one of the thirty-fifth to forty-third embodiments, the compound of formula (14) or a salt thereof is prepared by a method comprising the steps of:

(1) reacting a chlorinating reagent with a compound of formula (2):



to form a compound of formula (13):



or a salt thereof; and

(2) reacting the compound of formula (13) with an alcohol deprotecting reagent to form the compound of formula (14) or a salt thereof, wherein X₃ is -Cl; and P₁ is an alcohol protecting group.

In a specific embodiment, the compound of formula (14b) or a salt thereof is prepared by a method comprising the steps of: (1) reacting a chlorinating reagent with a compound of formula (2b) to form a compound of formula (13b) or a salt thereof; and (2) reacting the compound of formula (13b) with an alcohol deprotecting reagent to form the compound of formula (14b) or a salt thereof.

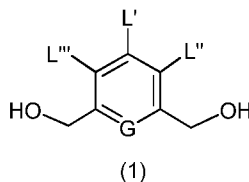
In another specific embodiment, the compound of formula (14c) or a salt thereof is prepared by a method comprising the steps of: (1) reacting a chlorinating reagent with a compound of formula (2c) to form a compound of formula (13c) or a salt thereof; and (2) reacting the compound of formula (13c) with an alcohol deprotecting reagent to form the compound of formula (14c) or a salt thereof.

In yet another specific embodiment, the compound of formula (14A) or a salt thereof is prepared by a method comprising the steps of: (1) reacting a chlorinating reagent with a compound of formula (2A) to form a compound of formula (13A) or a

salt thereof; and (2) reacting the compound of formula (13A) with an alcohol deprotecting reagent to form the compound of formula (14A) or a salt thereof.

The conditions and reagents for the method of preparing compound of formula (14), (14b), (14c) or (14A) above are as described above in the twenty-second and/or
 5 twenty-third embodiment(s) and any specific embodiments described therein.

In another embodiment, the compound of formula (2) is prepared by reacting a compound of formula (1) with an alcohol protecting reagent



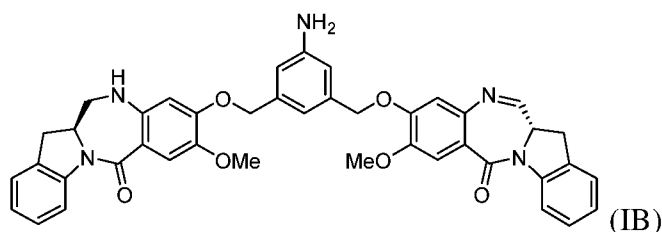
In a specific embodiment, the compound of formula (2b) is prepared by reacting
 10 a compound of formula (1b) with an alcohol protecting reagent.

In another specific embodiment, the compound of formula (2c) is prepared by reacting a compound of formula (1c) with an alcohol protecting reagent.

In yet another specific embodiment, the compound of formula (2A) is prepared by reacting a compound of formula (1A) with an alcohol protecting reagent.

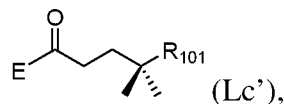
15 The conditions and reagents for the method of preparing compound of formula (2), (2b), (2c) or (2A) above are as described above in the first embodiment and any specific embodiments described therein.

In a forty-fourth embodiment, the present invention provides a method of preparing a compound formula (IB)



20 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, comprising the step of reacting the compound of formula (IA) with a reducing agent. Any suitable reducing agent can be used. In one embodiment, the reducing agent is selected from the group consisting of: hydrogen gas, sodium hydrosulfite, sodium sulfide, stannous chloride, titanium (II)
 25 chloride, zinc, iron and samarium iodide. In a specific embodiment, the reducing agent is Fe/NH₄Cl or Zn/NH₄Cl.

In one embodiment, the compound of formula (Ic') can be prepared by reacting the compound of formula (IB) with a compound of formula (Lc'):



wherein E is -OH, halide or -C(=O)E is an activated ester; and R₁₀₀ is (C₁-C₃)alkoxy

5 In a specific embodiment, E is -OH and the reaction of the compound of formula (IB) and the compound of formula (Lc') is carried out in the presence of an activating agent.

In one embodiment, the activating agent is a carbodiimide, a uronium, an active ester, a phosphonium, 2-alkyl-1-alkylcarbonyl-1,2-dihydroquinoline, 2-alkoxy-1-
 10 alkoxy carbonyl-1,2-dihydroquinoline, or alkylchloroformate. In a specific embodiment, the activating agent is a carbodiimide. In a more specific embodiment, the activating agent is dicyclohexylcarbodiimide (DCC), 1-ethyl-3-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)carbodiimide (EDC), or diisopropylcarbodiimide (DIC). In another specific embodiment, the activating agent is *N*-ethoxycarbonyl-2-ethoxy-1,2-
 15 dihydroquinoline.

In one embodiment, for methods described above, R₁₀₀ is methoxy and R₁₀₁ is methyl.

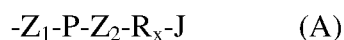
The method of the present invention can also be any combination of the methods described above (*e.g.*, methods in the first, second, third, fourth, fifth, sixth, seventh,
 20 eighth, ninth, tenth, eleventh, twelfth, thirteenth, fourteenth, fifteenth, sixteenth, seventeenth, eighteenth, nineteenth, twentieth, twenty-first, twenty-second, twenty-third, twenty-fourth, twenty-fifth, twenty-sixth, twenty-seventh, twenty-eighth, twenty-ninth, thirtieth, thirty-first, thirty-second, thirty-third, thirty-fourth, thirty-fifth, thirty-sixth, thirty-seventh, thirty-eighth, thirty-ninth, fortieth, forty-first, forty-second, or
 25 forty-third embodiment). For example, the combination of the methods of the first and second embodiments, the combination of methods of the first, second, and third embodiments, the combination of the methods of the fourth and fifth embodiments, the combination of the methods of the fourth, fifth and sixth embodiments, the combination of the methods of the sixth and eighth embodiments, the combination of the methods of
 30 thirteenth and fourteenth embodiments, the combination of the methods of thirteenth, fourteenth and fifteenth embodiments, and the combination of the methods of the seventeenth and eighteenth embodiments are also included in the present invention. The

variable definitions described in any of the specific embodiments below also apply to any combination of methods described above.

The reactions described herein in the methods of the present invention can be carried out in any suitable solvent(s). In one embodiment, the solvent is an organic solvent. Exemplary organic solvents include, but are not limited to, dichloromethane, dichloroethane, DMF, DMA, acetone, acetonitrile, THF, DMSO, ethyl acetate etc., or a combination thereof.

The reactions described herein in the methods of the present invention can be carried out at any suitable temperature. In one embodiment, the reaction can be carried out at room temperature. In another embodiment, the reaction can be carried out at a low temperature, such as 0°C. In yet another embodiment, the reaction can be carried out at an elevated temperature, such as about 40°C, about 50 °C etc.

In a 1st specific embodiment, for methods in the first, second, third, fourth, fifth, sixth, seventh, eighth, ninth, tenth, eleventh, twelfth, thirteenth, fourteenth, fifteenth, sixteenth, seventeenth, eighteenth, nineteenth embodiment, twentieth, twenty-first, twenty-second, twenty-third, twenty-fourth, twenty-fifth, twenty-sixth, twenty-seventh, twenty-eighth, twenty-ninth, thirtieth, thirty-first, thirty-second, thirty-third, thirty-fourth, thirty-fifth, thirty-sixth, thirty-seventh, thirty-eighth, thirty-ninth, fortieth, forty-first, forty-second, or forty-third embodiment, one of L', L'', and L''' is represented by the following formula:



and the other two are the same or different, and are independently selected from -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-$, R_c , halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R'';

wherein:

one of the Z₁ and Z₂ is -C(=O)-, and the other is -NR₅-;

P is an amino acid residue or a peptide containing between 2 to 20 amino acid residues;

J is a moiety comprising a reactive group that is capable of covalently linking the cytotoxic compound to a cell-binding agent;

R_x is an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms; and

R_5 is -H or an optionally substituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 10 carbon atoms.

5 In a more specific embodiment, one of L' , L'' and L''' is represented by formula (A), and the others are each independently -H, an linear or branched alkyl having from 1 to 6 carbon atoms, halogen, -OH, (C_1-C_6) alkoxy, or $-NO_2$.

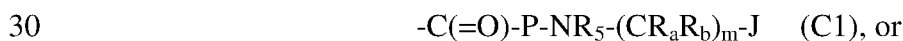
In another more specific embodiment, one of L' , L'' and L''' is represented by formula (A), and the others are -H.

10 In yet another more specific embodiment, L' is represented by formula (A); and L'' and L''' are both -H.

In another more specific embodiment, for formula (A), R_x is a linear, branched or cyclic alkyl having 1 to 6 carbon atoms optionally substituted with halogen, -OH, (C_1-C_3) alkyl, (C_1-C_3) alkoxy, halo (C_1-C_3) alkyl, or a charged substituent or an ionizable group Q.

In more specific embodiment, J is NHR^{cl} , $-COOR^{cl}$ or -COE, wherein -COE represents a reactive ester, and R^{cl} is -H or linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms optionally substituted with halogen, -OH or (C_1-C_3) alkoxy. Even more specifically, J is $-COOR^{cl}$ and R^{cl} is a (C_1-C_3) alkyl.

20 In a 2nd specific embodiment, for methods in the first, second, third, fourth, fifth, sixth, seventh, eighth, ninth, tenth, eleventh, twelfth, thirteenth, fourteenth, fifteenth, sixteenth, seventeenth, eighteenth, nineteenth, twentieth, twenty-first, twenty-second, twenty-third, twenty-fourth, twenty-fifth, twenty-sixth, twenty-seventh, twenty-eighth, twenty-ninth, thirtieth, thirty-first, thirty-second, thirty-third, thirty-fourth, thirty-fifth, 25 thirty-sixth, thirty-seventh, thirty-eighth, thirty-ninth, fortieth, forty-first, forty-second, or forty-third embodiment or the 1st specific embodiment, L' is represented by the following formula:



wherein:



R^{cl} is -H or linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms optionally substituted with halogen, -OH or (C₁-C₃)alkoxy;

R_a and R_b , for each occurrence, are each independently -H, (C₁-C₃)alkyl or a charged substituent or an ionizable group Q;

5 m is an integer from 1 to 6;

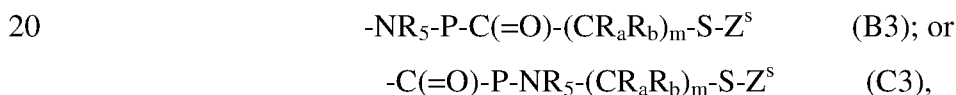
m' is 0 or an integer from 1 to 6; and,

Cy is a cyclic alkyl having 5 or 6 ring carbon atoms optionally substituted with halogen, -OH, (C₁-C₃)alkyl, (C₁-C₃)alkoxy, or halo(C₁-C₃)alkyl.

10 In a more specific embodiment, R_a and R_b are both H; Cy is cyclohexane; and R_5 is H or Me.

In another more specific embodiment, m' is 0 or 1.

In a 3rd specific embodiment, for methods in the first, second, third, fourth, fifth, sixth, seventh, eighth, ninth, tenth, eleventh, twelfth, thirteenth, fourteenth, fifteenth, sixteenth, seventeenth, eighteenth, nineteenth, twentieth, twenty-first, twenty-second, twenty-third, twenty-fourth, twenty-fifth, twenty-sixth, twenty-seventh, twenty-eighth, twenty-ninth, thirtieth, thirty-first, thirty-second, thirty-third, thirty-fourth, thirty-fifth, thirty-sixth, thirty-seventh, thirty-eighth, thirty-ninth, fortieth, forty-first, forty-second, or forty-third embodiment or the 1st specific embodiment, L' is represented by the following formula:

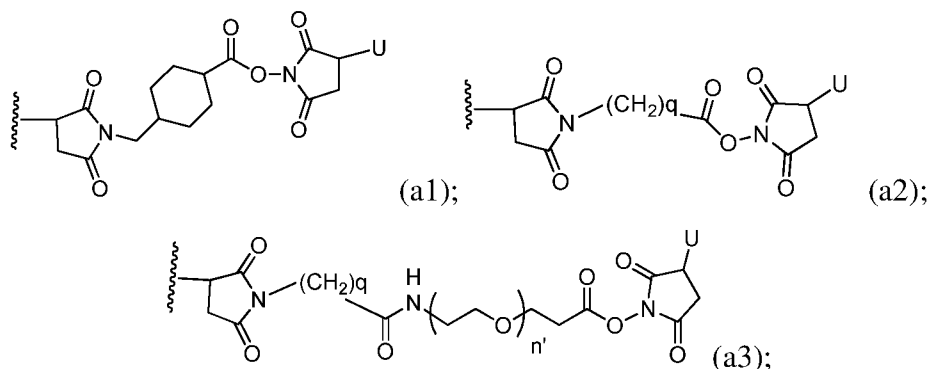


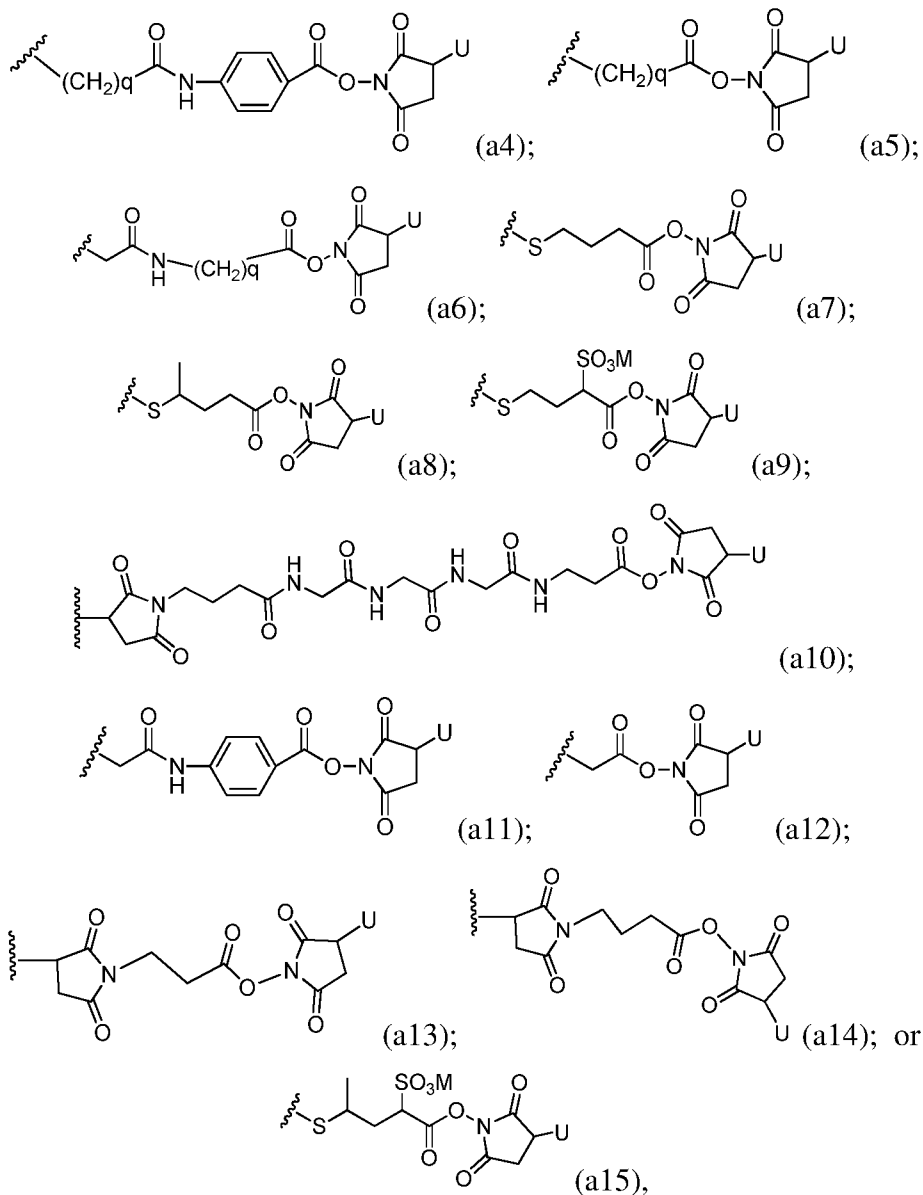
wherein:

R_a and R_b , for each occurrence, are each independently -H, (C₁-C₃)alkyl or a charged substituent or an ionizable group Q;

25 m is an integer from 1 to 6;

Z^s is -H, -SR^d, -C(=O)R^{dl} or is selected from any one of the following formulas:





wherein:

q is an integer from 1 to 5;

10 n' is an integer from 2 to 6;

U is -H or SO₃M;

M is H⁺, Na⁺ or K⁺;

15 R^d is a linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 6 carbon atoms or is selected from phenyl, nitrophenyl (*e.g.*, 2 or 4-nitrophenyl), dinitrophenyl (*e.g.*, 2,4-dinitrophenyl), carboxynitrophenyl (*e.g.*, 3-carboxy-4-nitrophenyl), pyridyl or nitropyridyl (*e.g.*, 4-nitropyridyl); and

R^{dl} is a linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 6 carbon atoms.

In a more specific embodiment, Z^s is $-SR^d$ and R^d is a (C_1-C_3) alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl (*e.g.*, 4-nitropyridyl).

In a more specific embodiment, the charged substituent or an ionizable group Q is
 i) $-SO_3H$, $-Z'-SO_3H$, $-OPO_3H_2$, $-Z'-OPO_3H_2$, $-PO_3H_2$, $-Z'-PO_3H_2$, $-CO_2H$, $-Z'-CO_2H$,
 5 $-NR_{11}R_{12}$, or $-Z'-NR_{11}R_{12}$, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof; or, ii)
 $-N^+R_{14}R_{15}R_{16}X^{A-}$ or $-Z'-N^+R_{14}R_{15}R_{16}X^{A-}$; Z' is an optionally substituted alkylene, an
 optionally substituted cycloalkylene or an optionally substituted phenylene; R_{11} , R_{12} , R_{14}
 to R_{16} are each independently H or an optionally substituted alkyl; and X^{A-} is a
 pharmaceutically acceptable anion. Even more specifically, Q is SO_3H or a
 10 pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

In another more specific embodiment, R_a and R_b are both -H and R_5 is H or Me.

In yet another more specific embodiment, $-(CR_aR_b)_{m-}$ is $-(CH_2)_{m''}-C(Me_2)-$ and
 m'' is an integer from 1 to 5.

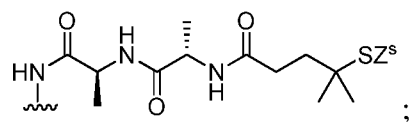
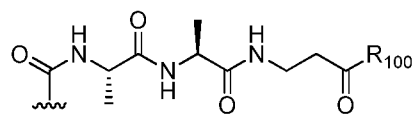
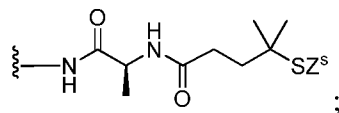
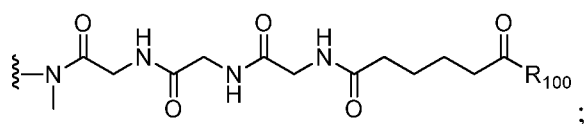
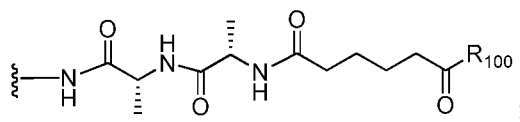
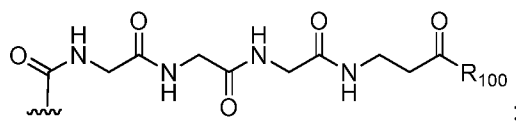
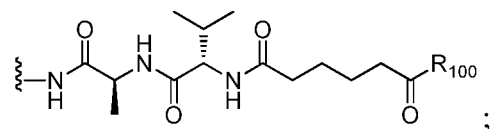
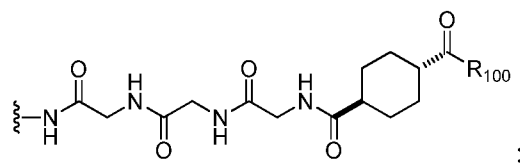
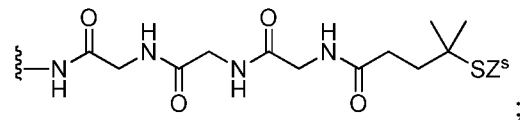
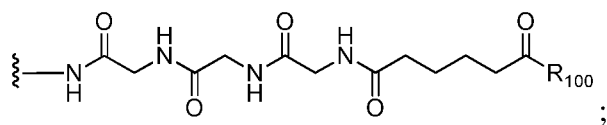
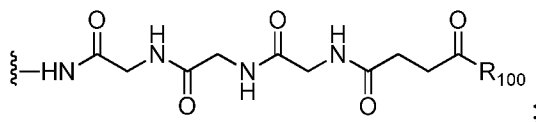
In a 4th specific embodiment, for formula (B1), (B2), (B3), (C1), (C2) or (C3), P
 15 is a peptide containing 2 to 10 amino acid residues; and the remaining variables are as
 described above in the 2nd or 3rd specific embodiment or any more specific embodiments
 described therein.

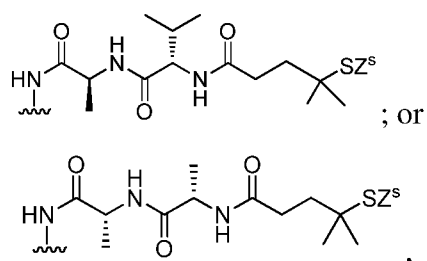
In a more specific embodiment, P is a peptide containing 2 to 5 amino acid
 residues.

20 In another more specific embodiment, P is Gly-Gly-Gly, Ala-Val, Val-Ala, Val-
 Cit, Val-Lys, Phe-Lys, Lys-Lys, Ala-Lys, Phe-Cit, Leu-Cit, Ile-Cit, Trp, Cit, Phe-Ala,
 Phe-N⁹-tosyl-Arg, Phe-N⁹-nitro-Arg, Phe-Phe-Lys, D-Phe-Phe-Lys, Gly-Phe-Lys, Leu-
 Ala-Leu, Ile-Ala-Leu, Val-Ala-Val, Ala-Leu-Ala-Leu, β -Ala-Leu-Ala-Leu and Gly-Phe-
 Leu-Gly, Val-Arg, Arg-Val, Arg-Arg, Val-D-Cit, Val-D-Lys, Val-D-Arg, D-Val-Cit, D-
 25 Val-Lys, D-Val-Arg, D-Val-D-Cit, D-Val-D-Lys, D-Val-D-Arg, D-Arg-D-Arg, Ala-Ala,
 Ala-D-Ala, D-Ala-Ala, D-Ala-D-Ala, Ala-Met, or Met-Ala. Even more specifically, P
 is Gly-Gly-Gly, Ala-Val, Ala-Ala, Ala-D-Ala, D-Ala-Ala, or D-Ala-D-Ala.

In a 5th specific embodiment, for methods in the first, second, third, fourth, fifth,
 sixth, seventh, eighth, ninth, tenth, eleventh, twelfth, thirteenth, fourteenth, fifteenth,
 30 sixteenth, seventeenth, eighteenth, nineteenth, twentieth, twenty-first, twenty-second,
 twenty-third, twenty-fourth, twenty-fifth, twenty-sixth, twenty-seventh, twenty-eighth,
 twenty-ninth, thirtieth, thirty-first, thirty-second, thirty-third, thirty-fourth, thirty-fifth,

thirty-sixth, thirty-seventh, thirty-eighth, thirty-ninth, fortieth, forty-first, forty-second, and forty-third embodiments, L' is represented by the following formula:





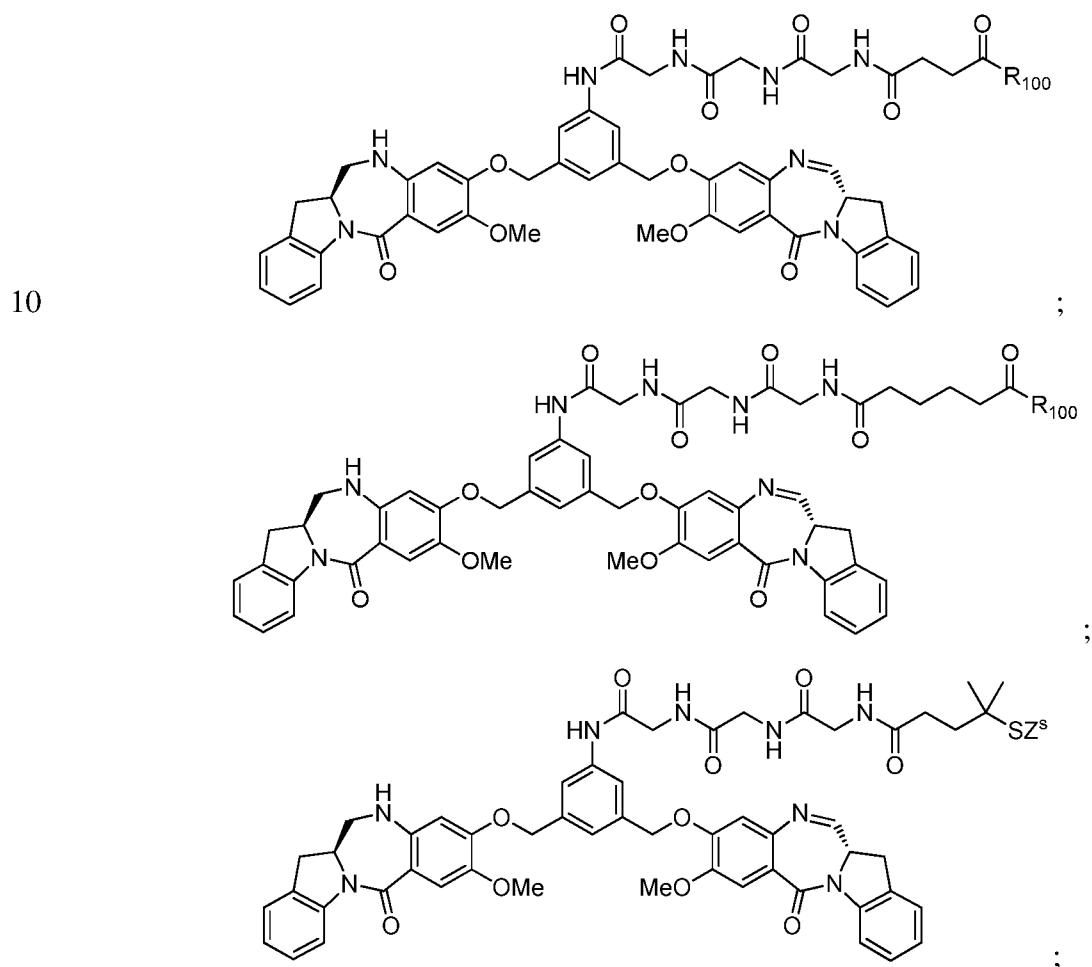
wherein:

R_{100} is a (C₁-C₃)alkoxy;

5 Z^s is $-SR_{101}$; and

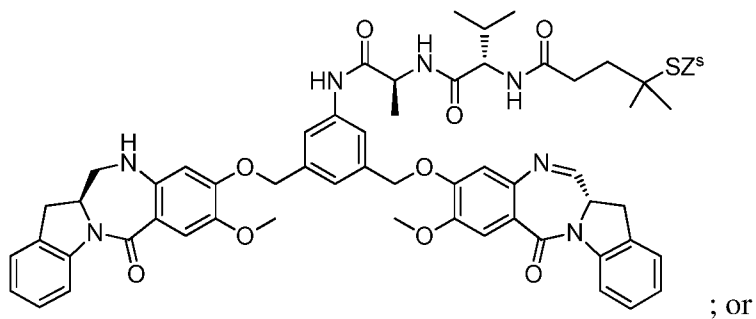
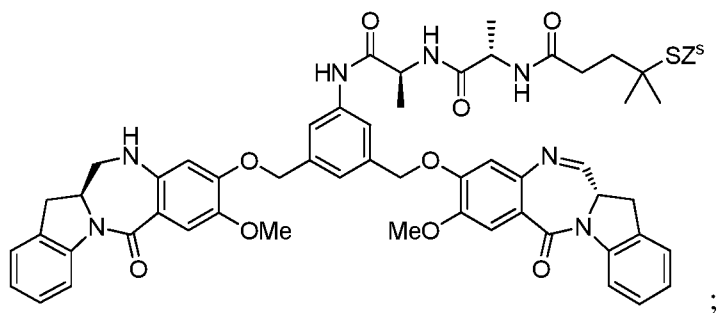
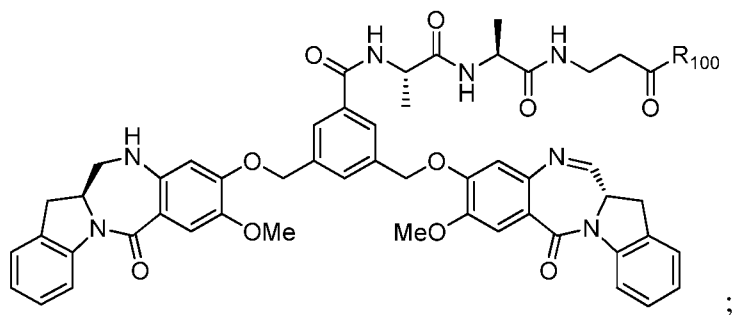
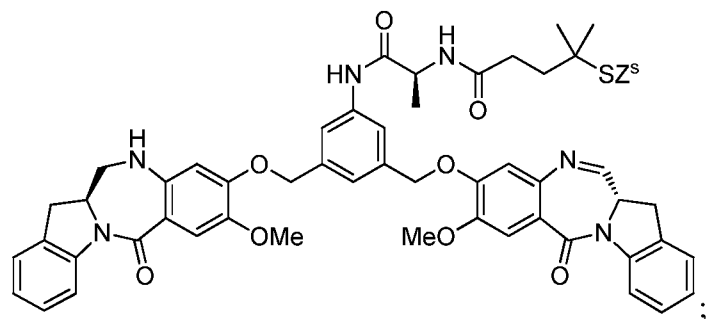
R_{101} is a (C₁-C₃)alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl (*e.g.*, 4-nitropyridyl).

In a 6th specific embodiment, for methods in the eighth, ninth, tenth, fifteenth, sixteenth or nineteenth embodiment, compounds of formula (I') is represented by the following formula:

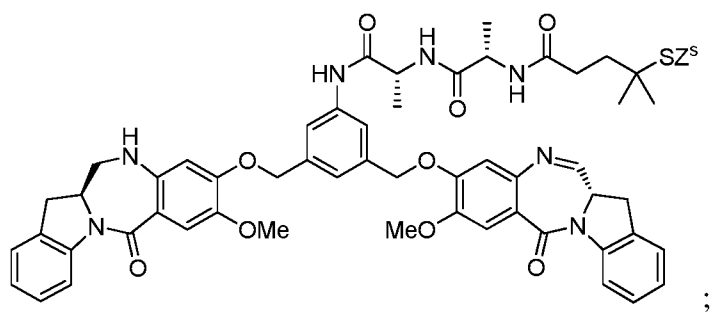




:



5



or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein:

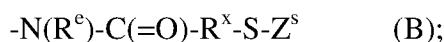
R_{100} is a (C₁-C₃)alkoxy;

Z^s is $-SR_{101}$; and

R_{101} is a (C_1-C_3) alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl (*e.g.*, 4-nitropyridyl).

In a 7th specific embodiment, for methods described in the 5th or 6th specific embodiment, R_{100} is -OMe and R_{101} is Me or pyridyl.

5 In a 8th specific embodiment, for methods in the first, second, third, fourth, fifth, sixth, seventh, eighth, ninth, tenth, eleventh, twelfth, thirteenth, fourteenth, fifteenth, sixteenth, seventeenth, eighteenth, nineteenth, twentieth, twenty-first, twenty-second, twenty-third, twenty-fourth, twenty-fifth, twenty-sixth, twenty-seventh, twenty-eighth, twenty-ninth embodiment, thirtieth, thirty-first, thirty-second, thirty-third, thirty-fourth, thirty-fifth, thirty-sixth, thirty-seventh, thirty-eighth, thirty-ninth, fortieth, forty-first, forty-second, and forty-third one of L' , L'' , and L''' is represented by the following formula:



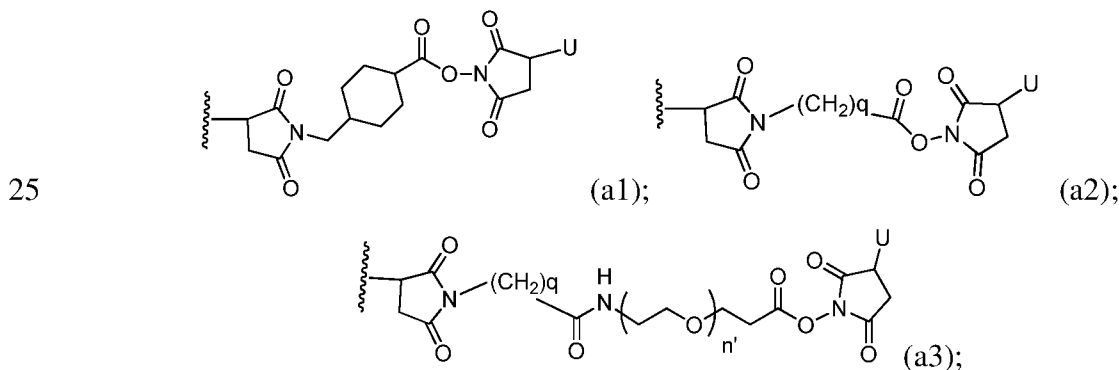
wherein:

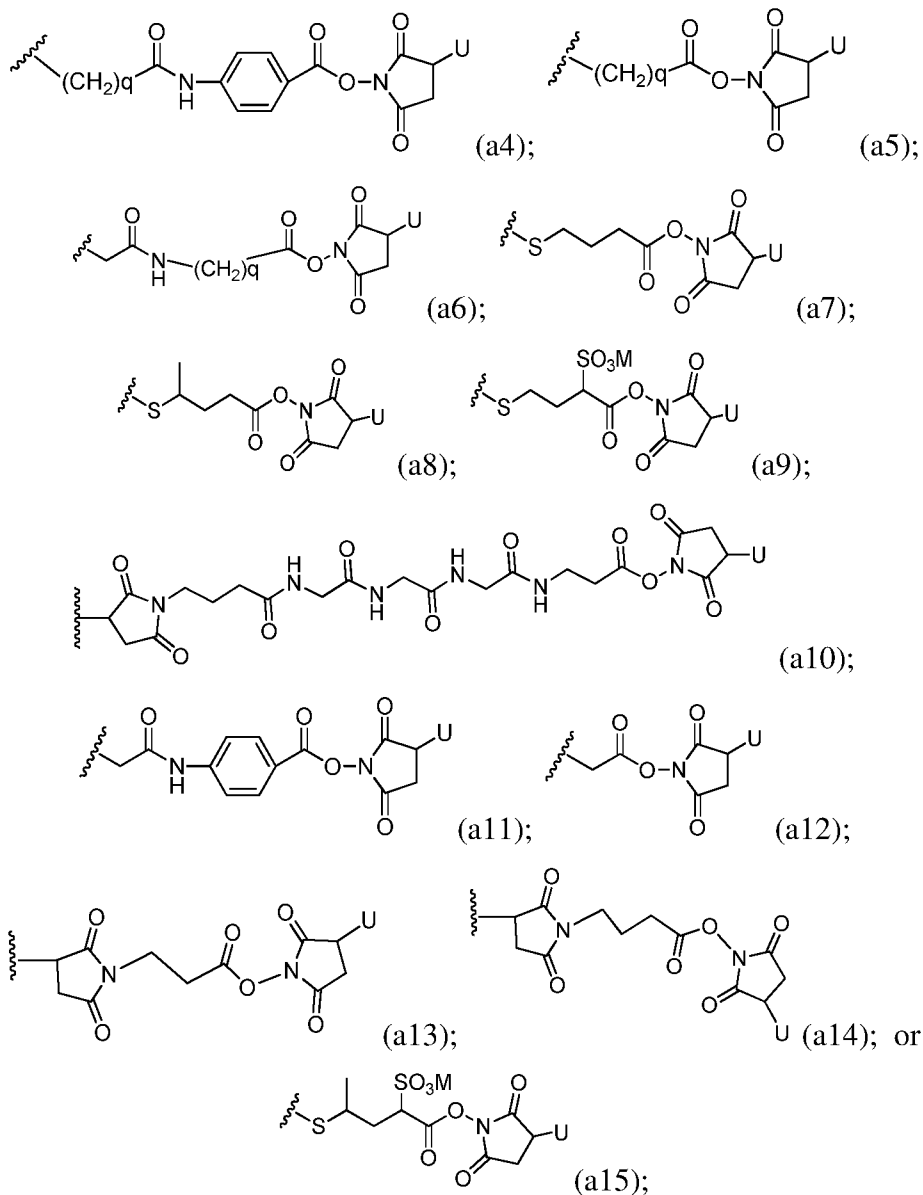
15 R^x is a linear or branched alkylene having 1 to 6 carbon atoms, optionally substituted with a charged substituent or an ionizable group Q;

Q is i) $-SO_3H$, $-Z'-SO_3H$, $-OPO_3H_2$, $-Z'-OPO_3H_2$, $-PO_3H_2$, $-Z'-PO_3H_2$, $-CO_2H$, $-Z'-CO_2H$, $-NR_{11}R_{12}$, or $-Z'-NR_{11}R_{12}$, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof; or, ii) $-N^+R_{14}R_{15}R_{16}X^{A-}$ or $-Z'-N^+R_{14}R_{15}R_{16}X^{A-}$; Z' is an optionally substituted alkylene, an optionally substituted cycloalkylene or an optionally substituted phenylene; R_{11} , R_{12} , R_{14} , R_{15} and R_{16} are each independently H or an optionally substituted alkyl; and X^{A-} is a pharmaceutically acceptable anion;

R^e is -H or a linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 6 carbon atoms;

Z^s is -H, $-SR^d$, $-C(=O)R^{d1}$ or is selected from any one of the following formulas:





wherein:

q is an integer from 1 to 5;

10 R^d is a linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 6 carbon atoms or is selected from phenyl, nitrophenyl, dinitrophenyl, carboxynitrophenyl, pyridyl and nitropyridyl;

R^{d1} is a linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 6 carbon atoms;

n'' is an integer from 2 to 6;

U is -H or -SO₃M; and

15 M is -H or a cation.

In a more specific embodiment, one of L', L'' and L''' is represented by formula (B), and the others are each independently -H, an linear or branched alkyl having from 1 to 6 carbon atoms, halogen, -OH, (C₁-C₆)alkoxy, or -NO₂.

In another more specific embodiment, one of L', L'' and L''' is represented by formula (B), and the others are -H.

In another more specific embodiment, L' is represented by formula (B); and L'' and L''' are both -H.

5 In another more specific embodiment, for formula (B), Z^s is -SR^d and R^d is a (C₁-C₃)alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl (*e.g.*, 4-nitropyridyl).

In a 9th specific embodiment, for formula (B), R^x is -(CH₂)_p-(CR^fR^g)-, wherein R^f and R^g are each independently selected from -H or a linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms; and p is 0, 1, 2 or 3; and the remaining variables are as described in the
10 8th specific embodiment or any more specific embodiments described therein.

In a more specific embodiment, R^f and R^g are the same or different, and are selected from -H and -Me.

In another more specific embodiment, R^f and R^g are both -Me; and p is 2.

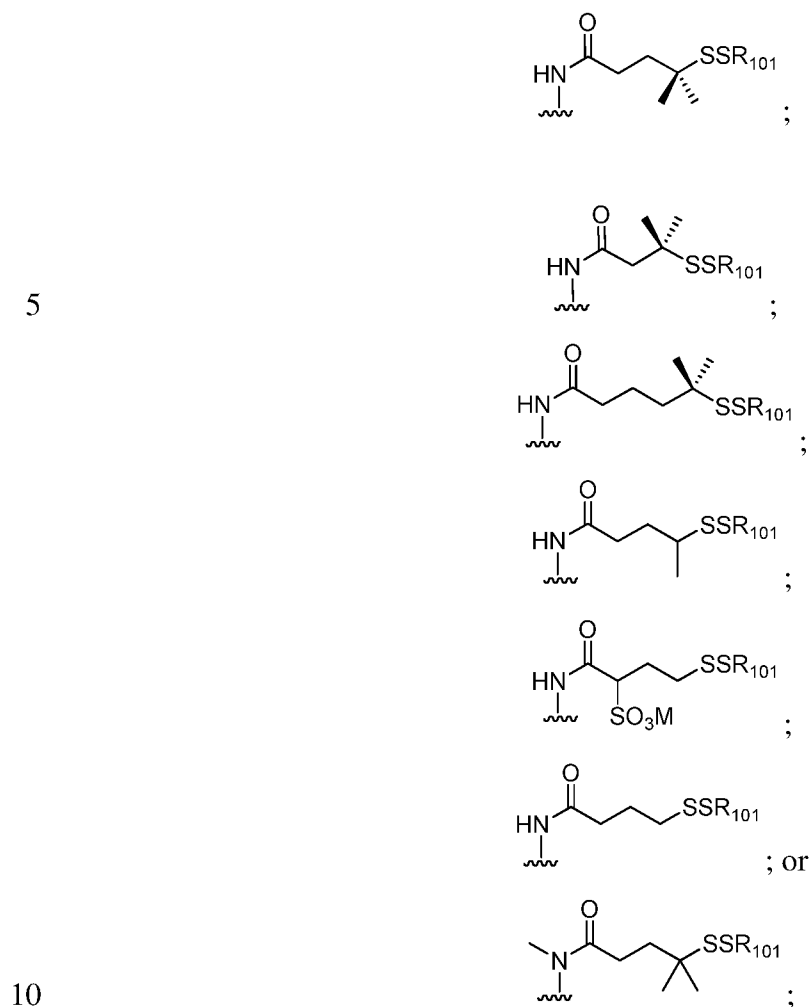
In a 10th specific embodiment, for formula (B), R^x is a linear or branched
15 alkylene having 1 to 4 carbon atoms substituted with a charged substituent or an ionizable group Q; and the remaining variables are as described in the 8th specific embodiment or any more specific embodiments described therein.

In a more specific embodiment, the charged substituent or an ionizable group Q is: i) -SO₃H, -Z'-SO₃H, -OPO₃H₂, -Z'-OPO₃H₂, -PO₃H₂, -Z'-PO₃H₂, -CO₂H, -Z'-CO₂H,
20 -NR₁₁R₁₂, or -Z'-NR₁₁R₁₂, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof; or, ii) -N⁺R₁₄R₁₅R₁₆X^{A-} or -Z'-N⁺R₁₄R₁₅R₁₆X^{A-}; Z' is an optionally substituted alkylene, an optionally substituted cycloalkylene or an optionally substituted phenylene; R₁₁, R₁₂, R₁₄ to R₁₆ are each independently H or an optionally substituted alkyl; and X^{A-} is a pharmaceutically acceptable anion. More specifically, Q is -SO₃H or a pharmaceutically
25 acceptable salt thereof.

In a 11th specific embodiment, R^e is -H or -Me; and the remaining variables as described in the 9th or 10th specific embodiment or any more specific embodiments described therein

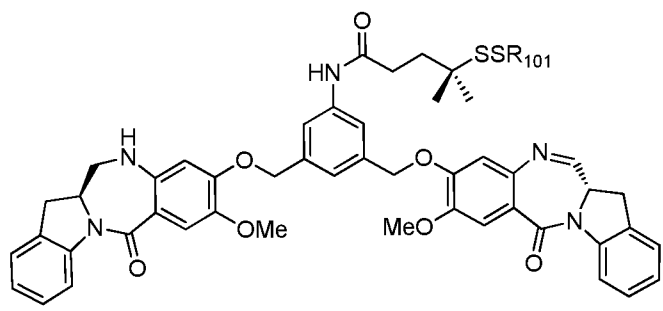
In a 12th specific embodiment, for methods in the first, second, third, fourth,
30 fifth, sixth, seventh, eighth, ninth, tenth, eleventh, twelfth, thirteenth, fourteenth, fifteenth, sixteenth, seventeenth, eighteenth, nineteenth, twentieth, twenty-first, twenty-second, twenty-third, twenty-fourth, twenty-fifth, twenty-sixth, twenty-seventh, twenty-eighth, twenty-ninth, thirtieth, thirty-first, thirty-second, thirty-third, thirty-fourth, thirty-

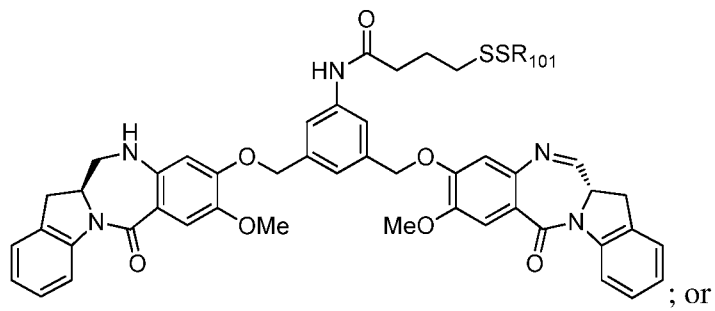
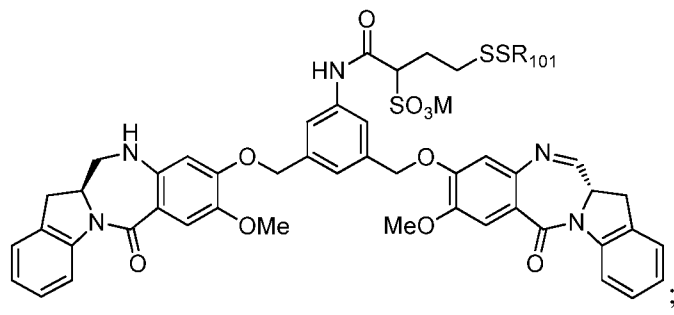
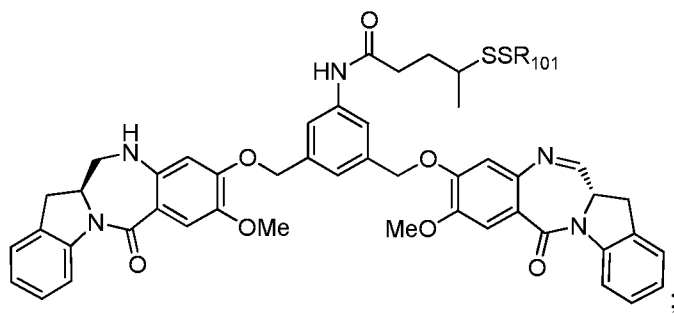
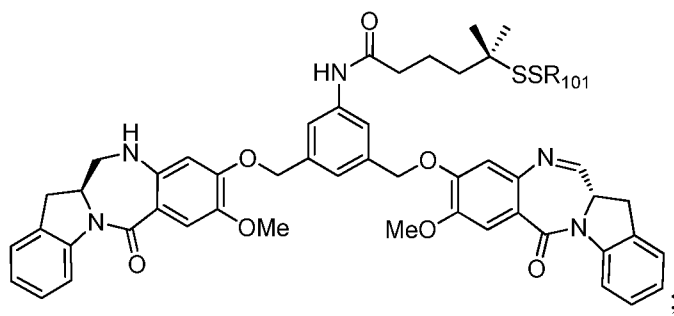
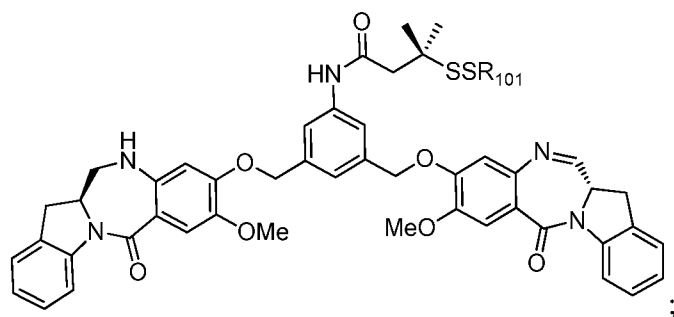
fifth, thirty-sixth, thirty-seventh, thirty-eighth, thirty-ninth, fortieth, forty-first, forty-second, or forty-third embodiment, L' is represented by the following formula:



wherein R₁₀₁ is a (C₁-C₃)alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl (*e.g.*, 4-nitropyridyl); and M is H⁺, Na⁺ or K⁺.

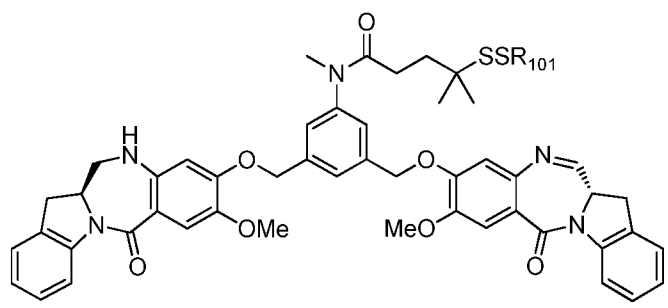
In a 13th specific embodiment, for methods in the eighth, tenth, fourteenth, fifteenth, nineteenth, twentieth, twenty-first, forty-first, forty-second, and forty-third
15 embodiments, the compound of formula (I') is represented by any one of the following:





5

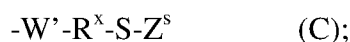
; or



or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein R_{101} is a (C_1-C_3) alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl (*e.g.*, 4-nitropyridyl); and M is H^+ , Na^+ or K^+ .

In a 14th specific embodiment, for methods described in the 12th or 13th specific embodiment, R_{101} is methyl.

In a 15th specific embodiment, for methods in the first, second, third, fourth, fifth, sixth, seventh, eighth, ninth, tenth, eleventh, twelfth, thirteenth, fourteenth, fifteenth, sixteenth, seventeenth, eighteenth, nineteenth, twentieth, twenty-first, twenty-second, twenty-third, twenty-fourth, twenty-fifth, twenty-sixth, twenty-seventh, twenty-eighth, twenty-ninth, thirtieth, thirty-first, thirty-second, thirty-third, thirty-fourth, thirty-fifth, thirty-sixth, thirty-seventh, thirty-eighth, thirty-ninth, fortieth, forty-first, forty-second, or forty-third embodiments, one of L' , L'' , and L''' is represented by the following formula:



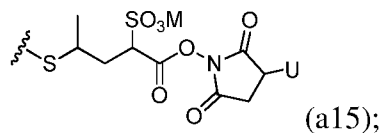
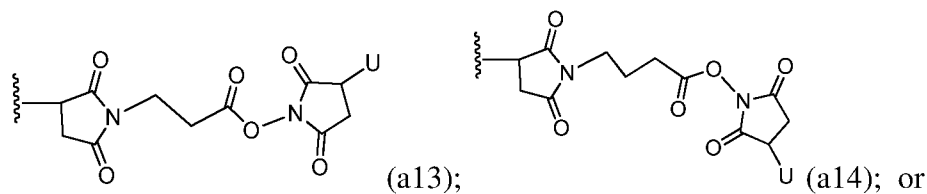
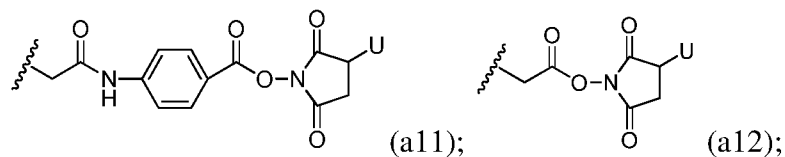
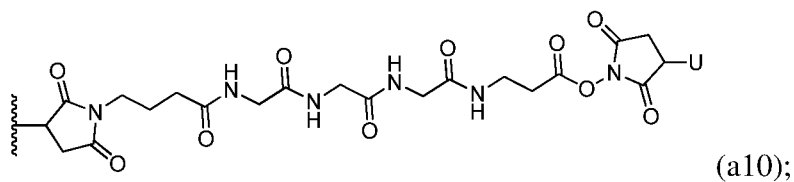
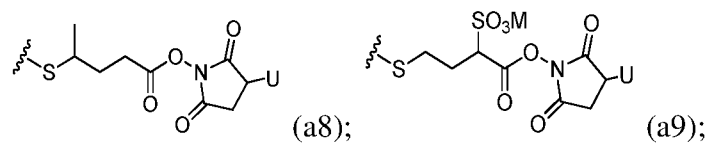
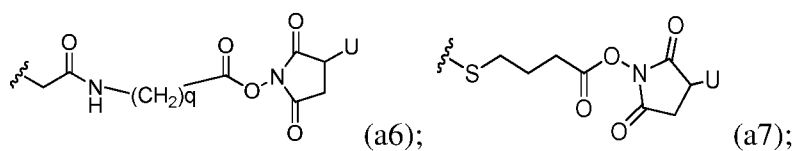
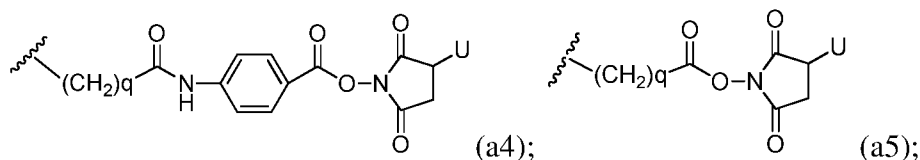
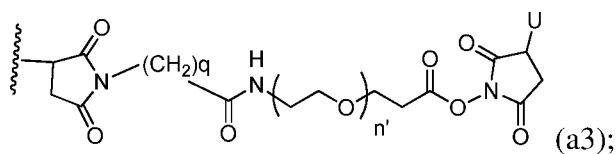
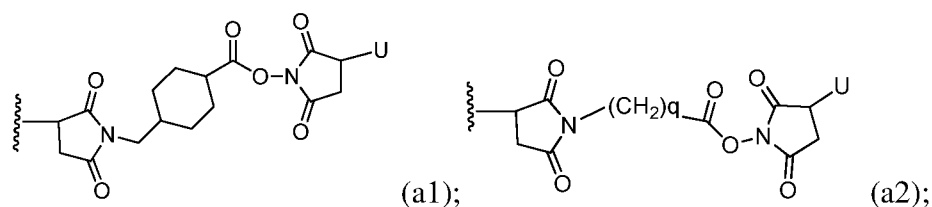
wherein:

W' is $-N(R^e)-$;

R^e is $-H$, a linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having 1 to 10 carbon atoms or $-(CH_2-CH_2-O)_n-R^k$, wherein R^k is a $-H$, a linear, branched cyclic alkyl having 1 to 6 carbon atoms, optionally bearing a secondary amino (*e.g.*, $-NHR^{101}$) or tertiary amino ($-NR^{101}R^{102}$) group or a 5- or 6-membered nitrogen containing heterocycle, such as piperidine or morpholine, wherein R^{101} and R^{102} are each independently a linear, branched, or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having 1 to 10 carbon atoms;

R^x is a linear, branched or cyclic alkyl having 1 to 10 carbon atoms;

Z^s is $-H$, $-SR^d$, $-C(=O)R^{d1}$ or is selected from any one of the following formulas:



wherein:

R^d is a linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 6 carbon atoms or is selected from phenyl, nitrophenyl (e.g., 2 or 4-nitrophenyl), dinitrophenyl (e.g., 2 or 4-nitrophenyl),

carboxynitrophenyl (*e.g.*, 3-carboxy-4-nitrophenyl), pyridyl or nitropyridyl (*e.g.*, 4-nitropyridyl);

R^{dl} is a linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 6 carbon atoms;

q is an integer from 1 to 5;

5 n is an integer from 2 to 6;

n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

U is $-H$ or $-SO_3M$; and

M is $-H$ or a cation, such as Na^+ or K^+ .

10 In a more specific embodiment, one of L' , L'' and L''' is represented by formula (C), and the others are each independently $-H$, an linear or branched alkyl having from 1 to 6 carbon atoms, halogen, $-OH$, (C_1-C_6) alkoxy, or $-NO_2$.

In another more specific embodiment, one of L' , L'' and L''' is represented by formula (C), and the others are $-H$.

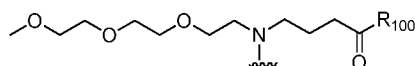
15 In yet another more specific embodiment, L' is represented by formula (C); and L'' and L''' are both $-H$.

In another more specific embodiment, Z^s is $-SR^d$ and R^d is a (C_1-C_3) alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl (*e.g.*, 4-nitropyridyl).

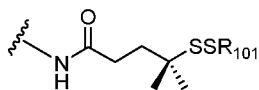
20 In a 16th specific embodiment, R^x is a linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 6 carbon atoms; and the remaining variables are as described in the 14th specific embodiment or any more specific embodiments described therein. More specifically, R^x is $-(CH_2)_p-(CR^fR^g)-$, wherein R^f and R^g are each independently selected from $-H$ or a linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms; and p is 0, 1, 2 or 3. Even more specifically, R^f and R^g are the same or different, and are selected from $-H$ and $-Me$; and p is 1.

25 In a 17th specific embodiment, R^k is $-H$ or $-Me$, and n is 3; and the remaining variables are as described above in the 15th or 16th specific embodiment.

30 In a 18th specific embodiment, for methods in the first, second, third, fourth, fifth, sixth, seventh, eighth, ninth, tenth, eleventh, twelfth, thirteenth, fourteenth, fifteenth, sixteenth, seventeenth, eighteenth, nineteenth, twentieth, twenty-first, twenty-second, twenty-third, twenty-fourth, twenty-fifth, twenty-sixth, twenty-seventh, twenty-eighth, twenty-ninth, thirtieth, thirty-first, thirty-second, thirty-third, thirty-fourth, thirty-fifth, thirty-sixth, thirty-seventh, thirty-eighth, thirty-ninth, fortieth, forty-first, forty-second, and forty-third embodiments, L' is represented by the following formula:

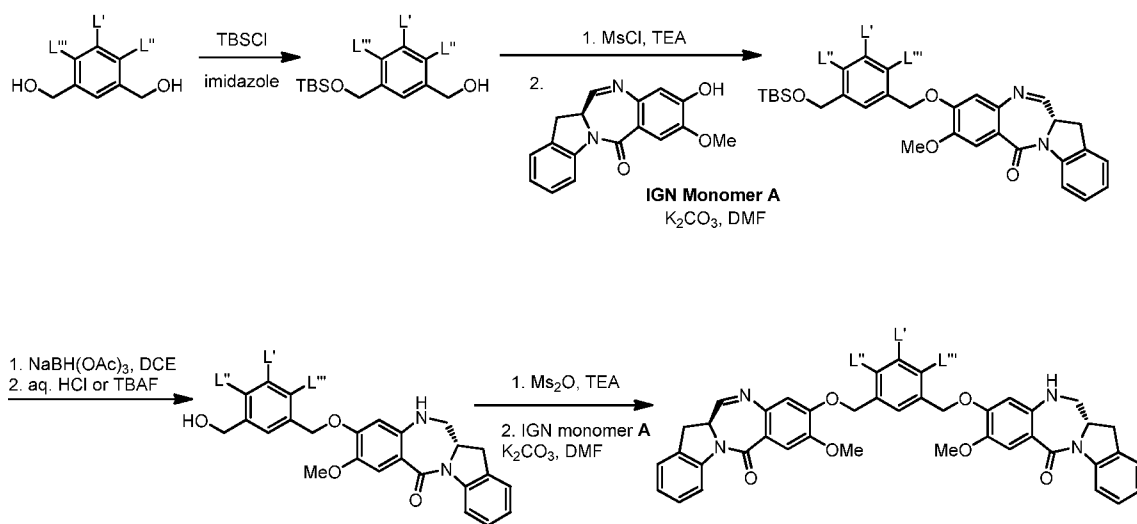


wherein R_{100} is a (C₁-C₃)alkoxy; and the remaining variables are as described above in the 1st to the 17th specific embodiments. In another embodiment, L' is NO₂. In yet another embodiment, L' is represented by the following formula:



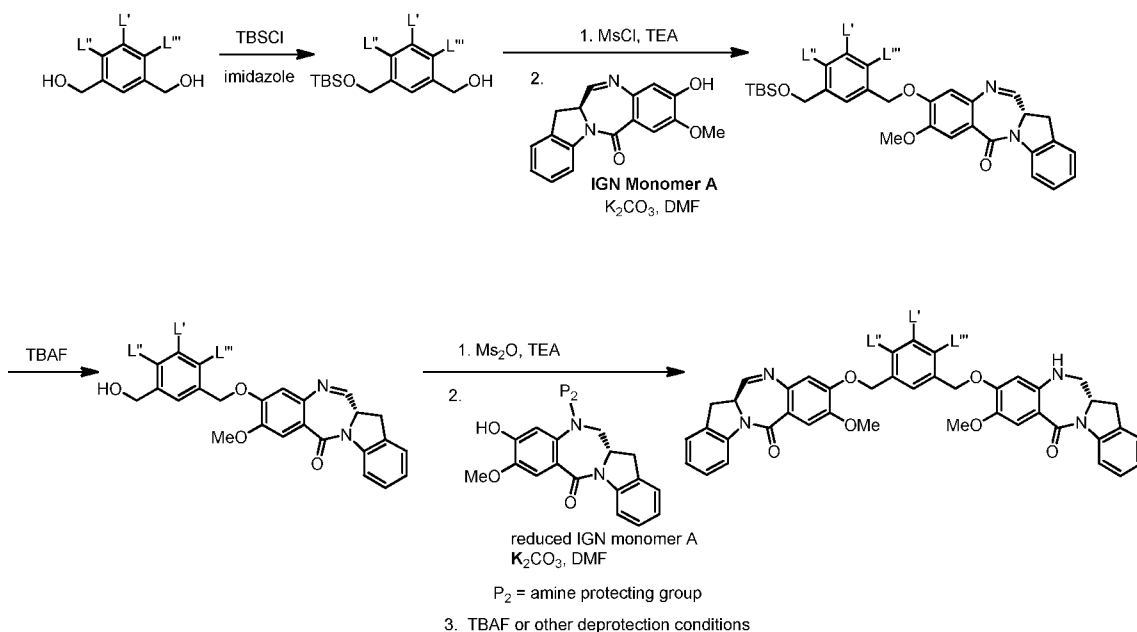
5

In certain embodiment, the indolinobenzodiazepine dimer compound of formula (I') can be prepared according to Schemes 1 –12 shown below.

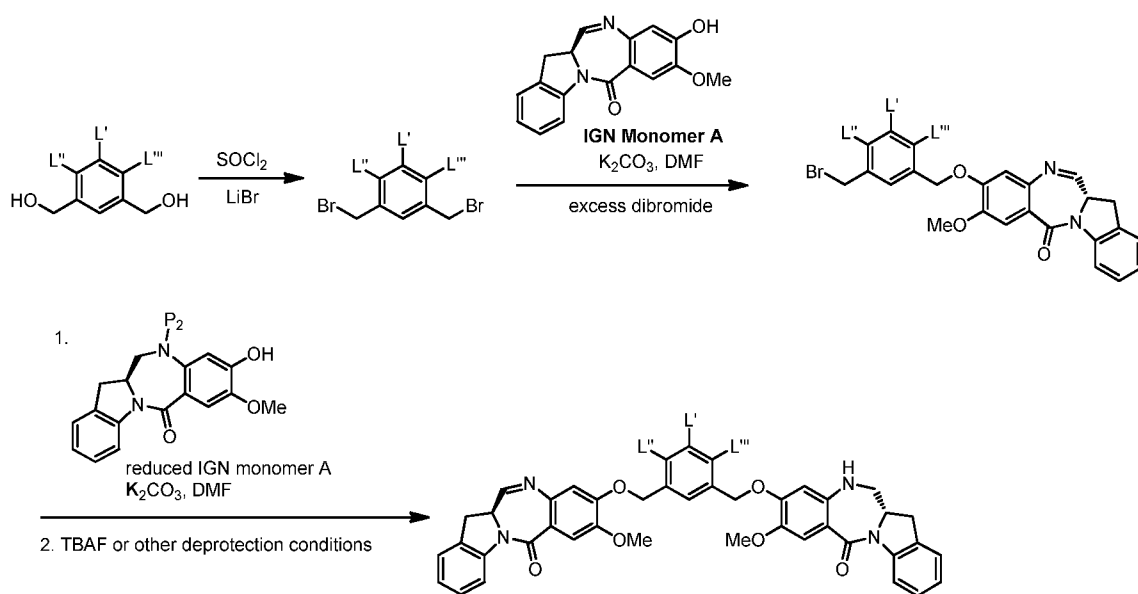


Scheme 1

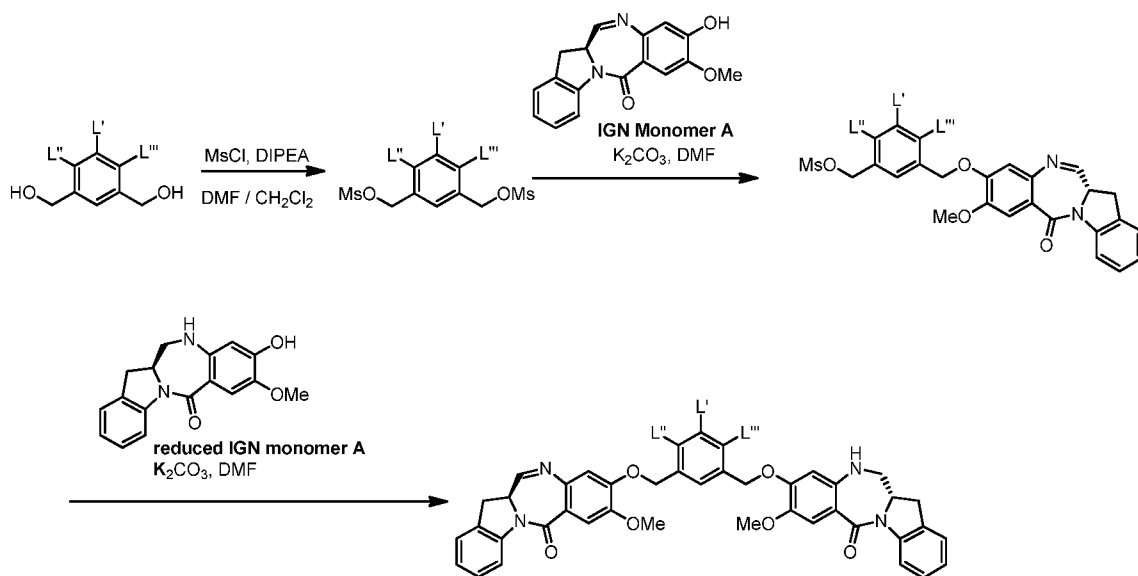
10



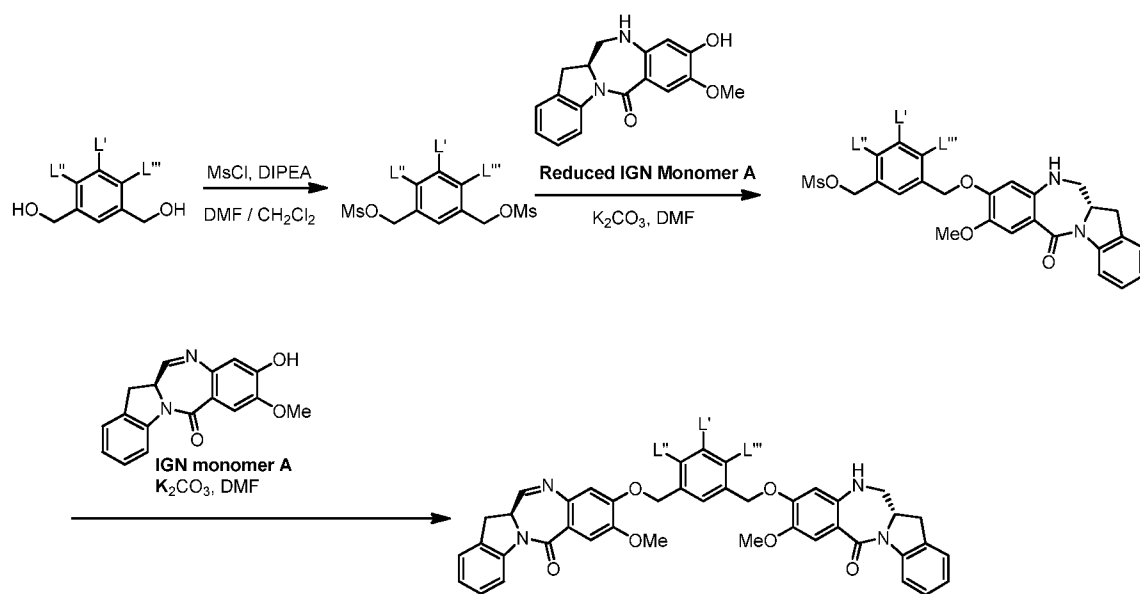
Scheme 2



Scheme 3

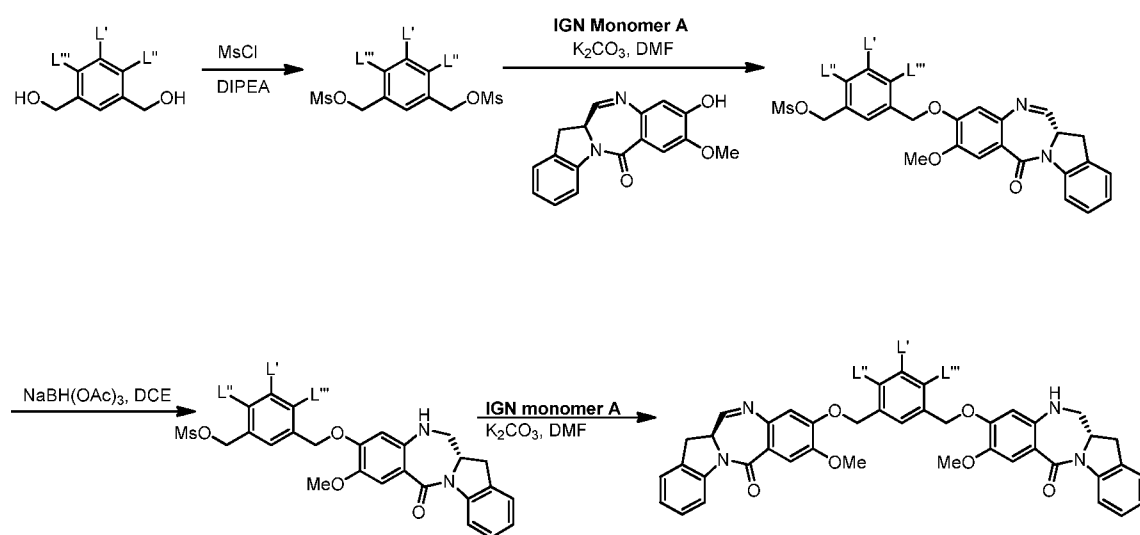


Scheme 4

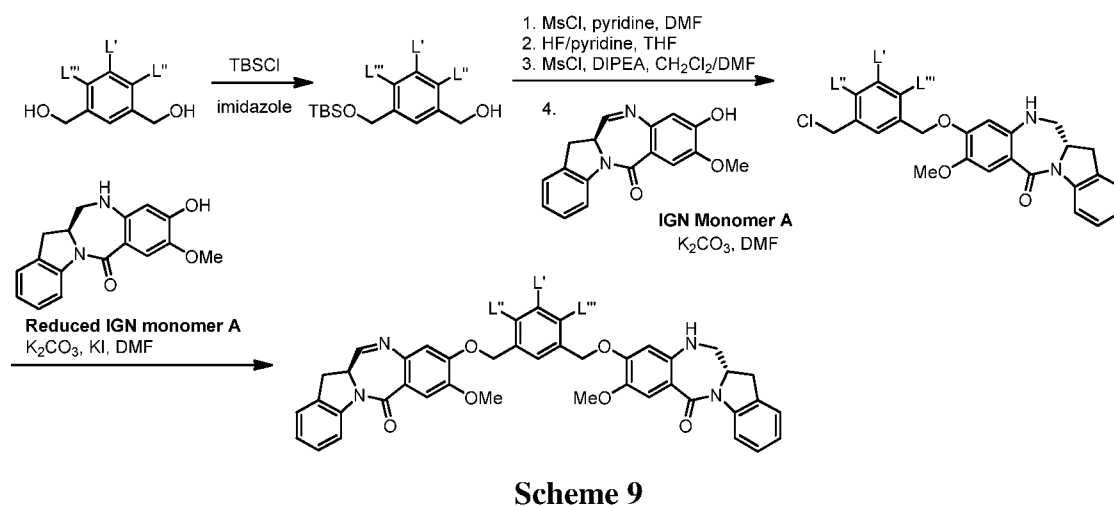
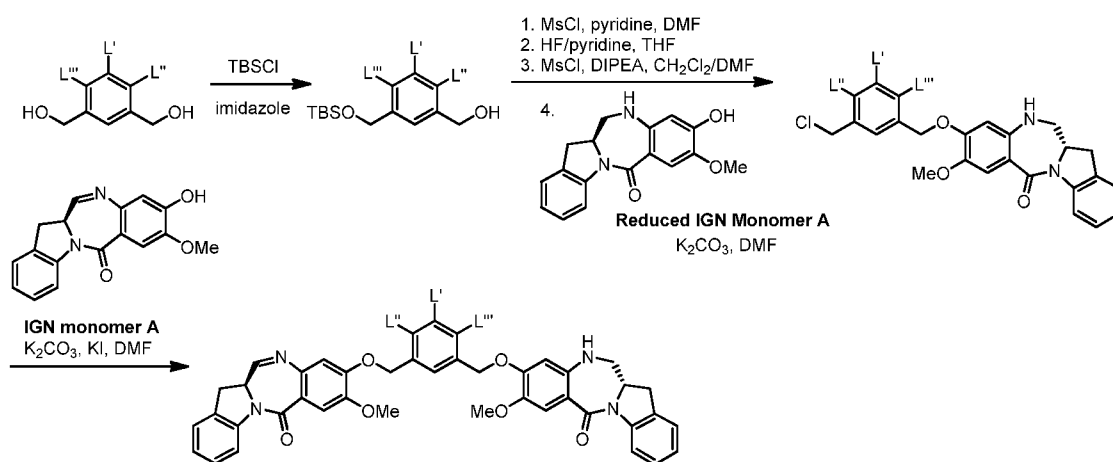
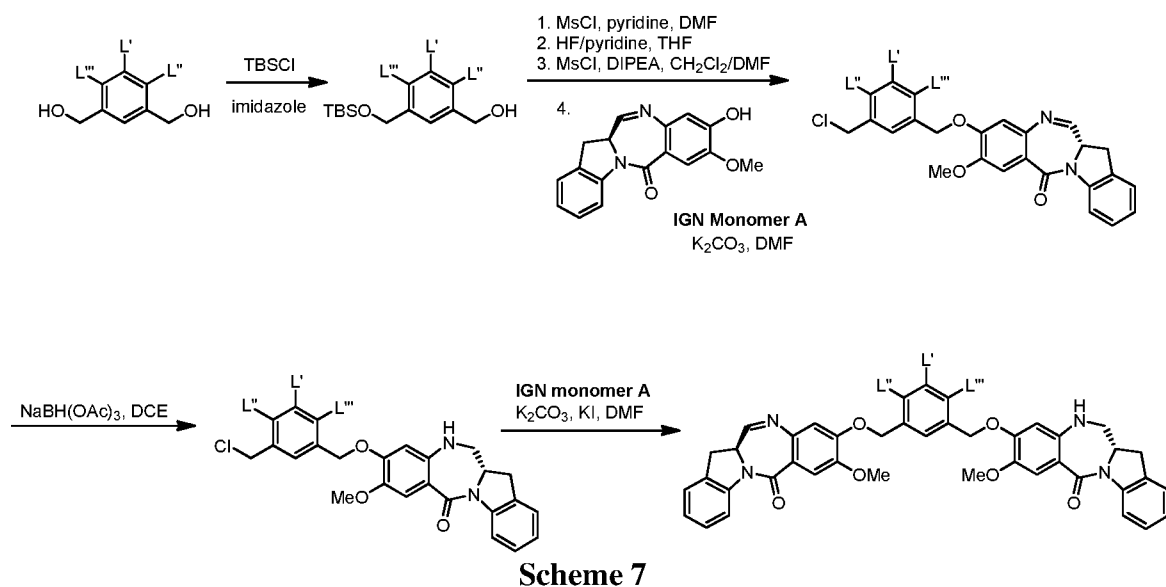


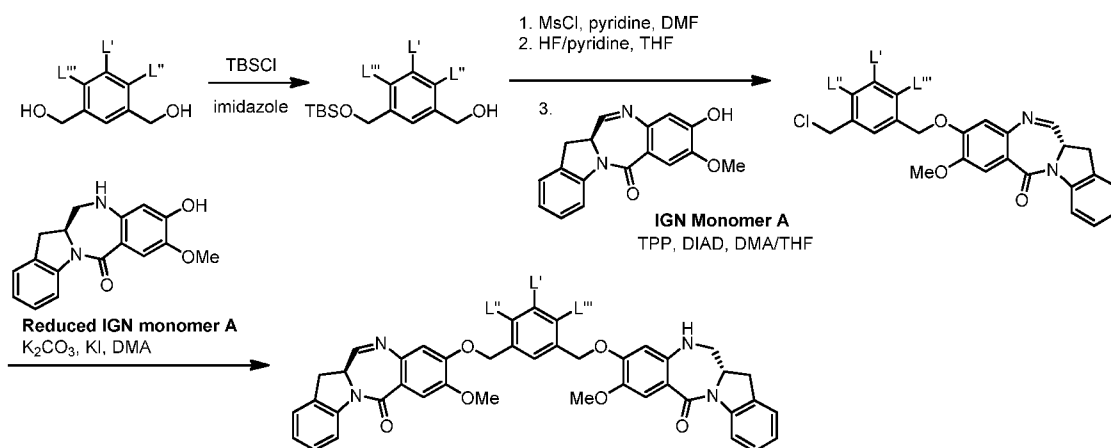
Scheme 5

5

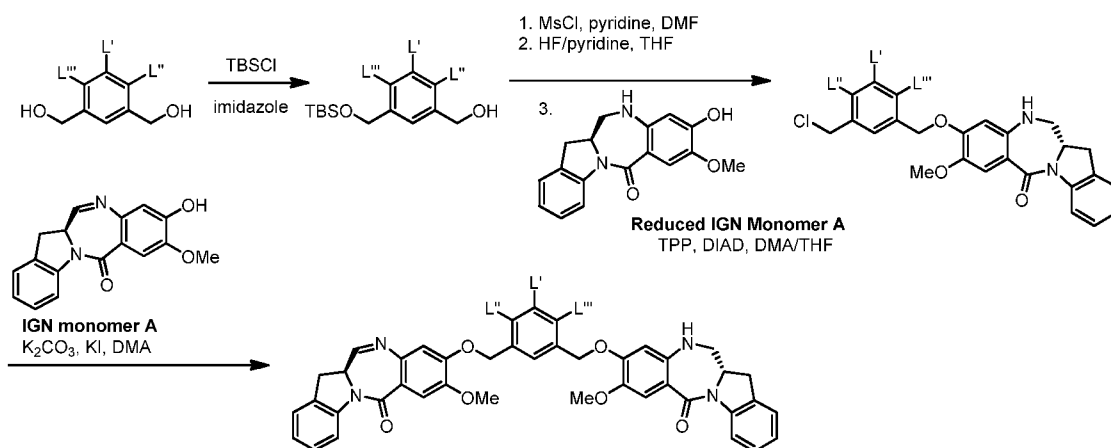


Scheme 6

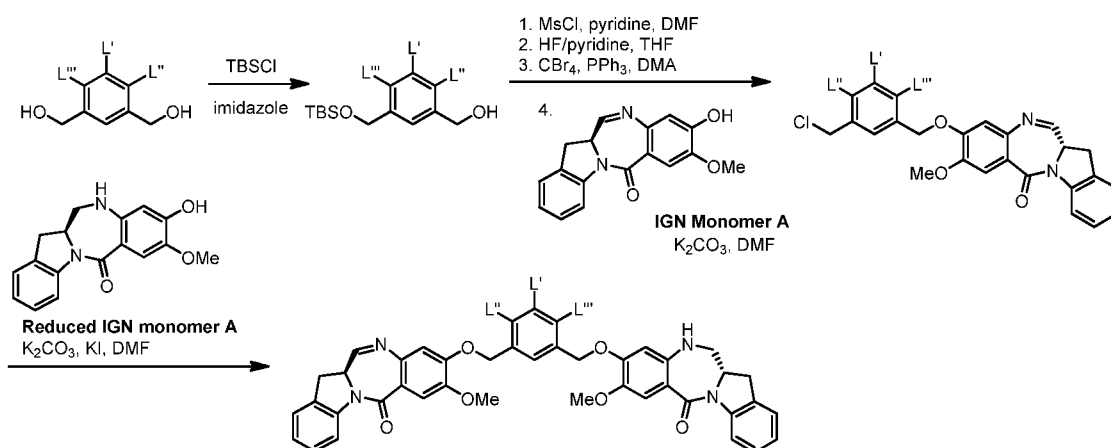




Scheme 10



Scheme 11



Scheme 12

COMPOUNDS OF THE INVENTION

The present invention also provides novel compounds described herein. In certain embodiments, the compounds of the present invention are compounds of formulas(1), (2), (2''), (3), (3''), (4), (4''), (5), (5''), (6), (7), (7'), (7-1), (7''), (7'''), (8), (9), (10), (10'), (11), (12), (13), (14), (15), (16), (17), (17'), (18), (19), (20), (a), (b), (d), (I'), (IA), and (IB), wherein the variables are as described in the the first to forty-third embodiment, or the 1st to 18th specific embodiment or any more specific embodiment described therein.

In a 19th specific embodiment, for the compounds of the present invention, when present, R₁₀₀ is (C₁-C₃)alkoxy; R₁₀₁ is (C₁-C₃)alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl (*e.g.*, 4-nitropyridyl); P₁ is an alcohol protecting group; X₁ and X₂ for each occurrence are independently -Br, -I, and a sulfonate ester; P₂ is an amine protecting group; P₃ is H or an amine protecting group; and the remaining variables are as described in any one of the first to forty-fourth embodiment and the 1st to 18th specific embodiment..

In a 20th specific embodiment, for compounds of the present invention, when present, R₁₀₀ is -OMe; and R₁₀₁ is Me or pyridyl; and the remaining variables are as described in any one of the first to forty-fourth embodiment and the 1st to 19th specific embodiment..

In a 21st specific embodiment, for compounds of the present invention, when present, P₁ is a silyl protecting group; and the remaining variables are as described in any one of the first to forty-fourth embodiment and the 1st to 20th specific embodiment. More specifically, the silyl protecting group is dimethylisopropylsilyl, diethylisopropylsilyl, dimethylhexylsilyl, trimethylsilyl, triisopropylsilyl, tribenzylsilyl, triphenylsilyl, 2-norbornyldimethylsilyl, tert-butyldimethylsilyl, tert-butyldiphenylsilyl, or [2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxy]methyl. Even more specifically, the silyl protecting group is triethylsilyl, triisopropylsilyl, or tert-butyldimethylsilyl. In another even more specific embodiment, the silyl protecting group is tert-butyldimethylsilyl.

In a 22nd specific embodiment, for compounds of present invention, when present, X₁ and X₂ for each occurrence, are each independently a sulfonate ester; and the remaining variables are as described in any one of the first to forty-fourth embodiment and the 1st to 21st specific embodiment. More specifically, the sulfonate ester is mesylate, tosylate, brosylate, or triflate. Even more specifically, the sulfonate ester is mesylate.

In a 23rd specific embodiment, for compounds of present invention, when present, X₃ is chlorine; and the remaining variables are as described in any one of the first to forty-fourth embodiment and the 1st to 22nd specific embodiment..

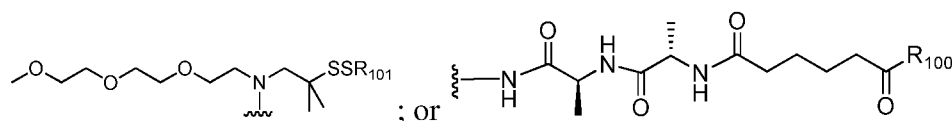
In a 24th specific embodiment, for compounds of the present invention, when present, X₄ is a sulfonate ester; and the remaining variables are as described in any one of the first to forty-fourth embodiment and the 1st to 23rd specific embodiment. More specifically, the sulfonate ester is mesylate, tosylate, brosylate, or triflate. Even more specifically, the sulfonate ester is mesylate.

In a 25th specific embodiment, for compounds of the present invention, P₂ is an amine protecting group selected from 2-trimethylsilylethyl, (2-phenyl-2-trimethylsilyl)ethyl, triisopropylsiloxy, 2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxymethyl, allyloxycarbonyl, 9-fluorenylmethoxycarbonyl, 2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxycarbonyl, and 2,2,2-trichloroethoxycarbonyl; and the remaining variables are as described in any one of the first to forty-fourth embodiment and the 1st to 24th specific embodiment..

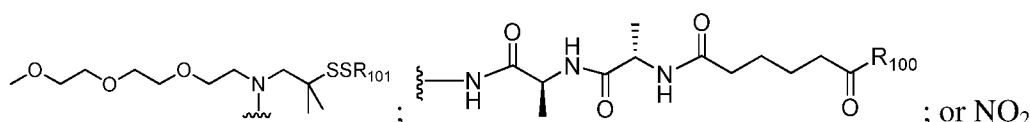
In a 26th specific embodiment, for the compounds of the present invention, when present, P₃ is H or an amine protecting group selected from 2-trimethylsilylethyl, (2-phenyl-2-trimethylsilyl)ethyl, triisopropylsiloxy, 2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxymethyl, and allyloxycarbonyl, 9-fluorenylmethoxycarbonyl, 2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxycarbonyl, and 2,2,2-trichloroethoxycarbonyl; and the remaining variables are as described in any one of the first to forty-fourth embodiment and the 1st to 25th specific embodiment..

In a 27th specific embodiment, for compounds of the present invention, when present, X₅ is -Br; and the remaining variables are as described in any one of the first to forty-fourth embodiment and the 1st to 26th specific embodiment..

In one embodiment, for the methods and the compounds of the present invention described herein, L' is not represented by:



In another embodiment, for the methods and the compounds of the present invention described herein, L' is not represented by:



All references cited herein and in the examples that follow are expressly incorporated by reference in their entireties.

EXAMPLES

- The invention will now be illustrated by reference to non-limiting examples. Unless otherwise stated, all percents, ratios, parts, *etc.* are by weight. All reagents were purchased from the Aldrich Chemical Co., New Jersey, or other commercial sources. Nuclear Magnetic Resonance (^1H NMR) spectra were acquired on a Bruker 400 MHz instrument. Mass spectra were acquired on a Bruker Daltonics Esquire 3000 instrument and LCMS were acquired on an Agilent 1260 Infinity LC with an Agilent 6120 single quadrupole MS using electrospray ionization and UPLC were acquired on a Waters, Acquity system with a single quadrupole MS ZsprayTM (column: Acquity BEH C18, 2.1 x 50 mm, 1.7 μm , method: 2.5 min, flow rate 0.8 mL/min, solvent A: water, solvent B: MeCN, 5 to 95% of MeCN over 2.0 min and 95% MeCN for 0.5 min).
- The following solvents, reagents, protecting groups, moieties and other designations may be referred to by their abbreviations in parenthesis:
- Me = methyl; Et = ethyl; Pr = propyl; *i*-Pr = isopropyl; Bu = butyl; *t*-Bu = tert-butyl; Ph = phenyl, and Ac = acetyl
- AcOH or HOAc = acetic acid
- ACN or CH_3CN = acetonitrile
- Ala = alanine
- Ar = argon
- aq = aqueous
- Bn = benzyl
- Boc or BOC = tert-butoxycarbonyl
- CBr_4 = carbontetrabromide
- Cbz or Z = benzyloxycarbonyl
- DCM or CH_2Cl_2 = dichloromethane
- DCE = 1,2-dichloroethane
- DMAP = 4-dimethylaminopyridine
- DI water = deionized water
- DIBAL = diisobutylaluminum hydride
- DIEA or DIPEA = N,N-diisopropylethylamine

- DMA = N,N-dimethylacetamide
DMF = N,N-dimethylformamide
DMSO = dimethyl sulfoxide
DTT = dithiothreitol
- 5 EDC = 1-ethyl-3-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)carbodiimide
EEDQ = N-Ethoxycarbonyl-2-ethoxy-1,2-dihydroquinoline
ESI or ES = electrospray ionization
EtOAc = ethylacetate
Gly = glycine
- 10 g = grams
h = hour
HATU = N,N,N',N'-tetramethyl-O-(7-azabenzotriazol-1-yl)uronium hexaphosphate
HPLC = high-performance liquid chromatography
HOBT or HOBt = 1-hydroxybenzotriazole
- 15 LAH = lithium aluminum hydride
LC = liquid chromatography
LCMS = liquid chromatography mass spectrometry
min = minutes
mg = milligrams
- 20 mL = milliliters
mmol = millimoles
 μg = micrograms
 μL = microliters
 μmol = micromoles
- 25 Me = methyl
MeOH = methanol
MeI = methyl iodide
MS = mass spectrometry
MsCl = methanesulfonyl chloride (mesyl chloride)
- 30 Ms₂O = methanesulfonic anhydride
MTBE = Methyl *tert*-butyl ether
NaBH(OAc)₃ = sodium triacetoxyborohydride
NHS = N-hydroxysuccinamide

NMR = nuclear magnetic resonance spectroscopy

PPh₃ = triphenylphosphine

PTLC = preparative thin layer chromatography

rac = racemic mixture

5 R_f = retardation factor

RPHPLC or RP-HPLC = reverse phase high-performance liquid chromatography

RT or *rt* = room temperature (ambient, about 25 °C)

sat or sat'd = saturated

STAB = sodium triacetoxyborohydride (NaBH(OAc)₃)

10 TBSCl or TBDMSCl = *tert*-butyldimethylsilyl chloride

TBS = *tert*-butyldimethylsilyl

TCEP·HCl = *tris*(2-carboxyethyl)phosphine hydrochloride salt

TEA = triethylamine (Et₃N)

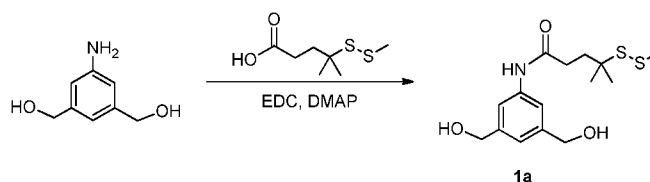
TFA = trifluoroacetic acid

15 THF = tetrahydrofuran

TLC = thin layer chromatography

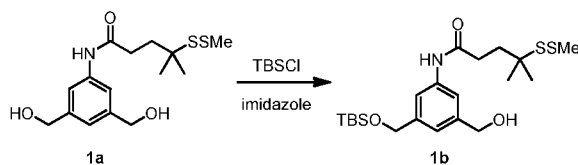
Example 1.

20

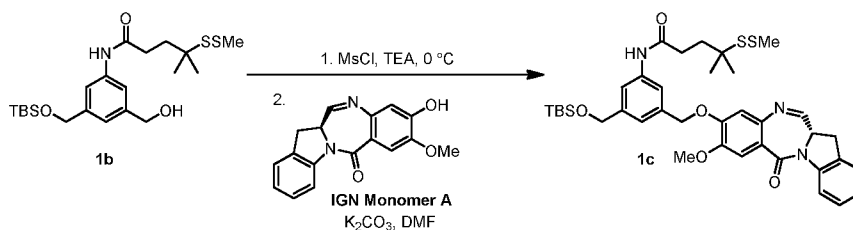


To a stirred solution of (5-amino-1,3-phenylene)dimethanol (1.01 g, 6.59 mmol) in anhydrous dimethylformamide (16.48 mL) and anhydrous tetrahydrofuran (16.48 mL) was added 4-methyl-4-(methylthiothio)pentanoic acid (1.281 g, 6.59 mmol),
 25 EDC·HCl (2.53 g, 13.19 mmol), and DMAP (0.081 g, 0.659 mmol). The resulting mixture was stirred for 18 hours at room temperature. The reaction was quenched with saturated ammonium chloride solution and extracted with ethyl acetate (3 x 50 mL). The organic extracts were washed with water, brine, and dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate. The solution was filtered and concentrated in vacuo and the resulting residue
 30 was purified by silica gel chromatography (Hexanes/EtOAc) to obtain compound **1a** as a white solid (0.70 g, 35% yield). ¹H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆): δ 9.90 (s, 1H), 7.43 (s,

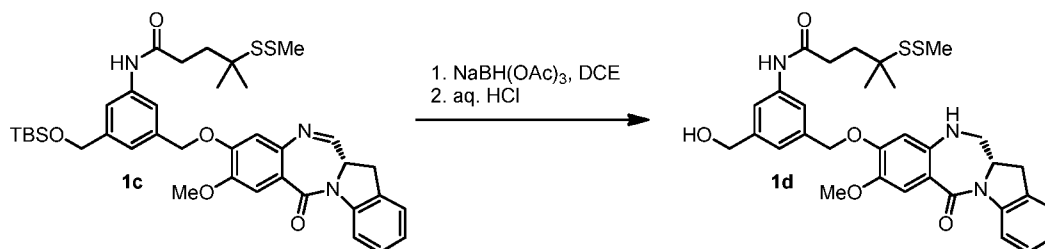
2H), 6.93 (s, 1H), 5.16 (t, 2H, $J = 5.7$ Hz), 4.44 (d, 4H, $J = 5.7$ Hz), 2.43 (s, 3H), 2.41-2.38 (m, 2H), 1.92-1.88 (m, 2H), 1.29 (s, 6H). MS (m/z), found 330.0 ($M + H$)⁺.



Diol **1a** (1.0 g, 3.04 mmol) was dissolved in DMF (10.12 mL). TBSCl (503 mg, 3.34 mmol) and imidazole (238 mg, 3.49 mmol) were added to the solution and the reaction was stirred at rt overnight. Additional TBSCl (600 mg) and imidazole (220 mg) were added to the reaction mixture and was stirred at rt for an additional 5 h. The reaction mixture was diluted with DCM and was washed with sat'd ammonium chloride, brine and was dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and concentrated. The crude product was purified by silica gel chromatography (EtOAc/hexanes, gradient) to obtain **1b** as a colorless oil (710 mg, 53% yield). LCMS (8 min method) = 6.967 min. Mass observed (ESI⁺): 445.95 ($M+H$)⁺ and 467.90 ($M+Na$)⁺.

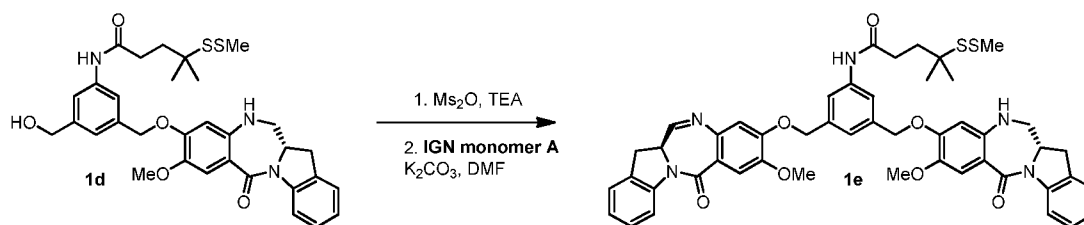


Compound **1b** (200 mg, 0.451 mmol) was dissolved in DCM (4.51 mL) and was cooled to 0 °C. Et₃N (82 μL, 0.586 mmol) was added to the reaction mixture under Ar, followed by dropwise addition of methanesulfonyl chloride (42.1 μL, 0.541 mmol). The reaction mixture was stirred at 0 °C for 2 h. The solution was diluted with EtOAc and was washed with cold water (2x). The organic layer was dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and concentrated to obtain the mesylate. The crude mesylate was used in the next step without purification. LCMS (8 min method) = 7.444 min. Mass observed (ESI⁺): 521.8 ($M+H$)⁺ and 543.8 ($M+Na$)⁺. The crude mesylate (210 mg, 0.402 mmol) was dissolved in DMF (2.68 mL). **IGN monomer A** (130 mg, 0.443 mmol) and potassium carbonate (111 mg, 0.805 mmol) were added to the mixture and was stirred at rt under Ar overnight. The product was precipitated out with the addition of water (15 mL). The slurry was stirred for 5 min and was filtered. The filter cake was washed with water (3x) and was dried under vacuum/N₂ to obtain compound **1c** as a solid (270 mg, 93% yield). LCMS (8 min method) = 7.624 min. Mass observed (ESI⁺): 719.8 ($M+H$)⁺.



Compound **1c** (686 mg, 0.953 mmol) was dissolved in DCE (6.35 mL). Sodium triacetoxyborohydride (400 mg, 1.91 mmol) was added to the reaction mixture and was stirred at rt for 3 h. The reaction mixture was diluted with DCM and was washed with saturated ammonium chloride, brine, dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and concentrated to obtain the reduced imine product. LCMS (8 min method) = 4.363 min. Mass observed (ESI^+): 720.75 ($\text{M}+\text{H}$)⁺.

The crude reduced imine (680 mg, 0.942 mmol) was dissolved in THF (5.23 mL). HCl (aq. 5M) (3.77 mL, 9.42 mmol) was added and was stirred at rt for 4 h. The reaction mixture was diluted with DCM and was washed with saturated sodium bicarbonate, brine, dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and concentrated. The crude product was purified by silica gel chromatography (gradient, MeOH/DCM) to obtain compound **1d** (420 mg, 73% yield, 2 steps). LCMS (8 min method) = 5.905 min. Mass observed (ESI^+): 607.8 ($\text{M}+\text{H}$)⁺.

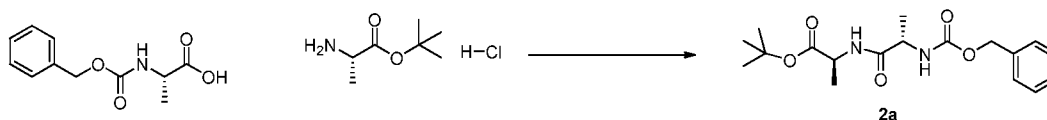


Compound **1d** (420 mg, 0.691 mmol) was dissolved in DCM (4.61 mL). The solution was cooled to -5 °C (ice-brine bath) and TEA (125 μL , 0.898 mmol) was added, followed by methanesulfonic anhydride (144 mg, 0.829 mmol) under Ar. The reaction mixture was stirred at -5 °C under Ar for 1.5 h. The reaction mixture was quenched with water at -5 °C and was warmed to rt. The mixture was extracted with EtOAc (2x) and the organic layer was washed with water (2x). The organics were dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and concentrated to obtain the mesylated product as a brown foam. LCMS (8 min method) = 6.380 min. Mass observed (ESI^+): 685.7 ($\text{M}+\text{H}$)⁺.

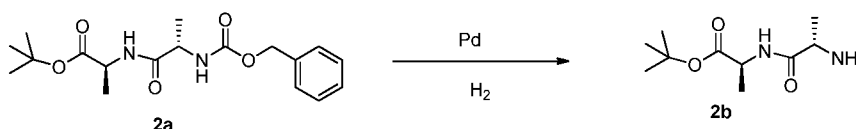
The mesylate (470 mg, 0.582 mmol) was dissolved in DMF (3.88 mL). **IGN monomer A** (189 mg, 0.641 mmol) was added, followed by potassium carbonate (121

mg, 0.874 mmol) at room temperature and the reaction was stirred overnight. Water (~5 mL) was added to precipitate out the product. The slurry was stirred for 5 min, then filtered and dried under vacuum/N₂. The crude product was purified by silica gel chromatography (gradient, MeOH/DCM) to obtain compound **1e** as a yellow solid (543 mg, 53% yield). LCMS (8 min method) = 6.804 min. Mass observed (ESI⁺): 883.7 (M+H)⁺.

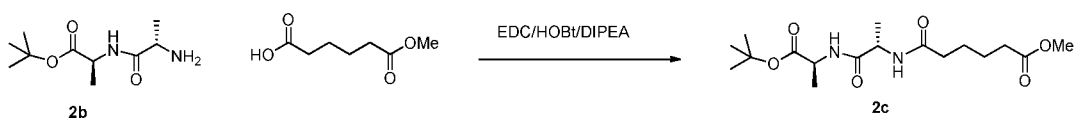
Example 2.



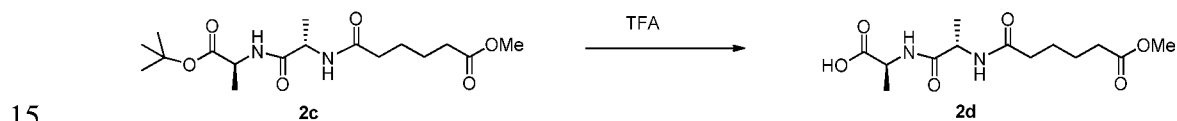
(S)-2-(((benzyloxy)carbonyl)amino)propanoic acid (5 g, 22.40 mmol) and (S)-tert-butyl 2-aminopropanoate hydrochloride (4.48 g, 24.64 mmol) were dissolved in anhydrous DMF (44.8 mL). EDC·HCl (4.72 g, 24.64 mmol), HOBt (3.43 g, 22.40 mmol), and DIPEA (9.75 mL, 56.0 mmol) were added. The reaction stirred under argon, at room temperature overnight. The reaction mixture was diluted with dichloromethane and then washed with saturated ammonium chloride, saturated sodium bicarbonate, water, and brine. The organic layer was dried over sodium sulfate and concentrated. The crude oil was purified by silica gel chromatography (Hexanes/Ethyl Acetate) to yield compound **2a** (6.7 g, 85% yield). ¹H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃): δ 7.38-7.31 (m, 5H), 6.53-6.42 (m, 1H), 5.42-5.33 (m, 1H), 5.14 (s, 2H), 4.48-4.41 (m, 1H), 4.32-4.20 (m, 1H), 1.49 (s, 9H), 1.42 (d, 3H, J = 6.8 Hz), 1.38 (d, 3H, J = 7.2 Hz).



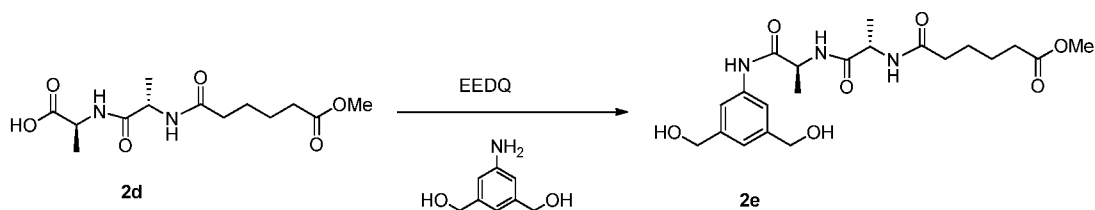
Compound **2a** (6.7 g, 19.12 mmol) was dissolved in methanol (60.7 mL) and water (3.03 mL). The solution was purged with argon for five minutes. Palladium on carbon (wet, 10%) (1.017 g, 0.956 mmol) was added slowly. The reaction was stirred overnight under an atmosphere of hydrogen. The solution was filtered through Celite, rinsed with methanol and concentrated. It was azeotroped with methanol and acetonitrile and the resulting oil was placed directly on the high vacuum to give compound **2b** (4.02 g, 97% yield) which was used directly in the next step. ¹H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃): δ 7.78-7.63 (m, 1H), 4.49-4.42 (m, 1H), 3.55-3.50 (m, 1H), 1.73 (s, 2H), 1.48 (s, 9H), 1.39 (d, 3H, J = 7.2 Hz), 1.36 (d, 3H, J = 6.8 Hz).



Compound **2b** (4.02 g, 18.59 mmol) and mono methyladipate (3.03 mL, 20.45 mmol) were dissolved in anhydrous DMF (62.0 mL). EDC·HCl (3.92 g, 20.45 mmol),
 5 HOBt (2.85 g, 18.59 mmol) and DIPEA (6.49 mL, 37.2 mmol) were added. The mixture was stirred overnight at room temperature. The reaction was diluted with dichloromethane/methanol (150 mL, 5:1) and washed with saturated ammonium chloride, saturated sodium bicarbonate, and brine. It was dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and concentrated. The compound was azeotroped with acetonitrile (5x), then
 10 pumped on the high vacuum at 35 °C to give compound **2c** (6.66 g, 100% yield). The crude material was taken onto next step without purification. ¹H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃): δ 6.75 (d, 1H, *J* = 6.8 Hz), 6.44 (d, 1H, *J* = 6.8 Hz), 4.52-4.44 (m, 1H), 4.43-4.36 (m, 1H), 3.65 (s, 3H), 2.35-2.29 (m, 2H), 2.25-2.18 (m, 2H), 1.71-1.60 (m, 4H), 1.45 (s, 9H), 1.36 (t, 6H, *J* = 6.0 Hz).

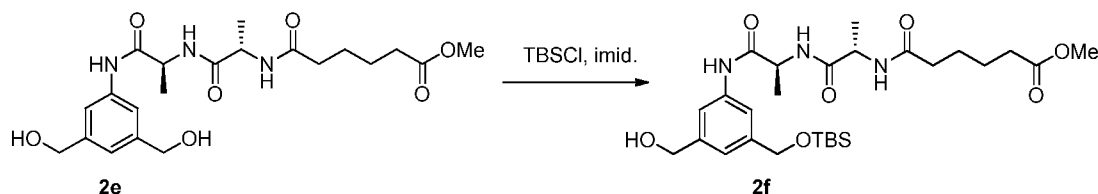


Compound **2c** (5.91 g, 16.5 mmol) was stirred in TFA (28.6 mL, 372 mmol) and deionized water (1.5 mL) at room temperature for three hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated with acetonitrile and placed on high vacuum to give crude compound **2d** as a sticky solid (5.88 g, 100% yield). ¹H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃): δ 7.21 (d, 1H, *J* = 6.8 Hz), 6.81 (d, 1H, *J* = 7.6 Hz), 4.69-4.60 (m, 1H), 4.59-4.51 (m, 1H), 3.69 (s, 3H), 2.40-2.33 (m, 2H), 2.31-2.24 (m, 2H), 1.72-1.63 (m, 4H), 1.51-1.45 (m, 3H), 1.42-1.37 (m, 3H).



Compound **2d** (5.6 g, 18.52 mmol) was dissolved in anhydrous dichloromethane
 25 (118 mL) and anhydrous methanol (58.8 mL). (5-amino-1,3-phenylene)dimethanol (2.70 g, 17.64 mmol) and EEDQ (8.72 g, 35.3 mmol) were added and the reaction was stirred at room temperature overnight. The solvent was concentrated and ethyl acetate was

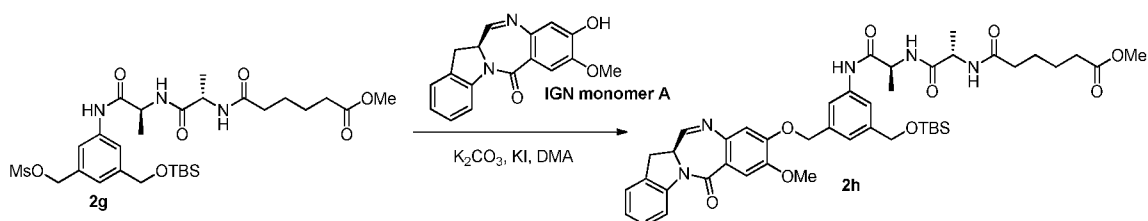
added. The resulting slurry was filtered, washed with ethyl acetate and dried under vacuum/N₂ to give compound **2e** (2.79 g, 36% yield). ¹H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆): δ 9.82 (s, 1H), 8.05, (d, 1H, *J* = 9.2 Hz), 8.01 (d, 1H, *J* = 7.2 Hz), 7.46 (s, 2H), 6.95 (3, 1H), 5.21-5.12 (m, 2H), 4.47-4.42 (m, 4H), 4.40-4.33 (m, 1H), 4.33-4.24 (m, 1H), 3.58 (s, 3H), 2.33-2.26 (m, 2H), 2.16-2.09 (m, 2H), 1.54-1.46 (m, 4H), 1.30 (d, 3H, *J* = 7.2 Hz), 1.22 (d, 3H, *J* = 4.4 Hz).



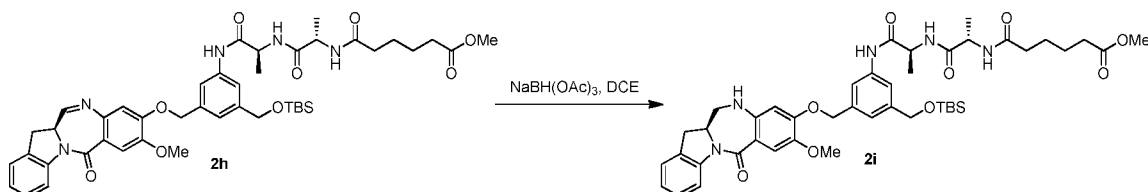
Diol **2e** (1.0 g, 2.286 mmol) was dissolved in anhydrous DMF (7.6 mL). TBSCl (0.482 g, 3.20 mmol) and imidazole (0.467 g, 6.86 mmol) were added and the reaction was stirred at room temperature for 2 hrs. The reaction was quenched with saturated ammonium chloride and diluted with water and EtOAc. The aqueous layer was extracted once with EtOAc and the combined organic layers were washed with water and brine, dried over sodium sulfate, filtered and concentrated. The crude residue was purified by silica gel flash chromatography (DCM/MeOH) to obtain compound **2f** (360 mg, 28% yield). LCMS (8 min method, 40-98%) = 2.35 min. Mass observed (ESI⁺): 574.4 (M+Na)⁺.



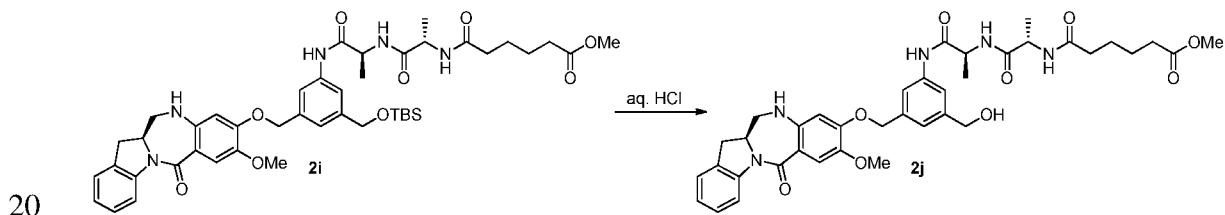
Compound **2f** (360 mg, 0.652 mmol) was dissolved in anhydrous dichloromethane (6.52 mL) and cooled in an acetone/ice bath. Triethylamine (227 μL, 1.631 mmol) and methanesulfonyl anhydride (146 mg, 0.816 mmol) were added. The reaction stirred at -10°C in the acetone/ice bath for 1 hr. The reaction was diluted with cold EtOAc and quenched with ice water. The organic layer was washed with ice water and then dried over sodium sulfate and magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated to give crude compound **2g** as a fluffy solid (390 mg, 95% yield). LCMS (8 min method, 40-98%) = 2.81 min; 5.86 min (8 min method, 5-98%). Mass observed (ESI⁻): 628.0 (M-H)⁻.



Mesylate **2g** (390 mg, 0.619 mmol) and **IGN monomer A** (264 mg, 0.897 mmol) were dissolved in anhydrous DMA (7.47 mL). Potassium carbonate (207 mg, 1.495 mmol) and potassium iodide (51.4 mg, 0.310 mmol) were added and the reaction was stirred overnight at room temperature. The reaction was precipitated with water, filtered and the filter cake washed with water. The solid was redissolved in DCM, washed with water, dried over magnesium sulfate and concentrated to give crude compound **2h** (568 mg, 111% yield). The product was carried on without further purification. LCMS (8 min method, 5-98%) = 6.23 min. Mass observed (ESI⁺): 827.8 (M+H)⁺.

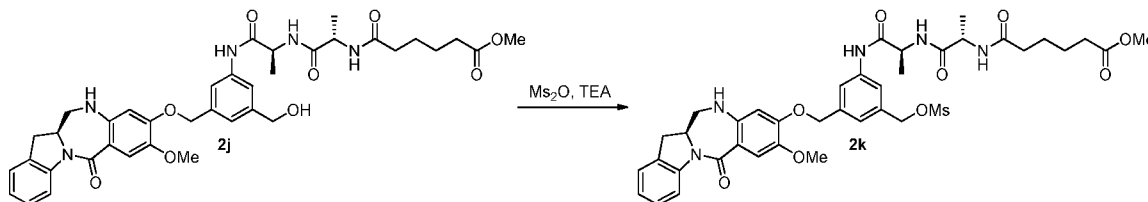


Compound **2h** (0.513 g, 0.619 mmol) was dissolved in DCE (7.74 mL). NaBH(OAc)₃ (0.276 g, 1.239 mmol) was added and the mixture stirred at room temperature for 1.5 h. The reaction was diluted with DCM, quenched with saturated ammonium chloride and washed with brine. The organic layer was dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated to give compound **2i**. LCMS (15 min method) = 9.93 min.

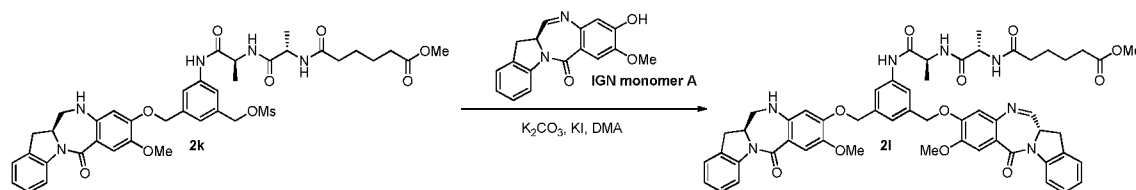


Compound **2i** (514 mg, 0.619 mmol) was dissolved in THF (3.44 mL). 5 M aqueous HCl (1.24 mL, 6.19 mmol) was added at room temperature and the reaction stirred for 1 h. The reaction mixture was diluted with DCM/MeOH (20:1) and the organic layer was washed with saturated sodium bicarbonate, brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated. The crude residue was purified by silica

gel chromatography (DCM/MeOH) to give compound **2j** (210 mg, 47% yield). LCMS (8 min method, 5-98%) = 4.56 min. Mass observed (ESI⁺): 715.8 (M+H)⁺.

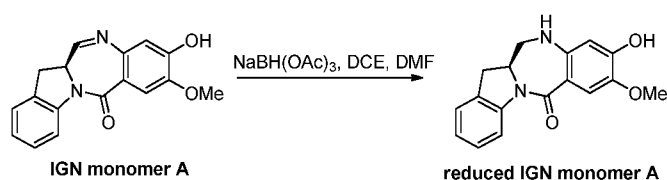


- 5 Compound **2j** (210 mg, 0.293 mmol) was dissolved in DCM (3.95 mL) and DMF (500 μ L) and cooled to -10°C (ice-acetone bath). TEA (57.2 μ L, 0.411 mmol) and methanesulfonic anhydride (46.6 mg, 0.260 mmol) were added and the reaction as stirred for 3 h under Ar. The reaction was quenched with cold water at -5°C and diluted with EtOAc. The aqueous layer was extracted with cold EtOAc (2 \times) and the combined
10 organics were washed with cold water (2 \times). The organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium/magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated. The crude product **2k** was pumped on the high vacuum and taken onto next step without purification. LCMS (8 min method, 5-98%) = 5.06 min. Mass observed (ESI⁻): 791.8 (M-H)⁻.

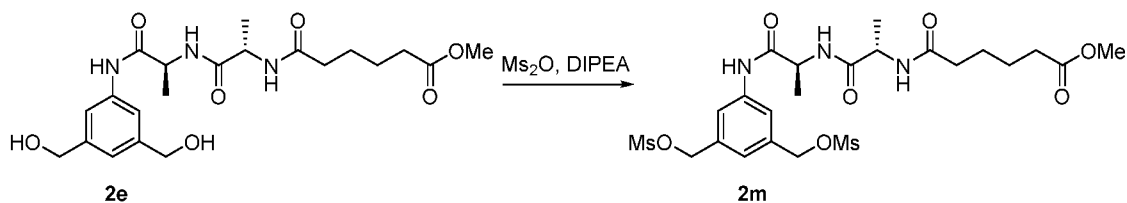


- 15 [267] Compound **2k** (233 mg, 0.293 mmol) was dissolved in DMA (1.95 mL). **IGN monomer A** (103 mg, 0.352 mmol) and potassium carbonate (60.7 mg, 0.440 mmol) were added at room temperature and the reaction stirred overnight. DI water was added to the reaction mixture and the resulting solid was filtered and washed with water. The solid was redissolved in DCM/MeOH (20:1), washed with water, dried over magnesium
20 sulfate, filtered and concentrated. The crude residue was purified by RPHPLC (ACN/H₂O) to give **2l** (44 mg, 15% yield). LCMS (8 min method, 5-98%) = 5.4 min. Mass observed (ESI⁺): 991.7 (M+H)⁺.

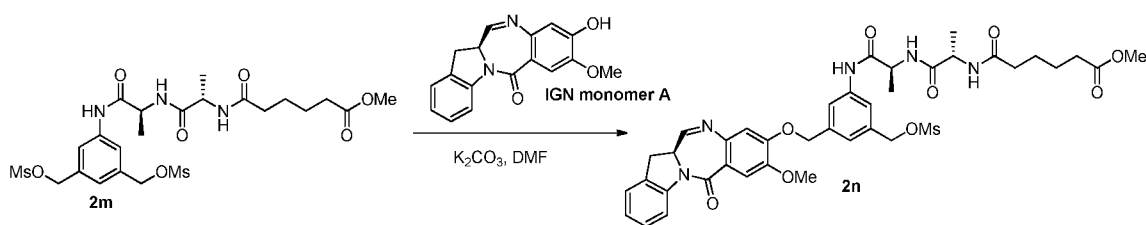
Example 3.



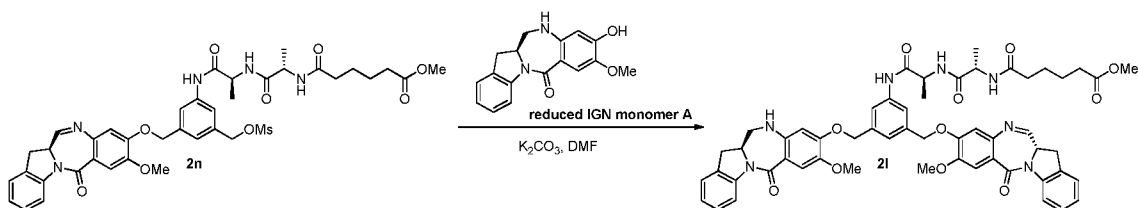
To a solution of **IGN monomer A** (1.0 g, 3.4 mmol) in DCE (10 mL) and DMF (4 mL) was added sodium triacetoxymethylborohydride (1.1 g, 5.1 mmol, 1.5 equiv) and the reaction was stirred until completion of starting material. Upon completion of the starting material after 2h at room temperature, the reaction was quenched with sat. ammonium chloride (10 mL), and then the layers were separated. The aqueous layer was extracted once with dichloromethane (10 mL) and the combined organic layers were washed with water (2 x 10 mL) and brine (10 mL). The organic layer was dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and the solvent was removed in vacuo to give a white/brown powder. The powder was washed with EtOAc (2 x 10 mL) and dried under vacuum to give **reduced IGN monomer A** as a white solid (0.87 g, 2.9 mmol, 87% yield) which was used in the next step without further purification. UPLCMS (2.5 min method) = 1.34 min. Mass observed (ESI⁺): 297.4 (M+H)⁺. ¹H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆): δ 9.44 (s, 1H), 8.20 (d, *J* = 8.1 Hz, 1H), 7.30 – 7.23 (m, 2H), 7.22 – 7.12 (m, 1H), 7.01 (td, *J* = 7.4, 1.1 Hz, 1H), 6.21 (s, 1H), 6.17 (d, *J* = 6.6 Hz, 1H), 4.37 (tdd, *J* = 10.1, 4.4, 1.9 Hz, 1H), 3.70 (s, 3H), 3.58 – 3.39 (m, 2H), 3.31 – 3.15 (m, 2H), 2.88 (dd, *J* = 16.9, 4.4 Hz, 1H).



A solution of **2e** (5.53 g, 12.6 mmol) in DCM (81 mL) and DMF (64.9 mL) was cooled down to 0 °C and then DIPEA (6.13 mL, 37.9 mmol, 3.0 equiv.) was added followed by a solution of methanesulfonyl anhydride (5.06 g, 29.1 mmol, 2.3 equiv.) in DCM (15 mL) / DMF (1 mL) dropwise. The reaction was stirred for 1h before quenching with cold water. After washing with water and brine the solution was dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and the solvent was removed in vacuo to give an orange oil which was triturated in diethyl ether to give bis mesylate **2m** (6.4 g, 10.8 mmol, 85% yield). LCMS (8 min method) = 4.019 min. Mass observed (ESI⁺): 594.8 (M+H)⁺. The crude material was carried on to the next step without further purification.



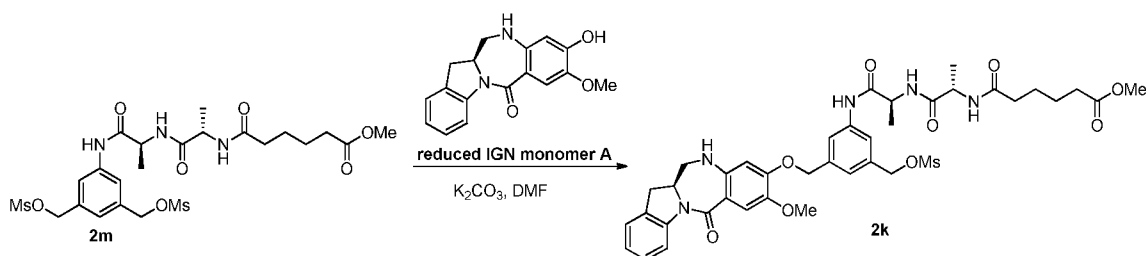
To a solution of **2m** (0.52 g, 0.88 mmol) and **IGN monomer A** (0.18 g, 0.61 mmol, 0.7 equiv.) in DMF (7 mL) was added potassium carbonate (0.24 g, 1.75 mmol, 2.0 equiv.) and the reaction was stirred at room temperature for 12 h. The reaction was quenched with water (30 mL) and was extracted with DCM (3 x 15 mL). The organic layers were combined and washed with water (3 x 60 mL), brine (60 mL), dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and the solvent was removed in vacuo to give a crude yellow oil. The material was purified by silica gel chromatography (DCM/(MeCN/MeOH (4/1) from 100/0 to 65/35) to give desired product **2n** (0.09 g, 0.12 mmol, 13% yield). UPLCMS (2.5 min method) = 1.46 min. Mass observed (ESI⁺): 792.6 (M+H)⁺.



To a solution of **2n** (0.05 g, 0.06 mmol) in DMF (0.48 mL, 6.2 mmol) was added potassium carbonate (0.02 g, 0.12 mmol, 2.0 equiv.) followed by **reduced IGN monomer A** (0.02 g, 0.07 mmol, 1.1 equiv.). The reaction was stirred at room temperature for 12 h. The reaction was quenched with water and the resulting solid was filtered and washed with water. The solid was redissolved in DCM/MeOH (20:1), washed with water, dried with magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated. The crude residue was purified by RPHPLC (ACN/H₂O) to give **2l** (0.03 g, 0.04 mmol, 55% yield). LCMS (8 min method, 5-98%) = 5.4 min. Mass observed (ESI⁺): 991.7 (M+H)⁺. ¹H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆, reported as a mixture of water adducts): δ 10.10 (d, *J* = 3.7 Hz, 1H), 8.27 (d, *J* = 8.0 Hz, 1H), 8.21 – 8.10 (m, 1H), 8.05 (d, *J* = 7.4 Hz, 1H), 7.78 (dt, *J* = 8.5, 1.8 Hz, 2H), 7.43 – 7.13 (m, 7H), 7.16 – 6.98 (m, 2H), 6.49 (s, 1H), 6.36 (d, *J* = 13.1 Hz, 0.4H), 6.16 (d, *J* = 6.2 Hz, 0.4H), 5.80 (s, 0.4H), 5.67 (s, 0.4H), 5.57 (d, *J* = 5.6 Hz, 0.4H), 5.35 – 5.09 (m, 2H), 5.03 (t, *J* = 5.9 Hz, 2H), 4.81 – 4.72 (m, 0.4H), 4.60 (dt, *J* = 9.7, 5.0 Hz, 0.2H), 4.51 – 4.36 (m, 2H), 4.39 – 4.23 (m, 1H), 4.17 (td, *J* = 9.7, 2.9

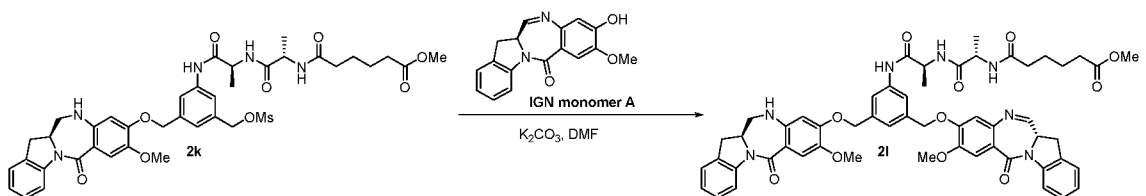
Hz, 0.4H), 3.93 (s, 0.4H), 3.83 – 3.74 (m, 5H), 3.62 (s, 2H), 3.75 – 3.44 (m, 2H), 3.32 (d, $J = 11.6$ Hz, 1H), 3.19 – 3.07 (m, 1H), 2.95 (dd, $J = 17.1, 4.3$ Hz, 1H), 2.38 – 2.29 (m, 1H), 2.18 (m, 1H), 1.56 (m, $J = 3.9$ Hz, 4H), 1.41 – 1.31 (m, 3H), 1.30 – 1.14 (m, 3H).

5

Example 4.

To a solution of **2m** (0.88 g, 1.47 mmol) in DMF (11 mL) was added **reduced IGN monomer A** (0.26 g, 0.88 mmol, 0.6 equiv.) followed by potassium carbonate (0.41 mg, 2.95 mmol, 2.0 equiv.). After the reaction was stirred for 12 h, the reaction was diluted with water (50 mL) and EtOAc (30 mL). The aqueous layer was extracted with EtOAc (3 x 10 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with brine (20 mL), dried over magnesium sulfate and filtered. The solvent was removed and the crude mixture was purified by silica gel chromatography (DCM/MeOH) to give desired product **2k** (0.11 g, 0.14 mmol, 10% yield). LCMS (8 min method) = 5.013 min. Mass observed (ESI⁺): 794.3 (M+H)⁺.

20

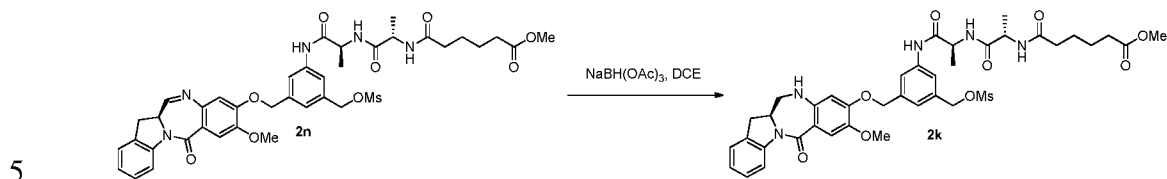


25

To a solution of **2k** (0.11 g, 0.14 mmol) in DMF (2 mL) was added potassium carbonate (0.04 g, 0.29 mmol, 2.0 equiv.) **IGN monomer A** (0.04 g, 0.14 mmol, 1.0 equiv.) was added and the reaction was stirred at rt for 12 h. The reaction was quenched with water (10 mL) and the resulting solid was filtered and washed with water. The solid was redissolved in DCM/MeOH (20:1), washed with water (10 mL), dried with magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated. The crude residue was purified by

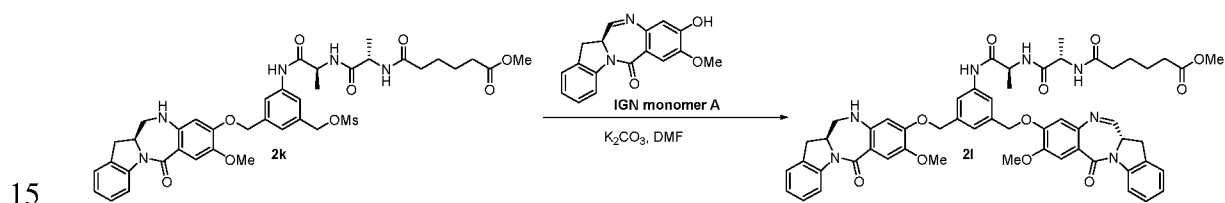
RPHPLC (ACN/H₂O) to give **2l** (0.08 g, 0.09 mmol, 59% yield). LCMS (8 min method, 5-98%) = 5.4 min. Mass observed (ESI⁺): 991.7 (M+H)⁺.

Example 5.



To a solution of **2n** (0.1 g, 0.13 mmol) in DCE (2 mL) was added sodium triacetoxyborohydride (0.03g , 0.13 mmol, 1.0 equiv.) and the reaction was stirred at rt for 2 h. The reaction was quenched with saturated ammonium chloride (2 mL) and the layers were separated. The aqueous layer was extracted with DCM (5 mL) and the combined organic layers were washed with water, brine, dried over magnesium sulfate and filtered. The crude yellow solid was purified using silica gel chromatography (EtOAc/MeOH (95/5)) to afford the desired reduced product **2k** (0.035 g, 0.044 mmol, 35% yield). LCMS (8 min method) = 5.021 min. Mass observed (ESI⁺): 794.3 (M+H)⁺.

10

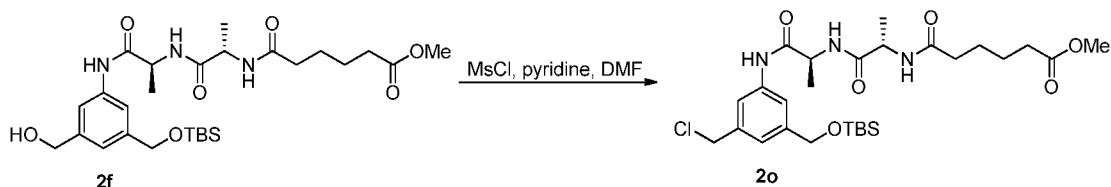


To a solution of **2k** (0.035 g, 0.044 mmol) in DMF (1.0 mL) was added potassium carbonate (0.013 g, 0.09 mmol, 2.0 equiv.). **IGN monomer A** (0.013 g, 0.04 mmol, 1.0 equiv.) was added and the reaction was stirred at room temperature for 12 h. The reaction was quenched with water (10 mL) and the resulting solid was filtered and washed with water. The solid was redissolved in DCM/MeOH (20:1, 20 mL), washed with water (20 mL), dried with magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated. The crude residue was purified by RPHPLC (ACN/H₂O) to give **2l** (0.017 g, 0.01 mmol, 38% yield). LCMS (8 min method, 5-98%) = 5.4 min). Mass observed (ESI⁺): 991.7 (M+H)⁺.

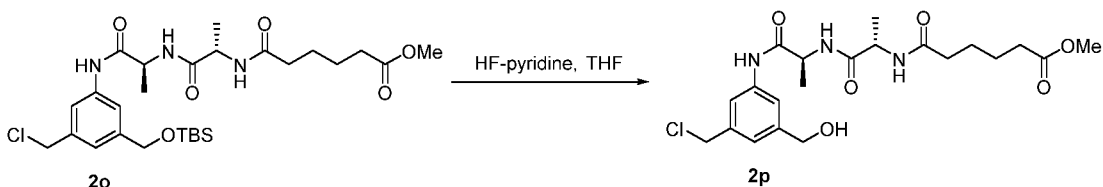
20

25

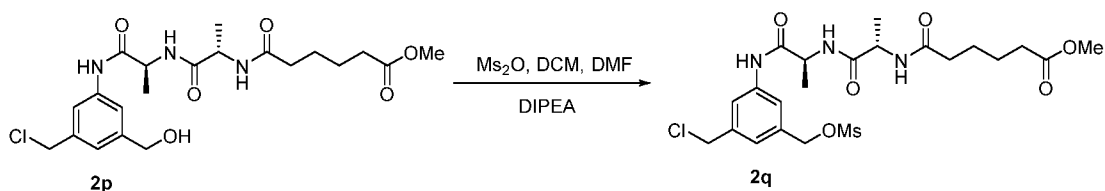
Example 6.



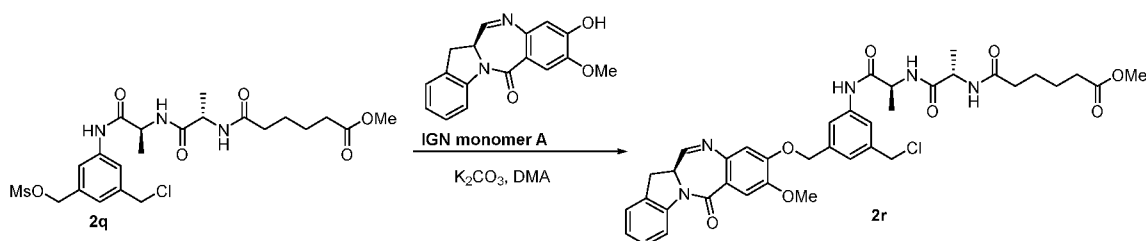
To a solution of **2f** (8.8 g, 16.0 mmol) in DMF (100 mL) was added pyridine
 5 (4.51 mL, 55.8 mmol, 3.5 equiv.). The reaction was cooled down to 0 °C then
 methanesulfonyl chloride (2.5 mL, 31.9 mmol, 2.0 equiv.) was added dropwise and
 reaction stirred for 2 h. The mixture was quenched with sat. sodium bicarbonate (30
 mL), EtOAc was added and the layers were separated. The aqueous layer was extracted
 with EtOAc (3 x 50 mL) and the combined organic layers were washed with water,
 10 brine, dried over magnesium sulfate and filtered. The solvent was removed and the crude
 white solid **2o** was used in the next step without purification (6.2 g, 10.9 mmol, 68%).
 UPLCMS (2.5 min method) = 1.96 min. Mass observed (ESI⁺): 570.7 (M+H)⁺.



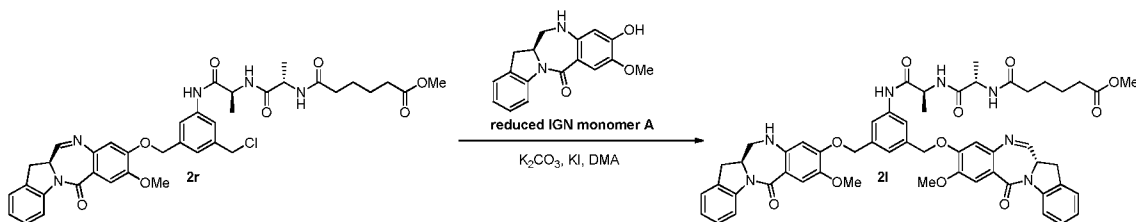
15 To a solution of **2o** (1.7 g, 2.98 mmol) in THF (36.6 mL) was added DIPEA (2.1
 mL, 11.9 mmol, 4.0 equiv.) followed by HF-pyridine (0.84 mL, 6.0 mmol, 2.0 equiv.).
 The reaction was stirred at room temperature for 3 h. The reaction was quenched with
 20 sat. sodium bicarbonate (20 mL) and then the layers were separated. The aqueous layer
 was extracted with EtOAc (3 x 10 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with
 brine (30 mL), dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and the solvent removed in vacuo
 to give a crude white oil which was purified by silica gel chromatography
 (DCM/MeOH) to give desired product **2p** as a white solid (0.75 g, 1.6 mmol, 55%
 25 yield). UPLCMS (2.5 min method) = 1.23 min. Mass observed (ESI⁺): 456.4 (M+H)⁺.



To a solution of **2p** (0.65 g, 1.43 mmol) in DCM (10 mL) and DMF (2 mL) was added DIPEA (0.51 mL, 2.85 mmol, 2.0 equiv.) and the reaction was cooled down to 0 °C. A solution of methanesulfonic anhydride (0.3 g, 1.71 mmol) in DCM (2 mL) was added slowly. The reaction was completed after 30 min, quenched with water (20 mL), the layers were extracted, aqueous layer washed with DCM (2 x 10 mL). Organic layers were combined, washed with water (20 mL), brine (10 mL), dried over magnesium sulfate and filtered. The solvent was removed in vacuo to give desired product **2q** (0.76 g, 1.42 mmol, 100% yield) which was carried crude into the next step without further purification. UPLCMS (2.5 min method) = 1.37 min. Mass observed (ESI⁺): 534.4 (M+H)⁺.

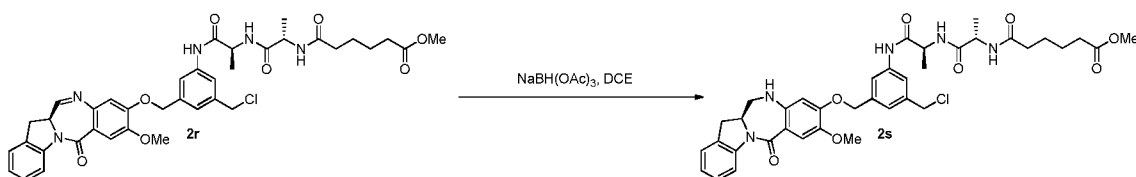


To a solution of **2q** (0.76 g, 1.42 mmol) in DMA (13 mL) was added potassium carbonate (0.59 g, 4.27 mmol) followed by a solution of **IGN monomer A** (0.5 g, 1.71 mmol) in DMA (1 mL). The reaction was stirred at room temperature for 12 h. The reaction was quenched with water (30 mL) and the mixture was stirred for 10 min. The solid was filtered and then dissolved in DCM/MeOH (9/1, 20 mL) and washed with brine (10 mL). The organic layer was separated and dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated in vacuo to give a crude yellow solid **2r** (0.76 g, 1.04 mmol, 73% yield) which was carried crude into the next step without further purification. UPLCMS (2.5 min method) = 1.55 min. Mass observed (ESI⁺): 732.9 (M+H)⁺.



To a solution of **2r** (0.26 g, 0.36 mmol) in DMA (10 mL) was added potassium iodide (0.06 g, 0.355 mmol, 1.0 equiv.), **reduced IGN monomer A** (0.1 g, 0.37 mmol, 1.05 equiv.) and potassium carbonate (0.15 g, 1.06 mmol, 3.0 equiv.). The reaction was warmed up to 40 °C and stirred for 4 h. The reaction was quenched with water (20 mL) and the mixture stirred for 10 min. The resulting solid was filtered. The solid was redissolved in DCM/MeOH (20:1, 20 mL), washed with water (20 mL), dried with magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated. The crude residue was purified by RPHPLC (ACN/H₂O) to give **2l** (0.097 g, 0.097 mmol, 28% yield). LCMS (8 min method, 5-98%) = 5.4 min. Mass observed (ESI⁺): 991.7 (M+H)⁺.

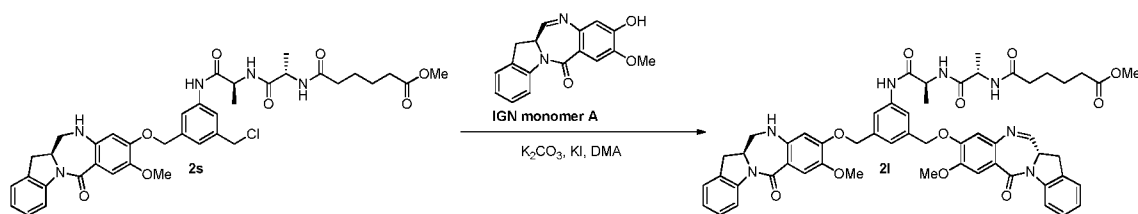
Example 7.



15

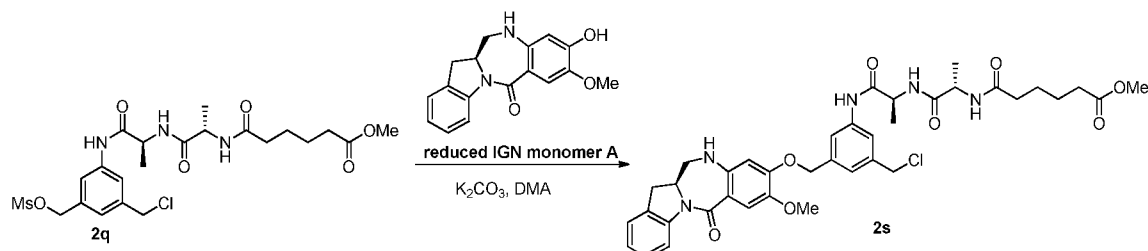
To a solution of **2r** (0.76 g, 1.04 mmol) in DCE (10 mL) was added DMF (3.0 mL) followed by addition of sodium triacetoxyborohydride (0.33 g, 1.56 mmol) at 0 °C. The reaction was stirred at room temperature for 4 h. The reaction was quenched with sat. ammonium chloride (20 mL) and the layers were separated. The aqueous layer was extracted with DCM (3 x 10 mL) and the combined organic layers were washed with water (10 mL), brine (10 mL), dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and the solvent removed in vacuo to give the desired crude material **2s** as an oil (0.65 g, 0.88 mmol, 85% yield) which was used in the next step without further purification. UPLCMS (2.5 min method) = 1.80 min. Mass observed (ESI⁺): 735.3 (M+H)⁺.

25



To a solution of **2s** (0.65 g, 0.88 mmol) in DMA (15 mL) was added potassium carbonate (0.25 g, 1.78 mmol, 2.0 equiv.) followed by potassium iodide (0.073 g, 0.44 mmol, 0.5 equiv.) and a solution of **IGN monomer A** (0.29 g, 0.974 mmol, 1.1 equiv.) in DMA (2 mL) was added to the reaction mixture at room temperature. The reaction was heated at 40 °C for 5 h.. The reaction was quenched with water (30 mL) and then solid was filtered off. The solid was redissolved in DCM/MeOH (20:1, 30 mL), washed with water (20 mL), dried with magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated. The crude residue (0.78 g) was purified by RPHPLC (ACN/H₂O) to give **2l** (0.43 g, 0.43 mmol, 49% yield). LCMS (8 min method, 5-98%) = 5.4 min. Mass observed (ESI⁺): 991.7 (M+H)⁺.

15

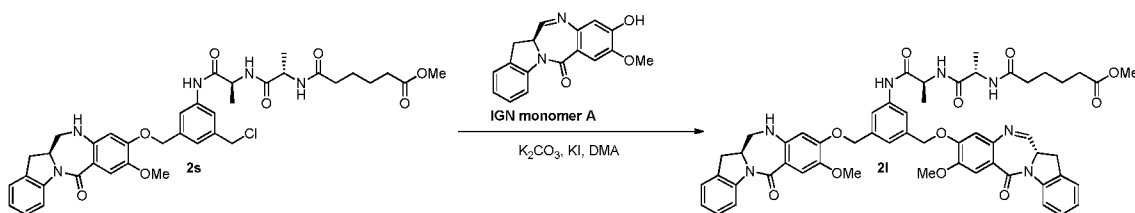
Example 8.

20

To a solution of **2q** (0.14 g, 0.27 mmol) in DMA (3 mL) was added potassium carbonate (0.11 g, 0.81 mmol) followed by a solution of **reduced IGN monomer A** (0.084 g, 0.28 mmol) in DMA (1 mL). The reaction was stirred at room temperature for 12 h. The reaction was quenched with water (20 mL) and the mixture stirred for 10 min. The solid was filtered and then dissolved in DCM/MeOH (9/1, 20 mL) and washed with brine (10 mL). The organic layer was separated and dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and solvent removed in vacuo. The crude material was purified by silica gel chromatography using DCM (MeOH/EtOAc, 1/4) to give desired product **2s** (0.08 g,

25

0.11 mmol, 40% yield). UPLCMS (2.5 min method) = 1.63 min. Mass observed (ESI⁺): 735.2 (M+H)⁺

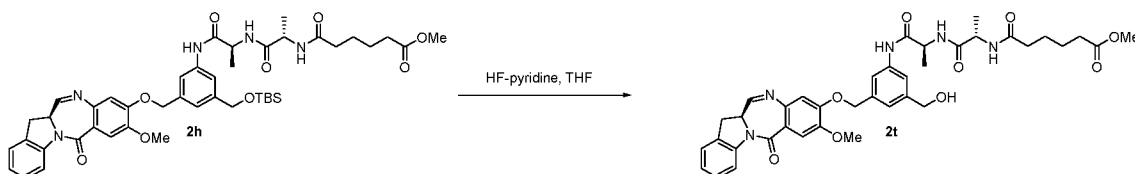


5

To a solution of **2s** (0.06 g, 0.09 mmol) in DMA (2 mL) was added potassium carbonate (0.025 g, 0.18 mmol) followed by potassium iodide (0.007 g, 0.044 mmol). A solution of **IGN monomer A** (0.03 g, 0.097 mmol) in DMA (1 mL) was added to the reaction mixture at room temperature. The reaction was heated at 40 °C for 5 h. The reaction was cooled down and quenched with water (20 mL) and the solid was filtered off. The solid was redissolved in DCM/MeOH (20:1, 20 mL), washed with water (10 mL), dried with magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated. The crude residue (0.07 g) was purified by RPHPLC (ACN/H₂O) to give **2l** (0.035 g, 0.035 mmol, 51% yield). LCMS (8 min method, 5-98%) = 5.4 min. Mass observed (ESI⁺): 991.7 (M+H)⁺.

15

Example 9.

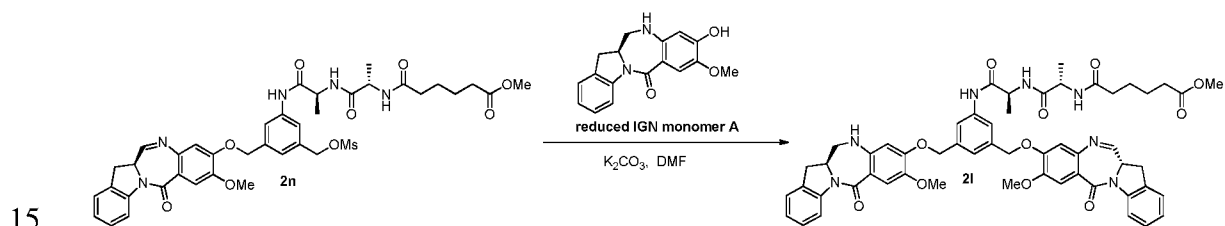


To a solution of **2h** (0.85 g, 1.027 mmol) in THF (9 mL) was added DIPEA (0.54 mL, 3.1 mmol, 3.0 equiv.) followed by HF-pyridine (0.3 mL, 2.053 mmol, 2.0 equiv.) at room temperature. The reaction was stirred for 3 h at room temperature. The reaction was quenched with sat. sodium bicarbonate (10 mL), the layers were separated and the aqueous layer extracted with DCM (3 x 10 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with brine (10 mL), dried over magnesium sulfate, and filtered. The solvent was removed in vacuo to give crude product as a solid which was washed with EtOAc to give the desired product **2t** (0.64 g, 0.89 mmol, 87% yield). UPLCMS (2.5 min method) = 1.36 min. Mass observed (ESI⁺): 714.6 (M+H)⁺.

25

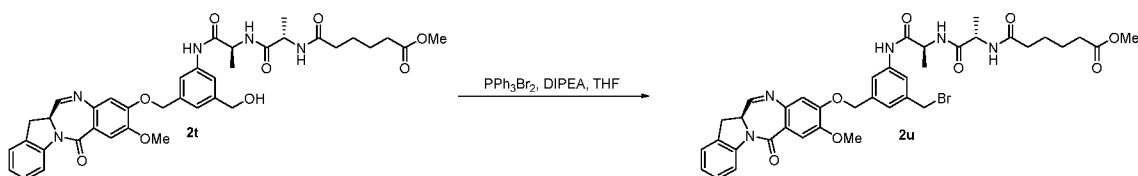


5 To a solution of **2t** (0.23 g, 0.322 mmol) in dichloromethane (3 mL) was added DIPEA (0.11 mL, 0.644 mmol, 2.0 equiv.) followed by methanesulfonic anhydride (0.084 g, 0.48 mmol, 1.5 equiv.) as a solution in DCM (1 mL) at 0 °C. The reaction was stirred for 1 h. The reaction was quenched with water (3 mL) and diluted with DCM (3 mL). The layers were separated and the organic layer was washed with brine (3 mL),
 10 dried over magnesium sulfate and filtered. The solvent was removed in vacuo and the crude material **2n** (0.25 g, 0.31 mmol, 98% yield) was used in the next step without further purification. UPLCMS (2.5 min method) = 1.45 min. Mass observed (ESI⁺): 792.5 (M+H)⁺.

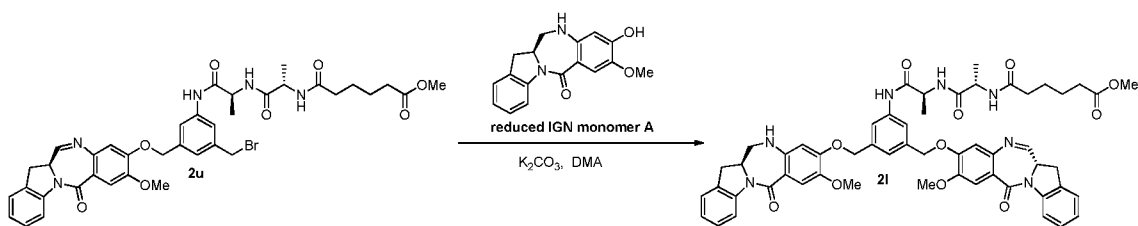


15 To a solution of **2n** (0.02 g, 0.027 mmol) in DMF (0.2 mL) was added potassium carbonate (0.007 g, 0.053 mmol, 2.0 equiv.) followed by **reduced IGN monomer A** (0.009 g, 0.029 mmol, 1.1 equiv.) and the reaction was stirred at room temperature for 18
 20 h. Water (3 mL) was added to the reaction mixture and the resulting solid was filtered. The solid was redissolved in DCM/MeOH (20:1, 5 mL), washed with water (5 mL), dried with magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated. The crude residue was purified by RPHPLC (ACN/H₂O) to give **2l** (0.005 g, 0.005 mmol, 19% yield). LCMS (8 min method, 5-98%) = 5.4 min. Mass observed (ESI⁺): 991.7 (M+H)⁺.

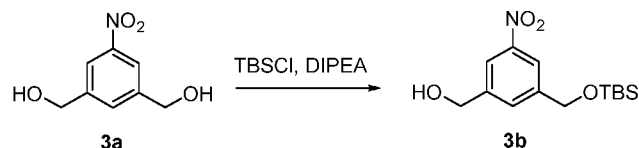
25

Example 10.

To a solution of **2t** (0.02 g, 0.031 mmol) in THF (2 mL) was added DIPEA (0.016 mL, 0.092 mmol, 3.0 equiv.) followed by a solution of dibromotriphenylphosphorane (0.03 g, 0.062 mmol, 2.0 equiv.) in THF (0.5 mL). The reaction was stirred at room temperature for 12 h., The reaction was stopped by evaporation of solvent and then the crude material was purified by silica gel chromatography to give **2u** (0.006 g, 0.007 mmol, 25% yield). UPLCMS (2.5 min method) = 1.56 min. Mass observed (ESI⁺): 778.2 (M+H)⁺.

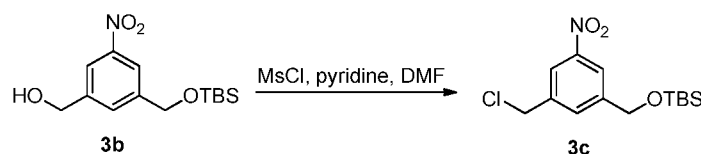


To a solution of **2u** (0.006 g, 7.73 μmol) in DMA (1 mL) was added **reduced IGN monomer A** (0.003 g, 9.27 μmol) followed by potassium carbonate (0.002 g, 0.015 mmol) and the reaction was stirred at room temperature for 18 h. Water (3 mL) was added to the reaction mixture and the resulting solid was filtered and washed with water. The solid was redissolved in DCM/MeOH (20:1, 5 mL), washed with water (5 mL), dried with magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated. The crude residue was purified by RPHPLC (ACN/H₂O) to give **2l** (0.001 g, 0.001 mmol, 13% yield). LCMS (8 min method, 5-98%) = 5.4 min. Mass observed (ESI⁺): 991.7 (M+H)⁺.

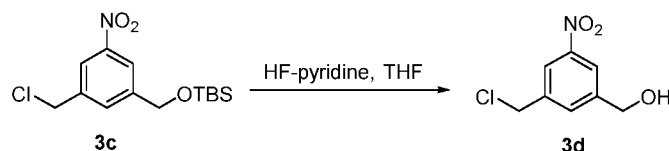
Example 11.

5 To a solution of (5-nitro-1,3-phenylene)dimethanol **3a** (4.0 g, 21.84 mmol) in DCM (40 mL) and DMF (5 mL) was added DIPEA (3.86 mL, 21.84 mmol, 1.0 equiv.) followed by TBSCl (3.29 g, 21.84 mmol, 1.0 equiv.) as a solution in DMF (5 mL). The reaction was stirred at 0 °C for 1 h.. The reaction was quenched with sat. ammonium chloride (20 mL) and the layers were separated. The aqueous layer was extracted with
 10 DCM (2 x 20 mL) and the combined organic layers were washed with water (2 x 50 mL), brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and solvent was removed in vacuo to give a crude yellow oil. The crude product was purified by silica gel chromatography (DCM/MeOH) to give desired product **3b** (3.69 g, 12.41 mmol, 57% yield). UPLCMS (2.5 min method) = 1.96 min. Mass observed (ESI⁺): 298.5 (M+H)⁺.

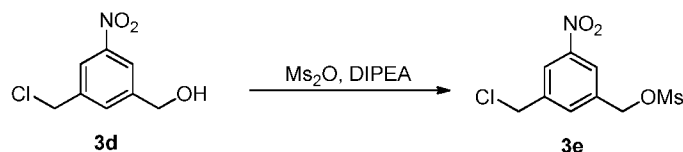
15



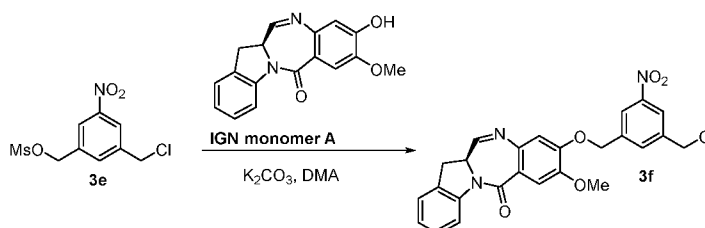
To a solution of **3b** (2.0 g, 6.72 mmol) in DMF (50 mL) was added pyridine (1.6 ml, 20.17 mmol, 3.0 equiv.) followed by methanesulfonyl chloride (1.1 mL, 13.45
 20 mmol, 2.0 equiv.) at 0 °C. The reaction was warmed to rt and was stirred for 3 h. The reaction was quenched with sat. sodium bicarbonate (20 mL) and the layers were separated. The aqueous layer was extracted with EtOAc (3 x 30 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with water (2 x 100 mL), brine (100 mL), dried over magnesium sulfate and filtered. The solvent removed in vacuo and the crude material **3c**
 25 (2.0g, 6.7 mmol, 94% yield) was carried crude onto the next step. UPLCMS (2.5 min method) = 2.22 min. Mass observed (ESI⁺): 316.7 (M+H)⁺.



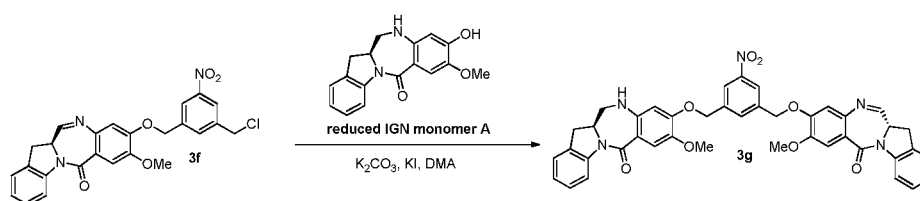
To a solution of **3c** (2.0 g, 6.33 mmol) in THF (38.9 mL) was added DIPEA (5.5 mL, 31.6 mmol, 5.0 equiv.) followed by HF-pyridine (2.7 mL, 19.0 mmol, 3.0 equiv.) and the reaction was stirred at room temperature for 2 h. The reaction was then quenched with sat. sodium bicarbonate (100 mL). The layers were separated and then the aqueous layer was extracted with EtOAc (3 x 20 mL). The combined organic layers were then washed with water (30 mL), brine (30 mL), dried over magnesium sulfate and filtered. The excess of solvent was removed in vacuo to give desired product **3d** (1.1 g, 5.46 mmol, 86% yield). UPLCMS (2.5 min method) = 1.31 min. Mass observed (ESI⁺): 202.4 (M+H)⁺.



To a solution of **3d** (1.0 g, 4.96 mmol) in DCM (10 mL) was added DIPEA (2.6 mL, 14.9 mmol, 3.0 equiv.) at 0 °C then a solution of methanesulfonic anhydride (1.1 g, 6.45 mmol, 1.3 equiv.) in DCM was added to the reaction mixture. The reaction was stirred for 1 h. The reaction was quenched with water (10 mL) and the layers were separated and the aqueous layer was extracted with DCM (2 x 20 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with sat. sodium bicarbonate (10 mL), brine (20 mL), dried over magnesium sulfate and filtered. The solvent was removed in vacuo and the crude material **3e** (1.3 g, 4.65 mmol, 94% yield) was used in the next step without further purification. UPLCMS (2.5 min method) = 1.51 min. Mass observed (ESI⁺): 280.6 (M+H)⁺.

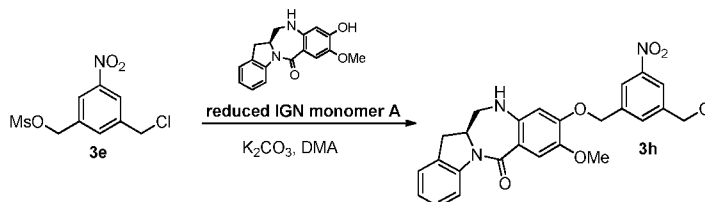


To a solution of **3e** (0.4 g, 1.43 mmol) and potassium carbonate (0.6 g, 4.29 mmol, 3.0 equiv.) in DMA (13.4 mL) was added a solution of **IGN monomer A** (0.46 g, 1.57 mmol, 1.1 equiv.) in DMA (2 mL) at room temperature and the reaction was stirred for 5 h. The reaction was quenched with water (30 mL), the layers were separated and the aqueous layer was extracted with EtOAc (3 x 30 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with water (30 mL), brine (30 mL), dried over magnesium sulfate and the solvent was removed in vacuo. The crude oil was purified over silica gel chromatography using DCM / MeOH to give compound **3f** (0.37g, 0.77 mmol, 54% yield). UPLCMS (2.5 min method) = 1.69 min. Mass observed (ESI⁺): 478.3 (M+H)⁺.



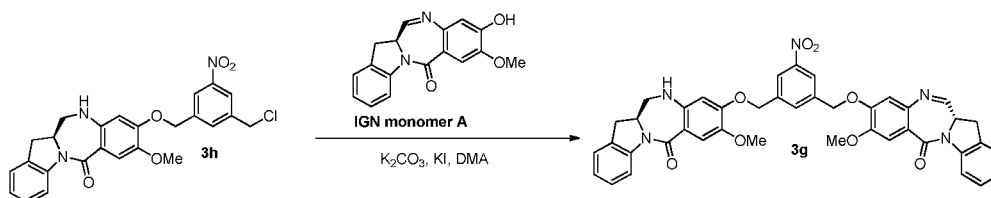
To a solution of **3f** (0.11 g, 0.23 mmol) in DMA (3.0 mL) was added potassium carbonate (0.095 g, 0.69 mmol, 3.0 equiv.), followed by potassium iodide (0.02 g, 0.11 mmol, 0.5 equiv.). A solution of **reduced IGN monomer A** (0.07 g, 0.25 mmol, 1.1 equiv.) in DMA (1 mL) was added. The reaction was then gently heated at 35 °C for 5 h. The reaction was quenched with water, and the solid was filtered off. The solid was redissolved in DCM/MeOH (20:1), washed with water, dried with magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated. The crude residue (0.13 g) was purified by RPHPLC (ACN/H₂O) to give **3g** (0.063 g, 0.085 mmol, 36% yield). UPLCMS (2.5 min method) = 1.79 min. Mass observed (ESI⁺): 738.3 (M+H)⁺. ¹H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆, reported as a mixture of water adducts) ¹H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆): δ 8.43 – 8.36 (m, 2H), 8.27 (d, *J* = 8.1 Hz, 1H), 8.13 – 8.02 (m, 2H), 7.44 – 7.14 (m, 6H), 7.14 – 6.99 (m, 2H), 6.79 (s, 0.5H), 6.56 (s, 0.5H), 6.50 (d, *J* = 2.2 Hz, 1H), 6.39 (d, *J* = 6.9 Hz, 1H), 6.17 (d, *J* = 6.8 Hz, 0.5H), 5.69 (s, 0.5H), 5.59 (d, *J* = 5.7 Hz, 0.5H), 5.47 – 5.27 (m, 4H), 5.03 (t, *J* = 6.1 Hz, 0.5H), 4.77 (dd, *J* = 9.1, 6.8 Hz, 0.5H), 4.61 (dt, *J* = 9.7, 5.1 Hz, 0.15H), 4.50 – 4.39 (m, 0.5H), 4.27 (dd, *J* = 10.9, 4.2 Hz, 0.5H), 4.16 (td, *J* = 9.6, 2.9 Hz, 0.5H), 3.95 (s, 0.5H), 3.89 – 3.76 (m, 6H), 3.76 – 3.44 (m, 4H), 3.20 – 3.08 (m, 1H), 2.96 (dd, *J* = 17.0, 4.4 Hz, 1H).

Example 12.



5 To a solution of **3e** (0.45 g, 1.61 mmol) in DMA (15.1 mL) was added potassium carbonate (0.67 g, 4.83 mmol, 3.0 equiv.) followed by a solution of **reduced IGN monomer A** (0.5 g, 1.69 mmol, 1.1 equiv.) in DMA (2 mL). The reaction was stirred at room temperature for 5h.. The reaction was quenched with water (30 mL) and the mixture was stirred for 10 min. The solid was filtered and then dissolved in
 10 DCM/MeOH (9/1, 30 mL) and washed with brine (20 mL). The organic layer was separated and dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and the solvent removed in vacuo. The crude material was purified by silica gel chromatography using Hexane/EtOAc to give compound **3h** (0.28 g, 0.58 mmol, 36% yield) as colorless oil. UPLCMS (2.5 min method) = 1.82 min. Mass observed (ESI⁺): 480.3 (M+H)⁺.

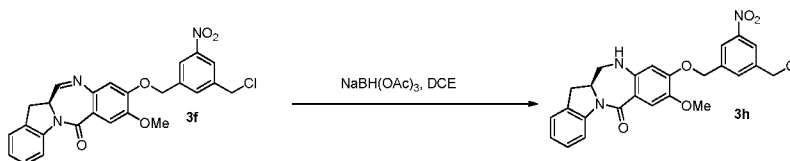
15



To a solution of **3h** (0.27 g, 0.56 mmol) in DMA (10 mL) was added potassium carbonate (0.16 g, 1.12 mmol, 2.0 equiv.) followed by potassium iodide (0.05 g, 0.28
 20 mmol, 0.05 equiv.). A solution of **IGN monomer A** (0.18 g, 0.62 mmol, 1.1 equiv.) in DMA (2 mL) was added to the reaction mixture at room temperature. The reaction was then stirred at 40 °C for 3h. The reaction was quenched with water (20 mL) and the solid was filtered off and washed with water. The crude yellow solid was dissolved in DCM/MeOH (9/1, 30 mL) and then washed with water (10 mL), dried over magnesium
 25 sulfate and filtered. The solvent was removed in vacuo to give a crude yellow solid. The crude product was purified by silica gel chromatography using DCM/MeOH (0% to 5% MeOH/DCM) to give the product **3g** as a yellow powder (0.35 g, 0.48 mmol, 86%

yield). UPLCMS (2.5 min method) = 1.79 min (2.5 min method). Mass observed (ESI⁺): 738.4 (M+H)⁺.

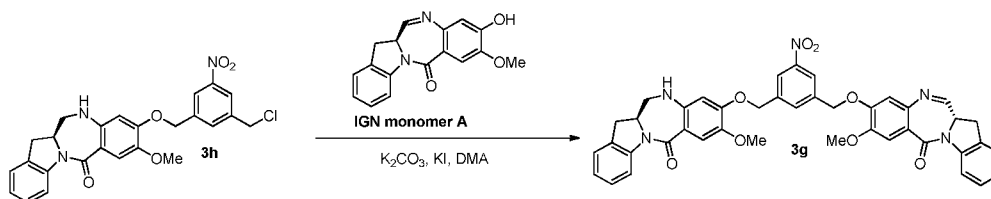
Example 13.



5

To a solution of **3f** (0.15 g, 0.31 mmol) in DCE (2 mL) was added sodium triacetoxyborohydride (0.067 g, 0.31 mmol, 1.0 equiv.) and the reaction was stirred at room temperature for 1 h. The reaction was quenched with sat. ammonium chloride (1 mL) and then the layers were separated. The aqueous layer was extracted with DCM (3 x 10 mL) and the combined organic layers were washed with brine (20 mL), dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and the solvent removed in vacuo. The crude brown oil was purified by silica gel chromatography to give desired product **3h** (0.08 g, 0.16 mmol, 52% yield). UPLCMS (2.5 min method) = 1.80 min. Mass observed (ESI⁺): 480.5 (M+H)⁺.

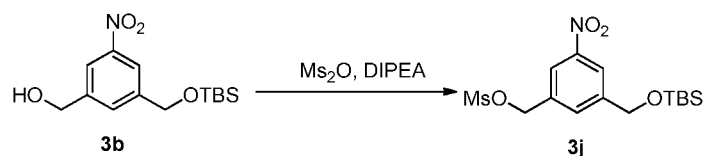
15



To a solution of **3h** (0.07g, 0.16 mmol) in DMA (2 mL) was added potassium carbonate (0.07 g, 0.47 mmol, 3.0 equiv.) followed by potassium iodide (0.013 g, 0.08 mmol, 0.05 equiv.) and then a solution of **IGN monomer A** (0.05 g, 0.17 mmol, 1.1 equiv.) in DMA (0.5 mL) was added. The reaction was stirred at room temperature for 12h.. Water (20 mL) was added to the mixture and the mixture was stirred for 10 min at which point the solid was filtered. The solid was solubilized in DCM (10 mL) and then washed with brine (10 mL). The organic layer was dried over magnesium sulfate and filtered. The solvent was removed to obtain a yellow oil (0.09 g, 0.12 mmol, 80% yield). UPLCMS (2.5 min method) = 1.79 min (2.5 min method). Mass observed (ESI⁺): 738.5 (M+H)⁺.

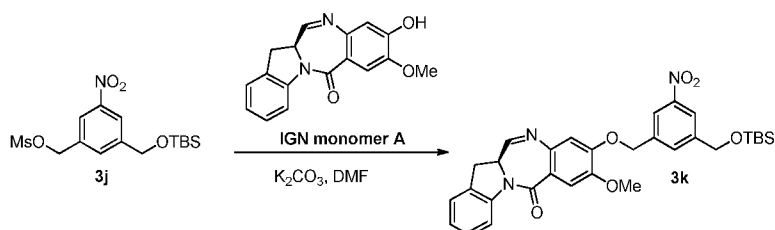
25

Example 14.

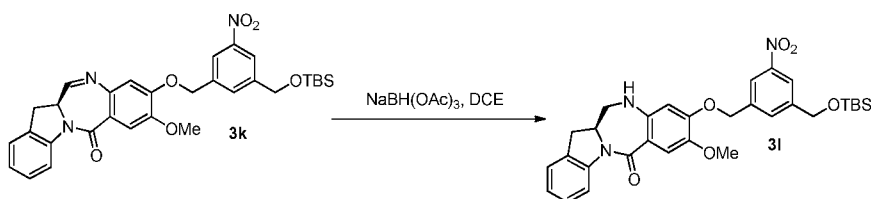


To a solution of **3b** (1.00 g, 3.4 mmol) in DCM (33 mL) was added DIPEA (1.781 ml, 10.09 mmol, 3.0 equiv.), followed by a solution of methanesulfonic anhydride (0.703 g, 4.03 mmol, 1.2 equiv.) at 0 °C. The reaction was stirred for 1 h. The solvent was evaporated to give the crude product **3j** (1.2 g, 3.2 mmol, 95% yield) which was used in the next step without further purification. UPLCMS (2.5 min method) = 2.04 min. Mass observed (ESI⁺): 376.5 (M+H)⁺.

10

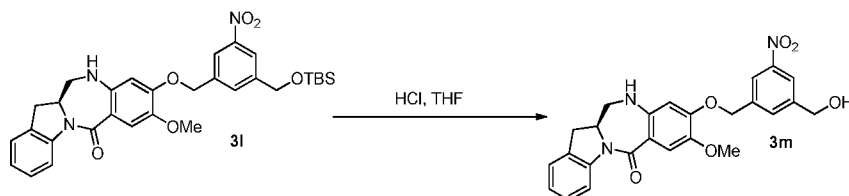


To a solution of **3j** (1.24 g, 3.30 mmol) in DMF (26 mL) was added potassium carbonate (0.91 g, 6.60 mmol, 2.0 equiv.) followed by **IGN monomer A** (0.97 g, 3.30 mmol, 1.0 equiv.) at room temperature for 12 h. The reaction was quenched with water (60 mL) and the solid was filtered off and then dissolved in DCM/MeOH (20/1, 20 mL). The organic layer was washed with brine, dried over magnesium sulfate and filtered. The solvent was removed in vacuo and the crude material was purified over silica gel chromatography to give the desired product **3k** (1.3 g, 2.27 mmol, 69% yield). UPLCMS (2.5 min method) = 2.12 min (2.5 min method). Mass observed (ESI⁺): 574.4 (M+H)⁺.

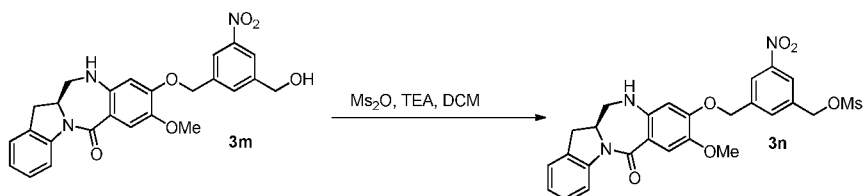


25 **3k** (0.63 g, 1.1 mmol) was dissolved in anhydrous DCE (11 mL). Sodium triacetoxymethylborohydride (0.70 g, 3.3 mmol, 3.0 equiv.) was added and the reaction mixture

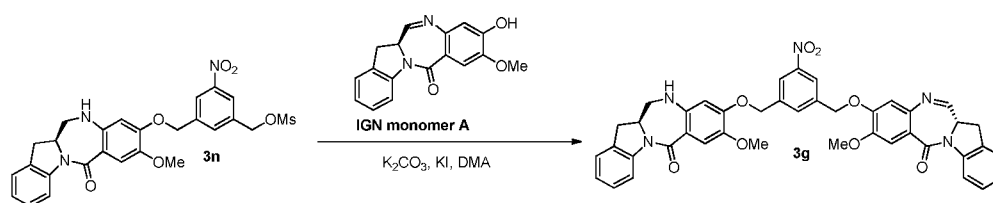
was stirred for 1 h at room temperature. The mixture was quenched with sat. ammonium chloride (10 mL). The layers were separated and the aqueous layer was extracted with DCM (2 x 20 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with brine (20 mL), dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated to obtain **3l** (0.58 g, 1.0 mmol, 92% yield). UPLCMS (8.0 min method) = 7.797 min (8.0 min method). Mass observed (ESI⁺): 576.3 (M+H)⁺.



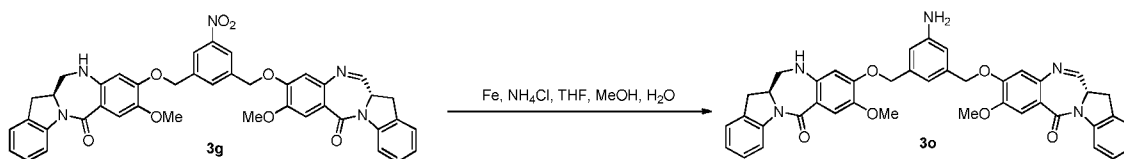
A solution of **3l** (0.58 g, 1.0 mmol) was dissolved in anhydrous THF (5 mL) and 5 M aqueous hydrochloride acid solution (2.01 mL, 10.07 mmol) was added. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 h. The reaction was quenched with sat. sodium bicarbonate (5 mL) and the layers were separated and the aqueous layer was extracted with DCM (2 x 10 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with brine (20 mL), dried over magnesium sulfate and concentrated to give a bright orange solid. The resulting solid was purified by silica gel chromatography (DCM/MeOH) to give compound **3m** (0.33 g, 0.71 mmol, 71% yield). UPLCMS (8.0 min method) = 5.166 min. Mass observed (ESI⁺): 462.1 (M+H)⁺.



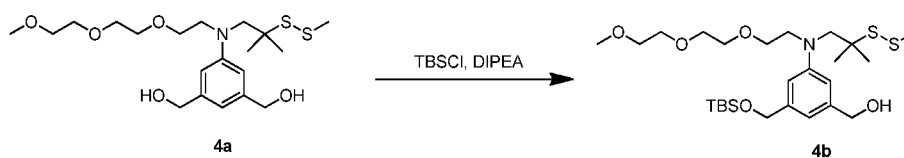
3m (0.1 g, 0.22 mmol) was dissolved in anhydrous DCM (1.5 mL) and anhydrous DMF (0.7 mL). The reaction was cooled to 0 °C and triethylamine (0.12 mL, 0.88 mmol) and methanesulfonyl anhydride (0.08 g, 0.44 mmol) were added. The reaction was stirred at 0 °C for 1 h. The reaction mixture was diluted with ethyl acetate (20 mL), washed with water (2 x 20 mL), dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated. The compound was initially purified by silica gel chromatography (DCM/EtOAc) followed by additional purification by RPPHPLC (MeCN/water) to give the desired product **3n** (0.041 g, 0.076 mmol, 34% yield). Mass observed (ESI⁺): 540.3 (M+H)⁺.



Compound **3n** (0.041 g, 0.076 mmol) and **IGN monomer A** (0.027 g, 0.091 mmol) were dissolved in anhydrous DMA (0.5 mL). Potassium carbonate (0.012 g, 0.091 mmol) and potassium iodide (0.006 g, 0.038 mmol) were added and the mixture stirred for 12 h. . Water (5 mL) was added to the reaction mixture. The solid was filtered off and then redissolved in DCM (20 mL) and washed with water (10 mL). After drying over magnesium sulfate, filtration and concentration, the solid was purified by RPHPLC (ACN/H₂O) to give **3g** (0.012 g, 0.016 mmol, 21% yield). UPLCMS (2.5 min method) = 1.79 min. Mass observed (ESI⁺): 738.5 (M+H)⁺.

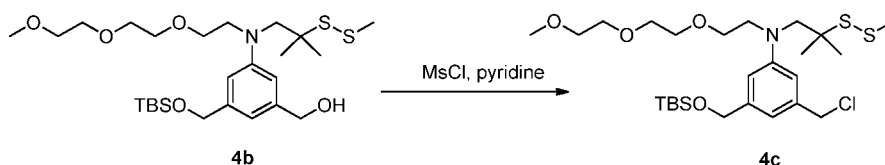


Compound **3g** (0.017 g, 0.023 mmol) was dissolved in anhydrous THF (1 mL), anhydrous MeOH (0.5 mL) and water (0.1 mL). Ammonium chloride (0.012 g, 0.23 mmol, 10.0 equiv.) and iron (0.006 g, 0.115 mmol, 5.0 equiv.) were added. The mixture was stirred at 60 °C for 2 h.. The reaction mixture was cooled to room temp, filtered through Celite and rinsed with 20% MeOH/DCM (10 mL). The filtrate was concentrated and the crude product was purified by silica gel chromatography (DCM/MeOH) to give compound **3o** as a white solid (0.012 g, 0.018 mmol, 76% yield). UPLCMS (2.5 min method) = 1.84 min. Mass observed (ESI⁺): 708.5 (M+H)⁺. ¹H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆, reported as a mixture of water adducts, T = 330K): δ 8.26 (d, *J* = 7.9 Hz, 1H), 8.17 (d, *J* = 7.8 Hz, 1H), 8.03 (d, *J* = 4.5 Hz, 1H), 7.49 (s, 1H), 7.42 – 7.33 (m, 2H), 7.36 – 7.08 (m, 4H), 7.09 – 6.95 (m, 2H), 6.76 – 6.64 (m, 3H), 6.47 (s, 1H), 6.15 (d, *J* = 6.5 Hz, 1H), 5.11 (m, 2H), 4.98 (m, 2H), 4.58 (dt, *J* = 9.9, 4.7 Hz, 1H), 4.47 – 4.36 (m, 1H), 3.87 (m, 1H), 3.76 (s, 3H). 3.71 – 3.46 (m, 4H), 3.39 – 3.28 (m, 1H), 2.93 (dd, *J* = 16.8, 4.7 Hz, 1H).

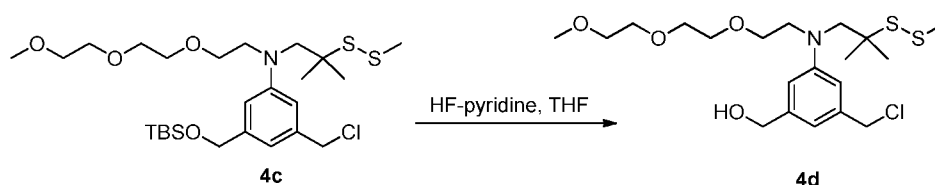
Example 15.

To a solution of **4a** (5.6 g, 12.9 mmol, 1.0 equiv.) in DCM (83 mL) was added
 5 DIPEA (6.77 mL, 38.7 mmol, 3.0 equiv.) followed by a solution of TBS-Cl (2.336 g,
 15.50 mmol, 1.2 equiv.) in DCM (10 mL) at 0 °C. The reaction was stirred at room
 temperature for 3h. The reaction was quenched with sat. ammonium chloride (30 mL)
 and the layers were separated. The aqueous solution was extracted with DCM (2 x 30
 mL) and the combined organic layers were washed with water (2 x 50 mL), brine (50
 10 mL), dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and the solvent removed in vacuo to give
 crude yellow oil. The crude product was purified by silica gel chromatography
 (Hexane/EtOAc) to give the desired product **4b** (3.0 g, 5.48 mmol, 43% yield).
 UPLCMS (2.5 min method) = 2.29 min. Mass observed (ESI⁺): 549.0 (M+H)⁺.

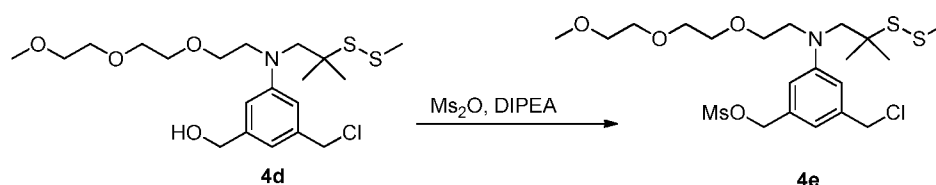
15



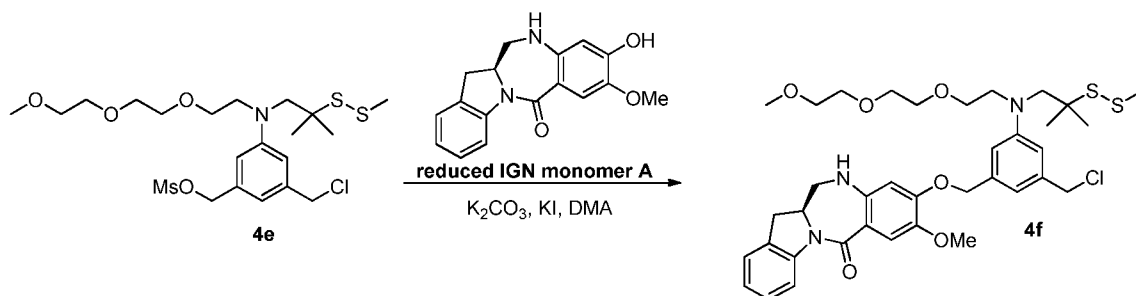
To a solution of **4b** (3.00 g, 5.48 mmol, 1.0 equiv.) in DMF (30 mL) was added
 pyridine (1.33 mL, 16.4 mmol, 3.0 equiv.) followed by a solution of methanesulfonyl
 chloride (0.64 mL, 8.21 mmol, 1.5 equiv.) at 0 °C. The reaction was stirred for 1 h and
 20 was quenched with sat. sodium bicarbonate (30 mL), and diluted with EtOAc (40 mL).
 The layers were separated and the aqueous layer was extracted with EtOAc (2 x 30 mL).
 The combined organic layers were washed with water (2 x 40 mL), brine (40 mL), dried
 over magnesium sulfate, filtered and the solvent was removed in vacuo to give crude
 product **4c** (2.5 g, 4.41 mmol, 81% yield). UPLCMS (10.0 min method) = 8.23 min.
 25 Mass observed (ESI⁺): 567.6 (M+H)⁺.



To a solution of **4c** (2.5 g, 4.41 mmol, 1.0 equiv.) in THF (43 mL) was added DIPEA (2.46 mL, 14.1 mmol, 4.0 equiv.), followed by HF-pyridine (1.48 mL, 10.6 mmol, 3.0 equiv.) and the reaction was stirred at room temperature for 2 h. The reaction
 5 was quenched with sat. sodium bicarbonate (100 mL) and the layers were separated. The aqueous layer was extracted with EtOAc (3 x 20 mL) and the combined organic layers were washed with water (30 mL), brine (30 mL) dried over magnesium sulfate and filtered. The solvent was removed in vacuo to give desired product **4d** (0.9 g, 2.0 mmol, 56% yield). UPLCMS (10.0 min method) = 5.20 min. Mass observed (ESI⁺):
 10 435.4 (M+H)⁺.

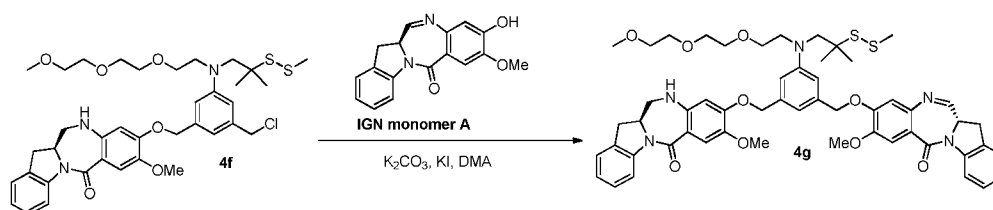


To a solution of **4d** (0.9 g, 2.0 mmol, 1.0 equiv.) in DCM (10 mL) was added DIPEA (0.69 mL, 3.98 mmol, 2.0 equiv.) at 0 °C, followed by a solution of
 15 methanesulfonic anhydride (0.52 g, 2.99 mmol, 1.5 equiv.) in DCM (2 mL).. The reaction was stirred for 1 h.. The reaction was quenched with water (10 mL), the layers were separated and the aqueous layer was extracted with DCM (2 x 20 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with sat. sodium bicarbonate (10 mL), brine (20 mL), dried over magnesium sulfate and filtered. The solvent was removed in vacuo and
 20 the crude material **4e** (1.0 g, 1.88 mmol, 95% yield) was used in the next step without further purification. UPLCMS (10 min method) = 5.7 min. Mass observed (ESI⁺): 531.4 (M+H)⁺.

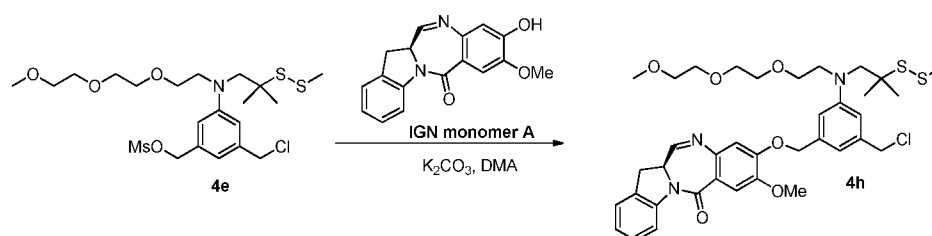


To a solution of **4e** (0.21 g, 0.39 mmol, 1.0 equiv.) in DMA (2.0 mL) was added potassium carbonate (0.16 g, 1.19 mmol, 3.0 equiv.) followed by a solution of **reduced**

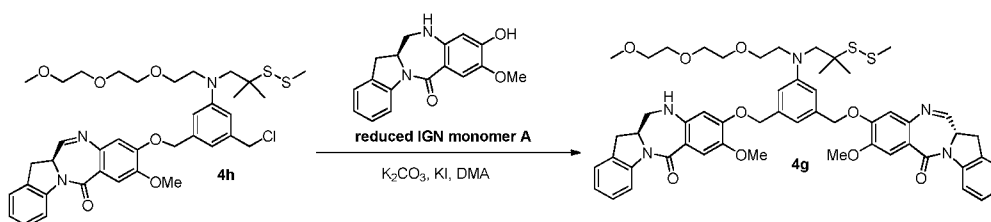
IGN monomer A (0.12 g, 0.41 mmol, 1.05 equiv.) in DMA (1 mL). The reaction was stirred at room temperature for 5h. The reaction was quenched with water (30 mL) and the mixture stirred for 10 min. The solid was filtered and was dissolved in DCM/MeOH (9/1, 30 mL) and washed with brine (20 mL). The organic layer was separated and dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and the solvent removed in vacuo. The crude material was purified by silica gel chromatography (Hexane/EtOAc) to give the desired product **4f** (0.11 g, 0.15 mmol, 38% yield) as colorless oil. UPLCMS (10 min method) = 6.55 min. Mass observed (ESI⁺): 730.9 (M+H)⁺.



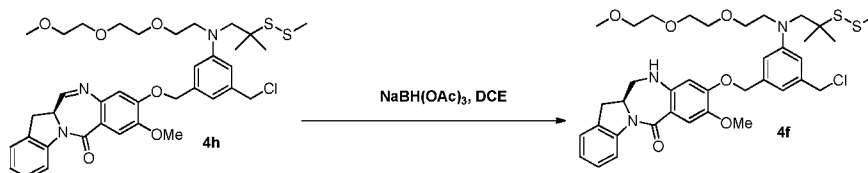
A solution of **4f** (0.11 g, 0.15 mmol, 1.0 equiv.) and **IGN monomer A** (0.053 g, 0.18 mmol) were dissolved in anhydrous DMA (1.0 mL). Potassium carbonate (0.041 g, 0.30 mmol) and potassium iodide (0.025 g, 0.15 mmol) were added. The mixture was stirred for 4 h at 40 °C. Water (5 mL) was added to the reaction mixture and the solid was filtered off and then redissolved in DCM (20 mL) and washed with water (10 mL). The organic layer was dried over magnesium sulfate, filtration and concentrated. The crude solid was purified by silica gel chromatography (Hexane/EtOAc) to give **4g** (0.099 g, 0.10 mmol, 66% yield). UPLCMS (10 min method) = 6.38 min. Mass observed (ESI⁺): 988.7 (M+H)⁺. ¹H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆): δ 8.22 (d, *J* = 7.9 Hz, 1H), 8.12 (d, *J* = 8.1 Hz, 1H), 8.03 (d, *J* = 4.5 Hz, 1H), 7.38 – 7.25 (m, 2H), 7.24 (t, *J* = 7.9 Hz, 2H), 7.24 – 7.06 (m, 2H), 7.11 – 6.94 (m, 1H), 6.98 (s, 1H), 6.91 (d, *J* = 15.2 Hz, 2H), 6.79 (s, 1H), 6.45 (s, 1H), 6.32 (d, *J* = 6.8 Hz, 1H), 5.18 (q, *J* = 12.3 Hz, 2H), 5.01 (m, 2H), 4.54 (dt, *J* = 9.7, 5.2 Hz, 1H), 4.37 (dt, *J* = 10.6, 5.4 Hz, 1H), 3.87 (s, 3H), 3.71 (s, 3H), 3.60 (m, 6H), 3.57 – 3.50 (m, 2H), 3.47 (qd, *J* = 4.3, 1.0 Hz, 4H), 3.47 (s, 3H), 3.42 – 3.33 (m, 2H), 3.32 – 3.16 (m, 2H), 3.21 (s, 3H), 2.97 – 2.85 (m, 1H), 2.44 (s, 3H), 1.30 (s, 6H).

Example 16.

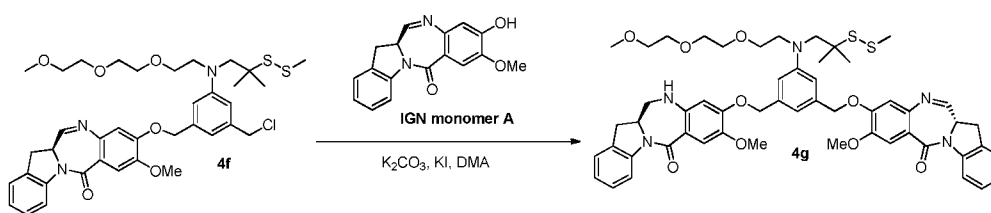
To a solution of **4e** (0.52 g, 0.98 mmol, 1.0 equiv.) and potassium carbonate (0.41 g, 2.94 mmol, 3.0 equiv.) in DMA (10 ml) was added a solution of **IGN monomer A** (0.30 g, 1.03 mmol, 1.05 equiv.) in DMA (2 mL) at room temperature and the reaction was stirred for 5h. The reaction was quenched with water (30 mL), the layers were separated and the aqueous layer extracted with EtOAc (3 x 30 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with water (30 mL), brine (30 mL), dried over magnesium sulfate and excess of solvent removed in vacuo. The crude oil was purified by silica gel chromatography (Hexane/EtOAc) to give desired product **4h** (0.35 g, 0.48 mmol, 49% yield). UPLCMS (10 min method) = 6.19 min. Mass observed (ESI⁺): 728.7 (M+H)⁺.



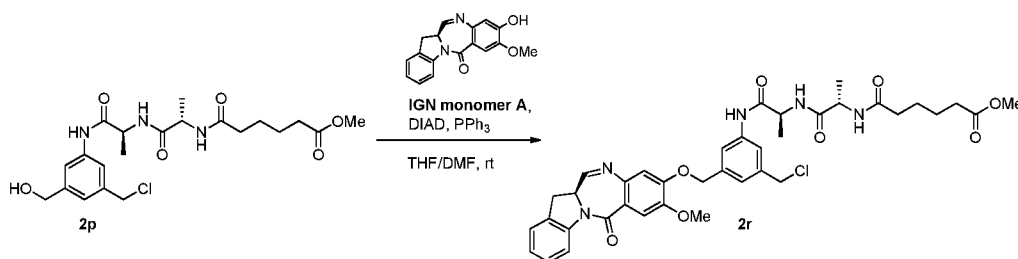
To a solution of **4h** (0.18 g, 0.25 mmol, 1.0 equiv.) in DMA (5.0 mL) was added potassium carbonate (0.10 g, 0.74 mmol, 3.0 equiv.) followed by potassium iodide (0.04 g, 0.2 mmol, 1.0 equiv.). A solution of **reduced IGN monomer A** (0.08 g, 0.27 mmol, 1.1 equiv.) in DMA (1 mL) was added and the reaction was then heated at 40 °C for 5h. The reaction was quenched with water, and then solid was filtered off. The solid was redissolved in DCM/MeOH (20:1), washed with water, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated. The crude residue was purified by silica gel chromatography (Hexane/EtOAc) to give **4g** (0.05 g, 0.05 mmol, 21% yield). UPLCMS (10 min method) = 6.39 min. Mass observed (ESI⁺): 989.0 (M+H)⁺.

Example 17.

Compound **4h** (0.17 g, 0.24 mmol, 1.0 equiv.) was dissolved in anhydrous DCE (3 mL) and sodium triacetoxyborohydride (0.10 g, 0.48 mmol, 3.0 equiv.) was added at room temperature. The reaction mixture was stirred for 1 h. The mixture was quenched with sat. ammonium chloride (10 mL). The layers were separated and the aqueous layer extracted with DCM (2 x 20 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with brine (20 mL), dried over anhydrous magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated to obtain **4f** (0.13 g, 0.18 mmol, 77% yield) which was used in the next step without further purification. UPLCMS (2.5 min method) = 2.13 min. Mass observed (ESI^+): 731.2 ($\text{M}+\text{H}^+$).

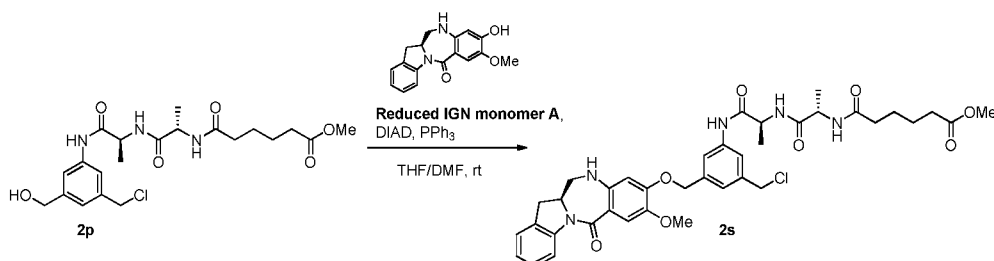


Compound **4f** (0.19 g, 0.26 mmol, 1.0 equiv.) and IGN monomer A (0.084 g, 0.28 mmol, 1.1 equiv.) were dissolved in anhydrous DMA (4.0 mL). Potassium carbonate (0.11 g, 0.78 mmol, 3.0 equiv.) and potassium iodide (0.043 g, 0.26 mmol, 1.0 equiv.) were added. The mixture was stirred for 4 h at 40 °C. Water (5 mL) was added to the reaction mixture. The solid was filtered off and was redissolved in DCM (20 mL) and washed with water (10 mL). After drying over magnesium sulfate, filtration and concentration, the solid was purified by silica gel chromatography (Hexane/EtOAc) to give **4g** (0.065 g, 0.06 mmol, 25% yield). UPLCMS (10 min method) = 6.38 min. Mass observed (ESI^+): 988.7 ($\text{M}+\text{H}^+$).

Example 18.

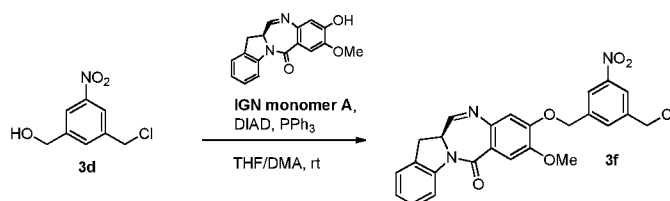
Compound **2p** (0.03 g, 0.066 mmol, 1.0 equiv.) and **IGN monomer A** (0.021 g, 0.072 mmol, 1.1 equiv.) were dissolved in THF (0.65 mL) and DMF (0.3 mL).

- 5 Triphenylphosphine was added (0.021 g, 0.079 mmol, 1.2 equiv.), followed by a slow addition of DIAD (0.015 mL, 0.079 mmol, 1.2 equiv.). The reaction was stirred at rt under argon for 2 h. The reaction mixture was concentrated and water (~2 mL) was added to triturate the product. The precipitate was filtered and the remaining solid was washed with water. The crude residue was purified by RPHPLC (C18 column, MeCN/water, gradient, 40% to 60%) to give compound **2r** as a white fluffy solid (0.015 g, 0.02 mmol, 31% yield). UPLCMS (2.5 min method) = 1.62 min. Mass observed (ESI⁺) = 732.9 (M+H)⁺.
- 10

Example 19.

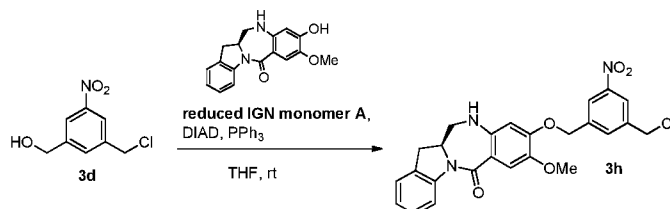
15

- Compound **2p** (0.03g, 0.066 mmol, 1.0 equiv.) and **reduced IGN monomer A** (0.02g, 0.072 mmol, 1.1 equiv.) were dissolved in THF (0.66 mL) and DMF (0.1 mL). Triphenylphosphine (0.021 g, 0.079 mmol, 1.2 equiv.) was added, followed by a slow addition of DIAD (0.015 mL, 0.079 mmol, 1.2 equiv.). The reaction mixture was stirred at rt under argon for 2 h. The reaction mixture was diluted with DCM and was washed with water (2x). The organic layer was dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and concentrated. The crude residue was purified by RPHPLC (C18 column, MeCN/water, gradient, 40% to 65%) to yield **2s** as a white fluffy solid (0.017 g, 0.02 mmol, 35% yield). UPLCMS (2.5 min method) = 1.71 min. Mass observed (ESI⁺) = 735.4 (M+H)⁺.
- 20
- 25

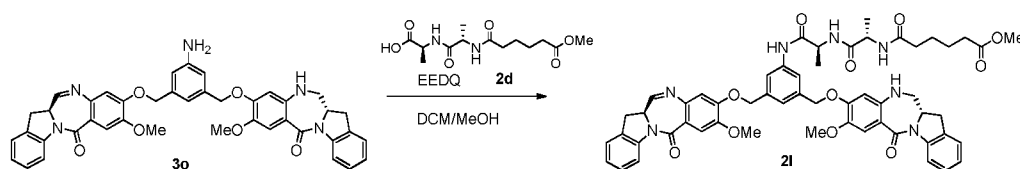
Example 20.

Compound **3d** (0.03 g, 0.149 mmol, 1.0 equiv.) and **IGN monomer A** (0.046 g, 0.156 mmol, 1.05 equiv.) were dissolved in THF (1.5 mL) and DMF (0.3 mL).

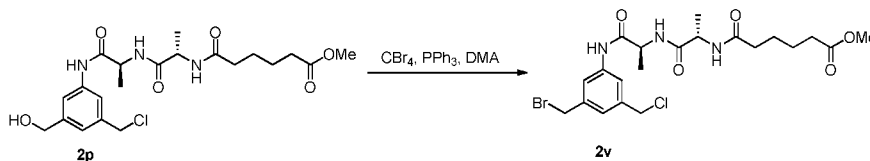
- 5 Triphenylphosphine was added (0.047 g, 0.179 mmol, 1.2 equiv.), followed by a slow addition of DIAD (0.032 mL, 0.164 mmol, 1.1 equiv.). The reaction was stirred at rt under argon for 12 h. The reaction mixture was concentrated and water (~2 mL) was added to triturate the product. The precipitate was filtered and the remaining solid was washed with water. The crude residue was purified by silica gel chromatography
- 10 (hexane/EtOAc) to give compound **3f** as a white yellow solid (0.013 g, 0.027 mmol, 18% yield). UPLCMS (2.5 min method) = 1.80 min. Mass observed (ESI⁺) = 478.4 (M+H)⁺.

Example 21.

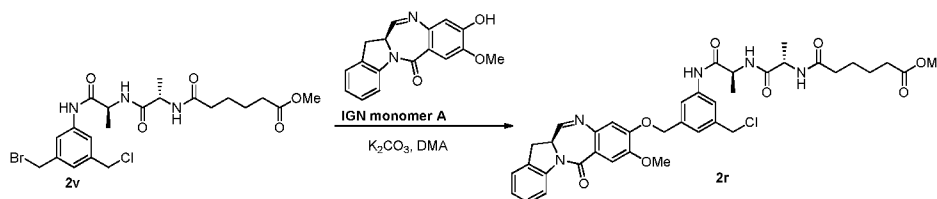
- 15 Compound **3d** (0.03 g, 0.149 mmol, 1.0 equiv.) and **reduced IGN monomer A** (0.046 g, 0.156 mmol, 1.05 equiv.) were dissolved in THF (1.5 mL). Triphenylphosphine was added (0.047 g, 0.179 mmol, 1.2 equiv.), followed by a slow addition of DIAD (0.032 mL, 0.164 mmol, 1.1 equiv.). The reaction was stirred at rt under argon for 2 h. The
- 20 reaction mixture was concentrated and coevaporated with toluene (2 x). The crude residue was purified by silica gel chromatography (hexane/EtOAc) to give compound **3h** as an orange yellow solid (0.055 g, 0.115 mmol, 77% yield). UPLCMS (2.5 min method) = 1.90 min. Mass observed (ESI⁺) = 480.5 (M+H)⁺.

Example 22.

To a solution of **2d** (0.024 g, 0.078 mmol, 1.1 equiv.) in DCM (1 mL) was added EEDQ (0.019 g, 0.078 mmol, 1.1 equiv.). The reaction was stirred for 5 min and MeOH (0.1 mL) was added, followed by a solution of **3o** (0.05 g, 0.071 mmol) in DCM (1 mL). The reaction was stirred at rt for 2 h or until completion of starting material. The reaction was concentrated to form a white precipitate to which MTBE (5 mL) was added and the resulting mixture was stirred for 30 min at room temperature. The solid was filtered off to give compound **2l** which was then purified by RPHPLC (C18 column, MeCN/water) to give **2l** (0.023 g, 0.023 mmol, 33% yield). UPLCMS (2.5 min method) = 1.75 min. Mass observed (ESI⁺) = 993.2 (M+H)⁺.

Example 23.

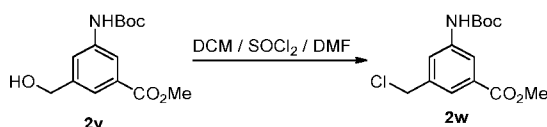
To a solution of **2p** (0.05 g, 0.110 mmol, 1.0 equiv.) in DMA (1 mL), was added carbon tetrabromide (0.044 g, 0.132 mmol, 1.2 equiv.) followed by triphenylphosphine (0.043 g, 0.164 mmol, 1.5 equiv.) and the reaction was stirred at room temperature for 2 h. The solvent was removed to give a white solid which was triturated with MTBE and the solid was filtered off to give compound **2v**. (0.03 g, 0.058 mmol, 57 % yield, 52% purity), which was carried onto the next step without further purification. UPLCMS (2.5 min method) = 1.59 min. Mass observed (ESI⁺) = 518.2 (M+H)⁺.



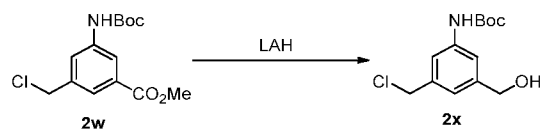
To a solution of **2v** (0.03 g, 0.043 mmol, 1.0 equiv.) in DMA (0.5 mL) was added potassium carbonate (0.012 g, 0.087 mmol, 2.0 equiv.) followed by **IGN monomer A**

(0.013 g, 0.046 mmol, 1.05 equiv.). The reaction mixture was stirred for 4 h at room temperature. The reaction mixture was diluted with water (5 mL) and the solid was filtered off. The solid was dissolved in DCM/MeOH (9/1, 2 mL). The organic layer was washed with water (10 mL), brine (10 mL), and dried over magnesium sulfate. After filtration and solvent removal, the crude product was purified by RPHPLC (C18 column, MeCN/water) to give **2r** (0.011 g, 0.015 mmol, 35% yield). UPLCMS (2.5 min method) = 1.62 min. Mass observed (ESI⁺) = 733.3 (M+H)⁺

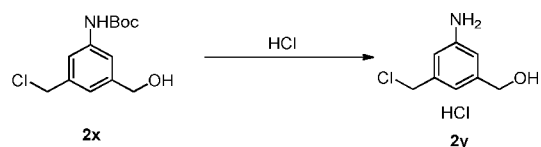
Example 24.



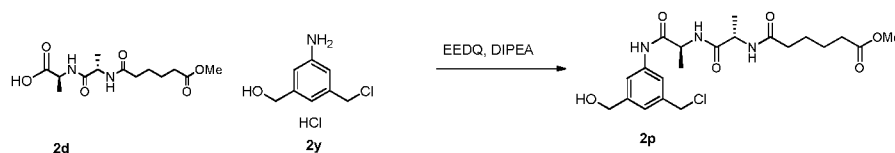
To a slurry of compound **2v** (14.7 g, 0.052 mol, 1.0 equiv. prepared as described in literature, see: *Beilstein J. Org. Chem.* **2014**, *10*, 535-543) in DCM and (100 mL) DMF (1 mL), was charged with SOCl₂ (12.6 g, 0.104 mol, 2.0 equiv.) in one portion. The resulting solution was stirred at 35 °C overnight resulting in a thick tan slurry. The slurry was filtered and the solid was dried to give 7.5 g as an off-white solid. NMR revealed cleavage of the Boc protecting group. The dark filtrate was charged with solid sodium carbonate (10.6 g, 0.1 mol) followed by buffering to pH ~6-7 by further addition of sodium bicarbonate. To the resulting solution Boc₂O (12.7 g, 0.058 mol, 1.1 equiv.) was added and was stirred for 0.5 h. The filtered solid (7.5 g) was added to the reaction mixture, followed by the addition of Boc₂O (6.5 g, 0.030 mol, 1.7 equiv.) (pH~6) and continued to stir at rt overnight. Then sat. sodium bicarbonate (10 mL) was added to reach pH 6~7. Additional Boc₂O (9.3 g, 42.6 mmol), and DMAP (0.2 g, 1.63 mmol) were added and continued to stir overnight. The dark reaction was filtered to remove some precipitate. The DCM layer was washed with 1 N HCl to remove un-Boc product, which was basified and extracted with DCM and recovered 3.0 g colorless crispy solid (un-Boc product). The DCM layer was washed with brine and concentrated to a dark slush. The crude product was purified by silica gel chromatography (EtOAc/Hexanes) to give **2w** as a pale brown solid (9.5 g, 0.031 mmol, 62% yield). ¹H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃): δ 7.84 (m, 2H), 7.75 (m, 1H), 6.60 (s, 1H, NH), 4.58 (s, 2H), 3.91 (s, 3H), 1.53 (s, 9H).



A solution of LAH/THF (0.6M, 60 mL, 1.15 equiv.) was stirred at rt for 30 min and then cooled down to -65 °C with an acetone-dry ice bath. Compound **2w** (9.3 g, 0.031 mol, 1.0 equiv.) was slowly added in portions (Ti ~-60°C) resulting in a yellow brown slurry which was stirred for 4 h. The reaction was quenched with water (1.3 mL), 15% NaOH (1.3 mL), and water (4 mL) and was stirred for 20 min (Ti ~5°C). The reaction was filtered and rinsed with ethyl acetate (~90 mL). The filtrate was washed with brine, and concentrated to yield **2x** (8.0 g, 0.029 mol, 93% yield) as brown oil. ¹H NMR (400 MHz, CDCl₃) : δ 7.45 (s, 1H), 7.40 (s, 1H), 7.10 (s, 1H), 6.60 (s, 1H, NH), 4.75 (s, 2H), 4.50 (s, 2H), 1.53 (s, 9H).



Compound **2x** (8.0 g, 0.029 mol, 1.0 equiv.) was dissolved in DCM (20 mL) and cooled in ice-water bath. 4 N HCl/dioxane (15 mL, 1.5 equiv.) was added and the resulting mixture was heated at 50 °C for 1 h and then cooled down to rt. The slurry was concentrated and the solvent switched to heptane. The slurry was filtered, rinsed with hexane, and dried in oven (60 °C) to afford **2y** (5.4 g, 0.026 mol, 88% yield) as light brown solid. ¹H NMR (400 MHz, DMSO-*d*₆): δ 7.45 (s, 1H), 7.25 (s, 2H), 4.76 (s, 2H), 4.52 (s, 2H).



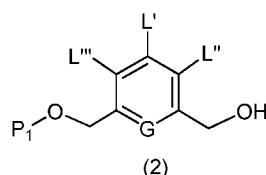
To a solution of **2d** (0.969 g, 3.20 mmol, 1.1 equiv.) in DCM (25 mL) was added EEDQ (0.79 g, 3.2 mmol, 1.1 equiv) at room temperature. After 8 min, a solution of **2y** (0.5 g, 2.91 mmol, 1.0 equiv.), DIPEA (0.51 mL, 2.91 mmol, 1.0 equiv.) in MeOH (5 mL) was added dropwise over 1 minute. The reaction was stirred for 2 h. The reaction mixture was quenched with water (30 mL), the layers were separated and the aqueous layer extracted with DCM (2 x 20 mL). The combined organic layers were washed with sat. sodium bicarbonate (20 mL), brine (20 mL), dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered and

concentrated to minimal amount of solvent left. The resulting white solid was diluted in MBTE and was filtered to give the desired product **2p** as a white solid (0.64 g, 1.40 mmol, 48% yield). UPLCMS (2.5 min method) = 1.30 min. Mass observed (ESI⁺) = 456.3 (M+H)⁺.

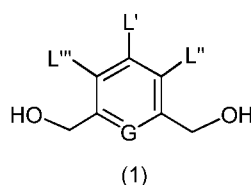
5

CLAIMS

1. A method of preparing a compound of formula (2),



- 5 or a salt thereof, said method comprising introducing an alcohol protecting group onto one of the primary alcohols of a compound of formula (1) by reacting the compound of formula (1) with an alcohol protecting reagent,



wherein:

- 10 L', L'', and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that only one of L', L'', and L''' is the linking group with the
- 15 reactive group bonded thereto;

M is -H or a cation;

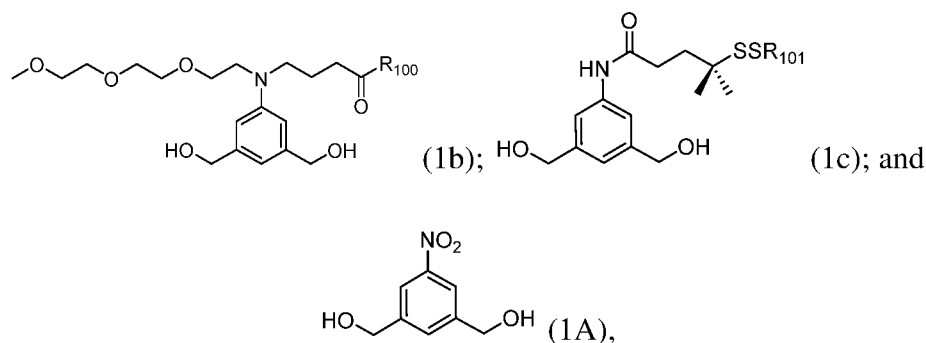
- 20 R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an
- 25 optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -

$N(R)_2$, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit - $(CH_2CH_2O)_n$ - R^c , and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

- 5 R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;
 n' is an integer from 1 to 24;
 G is selected from -CH- or -N-; and
 P_1 is the alcohol protecting group.

- 10 2. The method of claim 1, wherein the compound of formula (1) is represented by a formula selected from the following:

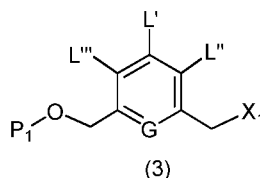


- 15 wherein R_{100} is a (C_1-C_3) alkoxy; and R_{101} is a (C_1-C_3) alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl (*e.g.*, 4-nitropyridyl).

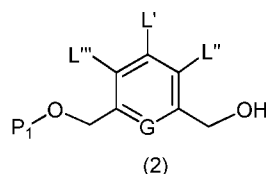
3. The method of claim 1, wherein the alcohol protecting group is sterically hindered.
4. The method of claim 1, wherein the alcohol protecting group is pivaloyl, methoxymethyl, 2-methoxyethoxymethyl, *p*-methoxybenzyl, 3,4-dimethoxybenzyl, 2,6-dimethoxybenzyl, diphenylmethyl, benzyloxymethyl, 2,2,2-trichloroethoxycarbonyl, tetrahydrofuranyl, tetrahydropyranyl, benzyl, benzoyl, *para*-phenylbenzoyl, 2,4,6-trimethylbenzoyl, *para*-bromobenzoyl, *para*-nitrobenzoyl, picolinoyl, nicotinoyl, 5-dibenzosuberyl, trityl/triphenylmethyl, or tris(4-*tert*-butylphenyl)methyl.
- 20
- 25 5. The method of claim 4, wherein the alcohol protecting group is methoxymethyl, tetrahydropyranyl, 2-methoxyethoxymethyl, *p*-methoxybenzyl,

- benzyloxymethyl, or 2,2,2-trichloroethoxycarbonyl.
6. The method of claim 5, wherein the alcohol protecting group is 2,2,2-trichloroethoxycarbonyl.
7. The method of claim 1, wherein the alcohol protecting group is a silyl protecting group.
8. The method of claim 7, wherein the silyl protecting group is dimethylisopropylsilyl, diethylisopropylsilyl, dimethylhexylsilyl, trimethylsilyl, triisopropylsilyl, tribenzylsilyl, triphenylsilyl, 2-norbornyldimethylsilyl, *tert*-butyldimethylsilyl, *tert*-butyldiphenylsilyl, 2-trimethylethylsilyl (TEOC), or [2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxy]methyl.
9. The method of claim 8, wherein the silyl protecting group is triethylsilyl, triisopropylsilyl, or *tert*-butyldimethylsilyl.
10. The method of claim 9, wherein the silyl protecting group is *tert*-butyldimethylsilyl.
11. The method of any one of claims 7-10, wherein the silyl protecting group is introduced by reacting the compound of formula (1) with $R^3\text{-Cl}$, $R^3\text{-Br}$, $R^3\text{-I}$ or $R^3\text{-OSO}_2\text{CF}_3$ in the presence of a base, wherein R^3 is dimethylisopropylsilyl, diethylisopropylsilyl, dimethylhexylsilyl, trimethylsilyl, triisopropylsilyl, tribenzylsilyl, triphenylsilyl, 2-norbornyldimethylsilyl, *tert*-butyldimethylsilyl, or *tert*-butyldiphenylsilyl.
12. The method of claim 11, wherein the base is a non-nucleophilic base.
13. The method of claim 12, wherein the non-nucleophilic base is imidazole, triethylamine, diisopropylethylamine, pyridine, 2,6-lutidine, 1,8-diazabicycloundec-7-ene, or tetramethylpiperidine.
14. The method of claim 12, wherein the non-nucleophilic base is imidazole.
15. The method of any one of claims 11-14, wherein the reaction is carried out in the presence of a catalyst.

16. The method of claim 15, wherein the catalyst is 4-dimethylaminopyridine (DMAP), 1,1,3,3-tetramethylguanidine or 1,8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undec-7-ene (DBU).
17. The method of any one of claims 1-16, wherein 0.8-1.2, 1-5, 1-2, 1-1.5 or 1-1.2 molar equivalents of the alcohol protecting reagent are used relative to the compound of formula (1).
18. The method of any one of claims 11-17, wherein more than 2 molar equivalents of the non-nucleophilic base are used relative to the compound of formula (1).
19. A method of preparing a compound of formula (3),



or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a halogenating reagent, a sulfonating reagent or an esterification reagent with a compound of formula (2),



wherein:

- L', L'', and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}_2)_n-\text{R}^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-\text{NH}(\text{C}=\text{NH})\text{NH}_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that only one of L', L'', and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is -H or a cation;

- R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit -

(CH₂CH₂O)_n-R^c, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -N(R)₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit - (CH₂CH₂O)_n-R^c, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

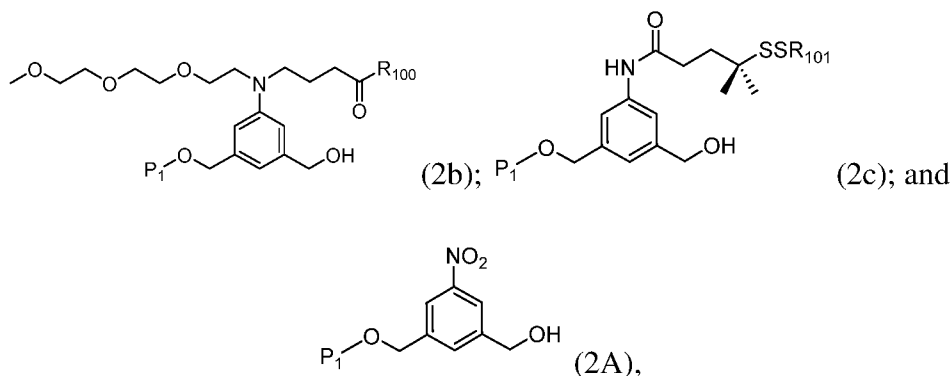
n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

P₁ is an alcohol protecting group; and,

X₁ is a leaving group selected from the group consisting of: -Br, -I, -Cl, a sulfonate ester, and an activated ester (preferably, X₁ is -Br, -I, or a sulfonate ester).

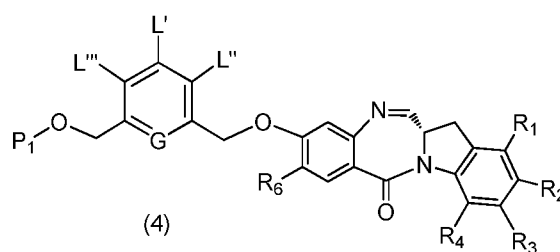
20. The method of claim 19, wherein the compound of formula (2) is represented by a formula selected from the following:



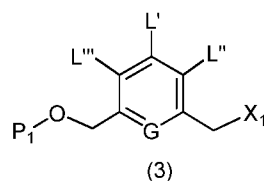
wherein R₁₀₀ is a (C₁-C₃)alkoxy; and R₁₀₁ is a (C₁-C₃)alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl (*e.g.*, 4-nitropyridyl).

21. The method of claim 19 or 20, wherein the sulfonate ester represented by X₁ is mesylate, tosylate, brosylate, or triflate.

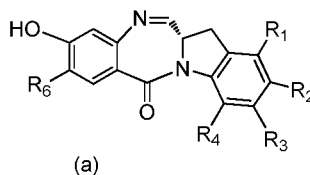
22. The method of claim 21, wherein the sulfonate ester represented by X₁ is mesylate.
23. The method of any one of claims 19-22, wherein the method comprising reacting the compound of formula (2) with a sulfonating reagent in the presence of a non-nucleophilic base.
24. The method of claim 23, wherein the non-nucleophilic base is triethylamine, imidazole, diisopropylethylamine, pyridine, 2,6-lutidine, dimethylformamide, 1,8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undec-7-ene (DBU), or tetramethylpiperidine .
25. The method of claim 24, wherein the non-nucleophilic base is triethylamine or diisopropylethylamine.
26. The method of any one of claims 23-25, wherein the sulfonating reagent is methanesulfonic anhydride or methanesulfonyl chloride (MsCl).
27. The method of claim 19 or 20, wherein the method comprising reacting a halogenating reagent with the compound of formula (2) and the halogenating reagent is bromine, hydrobromic acid, carbon tetrabromide, phosphorus tribromide, potassium bromide, hydroiodic acid, iodine, carbon tetraiodide, phosphorus triiodide, sodium iodide, or potassium iodide.
28. A method of preparing a compound of formula (4),



- or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula (3)



with a monomer compound of the formula (a),



wherein:

L', L'', and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}_2)_n-\text{R}^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-\text{NH}(\text{C}=\text{NH})\text{NH}_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -CONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that only one of L', L'', and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is -H or a cation;

R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O})_n-\text{R}^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -N(R)₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O})_n-\text{R}^c$, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

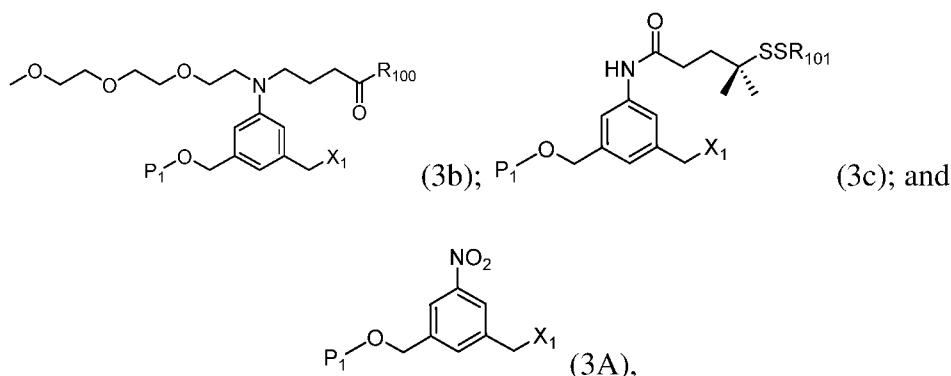
P₁ is an alcohol protecting group;

X_1 is a leaving group selected from the group consisting of: -Br, -I, -Cl, a sulfonate ester, and an activated ester (preferably, X_1 is -Br, -I, or a sulfonate ester);

R_1 , R_2 , R_3 , and R_4 are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R_c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R''; and,

R_6 is -H, -R, -OR, -SR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, or halogen.

29. The method of claim 28, wherein the compound of formula (3) is represented by a formula selected from the following:

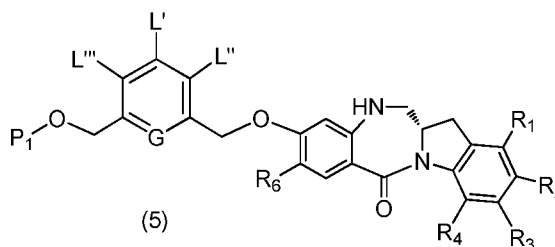


wherein R_{100} is a (C₁-C₃)alkoxy; and R_{101} is a (C₁-C₃)alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl (*e.g.*, 4-nitropyridyl).

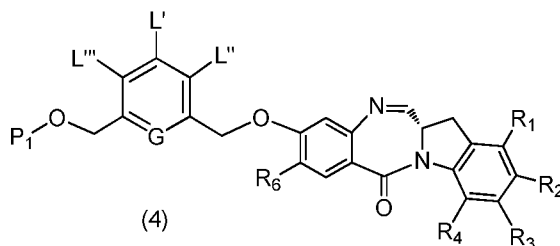
30. The method of claim 28 or 29, wherein the compound of formula (3) is reacted with the monomer compound of formula (a) in the presence of a base.

31. The method of claim 30, wherein the base is sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, cesium carbonate, sodium hydride, or potassium hydride.

32. A method of preparing a compound of formula (5),



or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula (4),



with an imine reducing agent, wherein:

- 5 L', L'', and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that only one of L', L'', and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is -H or a cation;

- 15 R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

- 20 R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -N(R)₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

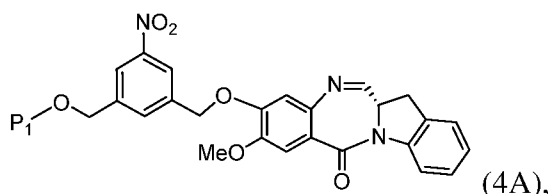
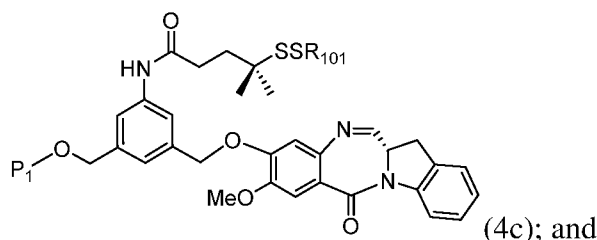
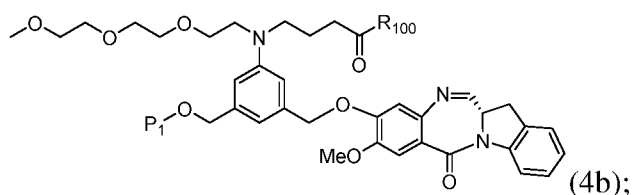
G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

P_1 is an alcohol protecting group;

R_1 , R_2 , R_3 , and R_4 are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R_c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R''; and,

R_6 is -H, -R, -OR, -SR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, or halogen.

33. The method of claim 32, wherein the compound of formula (4) is represented by a formula selected from the following:



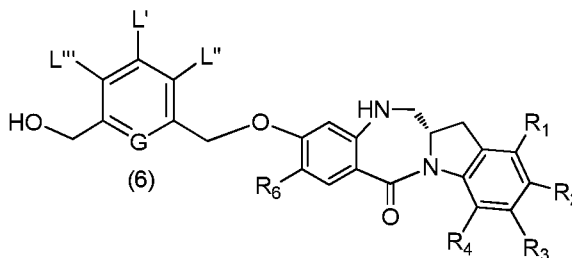
wherein R_{100} is a (C₁-C₃)alkoxy; and R_{101} is a (C₁-C₃)alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl (*e.g.*, 4-nitropyridyl).

34. The method of claim 32 or 33, wherein the imine reducing reagent is a hydride reducing reagent.

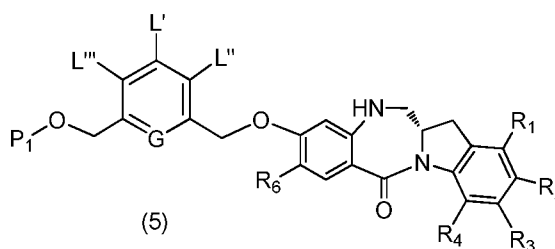
35. The method of claim 32 or 33, wherein the imine reducing reagent is sodium borohydride, sodium triacetoxo borohydride, sodium cyanoborohydride, lithium aluminum hydride, hydrogen gas, ammonium formate, borane, 9-

borabicyclo[3.3.1]nonane (9-BBN), diisobutylaluminium hydride (DIBAL), lithium borohydride (LiBH_4), potassium borohydride (KBH_4), or sodium bis(2-methoxyethoxy)aluminumhydride (Red-Al) .

36. The method of claim 35, wherein the imine reducing reagent is sodium triacetoxy borohydride ($\text{NaBH}(\text{OAc})_3$).
37. A method of preparing a compound of formula (6),



or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula (5),



- with an alcohol deprotecting reagent, wherein:

L' , L'' , and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}_2)_n\text{-R}^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-\text{NH}(\text{C}=\text{NH})\text{NH}_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -CONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that only one of L' , L'' , and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

- M is -H or a cation;

R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O})_n\text{-R}^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an

optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

5 R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -N(R)₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit - (CH₂CH₂O)_n-R^c, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

10 R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

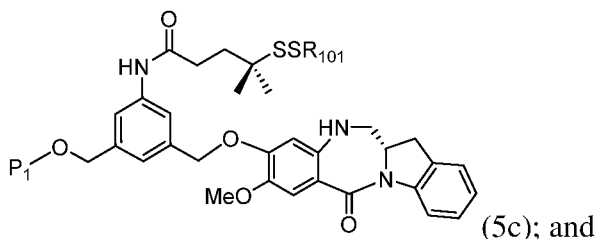
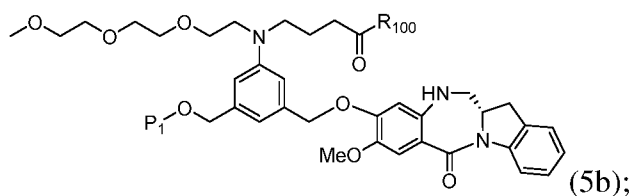
G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

P₁ is an alcohol protecting group;

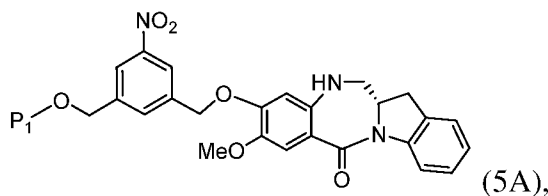
15 R₁, R₂, R₃, and R₄ are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit -(CH₂CH₂O)_n-R_c, halogen, guanidinium [-NH(C=NH)NH₂], -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H,
20 -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R''; and

R₆ is -H, -R, -OR, -SR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, or halogen.

38. The method of claim 37, wherein the compound of formula (5) is represented by a formula selected from the following:

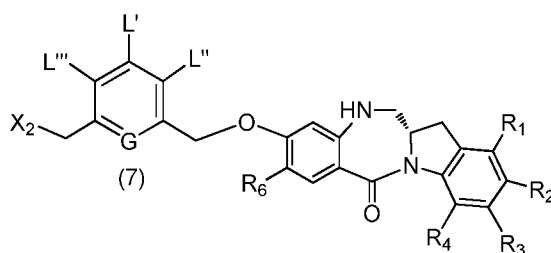


25

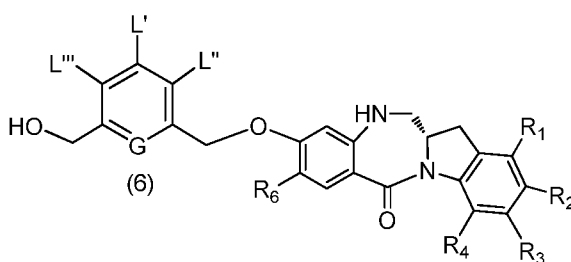


wherein R₁₀₀ is a (C₁-C₃)alkoxy; and R₁₀₁ is a (C₁-C₃)alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl (*e.g.*, 4-nitropyridyl).

39. The method of claim 37 or 38, wherein the alcohol deprotecting reagent is tetra-
 5 n-butylammonium fluoride, tris(dimethylamino)sulfonium difluorotrimethylsilicate, hydrogen fluoride or a solvate thereof, hydrogen fluoride pyridine, silicon tetrafluoride, hexafluorosilicic acid, cesium fluoride, hydrochloric acid, acetic acid, trifluoroacetic acid, pyridinium p-toluenesulfonate, p-toluenesulfonic acid (p-TsOH), formic acid, periodic acid.
- 10 40. The method of claim 39, wherein the alcohol deprotecting reagent is hydrochloric acid or tetra-n-butylammonium fluoride.
41. A method of preparing a compound of formula (7),



- or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a halogenating reagent, a
 15 sulfonating reagent or an esterification reagent with the primary alcohol compound of formula (6),



wherein:

- L', L'', and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an
 20 optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit -(OCH₂CH₂)_n-R^c,

halogen, guanidinium $[-\text{NH}(\text{C}=\text{NH})\text{NH}_2]$, $-\text{OR}$, $-\text{NR}'\text{R}''$, $-\text{NO}_2$, $-\text{NR}'\text{COR}''$, $-\text{SR}$, $-\text{SOR}'$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{R}'$, $-\text{SO}_3\text{M}$, $-\text{OSO}_3\text{M}$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{NR}'\text{R}''$, cyano, an azido, $-\text{COR}'$, $-\text{OCOR}'$, $-\text{OCONR}'\text{R}''$, or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that only one of L' , L'' , and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is $-\text{H}$ or a cation;

R , for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of $-\text{H}$, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $(\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O})_n\text{-R}^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from $-\text{H}$, $-\text{OH}$, $-\text{OR}$, $-\text{NHR}$, $-\text{N}(\text{R})_2$, $-\text{COR}$, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $(\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O})_n\text{-R}^c$, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is $-\text{H}$ or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

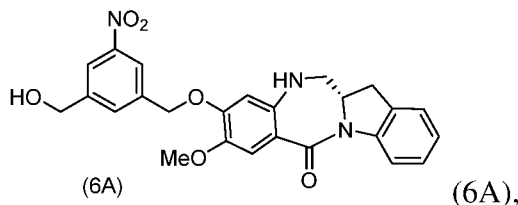
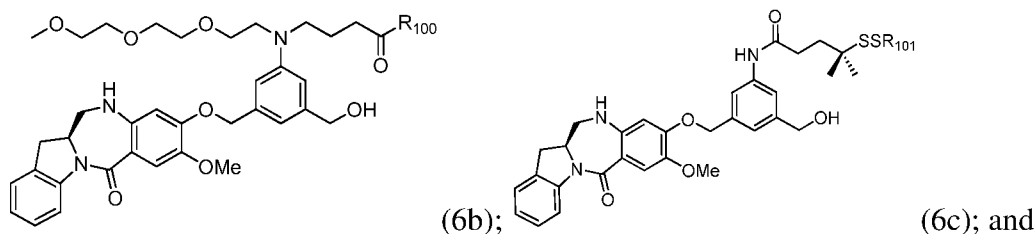
G is selected from $-\text{CH}-$ or $-\text{N}-$;

R_1 , R_2 , R_3 , and R_4 are each independently selected from the group consisting of $-\text{H}$, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $(\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O})_n\text{-R}_c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-\text{NH}(\text{C}=\text{NH})\text{NH}_2]$, $-\text{OR}$, $-\text{NR}'\text{R}''$, $-\text{NO}_2$, $-\text{NCO}$, $-\text{NR}'\text{COR}''$, $-\text{SR}$, $-\text{SOR}'$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{R}'$, $-\text{SO}_3\text{H}$, $-\text{OSO}_3\text{H}$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{NR}'\text{R}''$, cyano, an azido, $-\text{COR}'$, $-\text{OCOR}'$, and $-\text{OCONR}'\text{R}''$;

R_6 is $-\text{H}$, $-\text{R}$, $-\text{OR}$, $-\text{SR}$, $-\text{NR}'\text{R}''$, $-\text{NO}_2$, or halogen; and,

X_2 is a leaving group selected from the group consisting of: $-\text{Br}$, $-\text{I}$, $-\text{Cl}$, a sulfonate ester, and an activated ester (preferably, X_2 is $-\text{Br}$, $-\text{I}$, a sulfonate ester).

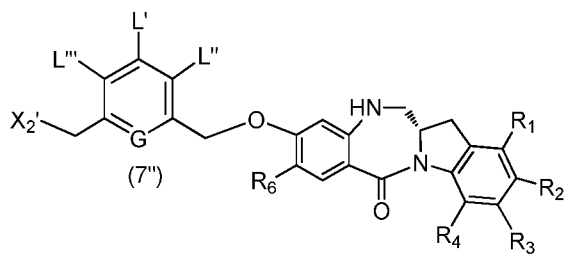
42. The method of claim 41, wherein the compound of formula (6) is represented by a formula selected from the following:



- 5 wherein R₁₀₀ is a (C₁-C₃)alkoxy; and R₁₀₁ is a (C₁-C₃)alkyl, pyridyl or
nitropyridyl (*e.g.*, 4-nitropyridyl).
43. The method of claim 41 or 42, wherein the sulfonate ester represented by X₂ is
mesylate, tosylate, brosylate, or triflate.
44. The method of claim 43, wherein the sulfonate ester represented by X₂ is
10 mesylate.
45. The method of any one of claims 41-44, wherein the method comprising reacting
the compound of formula (6) with the sulfonating reagent in the presence of a
non-nucleophilic base.
46. The method of claim 45, wherein the non-nucleophilic base is triethylamine,
15 imidazole, triethylamine, diisopropylethylamine, pyridine, 2,6-lutidine, 1,8-
diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undec-7-ene (DBU), or tetramethylpiperidine.
47. The method of claim 45, wherein the non-nucleophilic base is triethylamine or
diisopropylethylamine.
48. The method of any one of claims 41-47, wherein the sulfonating reagent is
20 methanesulfonic anhydride or methanesulfonyl chloride (MsCl).
49. The method of claim 41 or 42, wherein the method comprising reacting the
compound of formula (6) with a halogenating reagent, wherein the halogenating

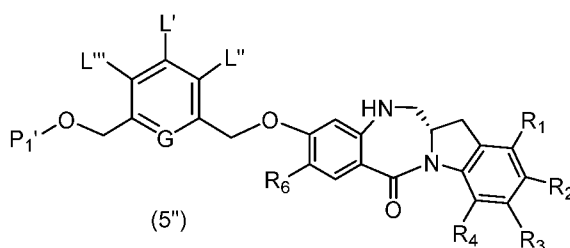
reagent is bromine, hydrobromic acid, carbon tetrabromide, phosphorus tribromide, potassium bromide, hydroiodic acid, iodine, carbon tetraiodide, phosphorus triiodide, sodium iodide, or potassium iodide.

50. A method of preparing a compound of formula (7'')



5

or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula (5'')



with an alcohol deprotecting reagent and a halogenating reagent, wherein:

10 L' , L'' , and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto
15 capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that only one of L' , L'' , and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is -H or a cation;

20 R , for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an

optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -N(R)₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit -
 5 (CH₂CH₂O)_n-R^c, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

10 n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

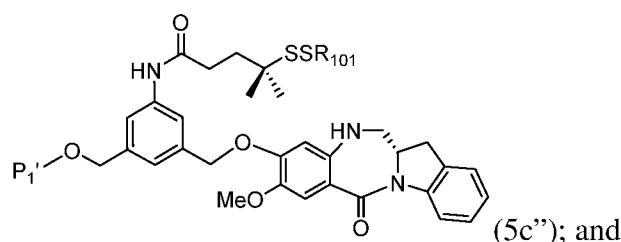
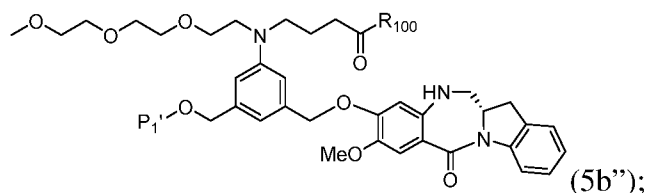
P₁' is an acid labile alcohol protecting group;

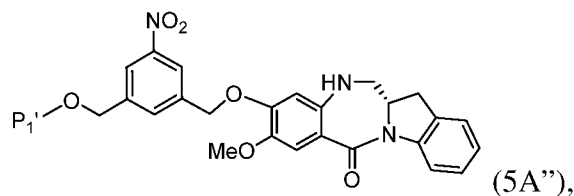
X₂' is -Br or -I;

R₁, R₂, R₃, and R₄ are each independently selected from the group
 15 consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit -(CH₂CH₂O)_n-R_c, halogen, guanidinium [-NH(C=NH)NH₂], -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R''; and

20 R₆ is -H, -R, -OR, -SR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, or halogen.

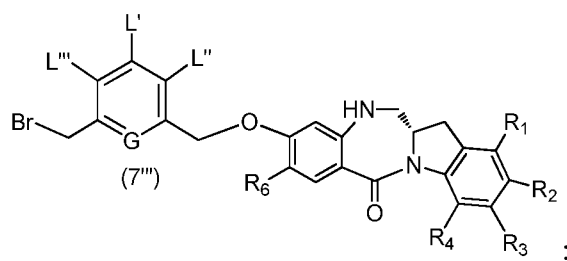
51. The method of claim 50, wherein the compound of formula (5'') is represented by a formula selected from the following:





wherein R₁₀₀ is a (C₁-C₃)alkoxy; and R₁₀₁ is a (C₁-C₃)alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl (*e.g.*, 4-nitropyridyl).

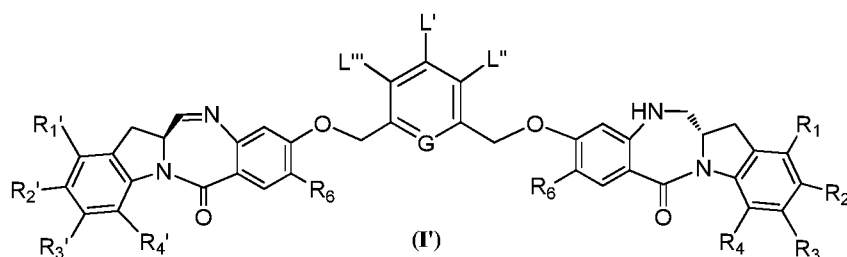
52. The method of claim 51, wherein the compound of formula (7''') is represented
5 by the following:



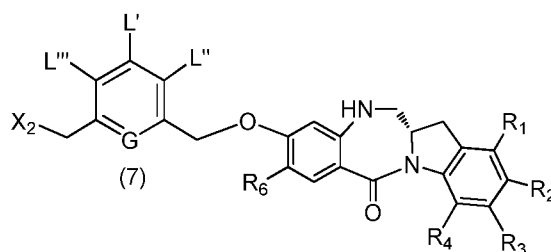
and the method comprising reacting the compound of formula (5'') with an alcohol deprotecting reagent and a bromination reagent.

53. The method of claim 50, 51 or 52, wherein the acid labile alcohol protecting group is acetate, allyl, methoxymethyl, tetrahydrofuranyl, tetrahydropyranyl, 5-dibenzosuberyl, 1-ethoxyethyl, 1-methyl-1-methoxyethyl, 2-(phenylselenyl)ethyl, trityl/triphenylmethyl, or tris(4-*tert*-butylphenyl)methyl.
54. The method of claim 53, wherein the acid labile alcohol protecting group is a silyl protecting group.
55. The method of claim 54, wherein the silyl protecting group is dimethylisopropylsilyl, diethylisopropylsilyl, dimethylhexylsilyl, trimethylsilyl, triethylsilyl, triisopropylsilyl, tribenzylsilyl, triphenylsilyl, 2-norbornyldimethylsilyl, *tert*-butyldimethylsilyl, *tert*-butyldiphenylsilyl, 2-trimethylethylsilyl (TEOC), or [2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxy]methyl.
56. The method of claim 54, wherein the silyl protecting group is triethylsilyl, triisopropylsilyl, or *tert*-butyldimethylsilyl.
57. The method of claim 54, wherein the silyl protecting group is *tert*-butyldimethylsilyl.

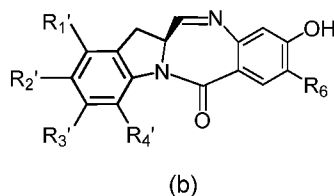
58. The method of any one of claims 50-57, wherein the alcohol deprotecting reagent is tetra-n-butylammonium fluoride, tris(dimethylamino)sulfonium difluorotrimethylsilicate, hydrogen fluoride or a solvate thereof, hydrogen fluoride pyridine, silicon tetrafluoride, hexafluorosilicic acid, cesium fluoride, hydrochloric acid, acetic acid, pyridinium p-toluenesulfonate, formic acid, periodic acid, trifluoroacetic acid, or .p-toluenesulfonic acid (p-TsOH).
59. The method of claim 58, wherein the alcohol deprotecting reagent is acetic acid.
60. The method of any of one of claims 50-59, wherein the bromination reagent is HBr.
61. The method of any of one claims 50-57, wherein the compound of formula (5'') is reacted with a mixture of acetic acid and HBr.
62. A method of preparing a compound of formula (I'),



- or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula (7)



with a monomer compound of the formula (b),



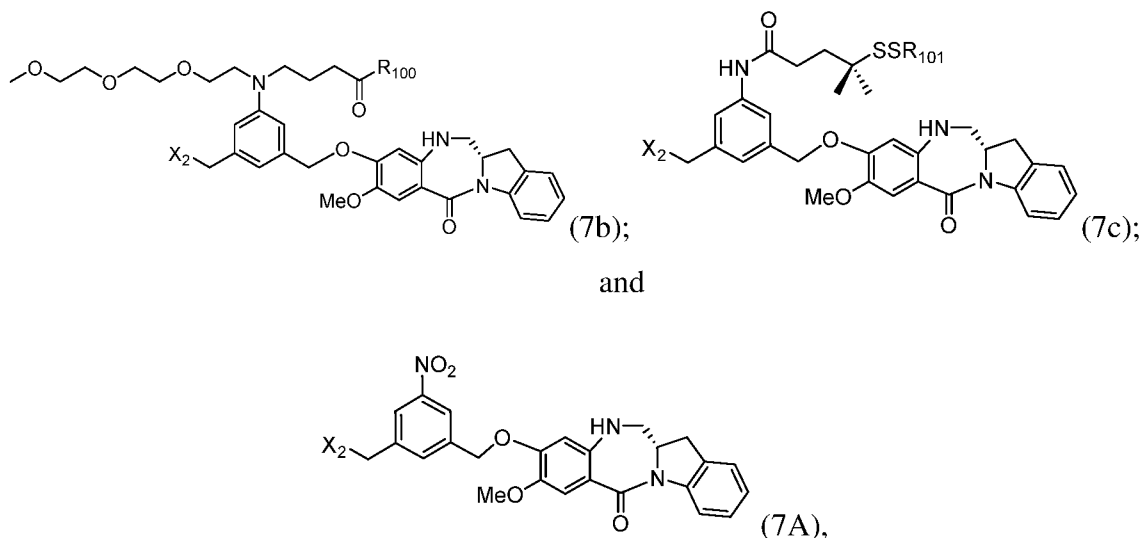
wherein:

- L', L'', and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}_2)_n\text{-R}^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-\text{NH}(\text{C}=\text{NH})\text{NH}_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that only one of L', L'', and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;
- 10 M is -H or a cation;
- R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O})_n\text{-R}^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an
 15 optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;
- R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -N(R)₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O})_n\text{-R}^c$, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;
- 20 R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;
- 25 n' is an integer from 1 to 24;
- G is selected from -CH- or -N-;
- R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₁', R₂', R₃', and R₄' are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic
 30 alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O})_n\text{-R}_c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-\text{NH}(\text{C}=\text{NH})\text{NH}_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R'';

R_6 is -H, -R, -OR, -SR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, or halogen; and,

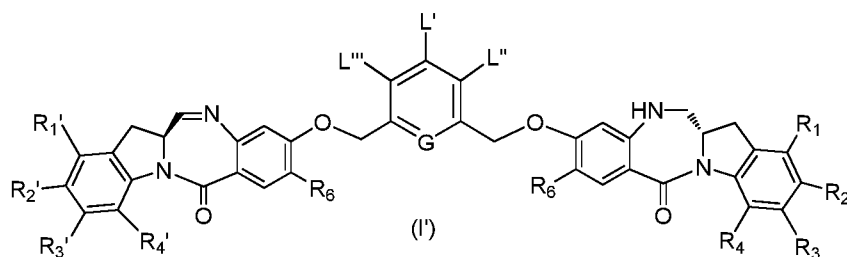
X_2 is a leaving group selected from the group consisting of: -Br, -I, -Cl, a sulfonate ester and an activated ester (preferably, X_2 is -Br, -I, or a sulfonate ester).

- 5 63. The method of claim 62, wherein the compound of formula (7) is represented by a formula selected from the following:



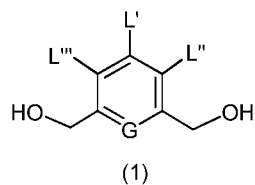
- 10 wherein R_{100} is a (C₁-C₃)alkoxy; and R_{101} is a (C₁-C₃)alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl (e.g., 4-nitropyridyl).

64. The method of claim 62 or 63, wherein the compound of formula (7) is reacted with the monomer compound of formula (b) in the presence of a base.
65. The method of claim 64, wherein the base is sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, cesium carbonate, sodium hydride, or potassium hydride.
- 15 66. A method of preparing a compound of formula (I'),

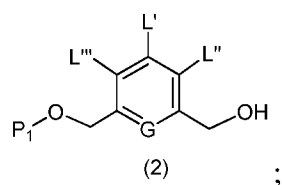


or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:

(1) introducing an alcohol protecting group onto one of the primary alcohols of a compound of formula (1),

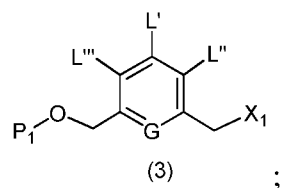


to form a compound of formula (2),



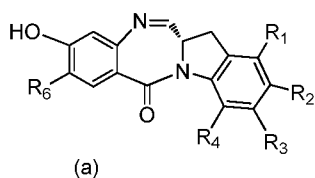
5

(2) reacting the compound of formula (2) with a halogenating reagent, a sulfonating reagent or an esterification reagent to form a compound of formula (3),

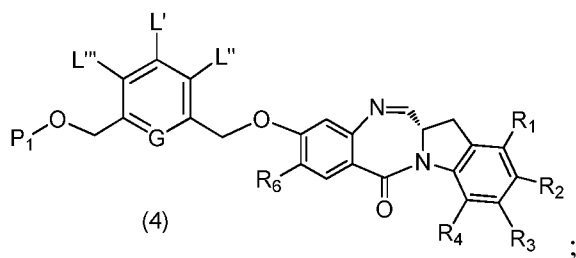


10

(3) reacting the compound of formula (3) with a monomer compound of the formula (a),

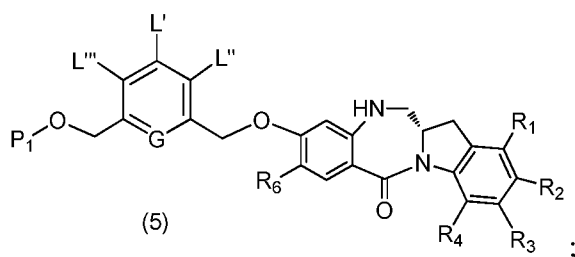


to form a compound of formula (4),

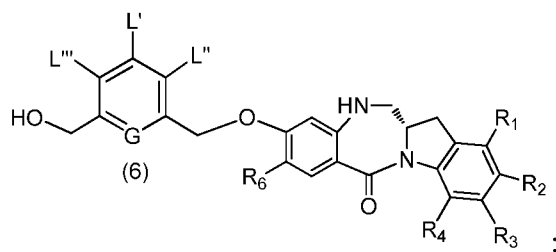


15

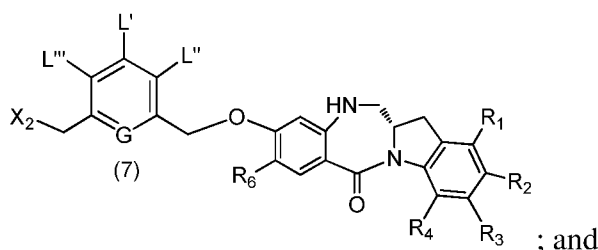
(4) reacting the compound of formula (4) with an imine reducing agent to form a compound of formula (5),



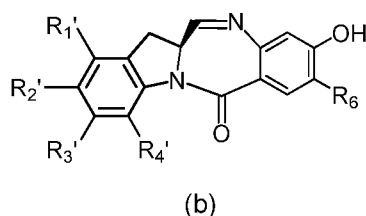
(5) reacting the compound of formula (5) with an alcohol deprotecting reagent to form a compound of formula (6),



5 (6) reacting the compound of formula (6) with a second halogenating reagent, a second sulfonating reagent or a second esterification reagent to form a compound of formula (7),



10 (7) reacting the compound of formula (7) with a monomer compound of the formula (b),



to form the compound of formula (I'); wherein:

15 L', L'', and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent

(CBA), provided that only one of L', L'', and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is -H or a cation;

R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group
 5 consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit - (CH₂CH₂O)_n-R^c, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an
 10 optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -N(R)₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit -
 15 (CH₂CH₂O)_n-R^c, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

20 G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

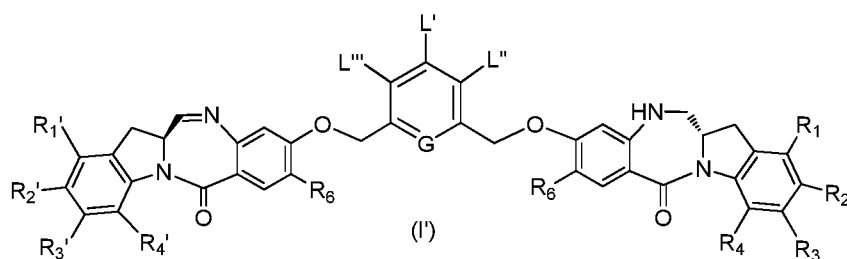
R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₁', R₂', R₃', and R₄' are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit -(CH₂CH₂O)_n-R_c, halogen, guanidinium [-NH(C=NH)NH₂], -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H,
 25 -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R'';

R₆ is -H, -R, -OR, -SR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, or halogen;

P₁ is an alcohol protecting group; and,

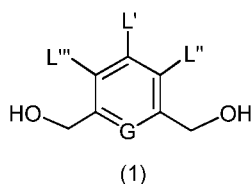
X₁ and X₂ are each independently a leaving group selected from the group
 30 consisting of: -Br, -I, -Cl, a sulfonate ester and an activated ester (preferably, X₁ and X₂ are each independently -Br, -I, or a sulfonate ester) .

67. A method of forming a compound of formula (I'),

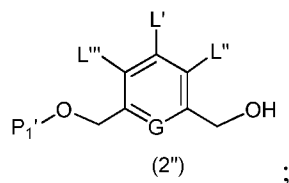


or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:

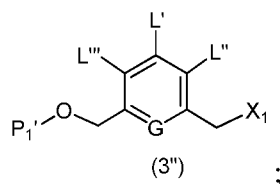
- 5 (1) introducing an alcohol protecting group onto one of the primary alcohols of a compound of formula (1),



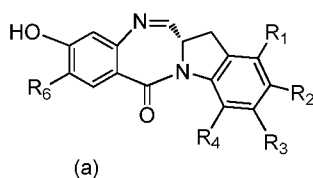
to form a compound of formula (2''),



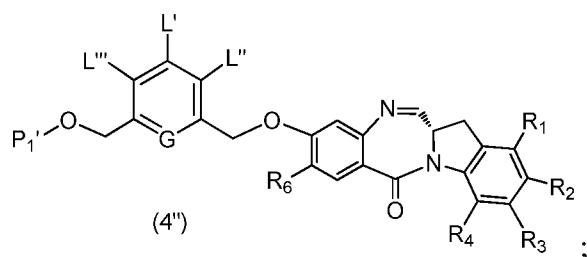
- 10 (2) reacting the compound of formula (2'') with a halogenating reagent, a sulfonating reagent or an esterification reagent to form a compound of formula (3''),



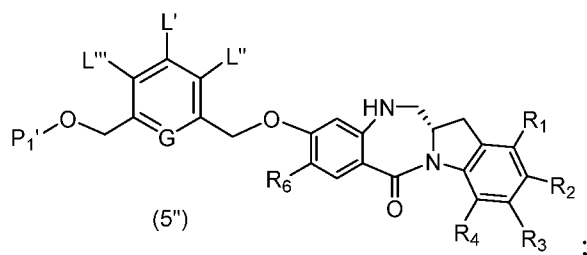
- 15 (3) reacting the compound of formula (3'') with a monomer compound of the formula (a),



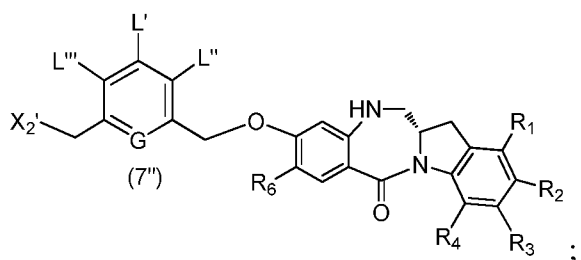
to form a compound of formula (4''),



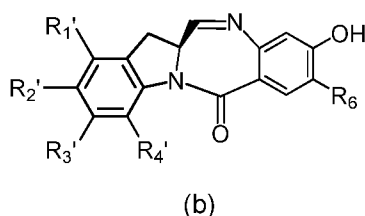
(4) reacting the compound of formula (4'') with an imine reducing agent to form a compound of formula (5''),



5 (5) reacting the compound of formula (5'') with an alcohol deprotecting reagent and a halogenating reagent to form a compound of formula (7''),



(6) reacting a compound of formula (7'') with a monomer compound of the formula (b),



10 to form the compound of formula (I'), wherein:

L', L'', and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-R^c$,
 15 halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent

(CBA), provided that only one of L', L'', and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is -H or a cation;

R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit - (CH₂CH₂O)_n-R^c, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -N(R)₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit - (CH₂CH₂O)_n-R^c, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₁', R₂', R₃', and R₄' are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit -(CH₂CH₂O)_n-R_c, halogen, guanidinium [-NH(C=NH)NH₂], -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R'';

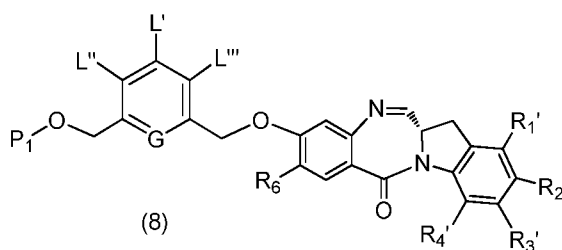
R₆ is -H, -R, -OR, -SR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, or halogen;

P₁' is an acid labile alcohol protecting group;

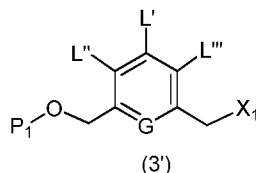
X₁ is a leaving group selected from the group consisting of: -Br, -I, -Cl, a sulfonate ester and an activated ester (preferably, -Br, -I, a sulfonate ester); and

X₂' is -Br or -I.

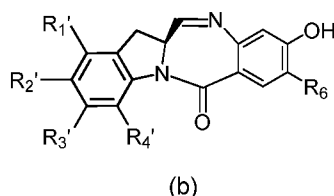
68. A method of preparing a compound of formula (8),



or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula (3')



5 with a monomer compound of the formula (b),



wherein:

L', L'', and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -CONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that only one of L', L'', and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is -H or a cation;

R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an

optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -N(R)₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit - (CH₂CH₂O)_n-R^c, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

P₁ is an alcohol protecting group;

X₁ is a leaving group selected from the group consisting of: -Br, -I, and a sulfonate ester;

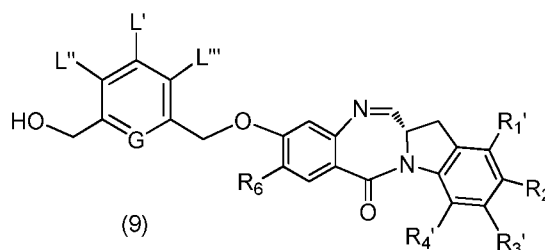
R₁', R₂', R₃', and R₄' are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit -(CH₂CH₂O)_n-R_c, halogen, guanidinium [-NH(C=NH)NH₂], -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R''; and,

R₆ is -H, -R, -OR, -SR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, or halogen.

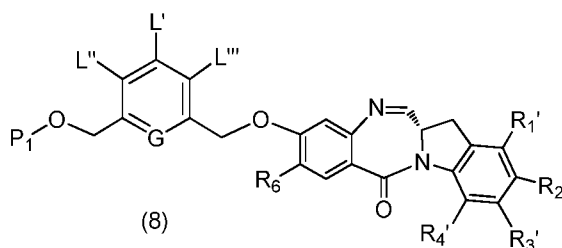
69. The method of claim 68, wherein the compound of formula (8) is reacted with the monomer compound of formula (b) in the presence of a base.

70. The method of claim 69, wherein the base is sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, cesium carbonate, sodium hydride, or potassium hydride.

71. A method of preparing a compound of formula (9),



or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula (8),



with an alcohol deprotecting reagent; wherein:

L', L'', and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -CONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that only one of L', L'', and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is -H or a cation;

R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -N(R)₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

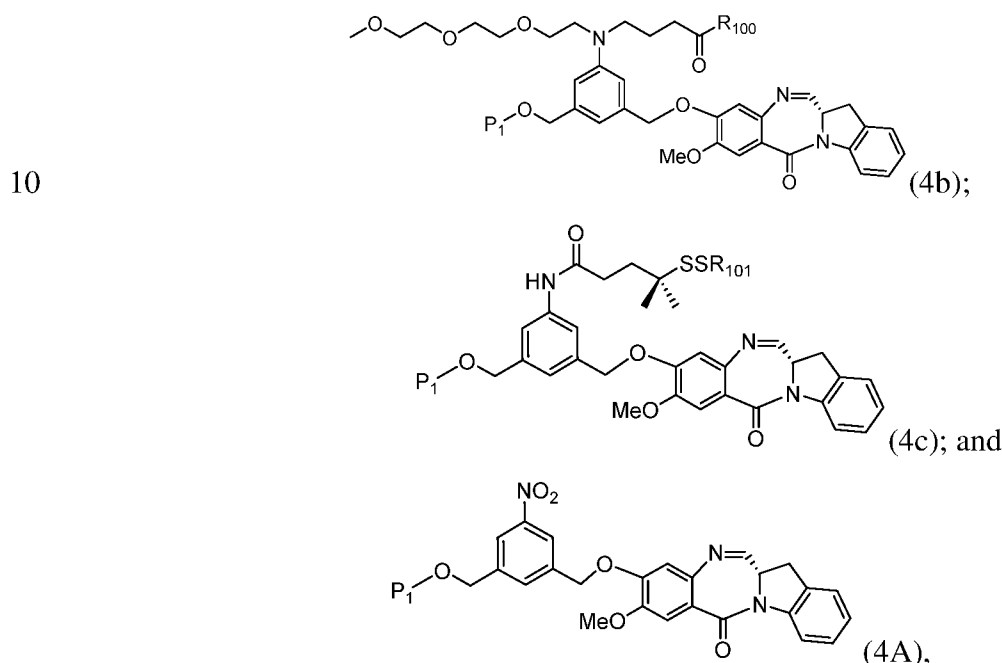
n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

P₁ is an alcohol protecting group;

R_1' , R_2' , R_3' , and R_4' are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-$, R_c , halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'',
 5 -NO₂, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R''; and,
 R_6 is -H, -R, -OR, -SR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, or halogen.

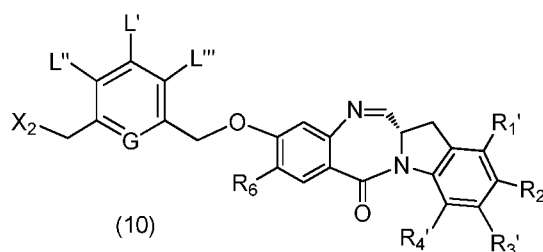
72. The method of claim 71, wherein the compound of formula (8) is represented by a formula selected from the following:



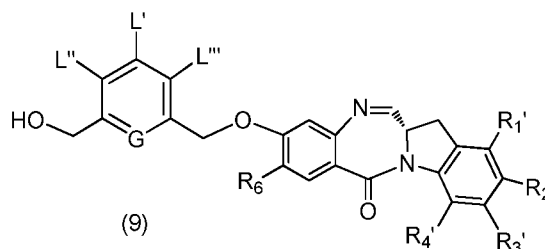
wherein R_{100} is a (C₁-C₃)alkoxy; and R_{101} is a (C₁-C₃)alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl (*e.g.*, 4-nitropyridyl).

- 15 73. The method of claim 71 or 72, wherein the alcohol deprotecting reagent is tetra-
 n-butylammonium fluoride, tris(dimethylamino)sulfonium
 difluorotrimethylsilicate, hydrogen fluoride or a solvate thereof, hydrogen
 fluoride pyridine, silicon tetrafluoride, hexafluorosilicic acid, cesium fluoride,
 hydrochloric acid, acetic acid, pyridinium p-toluenesulfonate, formic acid,
 20 periodic acid, trifluoroacetic acid, or p-toluenesulfonic acid (p-TsOH).
74. The method of claim 73, wherein the alcohol deprotecting reagent is
 hydrochloric acid or tetra-n-butylammonium fluoride.

75. A method of preparing a compound of formula (10),



or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a halogenating reagent, a sulfonating reagent or an esterification reagent with the compound of formula (9),



wherein:

L', L'', and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that only one of L', L'', and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is -H or a cation;

R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -N(R)₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit - (CH₂CH₂O)_n-R^c, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

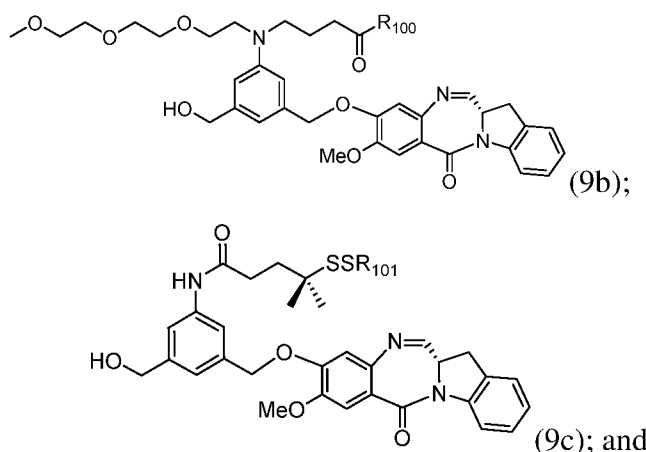
G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

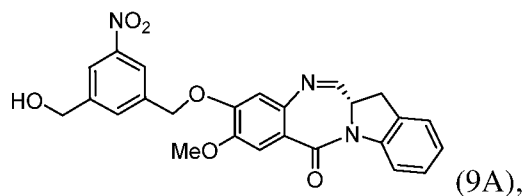
R₁', R₂', R₃', and R₄' are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit -(CH₂CH₂O)_n-R_c, halogen, guanidinium [-NH(C=NH)NH₂], -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R'';

R₆ is -H, -R, -OR, -SR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, or halogen; and,

X₂ is a leaving group selected from the group consisting of -Br, -I, -Cl, a sulfonate ester, and an activated ester (preferably, X₂ is -Br, -I, or a sulfonate ester).

76. The method of claim 75, wherein the compound of formula (9) is represented by a formula selected from the following:

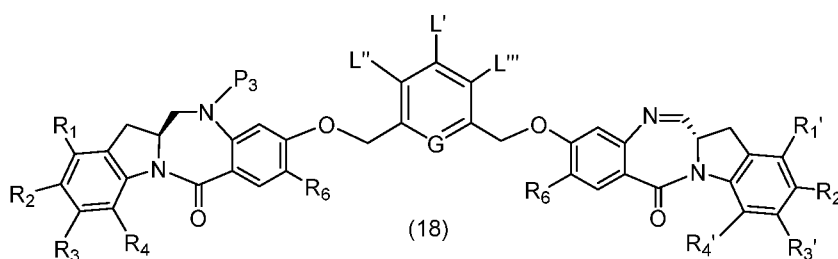




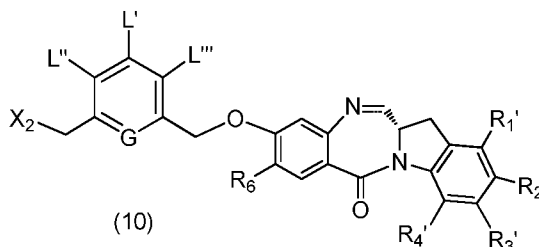
wherein R₁₀₀ is a (C₁-C₃)alkoxy; and R₁₀₁ is a (C₁-C₃)alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl (*e.g.*, 4-nitropyridyl).

77. The method of claim 75 or 76, wherein the sulfonate ester represented by X₂ is
5 mesylate, tosylate, brosylate, or triflate.
78. The method of claim 77, wherein the sulfonate ester represented by X₂ is
 mesylate.
79. The method of any one of claims 75-78, wherein the method comprising
 reacting the compound of formula (6) with the sulfonating reagent in the
10 presence of a non-nucleophilic base.
80. The method of claim 79, wherein the non-nucleophilic base is triethylamine,
 imidazole, triethylamine, diisopropylethylamine, pyridine, 2,6-lutidine, 1,8-
 diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undec-7-ene (DBU), or tetramethylpiperidine.
81. The method of claim 79, wherein the non-nucleophilic base is triethylamine or
15 diisopropylethylamine.
82. The method of any one of claims 75-81, wherein the sulfonating reagent is
 methanesulfonic anhydride or methanesulfonyl chloride.
83. The method of claim 75 or 76, wherein the method comprising reacting the
 compound of formula (6) with a halogenating reagent and the halogenating
20 reagent is bromine, hydrobromic acid, carbon tetrabromide, phosphorus
 tribromide, potassium bromide, hydroiodic acid, iodine, carbon tetraiodide,
 phosphorus triiodide, sodium iodide, or potassium iodide.

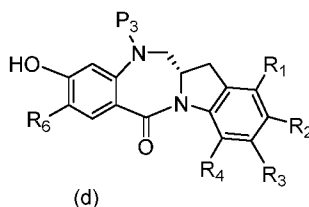
84. A method of preparing a compound of formula (18),



or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula (10)



5 with a monomer compound of the formula (d),



wherein:

L' , L'' , and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that only one of L' , L'' , and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is -H or a cation;

R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more

heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -N(R)₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit - (CH₂CH₂O)_n-R^c, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto; n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

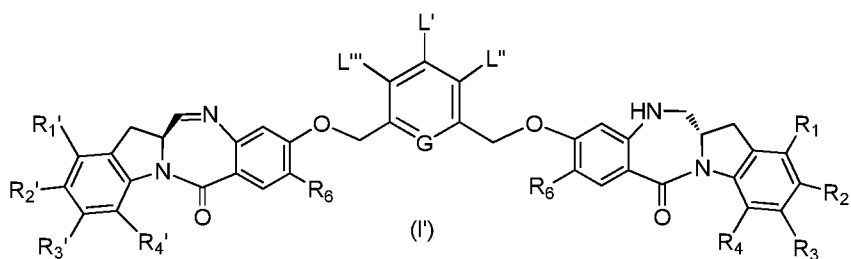
R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₁', R₂', R₃', and R₄' are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit -(CH₂CH₂O)_n-R_c, halogen, guanidinium [-NH(C=NH)NH₂], -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R'';

R₆ is -H, -R, -OR, -SR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, or halogen;

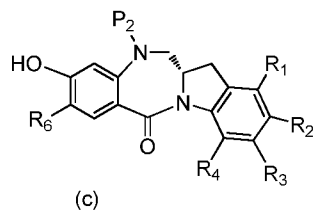
X₂ is a leaving group selected from the group consisting of: -Br, -I, -Cl, a sulfonate ester, and an activated ester (preferably, X₂ is -Br, -I, or a sulfonate ester); and,

P₃ is H or P₂; and P₂ is an amine protecting group.

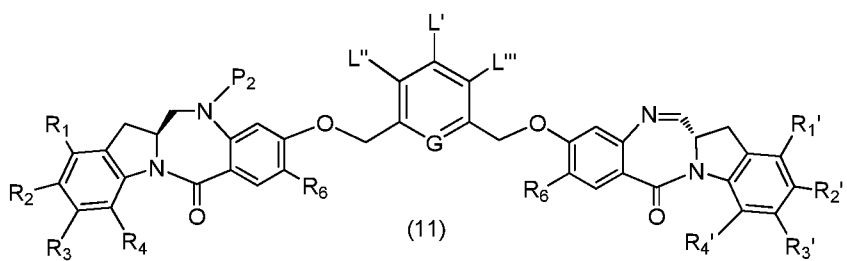
85. The method of claim 84, wherein P₃ is H and the compound of (10) is reacted with the monomer compound of (d) to form a compound of (I'):



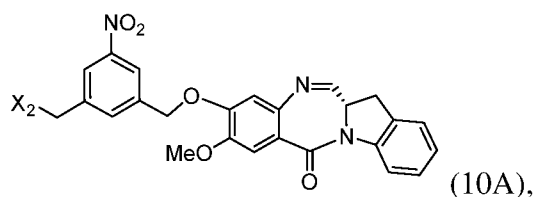
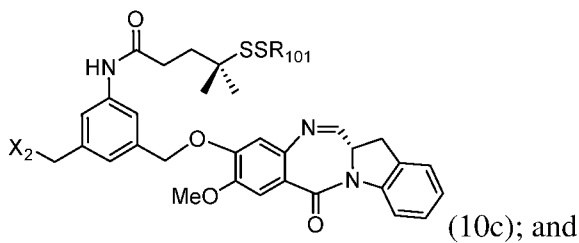
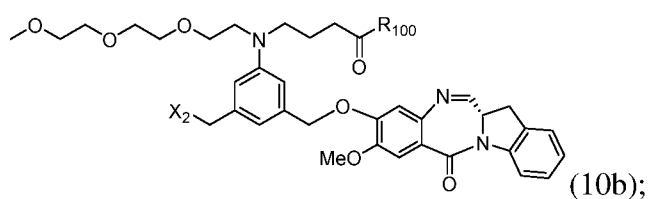
86. The method of claim 84, wherein P_3 is P_2 ; the monomer compound is represented by formula (c):



and the compound of formula (18) is represented by formula (11),



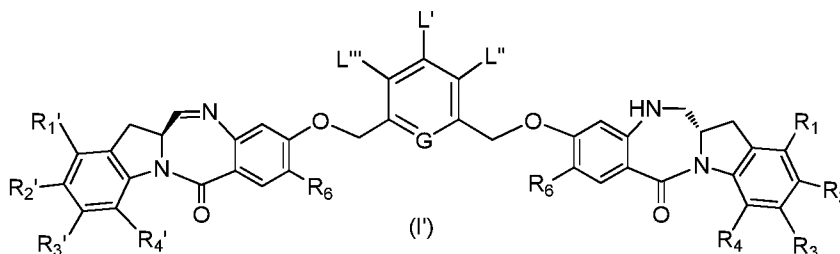
87. The method of claim 84-86, wherein the compound of formula (10) is represented by a formula selected from the following:



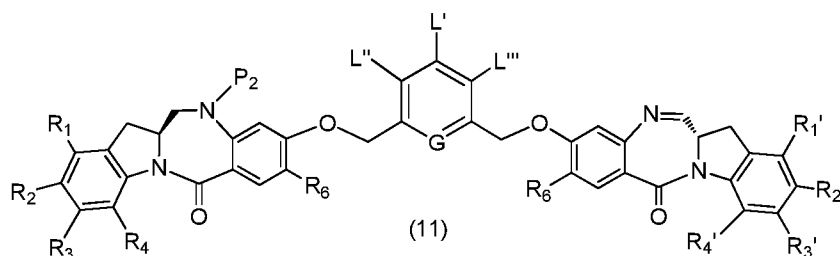
wherein R_{100} is a (C_1-C_3) alkoxy; and R_{101} is a (C_1-C_3) alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl (*e.g.*, 4-nitropyridyl).

88. The method of claim 84-87, wherein the compound of formula (10) is reacted with the monomer compound of formula (d) in the presence of a base.
89. The method of claim 88, wherein the base is sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, cesium carbonate, sodium hydride, or potassium hydride.
- 5 90. The method of any one of claims 84-89, wherein the amine protecting group is 2-trimethylsilylethyl, (2-phenyl-2-trimethylsilyl)ethyl, triisopropylsiloxy, 2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxymethyl, allyloxycarbonyl, 9-fluorenylmethoxycarbonyl, 2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxycarbonyl, or 2, 2,2,2-trichloroethoxycarbonyl
91. A method of preparing a compound of formula (I'),

10



or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula (11),



with an amine deprotecting reagent; wherein:

15

L', L'', and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -CONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that only one of L', L'', and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

20

M is -H or a cation;

R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit - $(\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O})_n$ -R^c, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -N(R)₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit - $(\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O})_n$ -R^c, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

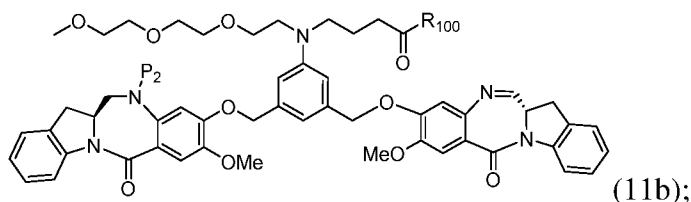
G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

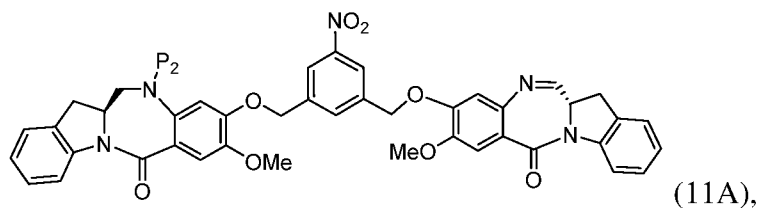
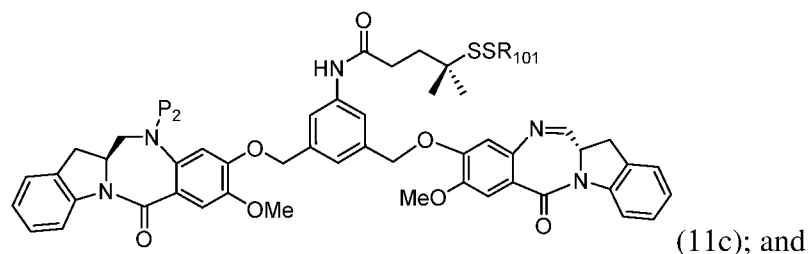
R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₁', R₂', R₃', and R₄' are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit - $(\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O})_n$ -R_c, halogen, guanidinium [-NH(C=NH)NH₂], -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R'';

R₆ is -H, -R, -OR, -SR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, or halogen; and,

P₂ is an amine protecting group.

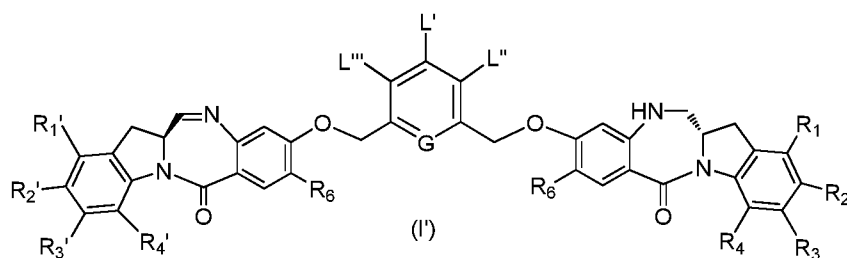
92. The method of claim 91, wherein the compound of formula (11) is represented by a formula selected from the following:



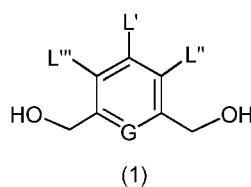


wherein R_{100} is a (C_1-C_3) alkoxy; and R_{101} is a (C_1-C_3) alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl (*e.g.*, 4-nitropyridyl).

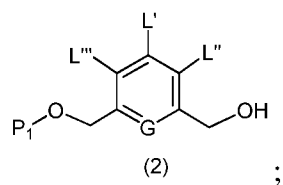
- 5 93. The method of claim 92, wherein the amine deprotecting reagent is tetra-n-butylammonium fluoride, acetic acid, hydrogen fluoride pyridine, cesium fluoride, piperidine, morpholine, or trifluoroacetic acid.
94. A method of preparing a compound of formula (I'),



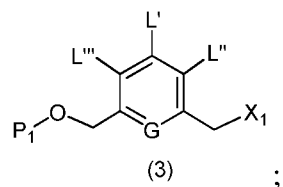
- 10 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:
- (1) introducing an alcohol protecting group onto one of the primary alcohols of the compound of formula (1),



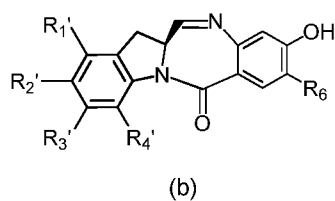
- 15 to form a compound of formula (2),



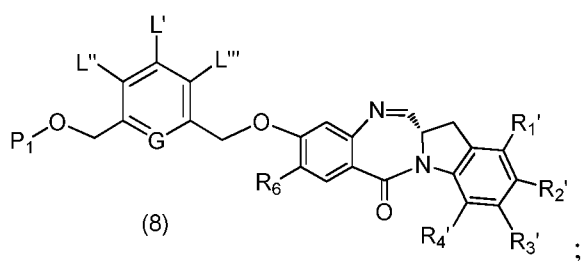
(2) reacting a halogenating reagent, a sulfonating reagent or an esterification reagent with the compound of formula (2) to form a compound of formula (3),



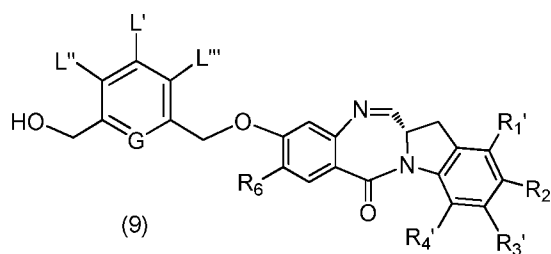
5 (3) reacting the compound of formula (3) with a monomer compound of the formula (b),



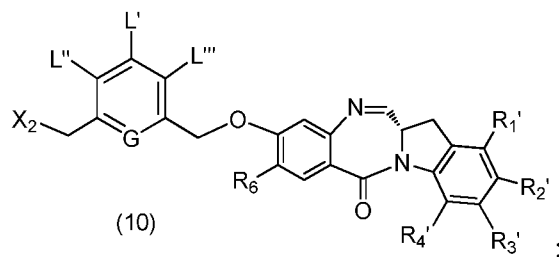
to form a compound of formula (8),



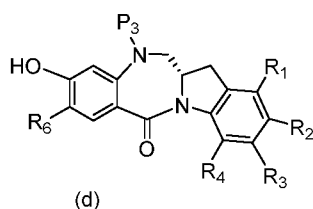
10 (4) reacting the compound of formula (8) with an alcohol deprotecting reagent to form a compound of formula (9),



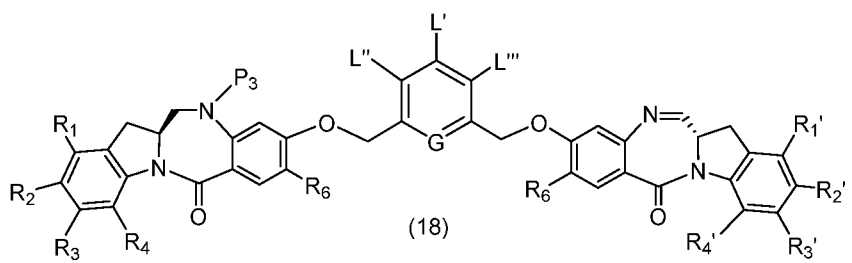
(5) reacting a second halogenating reagent, a second sulfonating reagent or a second esterification reagent with the compound of formula (9) to form a compound of formula (10),



5 (6) reacting the compound of formula (10) with a monomer compound of the formula (d)



to form a compound of formula (18),



10 (7) when P₃ is an amine protecting group; reacting the compound of formula (18) with an amine deprotecting reagent to form the compound of formula (I'), wherein:

15 L', L'', and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit -(OCH₂CH₂)_n-R^c, halogen, guanidinium [-NH(C=NH)NH₂], -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent

(CBA), provided that only one of L', L'', and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is -H or a cation;

R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit -
 5 (CH₂CH₂O)_n-R^c, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an
 10 optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -N(R)₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit -
 15 (CH₂CH₂O)_n-R^c, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

20 G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₁', R₂', R₃', and R₄' are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit -(CH₂CH₂O)_n-R_c, halogen, guanidinium [-NH(C=NH)NH₂], -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H,
 25 -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R'';

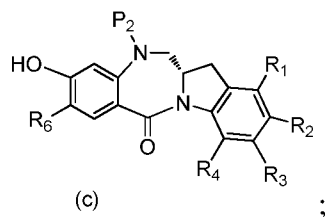
R₆ is -H, -R, -OR, -SR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, or halogen;

P₃ is H or an amine protecting group;

P₁ is an alcohol protecting group; and

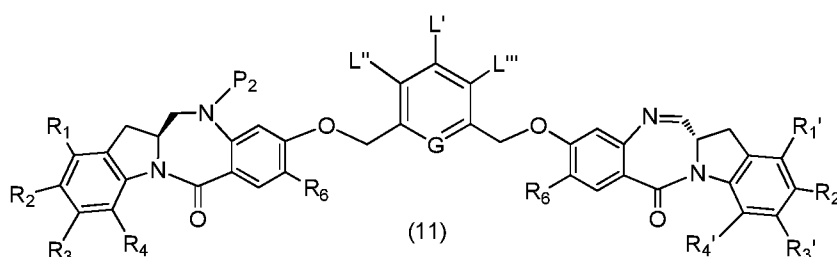
30 X₁ and X₂ are each independently a leaving group selected from the group consisting of: -Br, -I, -Cl, a sulfonate ester, and an activated ester (preferably, -Br, -I, a sulfonate ester).

95. The method of claim 94, wherein P_3 is H and the compound of (10) is reacted with the monomer compound of (d) to form a compound of (I').
96. The method of claim 94, wherein P_3 is P_2 ; the monomer compound is represented by formula (c):



5

and the compound of formula (18) is represented by formula (11),

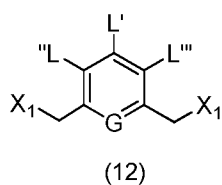


wherein:

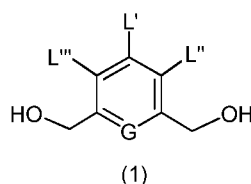
P_2 is an amine protecting group;

10

97. A method of preparing a compound of formula (12),



or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula (1),



15

with a halogenating reagent, a sulfonating reagent, or an esterification reagent, wherein:

L' , L'' , and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-$, R^c ,

halogen, guanidinium [-NH(C=NH)NH₂], -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that only one of L', L'', and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is -H or a cation:

R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit - $(\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O})_n$ -R^c, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -N(R)₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit - (CH₂CH₂O)_n-R^c, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

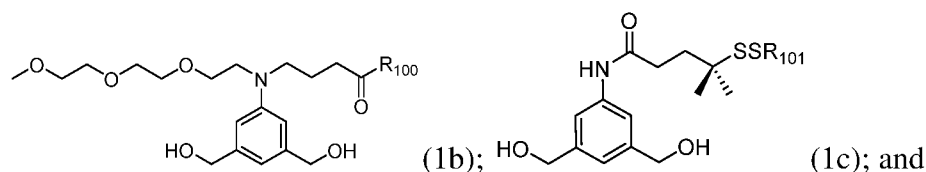
R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

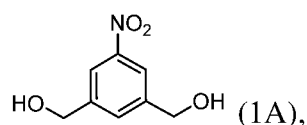
n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

G is selected from -CH- or -N-; and,

X₁ is -Br, -I, -Cl, a sulfonate ester, or an activated ester (preferably, X₁ is -Br, -I, or a sulfonate ester).

98. The method of claim 97, wherein the compound of formula (1) is represented by a formula selected from the following:





wherein R₁₀₀ is a (C₁-C₃)alkoxy; and R₁₀₁ is a (C₁-C₃)alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl (*e.g.*, 4-nitropyridyl).

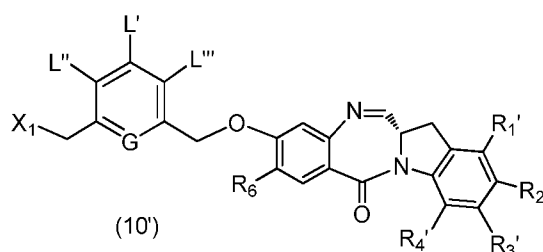
99. The method of claim 97 or 98, wherein X₁ is -Br or -I.

5 100. The method of any one of claims 97-99, wherein the halogenating reagent reacts with the primary alcohols of the compound of formula (1) in the presence of an alcohol activating agent.

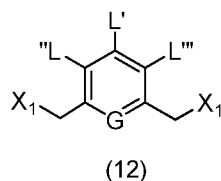
101. The method of claim 100, wherein the alcohol activating agent is thionyl chloride.

10 102. The method of any one of claims 97-101, wherein the halogenating reagent is lithium bromide, sodium bromide, potassium bromide, potassium iodide, or sodium iodide.

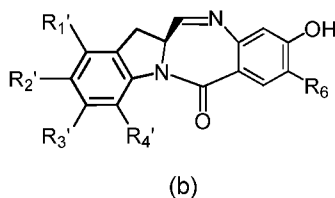
103. A method of preparing a compound of formula (10'),



15 or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula (12),



with a monomer compound of the formula (b),



wherein:

L', L'', and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}_2)_n-\text{R}^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-\text{NH}(\text{C}=\text{NH})\text{NH}_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that only one of L', L'', and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

10 M is -H or a cation;

R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O})_n-\text{R}^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

20 R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -N(R)₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O})_n-\text{R}^c$, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

25 R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

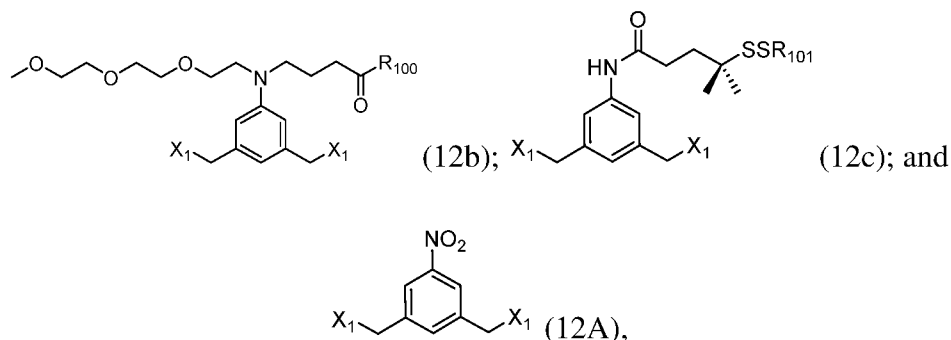
G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

X₁ is -Br, -I, -Cl, a sulfonate ester, or an activated ester (preferably, X₁ is -Br, -I, or a sulfonate ester)

30 R₁', R₂', R₃', and R₄' are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O})_n-\text{R}_c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-\text{NH}(\text{C}=\text{NH})\text{NH}_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'',

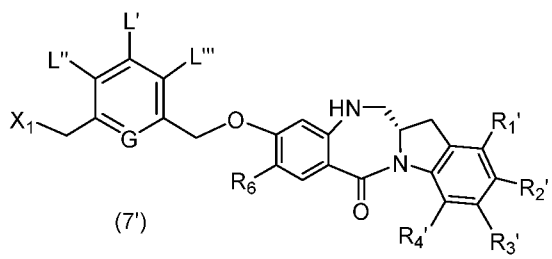
-NO₂, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R''; and, R₆ is -H, -R, -OR, -SR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, or halogen.

104. The method of claim 103, wherein the compound of formula (12) is represented by a formula selected from the following:

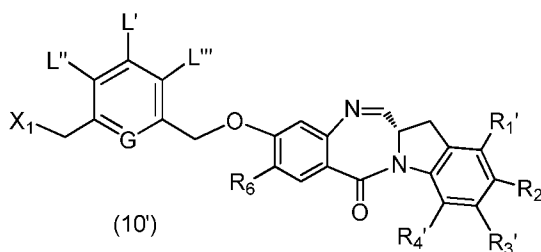


wherein R₁₀₀ is a (C₁-C₃)alkoxy; and R₁₀₁ is a (C₁-C₃)alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl (*e.g.*, 4-nitropyridyl).

105. The method of claim 103 or 104, wherein the compound of formula (12) is reacted with the monomer compound of formula (b) in the presence of a base.
106. The method of claim 105, wherein the base is sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, cesium carbonate, sodium hydride, or potassium hydride.
107. The method of any one of claims 103-106, wherein excess molar equivalent of the compound of formula (12) relative to the monomer compound of formula (b) is used.
108. A method of preparing a compound of formula (7'),



or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula (10'),



or a salt thereof, with an imine reducing agent,
wherein:

5 X_1 is -Br, -I, -Cl, a sulfonate ester, or an activated ester (preferably, X_1 is -Br, -I, a sulfonate ester);

L' , L'' , and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -
10 SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that only one of L' , L'' , and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

15 M is -H or a cation;

R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit -
20 $(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -
25 $N(R)_2$, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit - $(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

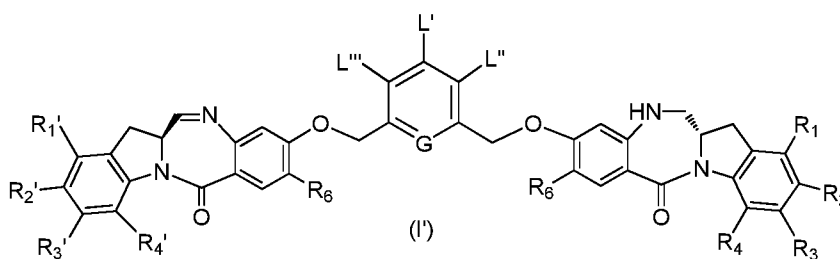
R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

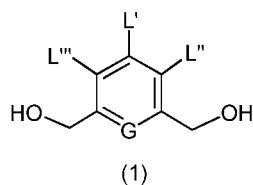
- 5 R_1, R_2, R_3 , and R_4 are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H, 10 -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R''; and R_6 is -H, -R, -OR, -SR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, or halogen.

109. The method of claim 108, wherein the imine reducing reagent is a hydride reducing reagent.
110. The method of claim 108, wherein the imine reducing reagent is sodium 15 borohydride, sodium triacetoxy borohydride, sodium cyanoborohydride, lithium aluminum hydride, hydrogen gas, ammonium formate, borane, 9-borabicyclo[3.3.1]nonane (9-BBN), diisobutylaluminium hydride (DIBAL), lithium borohydride (LiBH₄), potassium borohydride (KBH₄), or sodium bis(2-methoxyethoxy)aluminumhydride (Red-Al) .
- 20 111. The method of claim 110, wherein the imine reducing reagent is sodium triacetoxy borohydride (NaBH(OAc)₃).
112. The method of any one of claims 108-111, wherein X₁ is mesylate.
113. A method of preparing a compound of formula (I'),

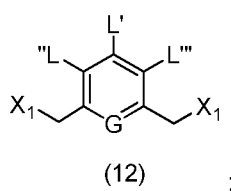


or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:

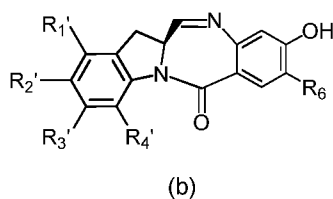
(1) reacting a halogenating reagent, a sulfonating reagent or an esterification reagent with a compound of formula (1),



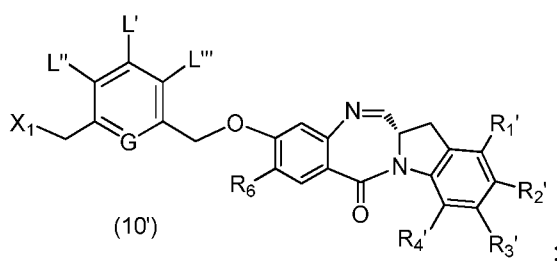
to form a compound of formula (12),



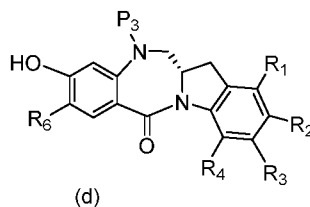
(2) reacting the compound of formula (12) with a monomer compound of the formula (b),



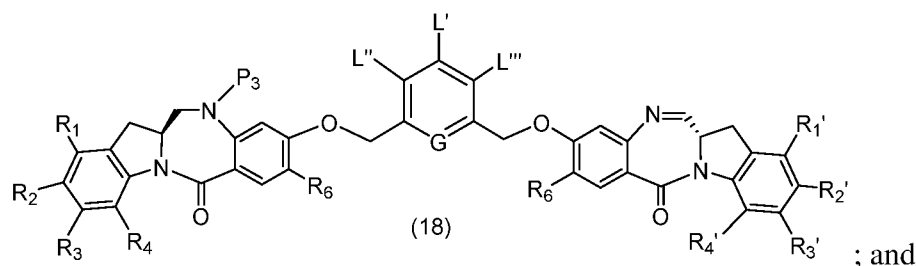
to form a compound of a formula (10'),



(3) reacting the compound of formula (10') with a monomer compound of the formula (d),



to form a compound of formula (18),



(4) when P_3 is an amine protecting group, reacting the compound of formula (18) with an amine deprotecting reagent to form the compound of formula (I'); wherein:

X_1 is $-\text{Br}$, $-\text{I}$, $-\text{Cl}$, a sulfonate ester, or an activated ester (preferably, X_1 is $-\text{Br}$, $-\text{I}$, or a sulfonate ester);

P_3 is H or an amine protecting group;

L' , L'' , and L''' are the same or different, and are independently $-\text{H}$, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}_2)_n-\text{R}^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-\text{NH}(\text{C}=\text{NH})\text{NH}_2]$, $-\text{OR}$, $-\text{NR}'\text{R}''$, $-\text{NO}_2$, $-\text{NR}'\text{COR}''$, $-\text{SR}$, $-\text{SOR}'$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{R}'$, $-\text{SO}_3\text{M}$, $-\text{OSO}_3\text{M}$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{NR}'\text{R}''$, cyano, an azido, $-\text{COR}'$, $-\text{OCOR}'$, $-\text{OCONR}'\text{R}''$, or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that only one of L' , L'' , and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is $-\text{H}$ or a cation;

R , for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of $-\text{H}$, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O})_n-\text{R}^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more

heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

5 R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -N(R)₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit - (CH₂CH₂O)_n-R^c, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

10 R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto; n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

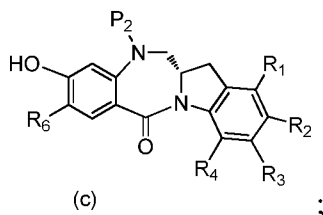
G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

15 R₁, R₂, R₃, and R₄ are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit -(CH₂CH₂O)_n-R_c, halogen, guanidinium [-NH(C=NH)NH₂], -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R''; and

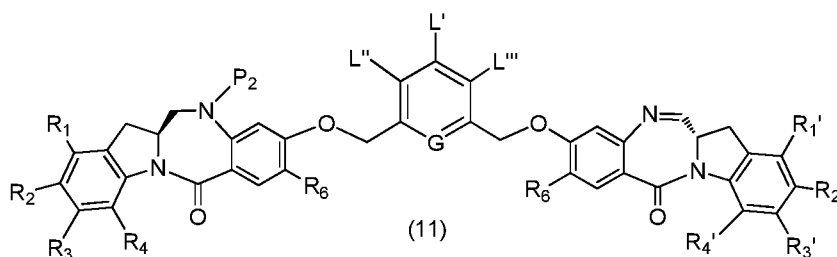
R₆ is -H, -R, -OR, -SR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, or halogen.

20 114. The method of claim 113, wherein P₃ is H and the compound of (10') is reacted with the monomer compound of (d) to form a compound of (I').

115. The method of claim 113, wherein P₃ is P₂; the monomer compound is represented by formula (c):

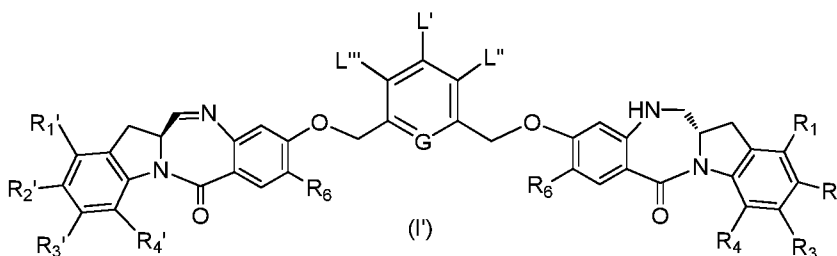


25 and the compound of formula (18) is represented by formula (11),



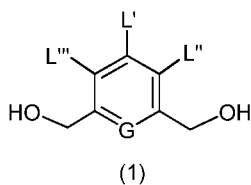
wherein P_2 is an amine protecting group.

116. A method of preparing a compound of formula (I'),

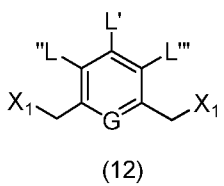


5 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:

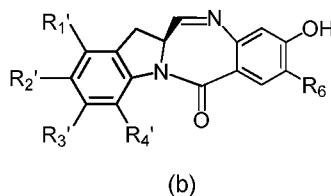
(1) reacting a halogenating reagent, a sulfonating reagent or an esterification reagent with a compound of formula (1),



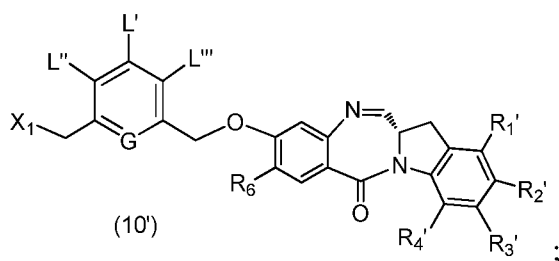
10 to form a compound of formula (12),



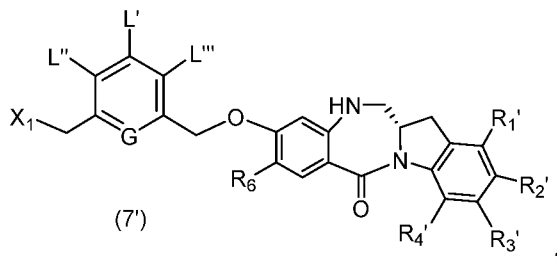
(2) reacting the compound of formula (12) with a monomer compound of the formula (b),



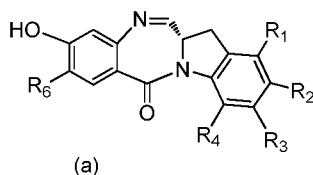
15 to form a compound of a formula (10'),



(3) reacting the compound (10') with an imine reducing reagent to form a compound (7'),



(4) reacting the compound of formula (7') with a monomer compound of the formula (a),



to form a compound of formula (I'), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein:

X₁ is -Br, -I, -Cl, a sulfonate ester, or an activated ester (preferably, X₁ is -Br, -I, or a sulfonate ester);

L', L'', and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit -(OCH₂CH₂)_n-R^c, halogen, guanidinium [-NH(C=NH)NH₂], -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that only one of L', L'', and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is -H or a cation;

R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl,

alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit -
 $(\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O})_n\text{-R}^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an
 optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more
 heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an
 optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6
 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -
 $\text{N}(\text{R})_2$, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl
 or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit -
 $(\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O})_n\text{-R}^c$, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic
 ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having
 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

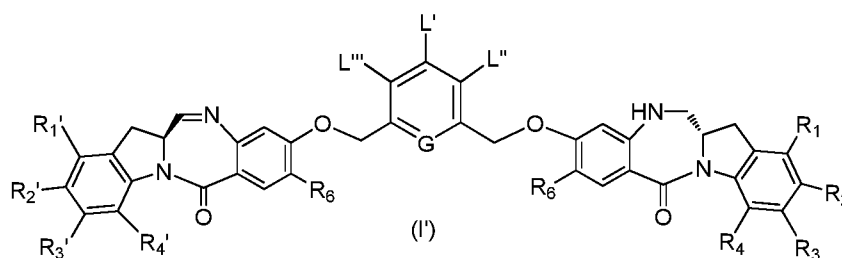
G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

R_1 , R_2 , R_3 , and R_4 are each independently selected from the group
 consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl,
 alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit
 $(\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O})_n\text{-R}^c$, halogen, guanidinium [$-\text{NH}(\text{C}=\text{NH})\text{NH}_2$], -OR, -NR'R'',
 $-\text{NO}_2$, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H,
 $-\text{SO}_2\text{NR}'\text{R}''$, cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R''; and

R_6 is -H, -R, -OR, -SR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, or halogen.

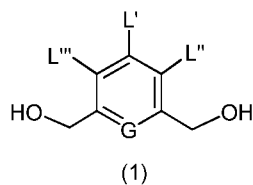
117. The method of claim 116, wherein X_1 is mesylate.

118. A method of preparing a compound of formula (I'),

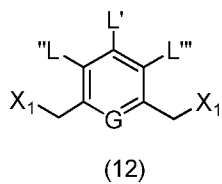


or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps
 of:

(1) reacting a halogenating reagent, a sulfonating reagent or an esterification reagent with a compound of formula (1),

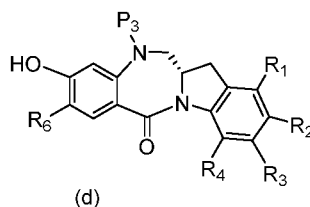


to form a compound of formula (12),

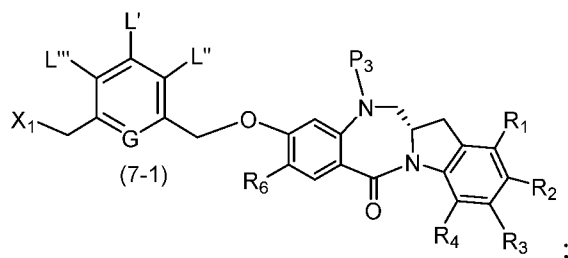


5

(2) reacting the compound of formula (12) with a monomer compound of the formula (d),

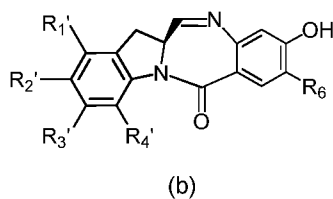


to form a compound of a formula (7-1),

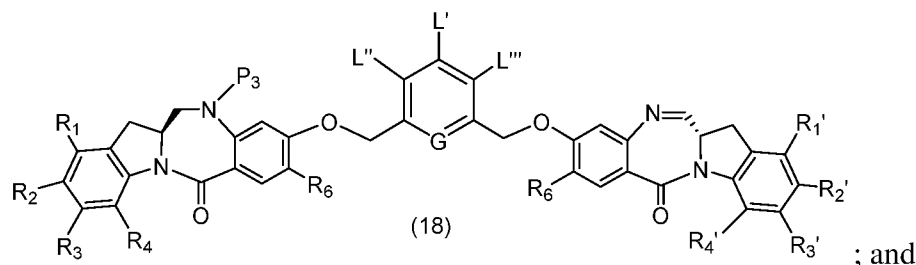


10

(3) reacting the compound of formula (7-1) with a monomer compound of the formula (b),



to form a compound of formula (18),



(4) when P_3 is an amine protecting group, reacting the compound of formula (18d) with an amine deprotecting reagent to form the compound of formula (Id'); wherein:

5 X_1 is -Br, -I, -Cl, a sulfonate ester, or an activated ester (preferably, X_1 is -Br, -I, or a sulfonate ester);

P_3 is H or an amine protecting group;

10 L' , L'' , and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent

15 (CBA), provided that only one of L' , L'' , and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is -H or a cation;

20 R , for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6

25 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -N(R)₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic

ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

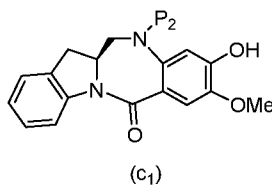
5 G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

R_1 , R_2 , R_3 , and R_4 are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R''; and

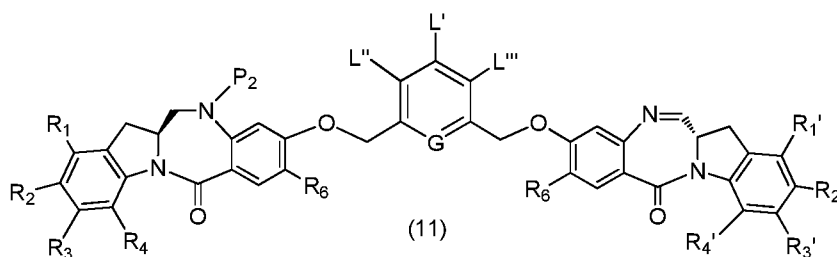
R_6 is -H, -R, -OR, -SR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, or halogen.

119. The method of claim 118, wherein P_3 is H and the compound of (10') is reacted with the monomer compound of (d) to form a compound of (I').

15 120. The method of claim 118, wherein P_3 is P_2 ; the monomer compound is represented by formula (c):



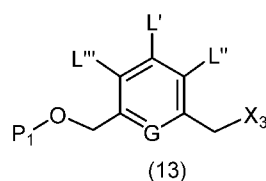
and the compound of formula (18) is represented by formula (11),



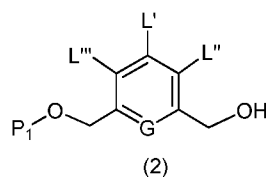
20 wherein P_2 is an amine protecting group.

121. The method of any one of claims 118-120, wherein X_1 is mesylate.

122. A method of preparing a compound of formula (13),



or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a chlorinating reagent with a compound of formula (2),



5

wherein:

L', L'', and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-R^c$,
 10 halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that zero or one of L', L'', and L''' is the linking group with
 15 the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is -H or a cation;

R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

20

R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -N(R)₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic

25

ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

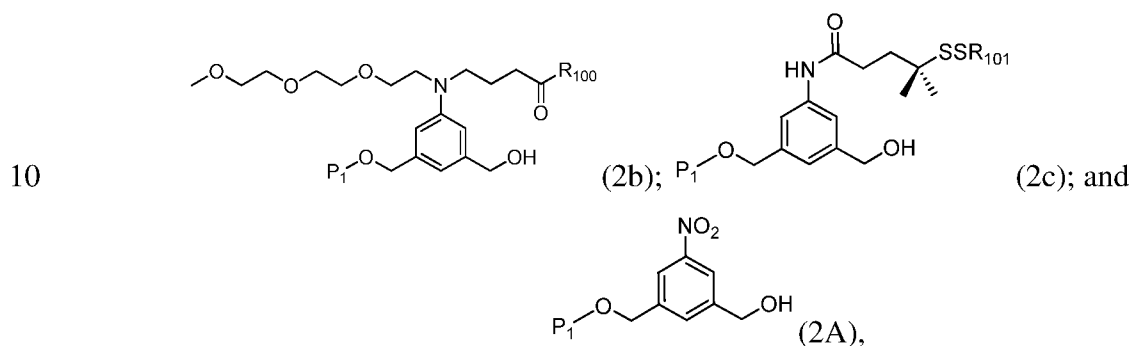
n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

5 G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

P_1 is an alcohol protecting group; and,

X_3 is -Cl.

123. The method of claim 122, wherein the compound of formula (2) is selected from the group consisting of:



wherein R_{100} is a (C₁-C₃)alkoxy; and R_{101} is a (C₁-C₃)alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl (*e.g.*, 4-nitropyridyl).

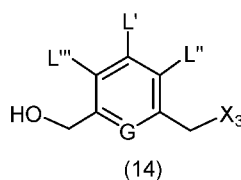
124. The method of claim 122 or 123, wherein the alcohol protecting group is a silyl protecting group.

125. The method of claim 124, wherein the silyl protecting group is the silyl protecting group is dimethylisopropylsilyl, diethylisopropylsilyl, dimethylhexylsilyl, trimethylsilyl, triisopropylsilyl, tribenzylsilyl, triphenylsilyl, 2-norbornyldimethylsilyl, *tert*-butyldimethylsilyl, *tert*-butyldiphenylsilyl, 2-trimethylethylsilyl (TEOC), or [2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxy]methyl.

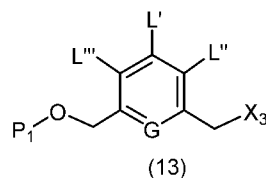
126. The method of claim 125, wherein the silyl protecting group is triethylsilyl, triisopropylsilyl, or *tert*-butyldimethylsilyl.

127. The method of claim 126, wherein the silyl protecting group is *tert*-butyldimethylsilyl.

128. The method of any one of claims 122–127, wherein the chlorinating reagent is selected from the group consisting of carbon tetrachloride, methanesulfonyl chloride, sulfuryl chloride, thionyl chloride, cyanuric chloride, *N*-chlorosuccinimide, phosphorus(V) oxychloride, phosphorus pentachloride, and phosphorus trichloride.
129. The method of claim 128, wherein the chlorinating reagent is methanesulfonyl chloride.
130. The method of any one of claims 122–129, wherein the chlorinating reagent is reacted with a compound of formula (2) in the presence of a non-nucleophilic base.
131. The method of claim 130, wherein the non-nucleophilic base is triethylamine, imidazole, diisopropylethylamine, pyridine, 2,6-lutidine, dimethylformamide, 1,8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undec-7-ene (DBU), or tetramethylpiperidine .
132. The method of claim 131, wherein the non-nucleophilic base is pyridine.
133. The method of any one of claims 122–132, wherein the the chlorinating reagent is reacted with a compound of formula (2) in a polar aprotic solvent.
134. The method of claim 133, wherein the polar aprotic solvent is *N,N*-dimethylformamide or dimethylacetamide.
135. A method of preparing a compound of formula (14),



or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula (13)



with an alcohol deprotecting reagent. wherein:

L', L'', and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that zero or one of L', L'', and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

10 M is -H or a cation;

R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

20 R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -N(R)₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

25 R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

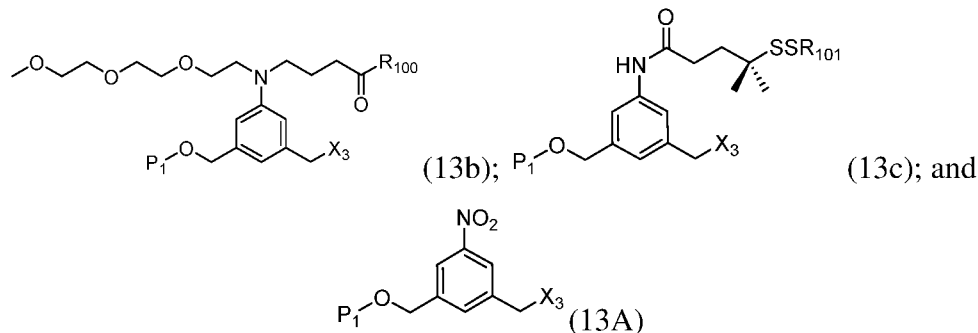
n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

P₁ is an alcohol protecting group; and,

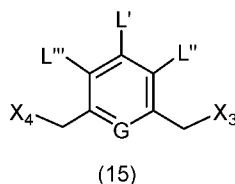
X₃ is -Cl.

136. The method of claim 135, wherein the compound of formula (13) is selected from the group consisting of:

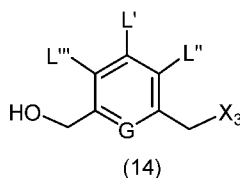


- 5 wherein R₁₀₀ is a (C₁-C₃)alkoxy; and R₁₀₁ is a (C₁-C₃)alkyl, pyridyl or
nitropyridyl (*e.g.*, 4-nitropyridyl).
137. The method of claim 135 or 136, wherein the alcohol protecting group is a silyl
protecting group.
138. The method of claim 137, wherein the silyl protecting group is the silyl
10 protecting group is dimethylisopropylsilyl, diethylisopropylsilyl,
dimethylhexylsilyl, trimethylsilyl, triisopropylsilyl, tribenzylsilyl, triphenylsilyl,
2-norbornyldimethylsilyl, *tert*-butyldimethylsilyl, *tert*-butyldiphenylsilyl, 2-
trimethylethylsilyl (TEOC), or [2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxy]methyl.
139. The method of claim 138, wherein the silyl protecting group is triethylsilyl,
15 triisopropylsilyl, or *tert*-butyldimethylsilyl.
140. The method of claim 139, wherein the silyl protecting group is *tert*-
butyldimethylsilyl.
141. The method of any one of claims 135–140, wherein the alcohol deprotecting
20 reagent is tetra-*n*-butylammonium fluoride, tris(dimethylamino)sulfonium
difluorotrimethylsilicate, hydrogen fluoride or a solvate thereof, hydrogen
fluoride pyridine, silicon tetrafluoride, hexafluorosilicic acid, cesium fluoride,
hydrochloric acid, acetic acid, trifluoroacetic acid, pyridinium *p*-toluenesulfonate,
p-toluenesulfonic acid (*p*-TsOH), formic acid, periodic acid.
142. The method of claim 141, wherein the alcohol deprotecting agent is hydrogen
25 fluoride pyridine.

143. A method of preparing a compound of formula (15):



or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a sulfonating reagent or an esterification reagent with a compound of formula (14),



5

wherein:

L' , L'' , and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-R^c$,
 10 halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that zero or one of L' , L'' , and L''' is the linking group with
 15 the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is -H or a cation;

R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit -
 20 $(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

25 R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -N(R)₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit -
 $(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic

ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

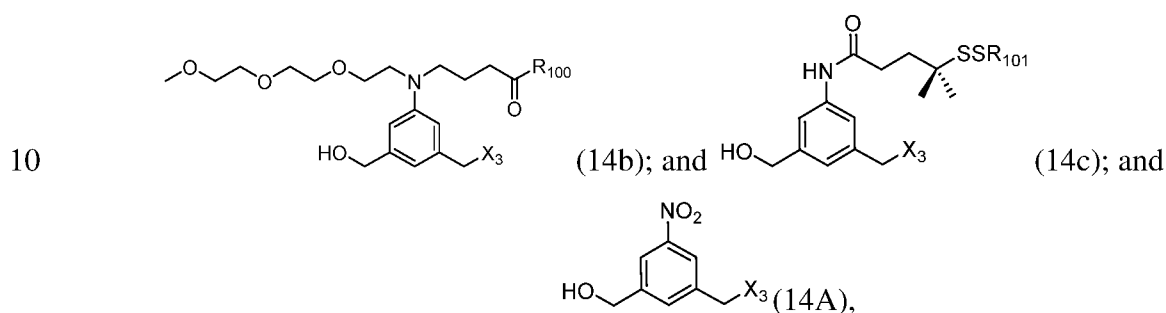
n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

5 G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

X_3 is -Cl; and

X_4 is a sulfonate ester or an activated ester (preferably, a sulfonate ester).

144. The method of claim 143, wherein the compound of formula (14) is selected from the group consisting of:



wherein R_{100} is a (C₁-C₃)alkoxy; and R_{101} is a (C₁-C₃)alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl (*e.g.*, 4-nitropyridyl).

145. The method of claim 143 or 144, wherein the sulfonating reagent is
15 methanesulfonyl anhydride, methanesulfonyl chloride, p-toluenesulfonyl chloride, 4-bromobenzenesulfonyl chloride, or trifluoromethanesulfonyl anhydride.

146. The method of claim 145, wherein the sulfonate ester represented by X_1 is mesylate, tosylate, brosylate, or triflate.

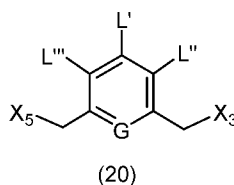
147. The method of claim 146, wherein the sulfonate ester represented by X_1 is
20 mesylate.

148. The method of any one of claims 143–147, wherein the sulfonate ester is reacted with a compound of formula (14) in the presence of a non-nucleophilic base

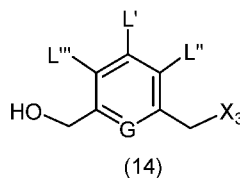
149. The method of claim 148, wherein the non-nucleophilic base is triethylamine, imidazole, diisopropylethylamine, pyridine, 2,6-lutidine, dimethylformamide,
25 1,8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undec-7-ene (DBU), or tetramethylpiperidine.

150. The method of claim 149, wherein the amine base is diisopropylethylamine.

151. A method of preparing a compound of formula (20):



or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a brominating or iodinating reagent with a compound of formula (14),



wherein:

L', L'', and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that zero or one of L', L'', and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is -H or a cation;

R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -N(R)₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit -

$(\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O})_n\text{-R}^c$, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

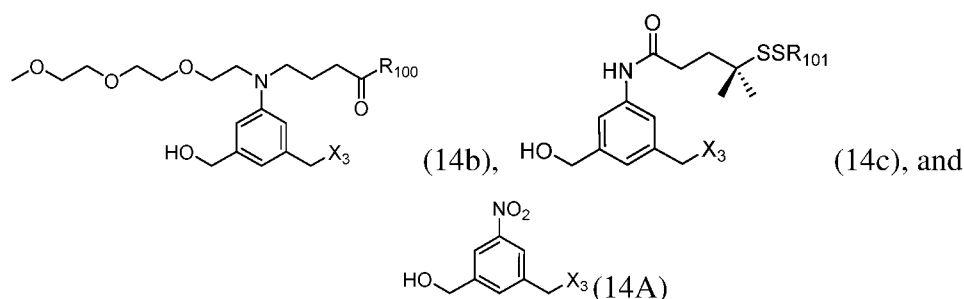
5 n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

X_3 is -Cl; and

X_5 is -Br or -I.

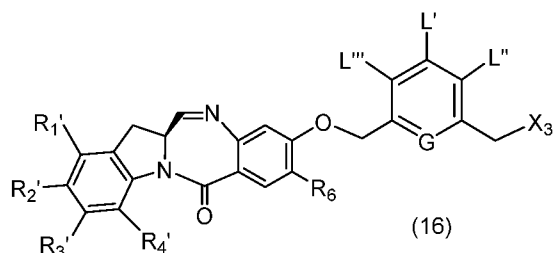
152. The method of claim 151, wherein the compound of formula (14) is selected
10 from the group consisting of:



wherein R_{100} is a $(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_3)$ alkoxy; and R_{101} is a $(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_3)$ alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl (*e.g.*, 4-nitropyridyl).

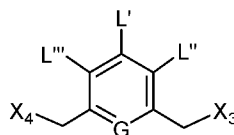
15 153. The method of claim 151 or 152, wherein the brominating or iodinating reagent is bromine, hydrobromic acid, carbon tetrabromide, phosphorus tribromide, potassium bromide, hydroiodic acid, iodine, carbon tetraiodide, phosphorus triiodide, sodium iodide, or potassium iodide.

154. A method of preparing a compound of formula (16):



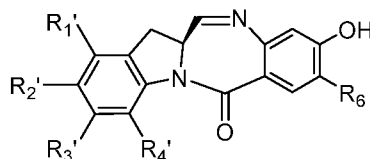
20

or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula (15)



(15)

with a monomer compound of formula (b),



(b)

wherein:

- 5 R_1' , R_2' , R_3' , and R_4' are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R_c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R'';

- 10 L' , L'' , and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that zero or one of L' , L'' , and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

- 20 M is -H or a cation;

- R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an

optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -NR₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit - (CH₂CH₂O)_n-R^c, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

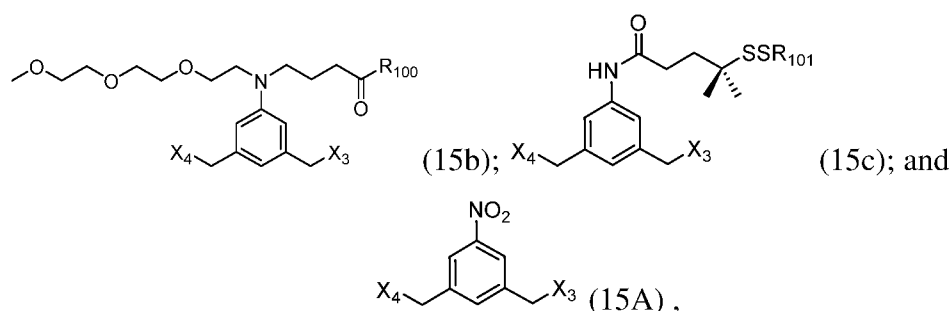
n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

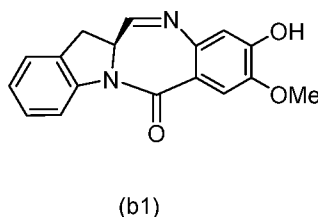
X₃ is -Cl; and

X₄ is a sulfonate ester or an activated ester (preferably, a sulfonate ester).

- 15 155. The method of claim 154, wherein the compound of formula (15) is selected from the group consisting of:



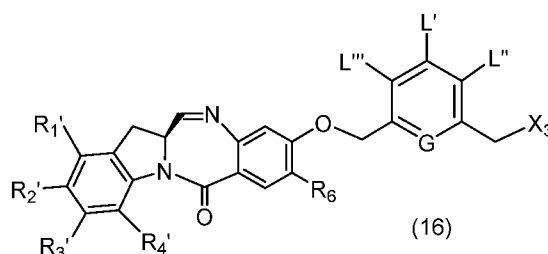
and the monomer compound of formula (b) is represented by the following formula:



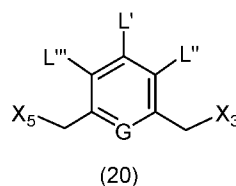
wherein R₁₀₀ is a (C₁-C₃)alkoxy; and R₁₀₁ is a (C₁-C₃)alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl (e.g., 4-nitropyridyl).

- 25 156. The method of claim 154 or 155, wherein the compound of formula (15) is reacted with a monomer compound of formula (b) in the presence of a base.

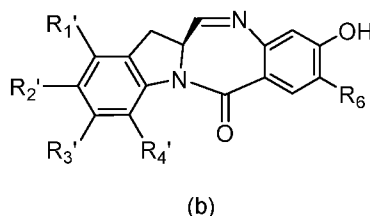
157. The method of claim 156, wherein the base is sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, cesium carbonate, sodium hydride, or potassium hydride.
158. The method of any one of claims 154–157, wherein the compound of formula (15) is reacted with a monomer compound of formula (b) in the presence of a polar aprotic solvent.
159. The method of claim 158, wherein the polar aprotic solvent is dimethylacetamide.
160. A method of preparing a compound of formula (16):



or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula (20)



with a monomer compound of formula (b),



wherein:

- R_1' , R_2' , R_3' , and R_4' are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R_c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R'';

L', L'', and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that zero or one of L', L'', and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

10 M is -H or a cation;

R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

20 R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -NR₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

25 R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

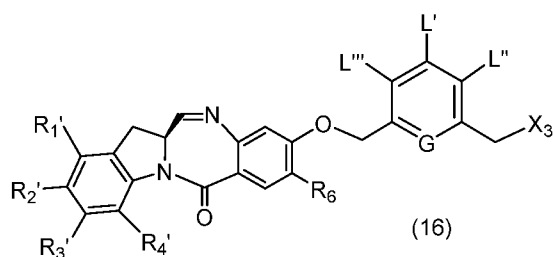
n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

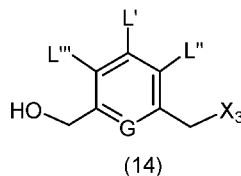
X₃ is -Cl; and

X₅ is -Br or -I.

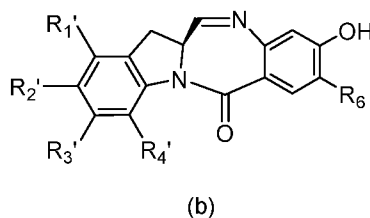
167. A method of preparing a compound of formula (16):



or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula (14)



5 with a monomer compound of formula (b),



wherein:

R_1' , R_2' , R_3' , and R_4' are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R_c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R'';

L' , L'' , and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that zero or one of L' , L'' , and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is -H or a cation;

R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of –H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from –H, –OH, –OR, –NHR, –NR₂, –COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

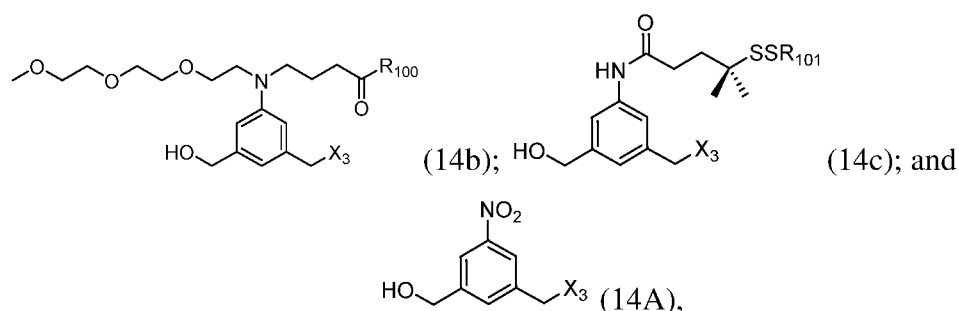
R^c is –H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

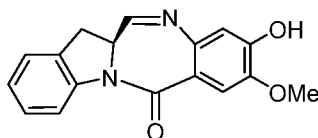
G is selected from –CH– or –N–; and

X₃ is –Cl.

168. The method of claim 167, wherein the compound of formula (14) is selected from the group consisting of:



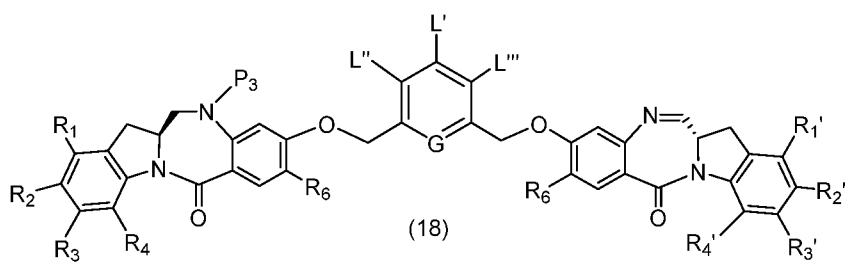
wherein R₁₀₀ is a (C₁-C₃)alkoxy; and R₁₀₁ is a (C₁-C₃)alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl (e.g., 4-nitropyridyl), and the monomer compound of formula (b) is represented by the following formula:



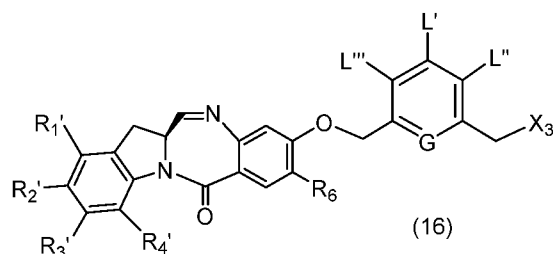
(b1)

wherein R_{100} is a (C_1-C_3) alkoxy; and R_{101} is a (C_1-C_3) alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl (*e.g.*, 4-nitropyridyl).

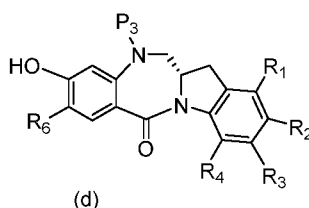
169. The method of claim 167 or 168, wherein the compound of formula (14) is
 5 reacted with a monomer of formula (b) in the presence of an alcohol activating agent.
170. The method of claim 169, wherein the alcohol activating agent is triphenylphosphine.
171. The method of any one of claims 167 – 170, wherein the compound of formula
 10 (14) is reacted with a monomer of formula (b) in the presence of an azodicarboxylate.
172. The method of claim 171, wherein the azodicarboxylate is selected from the group consisting of: diethyl azodicarboxylate (DEAD), diisopropyl azodicarboxylate (DIAD), 1,1'-(azodicarbonyl)dipiperidine (ADDP), and
 15 ditertbutyl azodicarboxylate (DTAD).
173. A method of preparing a compound of formula (18):



or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula of (16):



with a reduced monomer of formula (d):



wherein:

- 5 L', L'', and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -
- 10 OCOR', -CONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that zero or one of L', L'', and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is -H or a cation;

- 15 R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more
- 20 heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

- R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -N(R)₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl
- 25 or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit -

$(\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O})_n\text{-R}^c$, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

5 n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

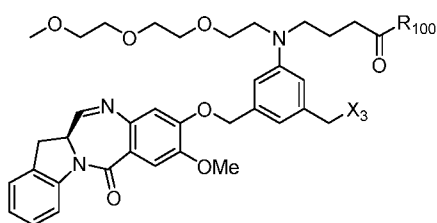
$\text{R}_1, \text{R}_2, \text{R}_3, \text{R}_4, \text{R}_1', \text{R}_2', \text{R}_3',$ and R_4' are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O})_n\text{-R}^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-\text{NH}(\text{C}=\text{NH})\text{NH}_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R'';

R_6 is -H, -R, -OR, -SR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, or halogen;

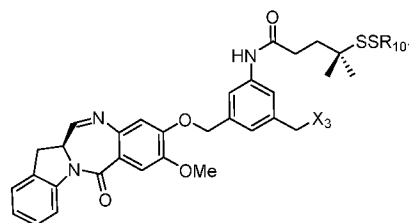
X_3 is -Cl; and

15 P_3 is H or an amine protecting group.

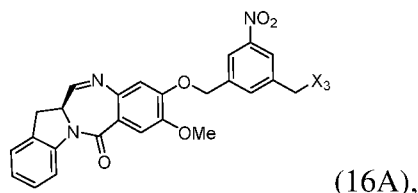
174. The method of claim 173, wherein the compound of formula (16) is selected from the group consisting of:



(16b);

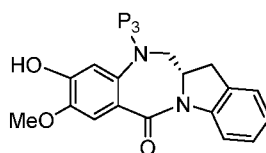


(16c); and



(16A),

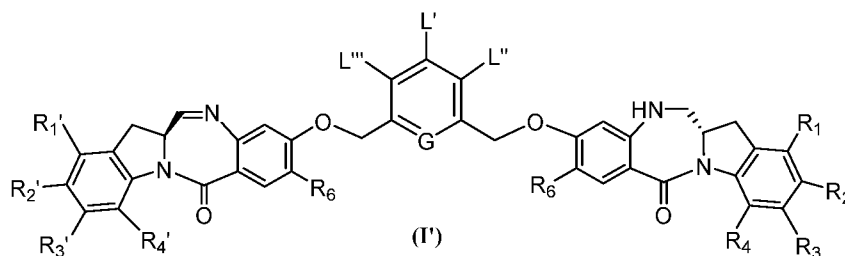
20 and the reduced monomer of formula (d) is represented by the following formula:



(d₁)

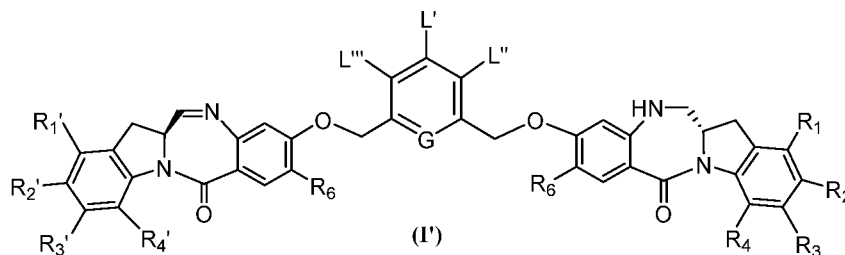
wherein R_{100} is a (C_1-C_3) alkoxy; and R_{101} is a (C_1-C_3) alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl (*e.g.*, 4-nitropyridyl).

175. The method of claim 173 or 174, wherein the compound of formula (16) is reacted with a monomer compound of formula (d) in the presence of a base.
- 5 176. The method of claim 175, wherein the base is sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, cesium carbonate, sodium hydride, or potassium hydride.
177. The method of any one of claims 173–176, wherein the compound of formula (16) is reacted with a monomer compound of formula (d) in the presence of a polar aprotic solvent.
- 10 178. The method of claim 177, wherein the polar aprotic solvent is dimethylacetamide or dimethylacetamide.
179. The method of any one of claims 173–178, wherein the compound of formula (16) is reacted with reduced monomer of formula (d), wherein P_3 is H, to form a compound of formula (I'):



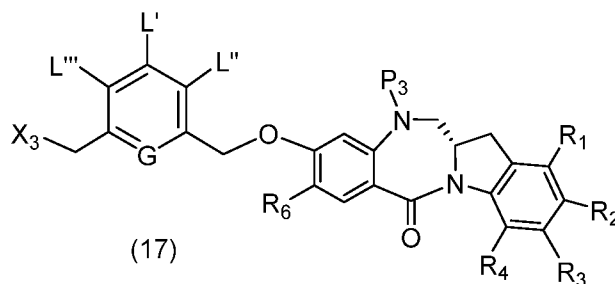
- 15 180. The method of any one of claims 173–178, wherein P_3 is an amine protecting group.
181. The method of claim 180, wherein the amine protecting group is selected from the group consisting of 2-trimethylsilylethyl, (2-phenyl-2-trimethylsilyl)ethyl, triisopropylsiloxy, 2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxymethyl, allyloxycarbonyl, 9-fluorenylmethoxycarbonyl, 2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxycarbonyl, and 2, 2,2,2-trichloroethoxycarbonyl.
- 20

182. The method of claim 180 or 181, wherein the compound of formula (18) is further reacted with an amine deprotecting reagent to form a compound of formula (I'):

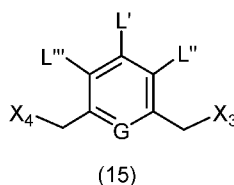


183. The method of claim 182, wherein the amine deprotecting reagent is selected from the group consisting of tetra-n-butylammonium fluoride, acetic acid, hydrogen fluoride pyridine, cesium fluoride, piperidine, morpholine, or trifluoroacetic acid.

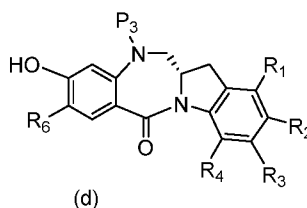
184. A method of preparing a compound of formula (17):



or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula (15)



with a monomer compound of formula (d),



wherein:

R₁, R₂, R₃, and R₄ are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl,

alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, $-OR$, $-NR'R''$, $-NO_2$, $-NCO$, $-NR'COR''$, $-SR$, $-SOR'$, $-SO_2R'$, $-SO_3H$, $-OSO_3H$, $-SO_2NR'R''$, cyano, an azido, $-COR'$, $-OCOR'$, and $-OCONR'R''$;

5 L' , L'' , and L''' are the same or different, and are independently $-H$, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, $-OR$, $-NR'R''$, $-NO_2$, $-NR'COR''$, $-SR$, $-SOR'$, $-SO_2R'$, $-SO_3M$, $-OSO_3M$, $-SO_2NR'R''$, cyano, an azido, $-COR'$, $-OCOR'$, $-OCONR'R''$, or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that zero or one of L' , L'' , and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is $-H$ or a cation;

15 R , for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of $-H$, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

20 R' and R'' are each independently selected from $-H$, $-OH$, $-OR$, $-NHR$, $-NR_2$, $-COR$, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

25 R^c is $-H$ or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

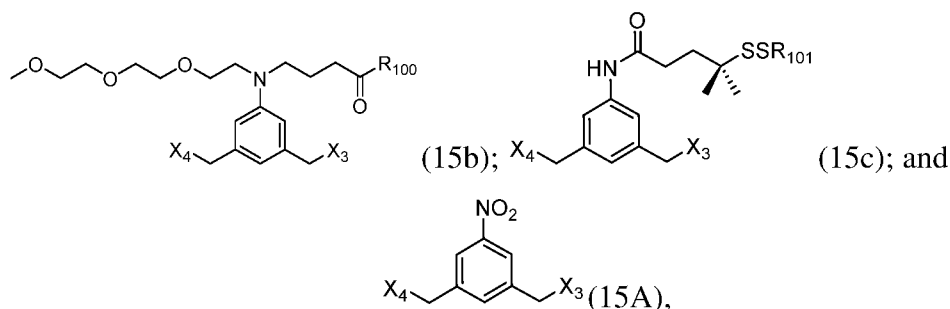
30 n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

G is selected from $-CH-$ or $-N-$;

X_3 is $-Cl$;

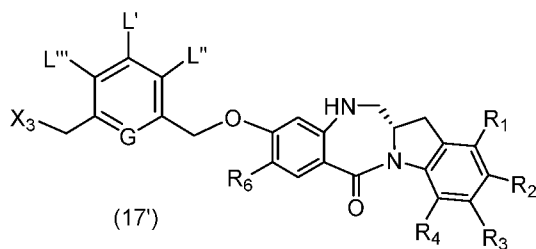
X_4 is a sulfonate ester or an activated ester (preferably, a sulfonate ester);
and
 P_3 is H or an amine protecting group.

185. The method of claim 184, wherein the compound of formula (15) is selected
5 from the group consisting of:



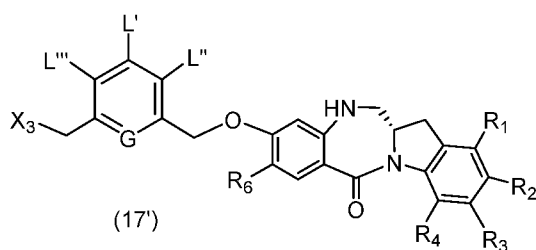
wherein R_{100} is a (C_1-C_3) alkoxy; and R_{101} is a (C_1-C_3) alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl (*e.g.*, 4-nitropyridyl).

- 10 186. The method of claim 184 or 185, wherein the compound of formula (15) is reacted with a monomer compound of formula (d) in the presence of a base.
187. The method of claim 186, wherein the base is sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, cesium carbonate, sodium hydride, or potassium hydride.
188. The method of claim 187, wherein the base is potassium carbonate.
- 15 189. The method of any one of claims 184–188, wherein the compound of formula (15) is reacted with a monomer compound of formula (b) in the presence of a polar aprotic solvent.
190. The method of claim 189, wherein the polar aprotic solvent is dimethylacetamide.
- 20 191. The method of any one of claims 184–190, wherein the compound of formula (15) is reacted with the monomer compound of formula (d), wherein P_3 is H, to form a compound of formula (17'):

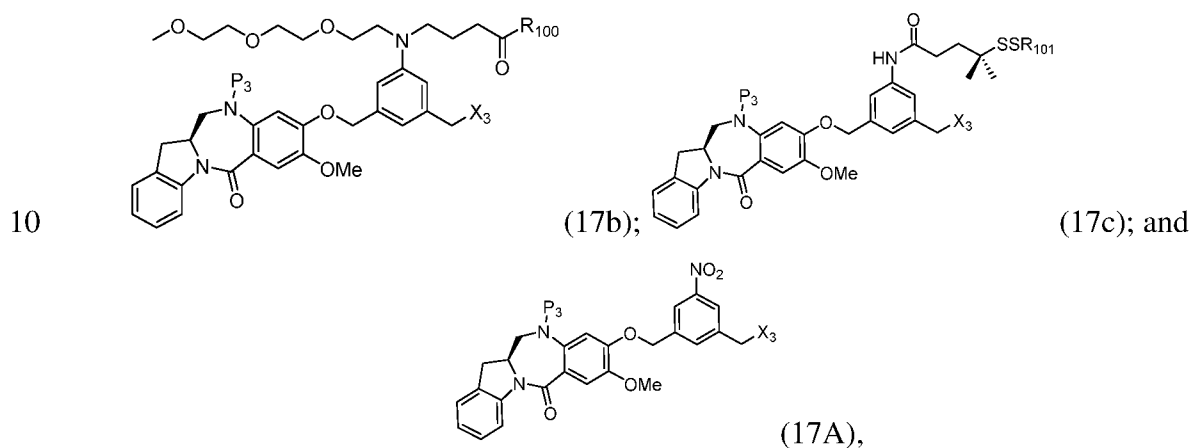


192. The method of any one of claims 184–190, wherein P₃ is an amine protecting group.

193. The method of claim 192, further comprising the step of reacting the compound of formula (17) with an amine deprotecting reagent to form a compound of formula (17'):



194. The method of claim 193, wherein the compound of formula (17) is selected from the group consisting of:

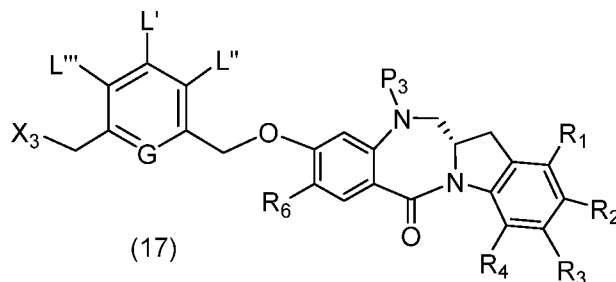


wherein R₁₀₀ is a (C₁–C₃)alkoxy; and R₁₀₁ is a (C₁–C₃)alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl (*e.g.*, 4-nitropyridyl).

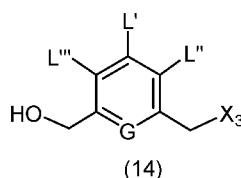
195. The method of claim 193 or 194, wherein the amine deprotecting reagent is selected from the group consisting of tetra-*n*-butylammonium fluoride, acetic

acid, hydrogen fluoride pyridine, cesium fluoride, piperidine, morpholine, or trifluoroacetic acid.

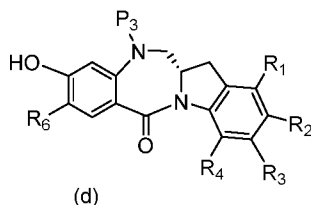
196. A method of preparing a compound of formula (17):



5 or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula (14)



with a monomer compound of formula (d),



wherein:

10 R_1 , R_2 , R_3 , and R_4 are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R_c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R'';

15 L' , L'' , and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent

20

(CBA), provided that zero or one of L', L'', and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is -H or a cation;

R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -NR₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

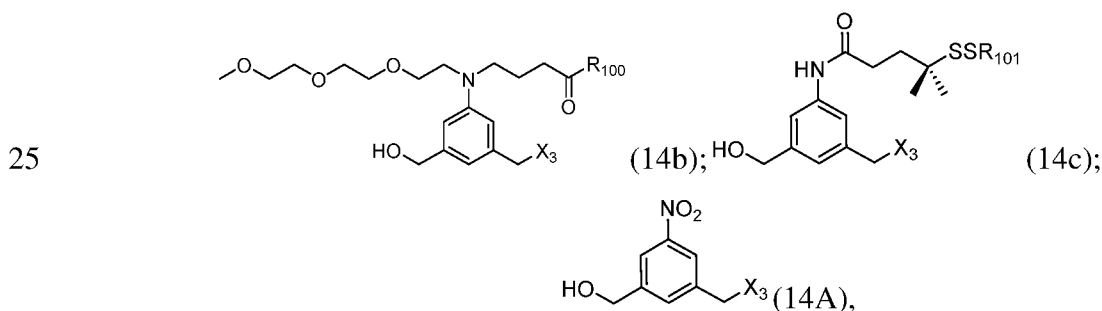
n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

X₃ is -Cl; and

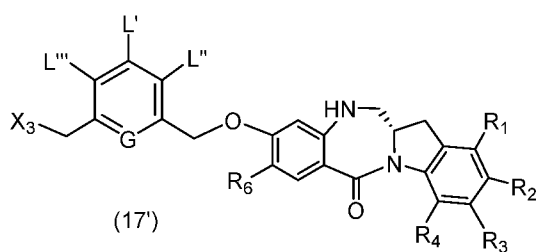
P₃ is H or an amine protecting group.

197. The method of claim 196, wherein the compound of formula (14) is selected from the group consisting of:

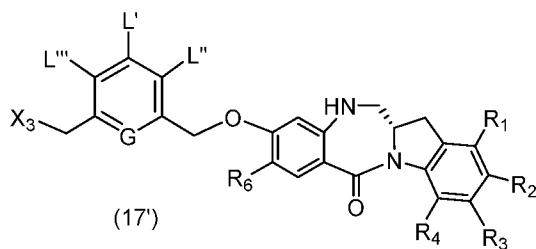


wherein R₁₀₀ is a (C₁-C₃)alkoxy; and R₁₀₁ is a (C₁-C₃)alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl (*e.g.*, 4-nitropyridyl).

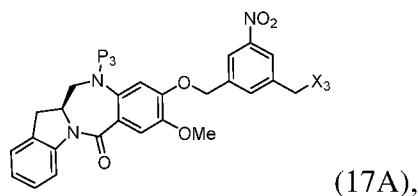
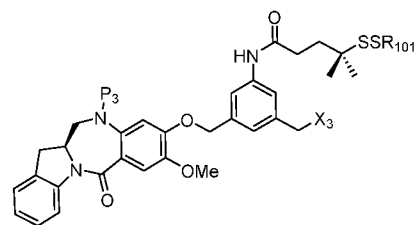
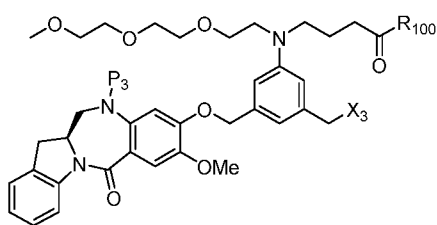
198. The method of claim 196 or 197, wherein the compound of formula (14) is reacted with a monomer of formula (b) in the presence of an alcohol activating agent.
199. The method of claim 198, wherein the alcohol activating agent is triphenylphosphine.
200. The method of any one of claims 196–199, wherein the compound of formula (14) is reacted with a monomer of formula (b) in the presence of an azodicarboxylate.
201. The method of claim 200, wherein the azodicarboxylate is selected from the group consisting of: diethyl azodicarboxylate (DEAD), diisopropyl azodicarboxylate (DIAD), 1,1'-(azodicarbonyl)dipiperidine (ADDP), and ditertbutyl azodicarboxylate (DTAD).
202. The method of any one of claims 196–201, wherein the compound of formula (15) is reacted with the monomer compound of formula (d), wherein P_3 is H, to form a compound of formula (17'):



203. The method of any one of claims 196–202, wherein P_3 is an amine protecting group.
204. The method of claim 203, further comprising the step of reacting the compound of formula (17) with an amine deprotecting reagent to form a compound of formula (17'):



205. The method of claim 204, wherein the compound of formula (17) is selected from the group consisting of:



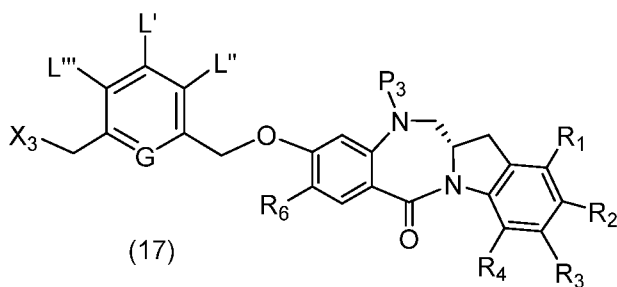
5

wherein R_{100} is a (C_1-C_3) alkoxy; and R_{101} is a (C_1-C_3) alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl (*e.g.*, 4-nitropyridyl).

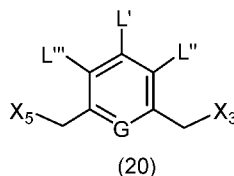
206. The method of claim 204 or 205, wherein the amine deprotecting reagent is selected from the group consisting of tetra-*n*-butylammonium fluoride, acetic acid, hydrogen fluoride pyridine, cesium fluoride, piperidine, morpholine, or trifluoroacetic acid.

10

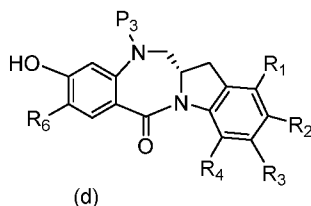
207. A method of preparing a compound of formula (17):



or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula (20)



with a monomer compound of formula (d),



wherein:

- 5 R_1 , R_2 , R_3 , and R_4 are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R'';

- 10 L' , L'' , and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that zero or one of L' , L'' , and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

- 20 M is -H or a cation;

- R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -NR₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit -(CH₂CH₂O)_n-R^c, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

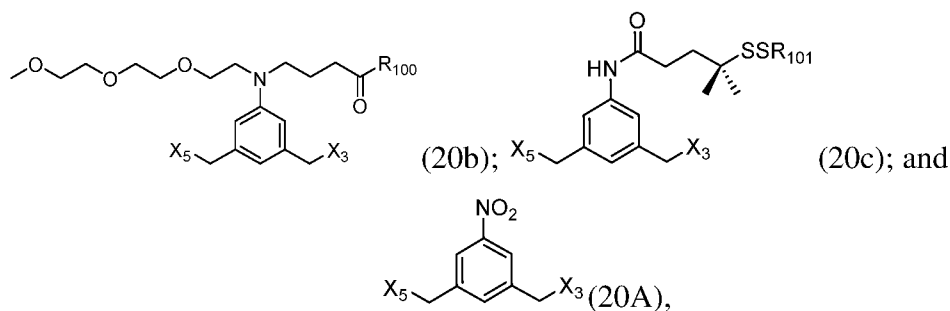
G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

X₃ is -Cl;

X₅ is -Br or -I; and

P₃ is H or an amine protecting group.

208. The method of claim 207, wherein the compound of formula (20) is selected from the group consisting of:



wherein R₁₀₀ is a (C₁-C₃)alkoxy; and R₁₀₁ is a (C₁-C₃)alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl (*e.g.*, 4-nitropyridyl).

209. The method of claim 207 or 208, wherein the compound of formula (20) is reacted with a monomer compound of formula (d) in the presence of a base.

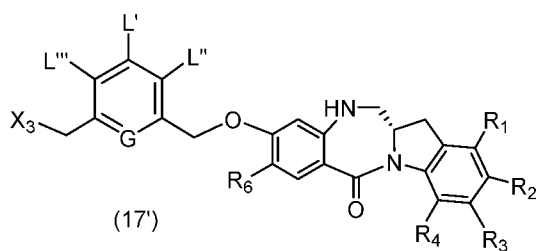
210. The method of claim 209, wherein the base is sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, cesium carbonate, sodium hydride, or potassium hydride.

211. The method of claim 210, wherein the base is potassium carbonate.

212. The method of any one of claims 207–211, wherein the compound of formula (20) is reacted with a monomer compound of formula (d) in the presence of a polar aprotic solvent.

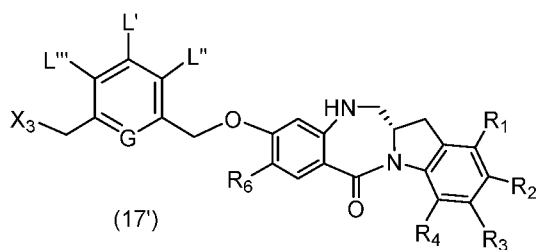
213. The method of claim 212, wherein the polar aprotic solvent is dimethylacetamide.

214. The method of any one of claims 207–213, wherein the compound of formula (20) is reacted with the monomer compound of formula (d), wherein P₃ is H, to form a compound of formula (17'):

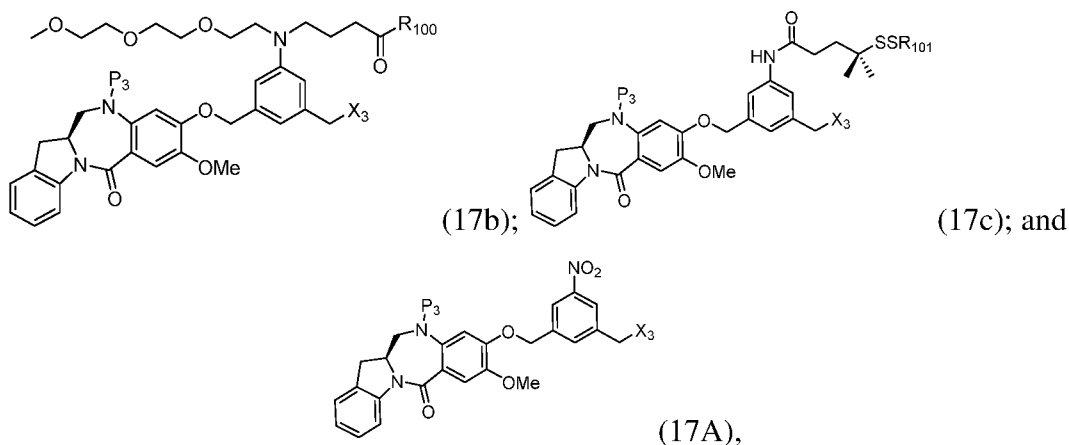


215. The method of any one of claims 207–213, wherein P₃ is an amine protecting group.

216. The method of claim 215, further comprising the step of reacting the compound of formula (17) with an amine deprotecting reagent to form a compound of formula (17'):



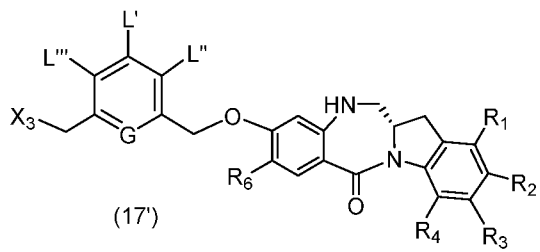
217. The method of claim 216, wherein the compound of formula (17) is selected from the group consisting of:



wherein R_{100} is a (C_1-C_3) alkoxy; and R_{101} is a (C_1-C_3) alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl (*e.g.*, 4-nitropyridyl).

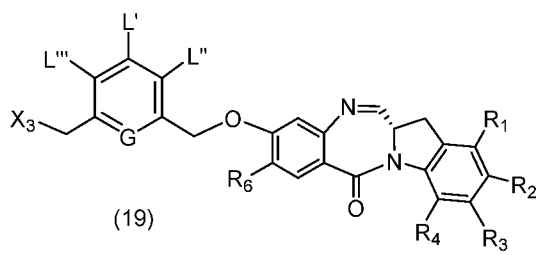
- 5 218. The method of claim 216 or 217, wherein the amine deprotecting reagent is selected from the group consisting of tetra-*n*-butylammonium fluoride, acetic acid, hydrogen fluoride pyridine, cesium fluoride, piperidine, morpholine, or trifluoroacetic acid.

219. A method of preparing a compound of formula (17'):



10

or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula (19)



with an imine reducing agent, wherein:

- 15 R_1 , R_2 , R_3 , and R_4 are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R_c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'',

-NO₂, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R'';

L', L'', and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit -(OCH₂CH₂)_n-R^c, halogen, guanidinium [-NH(C=NH)NH₂], -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that zero or one of L', L'', and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is -H or a cation;

R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit -(CH₂CH₂O)_n-R^c, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -NR₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit -(CH₂CH₂O)_n-R^c, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

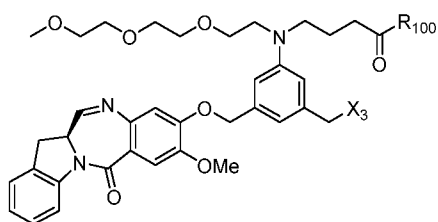
R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

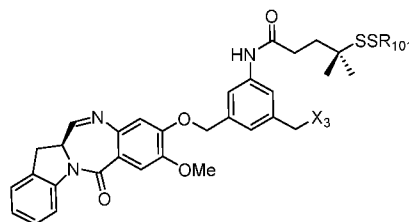
G is selected from -CH- or -N-; and

X₃ is -Cl.

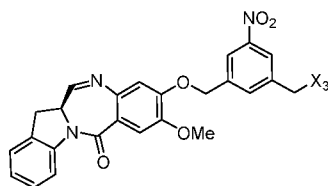
220. The method of claim 219, wherein the compound of formula (19) is selected from the group consisting of:



(16b);

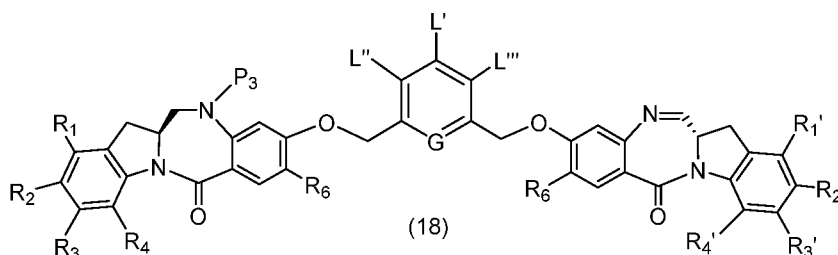


(16c); and



(16A),

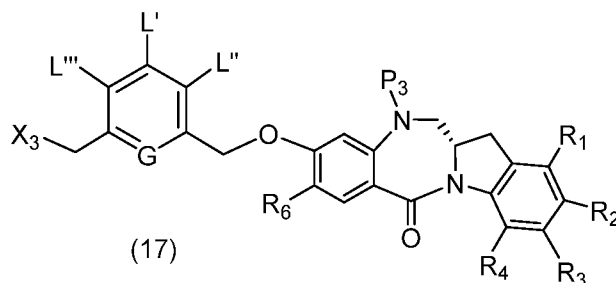
- 5 wherein R₁₀₀ is a (C₁-C₃)alkoxy; and R₁₀₁ is a (C₁-C₃)alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl (*e.g.*, 4-nitropyridyl).
221. The method of claim 219 or 220, wherein the imine reducing reagent is a hydride reducing reagent.
222. The method of claim 221, wherein the imine reducing reagent is sodium borohydride, sodium triacetoxy borohydride, sodium cyanoborohydride, lithium aluminum hydride, hydrogen gas, ammonium formate, borane, 9-borabicyclo[3.3.1]nonane (9-BBN), diisobutylaluminium hydride (DIBAL), lithium borohydride (LiBH₄), potassium borohydride (KBH₄), or sodium bis(2-methoxyethoxy)aluminumhydride (Red-Al).
- 10
223. The method of claim 222, wherein the imine reducing reagent is sodium triacetoxy borohydride (NaBH(OAc)₃).
- 15
224. A method of preparing a compound of formula (18),



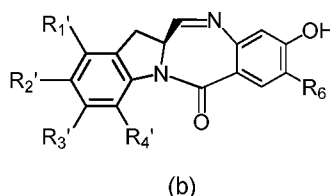
(18)

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula of (17):

20



with a monomer of formula (b):



wherein:

- 5 X₃ is -Cl;
- P₃ is H or an amine protecting group;
- L', L'', and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit -(OCH₂CH₂)_n-R^c,
10 halogen, guanidinium [-NH(C=NH)NH₂], -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that zero or one of L', L'', and L''' is the linking group with
15 the reactive group bonded thereto;
- M is -H or a cation;
- R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit -
20 (CH₂CH₂O)_n-R^c, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -N(R)₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit - (CH₂CH₂O)_n-R^c, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

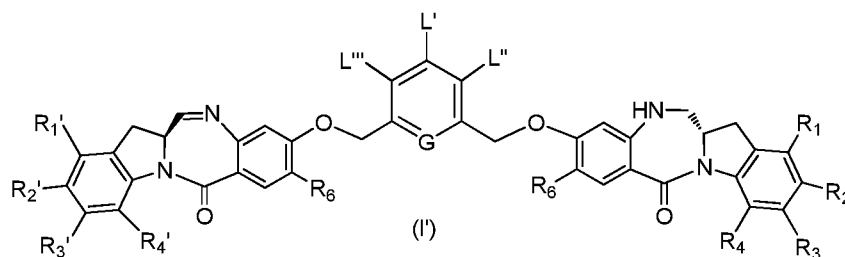
R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto; n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₁', R₂', R₃', and R₄' are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit -(CH₂CH₂O)_n-R_c, halogen, guanidinium [-NH(C=NH)NH₂], -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R''; and

R₆ is -H, -R, -OR, -SR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, or halogen;.

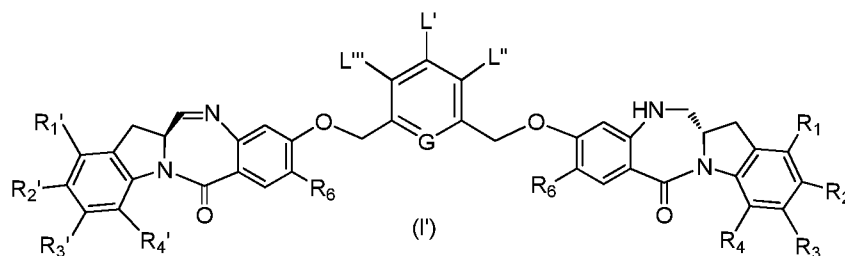
225. The method of claim 224, wherein the compound of formula (17) is reacted with a monomer compound of formula (d) in the presence of a base.
226. The method of claim 225, wherein the base is sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, cesium carbonate, sodium hydride, or potassium hydride.
227. The method of claim 226, wherein the base is potassium carbonate.
228. The method of any one of claims 224-227, wherein the compound of formula (17) is reacted with a monomer compound of formula (b) in the presence of a polar aprotic solvent.
229. The method of claim 228, wherein the polar aprotic solvent is dimethylformamide or dimethylacetamide.
230. The method of any one of claims 224-229, wherein the compound of formula (17) is reacted with reduced monomer of formula (d), wherein P₃ is H, to form a compound of formula (I')



231. The method of any one of claims 224-229, wherein P₃ is an amine protecting group.

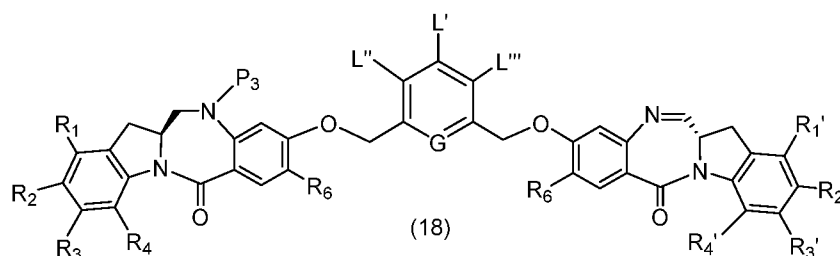
232. The method of claim 231, wherein the amine protecting group is selected from the group consisting of 2-trimethylsilylethyl, (2-phenyl-2-trimethylsilyl)ethyl, triisopropylsiloxy, 2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxymethyl, allyloxycarbonyl, 9-fluorenylmethoxycarbonyl, 2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxycarbonyl, and 2, 2,2,2-trichloroethoxycarbonyl.

233. The method of claim 231 or 232, wherein the compound of formula (18) is further reacted with an amine deprotecting reagent to form a compound of formula (I'):



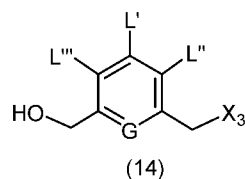
234. The method of claim 231, wherein the amine deprotecting reagent is selected from the group consisting of tetra-n-butylammonium fluoride, acetic acid, hydrogen fluoride pyridine, cesium fluoride, piperidine, morpholine, or trifluoroacetic acid.

235. A method of preparing a compound of formula (18),

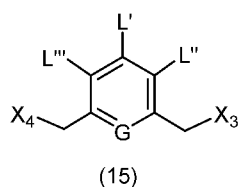


or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:

(1) reacting a sulfonating reagent or an esterification reagent with the compound of formula (14),

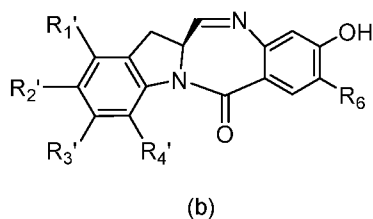


to form a compound of formula (15):

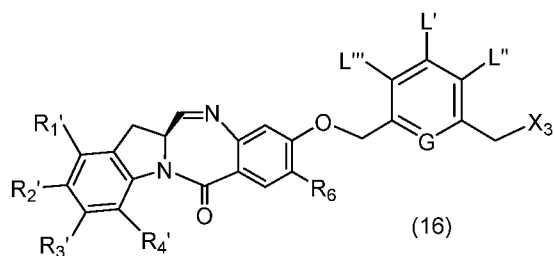


or a salt thereof;

(2) reacting the compound of formula (15) with a monomer compound of formula (b),

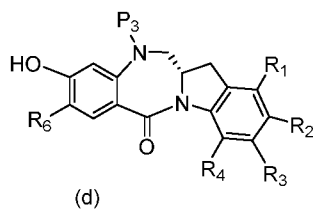


to form a compound of formula (16):



or a salt thereof; and

(3) reacting the compound of formula of (16) with a reduced monomer of formula (d):



to form a compound of formula (19), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein:

5 L', L'', and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent
10 (CBA), provided that zero or one of L', L'', and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is -H or a cation;

R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit -
15 $(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6
20 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -N(R)₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit -
25 $(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

30 R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₁', R₂', R₃', and R₄' are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R_c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR,

-NR'R'', -NO₂, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R'';

R₆ is -H, -R, -OR, -SR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, or halogen;

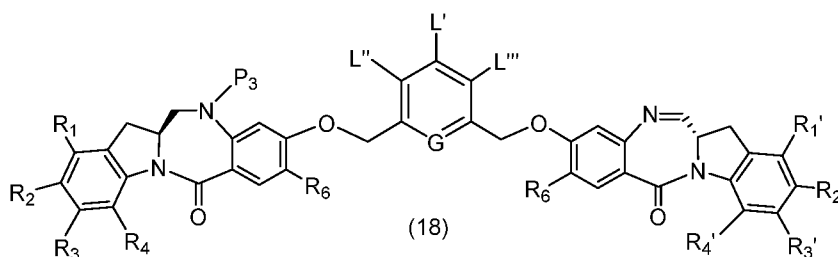
X₃ is -Cl;

5 X₄ is a sulfonate ester or an activated ester (preferably, a sulfonate ester);

and

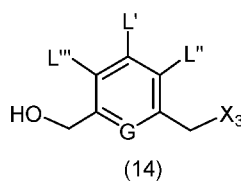
P₃ is H or an amine protecting group.

236. A method of preparing a compound of formula (18),

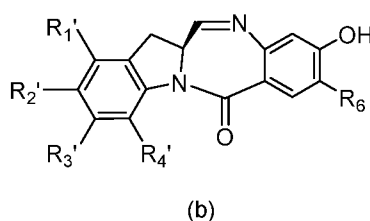


10 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:

(1) reacting the compound of formula (14)

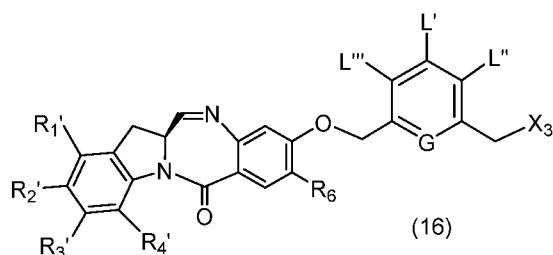


with a monomer compound of formula (b),



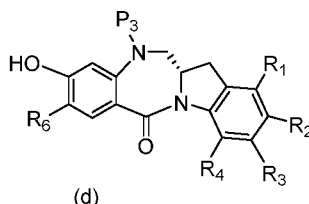
15

to form a compound of formula (16):



or a salt thereof; and

(2) reacting the compound of formula of (16) with a reduced monomer of formula (d):



to form a compound of formula (18), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein:

5

L', L'', and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that zero or one of L', L'', and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

10

15

M is -H or a cation;

R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

20

R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -N(R)₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

25

R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

30

n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

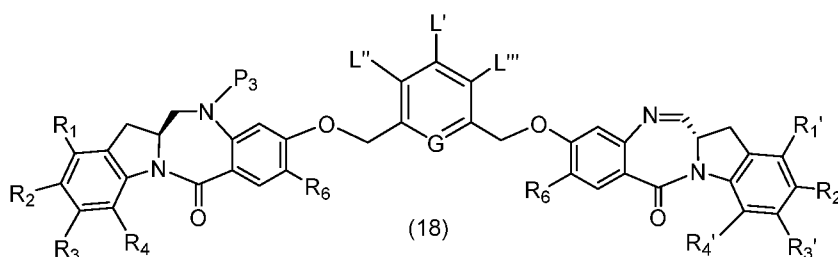
$R_1, R_2, R_3, R_4, R_1', R_2', R_3',$ and R_4' are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R_c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R'';

R_6 is -H, -R, -OR, -SR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, or halogen;

X_3 is -Cl; and

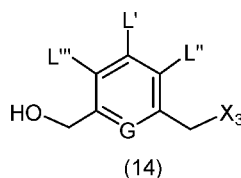
P_3 is H or an amine protecting group.

237. A method of preparing a compound of formula (18),

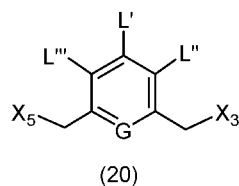


or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:

(1) reacting a halogenating reagent with the compound of formula (14)

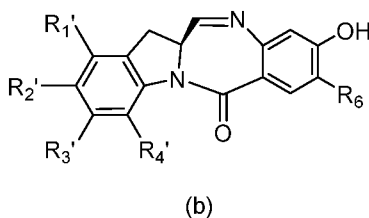


to form a compound of formula (20):

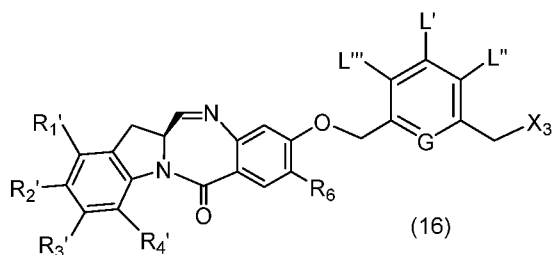


or a salt thereof;

(2) reacting a compound of formula (20) or a salt thereof with a monomer compound of formula (b),

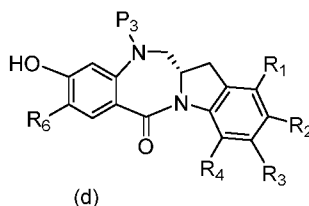


to form a compound of formula (16):



or a salt thereof; and

- 5 (3) reacting the compound of formula of (16) with a reduced monomer of formula (d):



to form a compound of formula (18), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein:

- 10 L', L'', and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that zero or one of L', L'', and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is -H or a cation;

- 20 R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an

optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

5 R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -N(R)₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit - (CH₂CH₂O)_n-R^c, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

10 R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto; n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

15 R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₁', R₂', R₃', and R₄' are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit -(CH₂CH₂O)_n-R_c, halogen, guanidinium [-NH(C=NH)NH₂], -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R'';

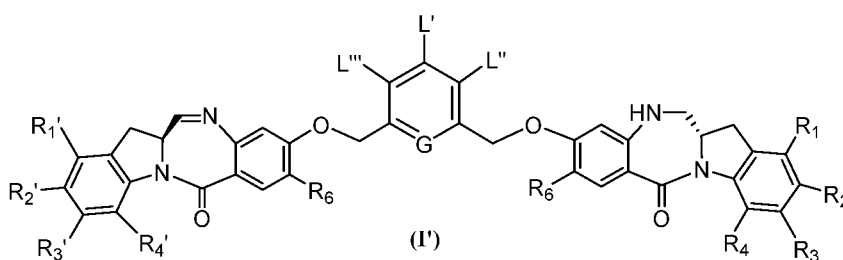
20 R₆ is -H, -R, -OR, -SR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, or halogen;

X₃ is -Cl;

X₅ is -Br or -I; and

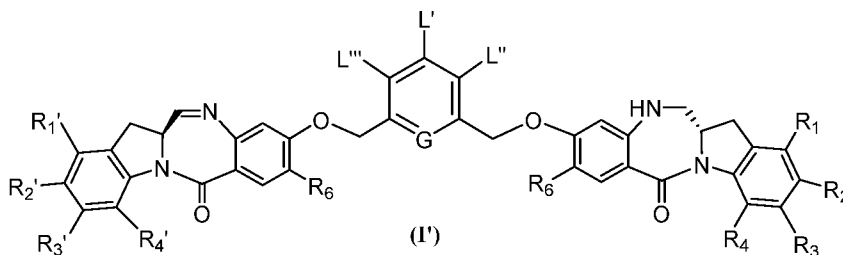
P₃ is H or an amine protecting group.

238. The method of claim 235, 236 or 237, wherein the compound of formula (16) is
25 reacted with reduced monomer of formula (d), wherein P₃ is H, to form a compound of formula (I')

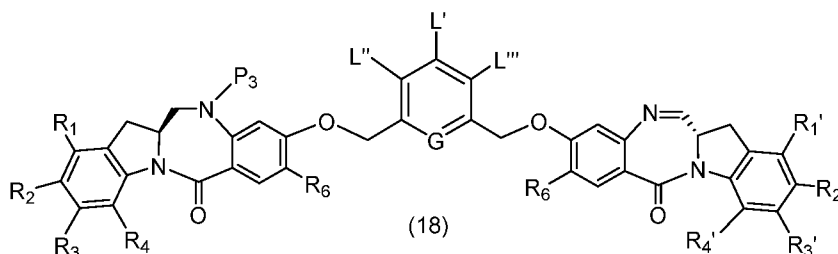


239. The method of claim 235, 236 or 237, wherein P₃ is an amine protecting group.

240. The method of claim 239, wherein the compound of formula (18) is further reacted with an amine deprotecting reagent to form a compound of formula (I'):



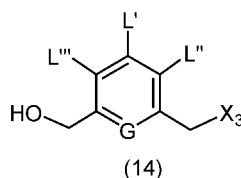
241. A method of preparing a compound of formula (18),



5

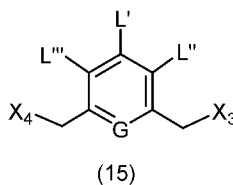
or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:

- (1) reacting a sulfonating reagent or an esterification reagent with the compound of formula (14)



10

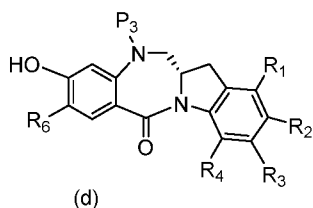
to form a compound of formula (15):



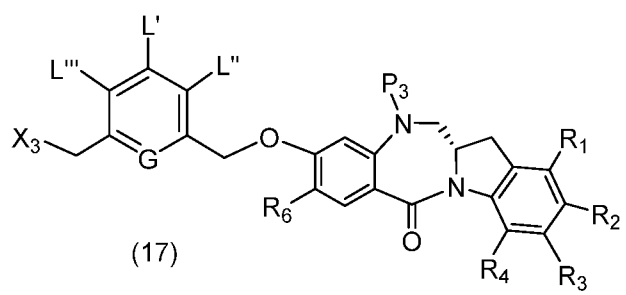
or a salt thereof;

- (2) reacting the compound of formula (15) with a reduced monomer compound of formula (d),

15

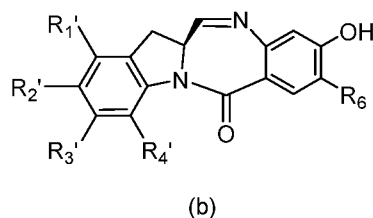


to form a compound of formula (17):



or a salt thereof; and

(3) reacting the compound of formula of (17) with a monomer of formula (b):



to form a compound of formula (18), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein:

L', L'', and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that zero or one of L', L'', and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is -H or a cation;

R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -N(R)₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit -
(CH₂CH₂O)_n-R^c, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic
ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having
1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₁', R₂', R₃', and R₄' are each independently selected from
the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic
alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene
glycol unit -(CH₂CH₂O)_n-R_c, halogen, guanidinium [-NH(C=NH)NH₂], -OR,
-NR'R'', -NO₂, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H,
-SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R'';

R₆ is -H, -R, -OR, -SR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, or halogen;

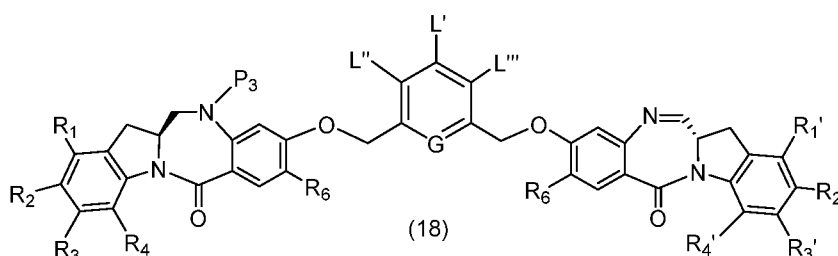
X₃ is -Cl;

X₄ is a sulfonate ester or an activated ester (preferably, a sulfonate ester);

P₁ is an alcohol protecting group; and

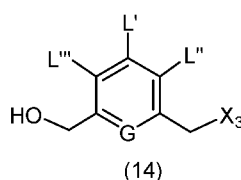
P₃ is H or an amine protecting group.

242. A method of preparing a compound of formula (18),

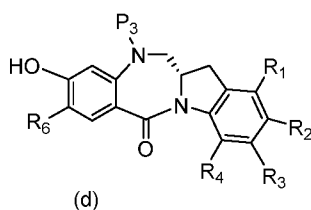


or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps
of:

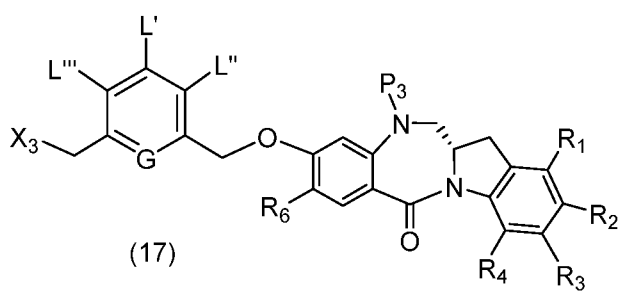
(1) reacting the compound of formula (14)



with a reduced monomer compound of formula (d),

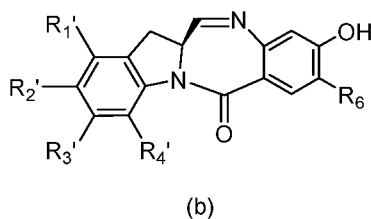


to form a compound of formula (17):



5 or a salt thereof; and

(2) reacting the compound of formula of (17) with a monomer of formula (b):



to form a compound of formula (18), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein:

10 L', L'', and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -

15 OCOR', -CONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that zero or one of L', L'', and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is -H or a cation;

20 R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit -

$(\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O})_n\text{-R}^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -N(R)₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit - $(\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O})_n\text{-R}^c$, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

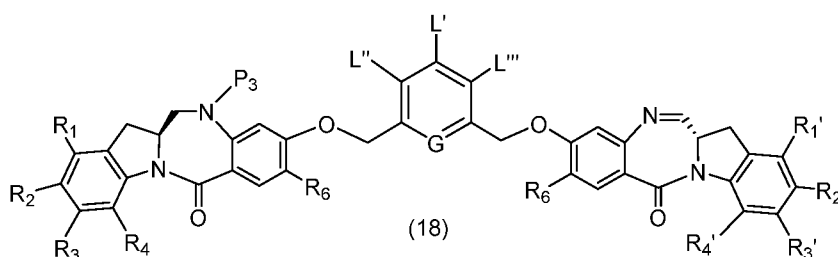
R_1 , R_2 , R_3 , R_4 , R_1' , R_2' , R_3' , and R_4' are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $(\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O})_n\text{-R}^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-\text{NH}(\text{C}=\text{NH})\text{NH}_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R'';

R_6 is -H, -R, -OR, -SR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, or halogen;

X_3 is -Cl; and

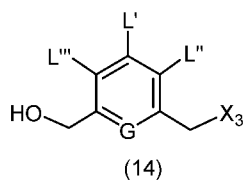
P_3 is H or an amine protecting group.

243. A method of preparing a compound of formula (18),

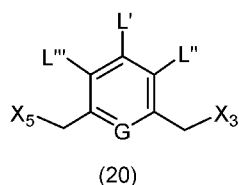


or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:

(1) reacting a halogenating reagent with the compound of formula (14)

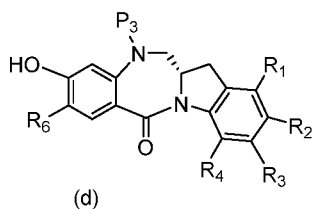


to form a compound of formula (20):

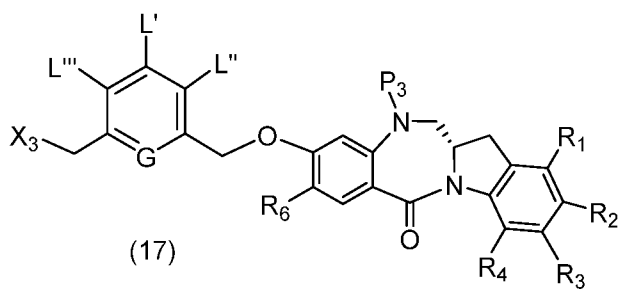


or a salt thereof;

- 5 (2) reacting the compound of formula (20) with a reduced monomer compound of formula (d),

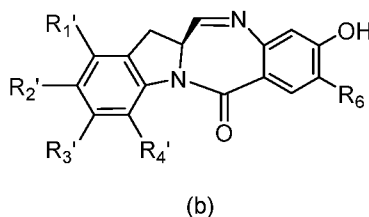


to form a compound of formula (17):



- 10 or a salt thereof; and

(3) reacting the compound of formula of (17) with a monomer of formula (b):



to form a compound of formula (18), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein:

- 15 L', L'', and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-$, R^c ,

halogen, guanidinium $[-\text{NH}(\text{C}=\text{NH})\text{NH}_2]$, $-\text{OR}$, $-\text{NR}'\text{R}''$, $-\text{NO}_2$, $-\text{NR}'\text{COR}''$, $-\text{SR}$, $-\text{SOR}'$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{R}'$, $-\text{SO}_3\text{M}$, $-\text{OSO}_3\text{M}$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{NR}'\text{R}''$, cyano, an azido, $-\text{COR}'$, $-\text{OCOR}'$, $-\text{OCONR}'\text{R}''$, or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that zero or one of L' , L'' , and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is $-\text{H}$ or a cation;

R , for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of $-\text{H}$, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O})_n-\text{R}^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from $-\text{H}$, $-\text{OH}$, $-\text{OR}$, $-\text{NHR}$, $-\text{N}(\text{R})_2$, $-\text{COR}$, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O})_n-\text{R}^c$, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is $-\text{H}$ or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

G is selected from $-\text{CH}-$ or $-\text{N}-$;

R_1 , R_2 , R_3 , R_4 , R_1' , R_2' , R_3' , and R_4' are each independently selected from the group consisting of $-\text{H}$, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O})_n-\text{R}^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-\text{NH}(\text{C}=\text{NH})\text{NH}_2]$, $-\text{OR}$, $-\text{NR}'\text{R}''$, $-\text{NO}_2$, $-\text{NCO}$, $-\text{NR}'\text{COR}''$, $-\text{SR}$, $-\text{SOR}'$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{R}'$, $-\text{SO}_3\text{H}$, $-\text{OSO}_3\text{H}$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{NR}'\text{R}''$, cyano, an azido, $-\text{COR}'$, $-\text{OCOR}'$, and $-\text{OCONR}'\text{R}''$;

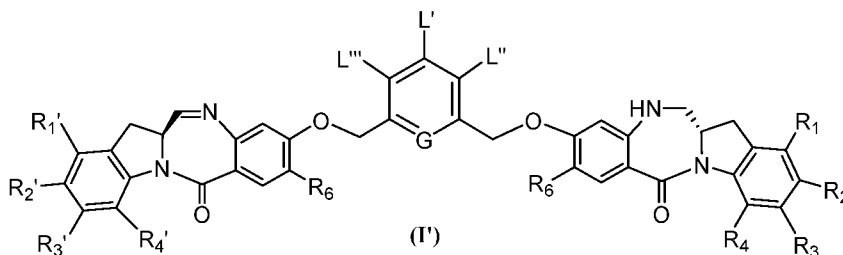
R_6 is $-\text{H}$, $-\text{R}$, $-\text{OR}$, $-\text{SR}$, $-\text{NR}'\text{R}''$, $-\text{NO}_2$, or halogen;

X_3 is $-\text{Cl}$;

X_5 is $-\text{Br}$ or $-\text{I}$; and

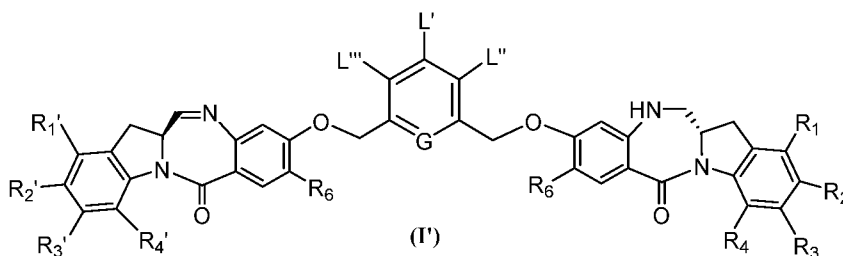
P_3 is H or an amine protecting group.

244. The method of claim 241, 242 or 243, wherein the compound of formula (16) is reacted with reduced monomer of formula (d), wherein P_3 is H , to form a compound of formula (I'):

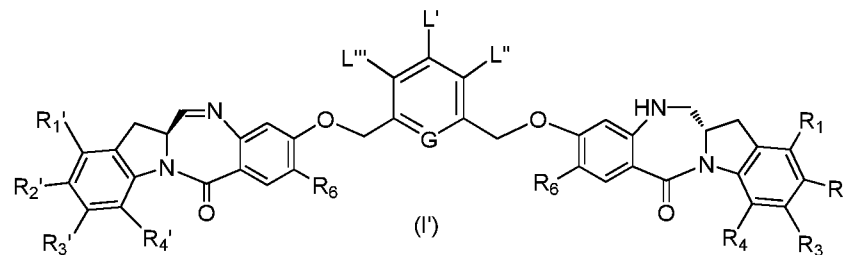


245. The method of any one of claims 241–243, wherein P_3 is an amine protecting group.

246. The method of claim 245, wherein the compound of formula (18) is further reacted with an amine deprotecting reagent to form a compound of formula (I'):

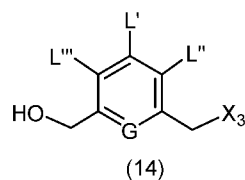


247. A method of preparing a compound of formula (I'),

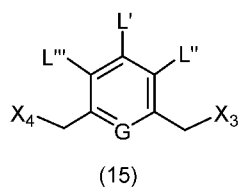


or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:

- (1) reacting a sulfonating reagent or an esterification reagent with the compound of formula (14)

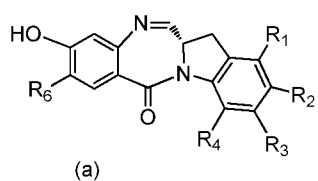


to form a compound of formula (15):

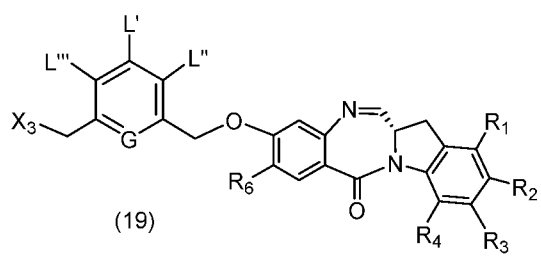


or a salt thereof;

- 5 (2) reacting the compound of formula (15) with a monomer compound of formula (a),

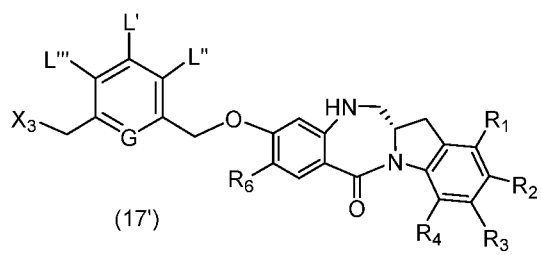


to form a compound of formula (19):



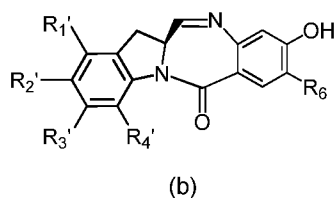
- 10 or a salt thereof;

(3) reacting the compound of formula (19) with an imine reducing agent to form a compound of formula (17'):



or a salt thereof; and

- 15 (4) reacting the compound of formula (17') with a monomer of formula (b):



to form the compound of formula (I');

wherein:

5 L', L'', and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -CONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto
10 capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that zero or one of L', L'', and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is -H or a cation;

15 R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an
20 optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -N(R)₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic
25 ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

30 G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

$R_1, R_2, R_3, R_4, R_1', R_2', R_3',$ and R_4' are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R_c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R'';

R_6 is -H, -R, -OR, -SR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, or halogen;

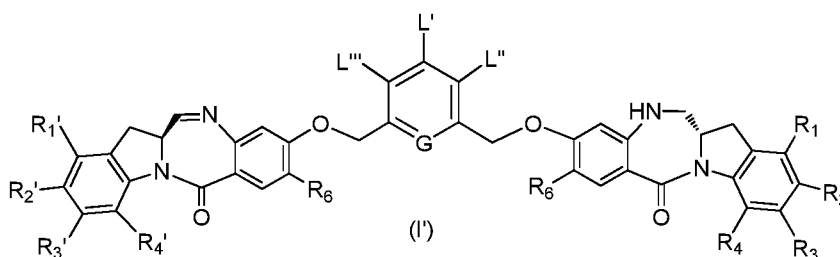
X_3 is -Cl;

X_4 is a sulfonate ester or an activated ester (preferably, a sulfonate ester);

and

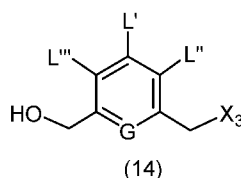
P_2 is an amine protecting group.

248. A method of preparing a compound of formula (I'),

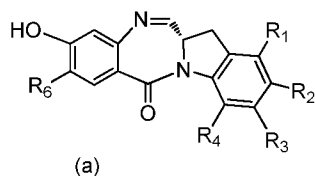


or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:

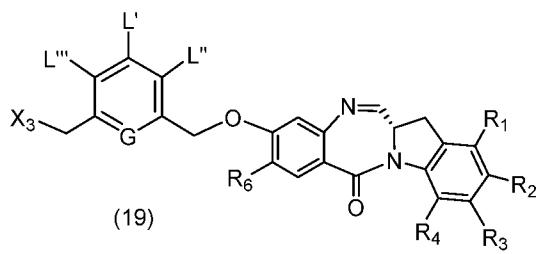
(1) reacting the compound of formula (14)



with a monomer compound of formula (a),

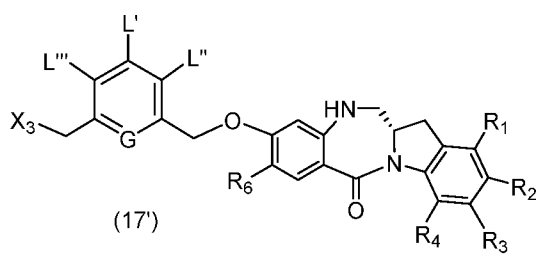


to form a compound of formula (19):



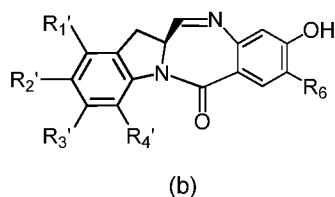
or a salt thereof;

- a (2) reacting the compound of formula (19) with an imine reducing agent to form compound of formula (17'):



or a salt thereof; and

- (3) reacting the compound of formula (17') with a monomer of formula (b):



to form the compound of formula (I'); wherein:

- 10 L', L'', and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that zero or one of L', L'', and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is -H or a cation;

- 20 R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit -

$(\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O})_n\text{-R}^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -N(R)₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit - $(\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O})_n\text{-R}^c$, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

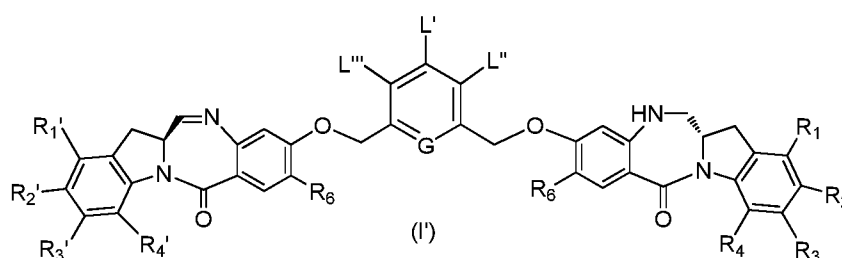
G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

R_1 , R_2 , R_3 , R_4 , R_1' , R_2' , R_3' , and R_4' are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O})_n\text{-R}^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-\text{NH}(\text{C}=\text{NH})\text{NH}_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R'';

R_6 is -H, -R, -OR, -SR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, or halogen;

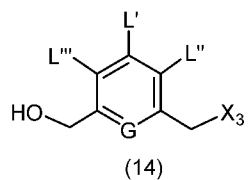
X_3 is -Cl.

249. A method of preparing a compound of formula (I'),

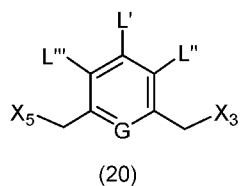


or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:

(1) reacting a brominating or iodinating reagent with a compound of formula (14):

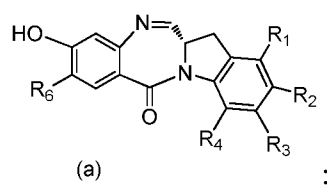


or a salt thereof, to form a compound of formula (20):

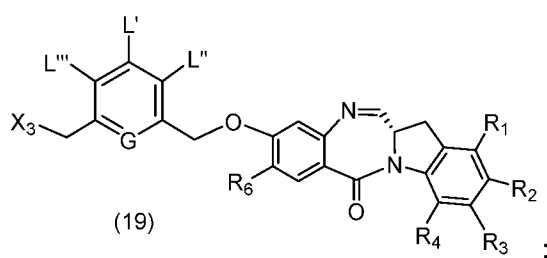


or a salt thereof;

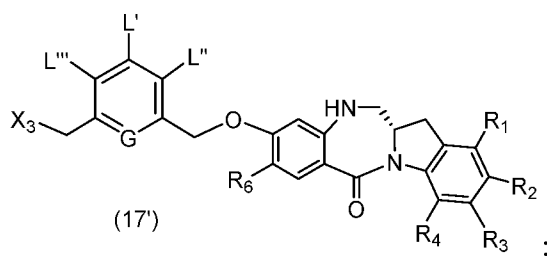
- 5 (2) reacting a compound of formula (20) or a salt thereof with a monomer compound of formula (a):



to form a compound of formula (19):

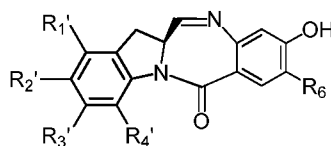


- 10 (3) reacting the compound of formula (19) with an imine reducing agent to form a compound of formula (17'):



or a salt thereof, and

- (4) reacting the compound of (17') with a monomer of formula (b):



(b)

to form the compound of formula (I'), wherein

L', L'', and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that zero or one of L', L'', and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is -H or a cation;

R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -N(R)₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

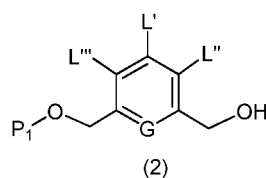
5 $R_1, R_2, R_3, R_4, R_1', R_2', R_3',$ and R_4' are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R_c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R'';

R_6 is -H, -R, -OR, -SR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, or halogen;

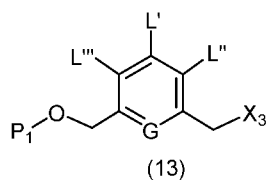
X_3 is -Cl; and

P_1 is an alcohol protecting group.

- 10 250. The method of any one of claims 235-249, wherein the compound of formula (14) or a salt thereof is prepared by a method comprising the steps of:
(1) reacting a chlorinating reagent with a compound of formula (2):



to form a compound of formula (13):

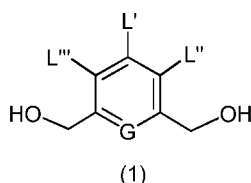


15

or a salt thereof; and

(2) reacting the compound of formula (13) with an alcohol deprotecting reagent to form the compound of formula (14) or a salt thereof.

- 20 251. The method of claim 250 wherein the compound of formula (2) is prepared by reacting a compound of formula (1) with an alcohol protecting reagent



252. The method of any one of claims 1-251, wherein G is -CH-.

253. The method of any one of claims 1-252, wherein, when present, R₆ is -OMe, and R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₁', R₂', R₃' and R₄' are all -H.
254. The method of any one of claims 1-253, wherein one of L', L'', and L''' is represented by the following formula:



and the other two are the same or different, and are independently selected from -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit -(CH₂CH₂O)_n-R_c, halogen, guanidinium [-NH(C=NH)NH₂], -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'',
 10 -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R'';

one of the Z₁ and Z₂ is -C(=O)-, and the other is -NR₅-;

P is an amino acid residue or a peptide containing between 2 to 20 amino acid residues;

15 J is a moiety comprising a reactive group that is capable of covalently linking the cytotoxic compound to a cell-binding agent;

R_x is an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms; and,

20 R₅ is -H or an optionally substituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 10 carbon atoms.

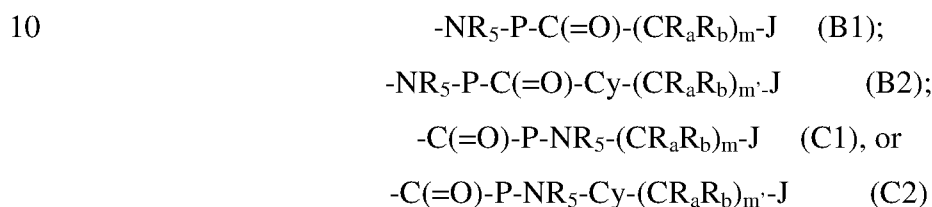
255. The method of claim 254, wherein one of L', L'' and L''' is represented by formula (A), and the others are each independently -H, an linear or branched alkyl having from 1 to 6 carbon atoms, halogen, -OH, (C₁-C₆)alkoxy, or -NO₂.
256. The method of claim 254, wherein one of L', L'' and L''' is represented by
 25 formula (A), and the others are -H.
257. The method of claim 254, wherein L' is represented by formula (A); and L'' and L''' are both -H.
258. The method of any one of claims 254-257, wherein R_x is a linear, branched or cyclic alkyl having 1 to 6 carbon atoms optionally substituted with halogen, -OH,

(C₁-C₃)alkyl, (C₁-C₃)alkoxy, halo(C₁-C₃)alkyl, or a charged substituent or an ionizable group Q.

259. The method of any one of claims 254–258, wherein J is NHR^{cl}, -COOR^{cl} or -COE, wherein -COE represents a reactive ester, and R^{cl} is -H or linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms optionally substituted with halogen, -OH or (C₁-C₃)alkoxy.

260. The method of claim 259, wherein J is -COOR^{cl} and R^{cl} is a (C₁-C₃)alkyl.

261. The method of any one of claims 254–257, wherein L' is represented by the following formula:



wherein:

J is -COOR^{cl};

R^{cl} is -H or linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms optionally substituted with halogen, -OH or (C₁-C₃)alkoxy;

R_a and R_b, for each occurrence, are each independently -H, (C₁-C₃)alkyl or a charged substituent or an ionizable group Q;

m is an integer from 1 to 6;

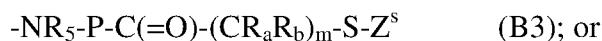
m' is 0 or an integer from 1 to 6; and,

Cy is a cyclic alkyl having 5 or 6 ring carbon atoms optionally substituted with halogen, -OH, (C₁-C₃)alkyl, (C₁-C₃)alkoxy, or halo(C₁-C₃)alkyl.

262. The method of claim 261, wherein R_a and R_b are both H; Cy is cyclohexane; and R₅ is H or Me.

263. The method of claim 261 or 262, wherein m' is 0 or 1.

264. The compound of any one of claims 254–257, wherein L' is represented by the following formula:



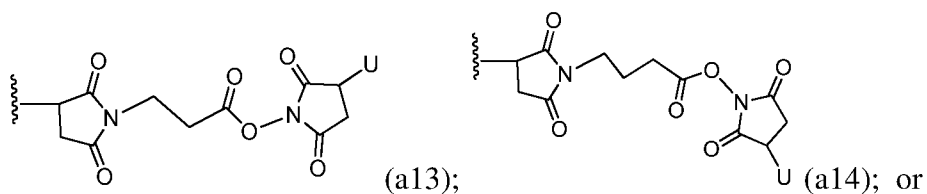
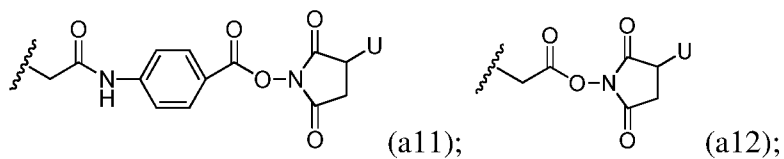
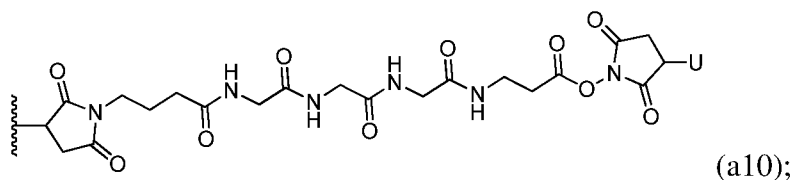
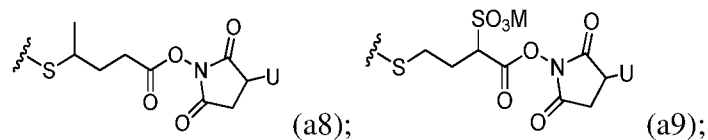
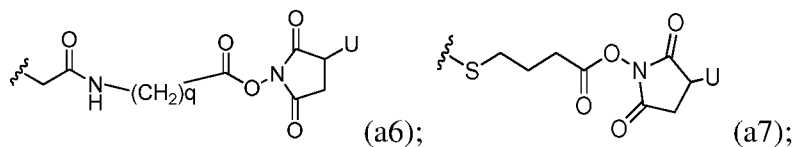
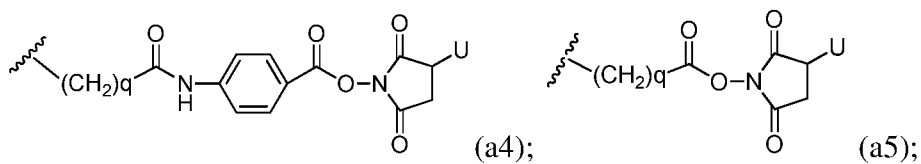
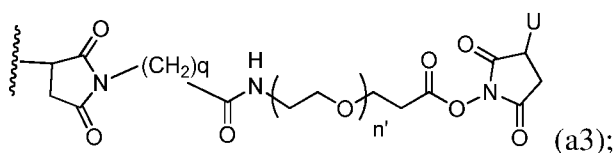
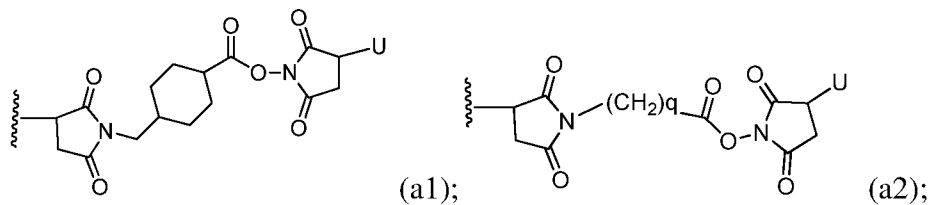


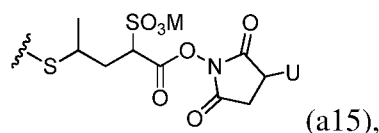
wherein:

R_a and R_b , for each occurrence, are each independently -H, (C_1-C_3) alkyl or a charged substituent or an ionizable group Q;

5 m is an integer from 1 to 6;

Z^s is -H, $-SR^d$, $-C(=O)R^{d1}$ or is selected from any one of the following formulas:





wherein:

q is an integer from 1 to 5;

n' is an integer from 2 to 6;

5 U is -H or SO₃M;

M is H⁺, Na⁺ or K⁺;

R^d is a linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 6 carbon atoms or is selected from phenyl, nitrophenyl (*e.g.*, 2 or 4-nitrophenyl), dinitrophenyl (*e.g.*, 2,4-dinitrophenyl), carboxynitrophenyl (*e.g.*, 3-carboxy-4-nitrophenyl), pyridyl or
10 nitropyridyl (*e.g.*, 4-nitropyridyl); and

R^{dl} is a linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 6 carbon atoms.

265. The method of claim 264, wherein Z^s is -SR^d and R^d is a (C₁-C₃)alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl.

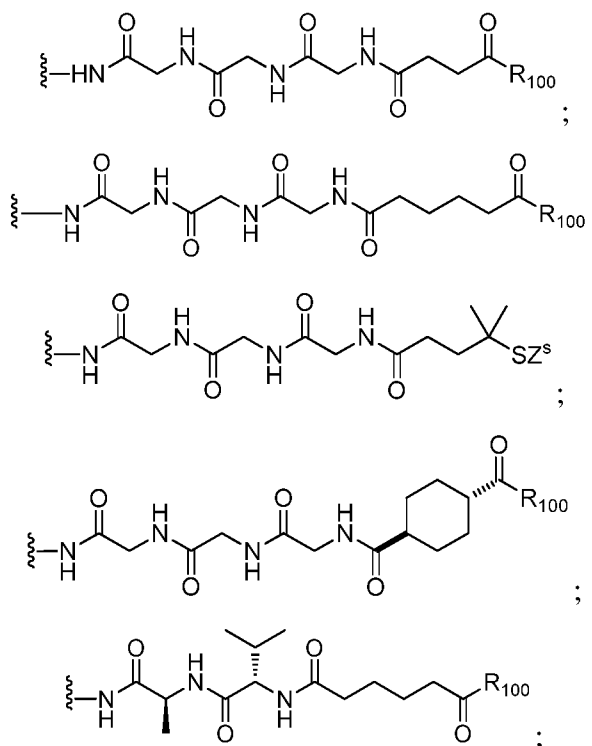
266. The method of any one of claims 261–265, wherein the charged substituent or an
15 ionizable group Q is i) -SO₃H, -Z'-SO₃H, -OPO₃H₂, -Z'-OPO₃H₂, -PO₃H₂, -Z'-PO₃H₂, -CO₂H, -Z'-CO₂H, -NR₁₁R₁₂, or -Z'-NR₁₁R₁₂, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof; or, ii) -N⁺R₁₄R₁₅R₁₆X^{A-} or -Z'-N⁺R₁₄R₁₅R₁₆X^{A-}; Z' is an optionally substituted alkylene, an optionally substituted cycloalkylene or an optionally substituted phenylene; R₁₁, R₁₂, R₁₄ to R₁₆ are each independently H
20 or an optionally substituted alkyl; and X^{A-} is a pharmaceutically acceptable anion.

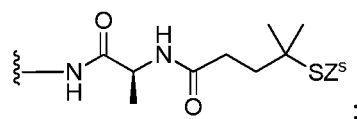
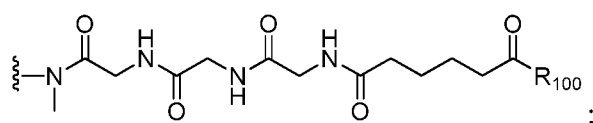
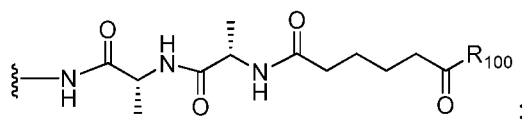
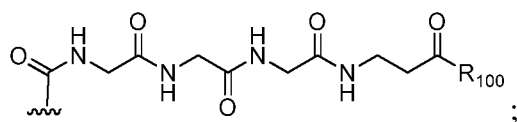
267. The method of claim 266, wherein Q is SO₃H or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

268. The method of any one of claims 264-267, wherein R_a and R_b are both -H and R₅
25 is H or Me.

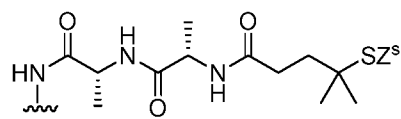
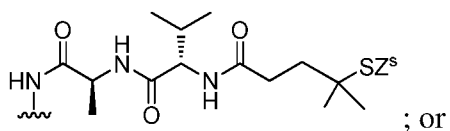
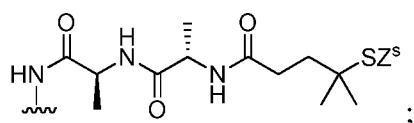
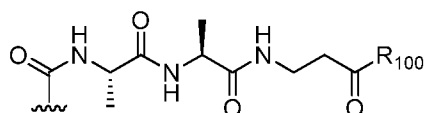
269. The method of any one of claims 264-267, wherein -(CR_aR_b)_m- is -(CH₂)_m-, C(Me₂)- and m'' is an integer from 1 to 5.

270. The method of any one of claims 261–269, wherein P is a peptide containing 2 to 10 amino acid residues.
271. The method of claim 270, wherein P is a peptide containing 2 to 5 amino acid residues.
- 5 272. The method of claim 270, wherein P is Gly-Gly-Gly, Ala-Val, Val-Ala, Val-Cit, Val-Lys, Phe-Lys, Lys-Lys, Ala-Lys, Phe-Cit, Leu-Cit, Ile-Cit, Trp, Cit, Phe-Ala, Phe-N⁹-tosyl-Arg, Phe-N⁹-nitro-Arg, Phe-Phe-Lys, D-Phe-Phe-Lys, Gly-Phe-Lys, Leu-Ala-Leu, Ile-Ala-Leu, Val-Ala-Val, Ala-Leu-Ala-Leu, β-Ala-Leu-Ala-Leu and Gly-Phe-Leu-Gly, Val-Arg, Arg-Val, Arg-Arg, Val-D-Cit, Val-D-Lys, Val-D-Arg, D-Val-Cit, D-Val-Lys, D-Val-Arg, D-Val-D-Cit, D-Val-D-Lys, D-Val-D-Arg, D-Arg-D-Arg, Ala-Ala, Ala-D-Ala, D-Ala-Ala, D-Ala-D-Ala, Ala-Met, or Met-Ala. , Gln-Val, Val-Gln, Gln-Ala, Ala-Gln, Asn-Ala, Ala-Asn.
- 10 273. The method of claim 270, wherein P is Gly-Gly-Gly, Ala-Val, Ala-Ala, Ala-D-Ala, D-Ala-Ala, or D-Ala-D-Ala.
- 15 274. The method of any one of claims 254–257, wherein L' is represented by any one of the following:





5



10

wherein:

R_{100} is a $(\text{C}_1\text{--}\text{C}_3)$ alkoxy;

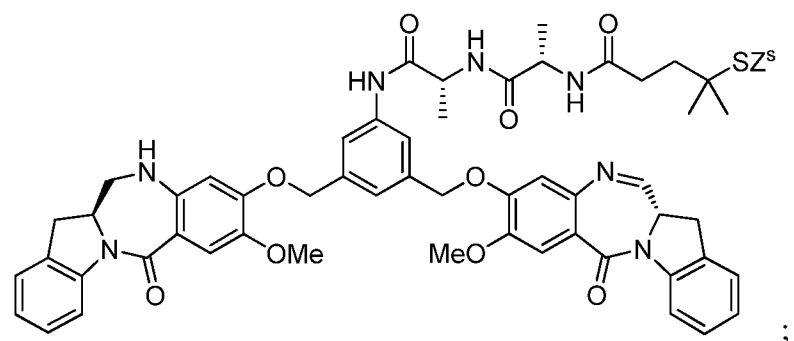
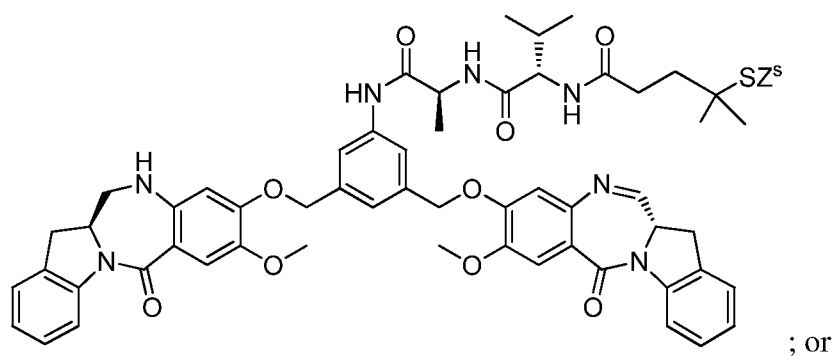
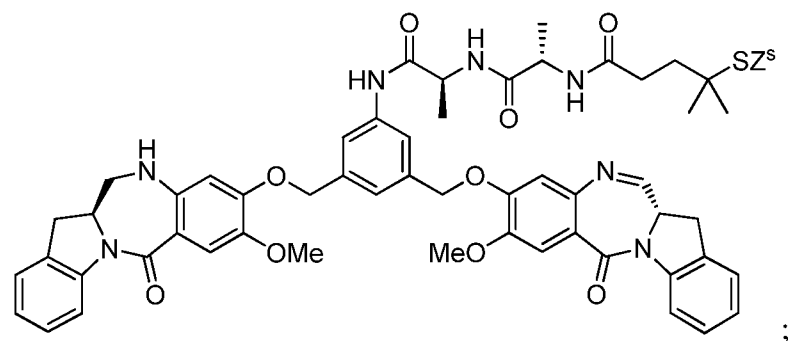
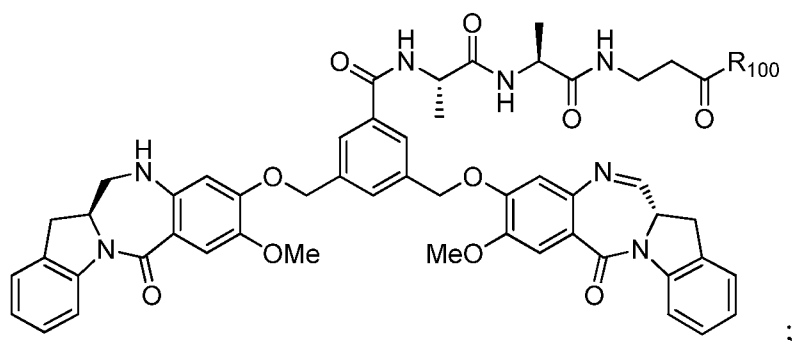
Z^s is $-\text{SR}_{101}$; and

R_{101} is a $(\text{C}_1\text{--}\text{C}_3)$ alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl.

- 15 275. The method of any one of claims 62, 66, 67, 85, 91, 94, 95, 113, 114, 116, 118, 119, 179, 182, 230, 233, 238, 240, 244, 246, 247, 248, and 249, wherein the compound of formula (I') is represented by any one of the following:







5 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein:

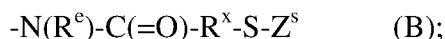
R_{100} is a (C_1-C_3) alkoxy;

Z^s is $-SR_{101}$; and

R_{101} is a (C_1-C_3) alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl.

276. The method of any one of claims 1–275, wherein, when present, R_{100} is -OMe
 10 and R_{101} is Me or pyridyl.

277. The method of any one of claims 1–253, wherein one of L', L'', and L''' is represented by the following formula:



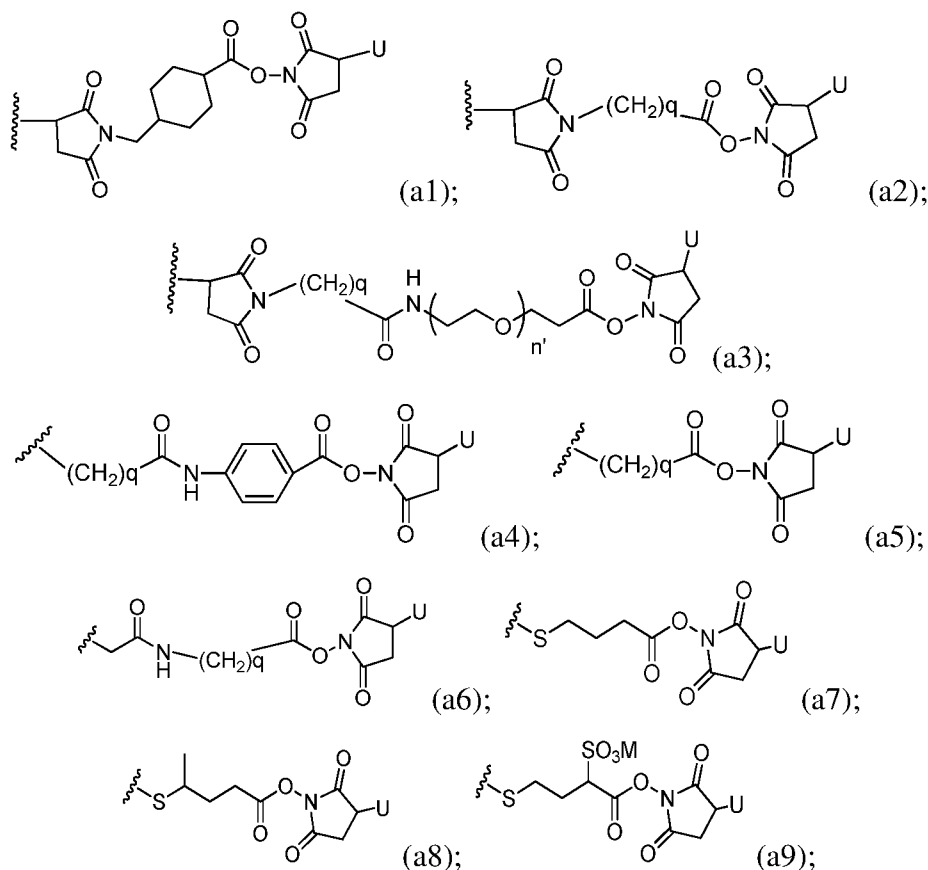
wherein:

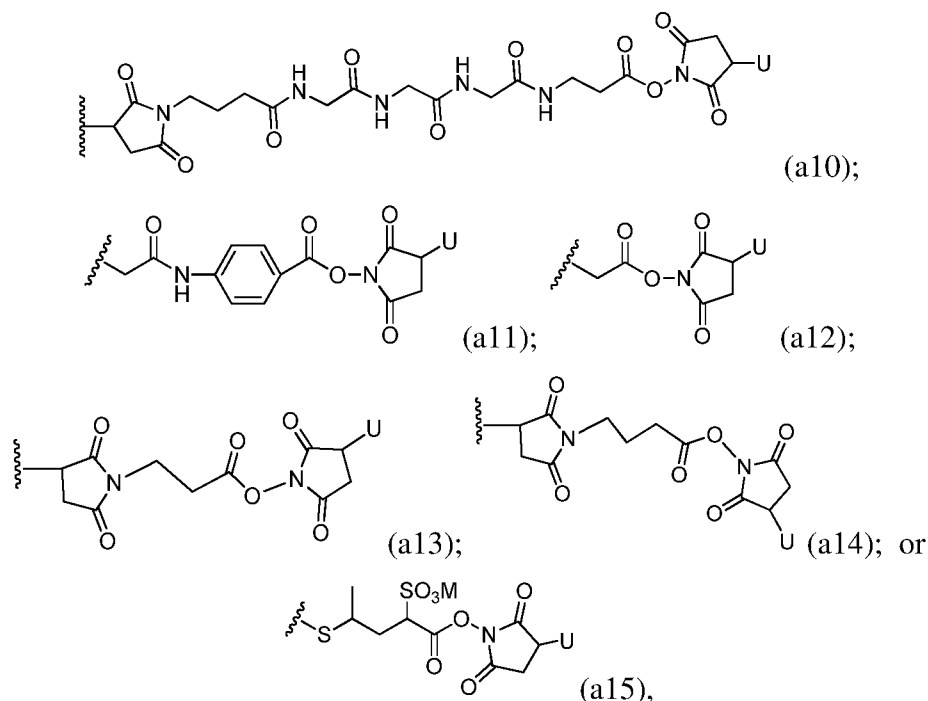
5 R^x is a linear or branched alkylene having 1 to 6 carbon atoms, optionally substituted with a charged substituent or an ionizable group Q;

Q is i) $-SO_3H$, $-Z'-SO_3H$, $-OPO_3H_2$, $-Z'-OPO_3H_2$, $-PO_3H_2$, $-Z'-PO_3H_2$, $-CO_2H$, $-Z'-CO_2H$, $-NR_{11}R_{12}$, or $-Z'-NR_{11}R_{12}$, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof; or, ii) $-N^+R_{14}R_{15}R_{16}X^{A-}$ or $-Z'-N^+R_{14}R_{15}R_{16}X^{A-}$; Z' is an optionally substituted alkylene, an optionally substituted cycloalkylene or an optionally substituted phenylene; R_{11} , R_{12} , R_{14} , R_{15} and R_{16} are each independently H or an optionally substituted alkyl; and X^{A-} is a pharmaceutically acceptable anion;

R^e is $-H$ or a linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 6 carbon atoms;

15 Z^s is $-H$, $-SR^d$, $-C(=O)R^{d1}$ or is selected from any one of the following formulas:





5 wherein:

q is an integer from 1 to 5;

R^d is a linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 6 carbon atoms or is selected from phenyl, nitrophenyl, dinitrophenyl, carboxynitrophenyl, pyridyl and nitropyridyl;

10 R^{dl} is a linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 6 carbon atoms

n' is an integer from 2 to 6;

U is -H or -SO₃M; and

M is -H or a cation.

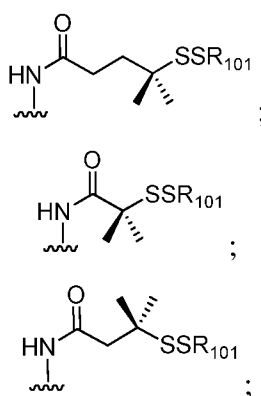
15 278. The method of claim 277, wherein one of L', L'' and L''' is represented by formula (B), and the others are each independently -H, an linear or branched alkyl having from 1 to 6 carbon atoms, halogen, -OH, (C₁-C₆)alkoxy, or -NO₂.

279. The method of claim 278, wherein one of L', L'' and L''' is represented by formula (B), and the others are -H.

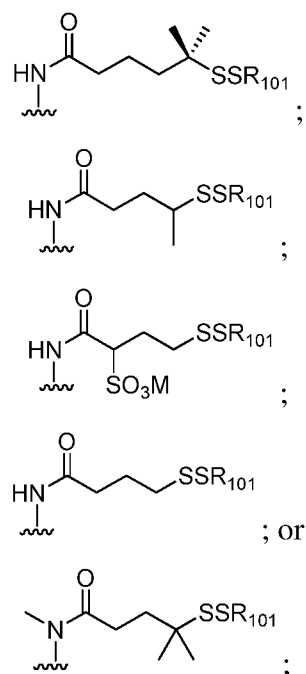
20 280. The method of claim 278, wherein L' is represented by formula (B); and L'' and L''' are both -H.

281. The method of any one of claims 277–280, wherein Z^s is -SR^d and R^d is a (C₁-C₃)alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl.

282. The method of any one of claims 277–281, wherein R^e is -H or -Me.
283. The method of any one of claims 277–282, wherein R^x is $-(CH_2)_p-(CR^fR^g)-$, wherein R^f and R^g are each independently selected from -H or a linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms; and p is 0, 1, 2 or 3.
- 5 284. The method of claim 283, wherein R^f and R^g are the same or different, and are selected from -H and -Me.
285. The method of claim 283, wherein R^f and R^g are both -Me; and p is 2.
286. The method of any one of claims 277–282, wherein R^x is a linear or branched alkylene having 1 to 4 carbon atoms substituted with a charged substituent or an ionizable group Q.
- 10 287. The method of claim 286, wherein the charged substituent or an ionizable group Q is: i) $-SO_3H$, $-Z'-SO_3H$, $-OPO_3H_2$, $-Z'-OPO_3H_2$, $-PO_3H_2$, $-Z'-PO_3H_2$, $-CO_2H$, $-Z'-CO_2H$, $-NR_{11}R_{12}$, or $-Z'-NR_{11}R_{12}$, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof; or, ii) $-N^+R_{14}R_{15}R_{16}X^{A-}$ or $-Z'-N^+R_{14}R_{15}R_{16}X^{A-}$; Z' is an optionally substituted alkylene, an optionally substituted cycloalkylene or an optionally substituted phenylene; R_{11} , R_{12} , R_{14} to R_{16} are each independently H or an optionally substituted alkyl; and X^{A-} is a pharmaceutically acceptable anion.
- 15 288. The method of claim 287, wherein Q is $-SO_3H$ or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.
- 20 289. The method of any one of claims 277–280, wherein L' is represented by the following formula:



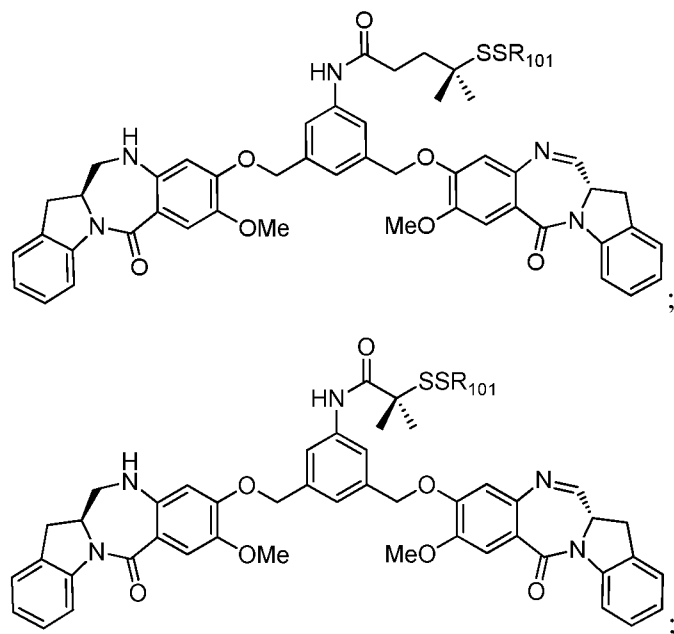
5

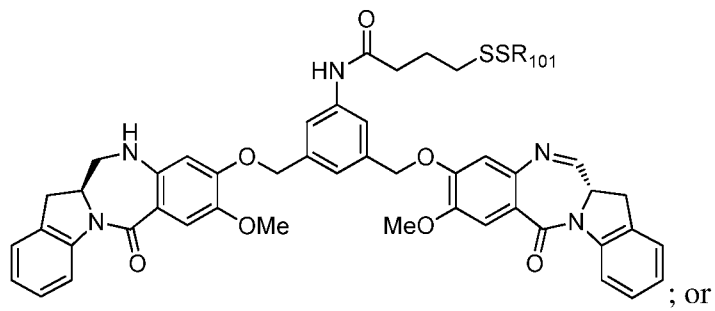


wherein R_{101} is a (C₁-C₃)alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl; and M is H⁺, Na⁺ or K⁺.

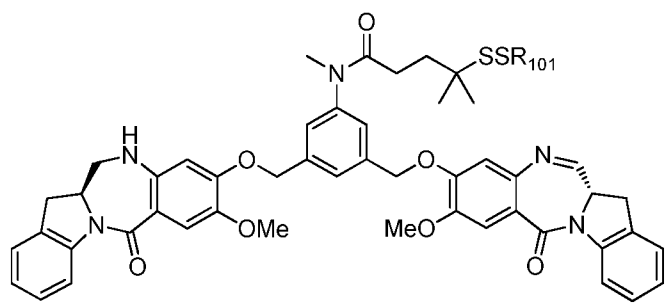
290. The method of any one of claims 62, 66, 67, 85, 91, 94, 95, 113, 114, 116, 118, 119, 179, 182, 230, 233, 238, 240, 244, 246, 247, 248, and 249, wherein the compound of formula (I') is represented by any one of the following:

10





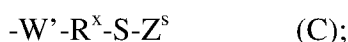
5



or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein R_{101} is a (C_1-C_3) alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl; and M is H^+ , Na^+ or K^+ .

291. The method of claim 289 or 290, wherein R_{101} is methyl or pyridyl.

292. The method of any one of claims 1–253, wherein one of L' , L'' , and L''' is represented by the following formula:



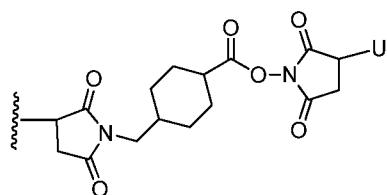
wherein:

W' is $-N(R^e)-$;

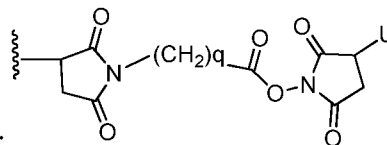
R^e is $-H$, a linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having 1 to 10 carbon atoms or $-(CH_2-CH_2-O)_n-R^k$, wherein R^k is a $-H$, a linear, branched cyclic alkyl having 1 to 6 carbon atoms, optionally bearing a secondary amino (*e.g.*, $-NHR^{101}$) or tertiary amino ($-NR^{101}R^{102}$) group or a 5- or 6-membered nitrogen containing heterocycle, such as piperidine or morpholine, wherein R^{101} and R^{102} are each independently a linear, branched, or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having 1 to 10 carbon atoms;

R^x is a linear, branched or cyclic alkyl having 1 to 10 carbon atoms;

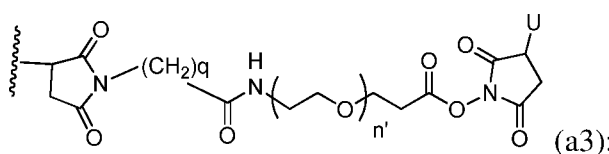
Z^s is $-H$, $-SR^d$, $-C(=O)R^{d1}$ or is selected from any one of the following formulas:



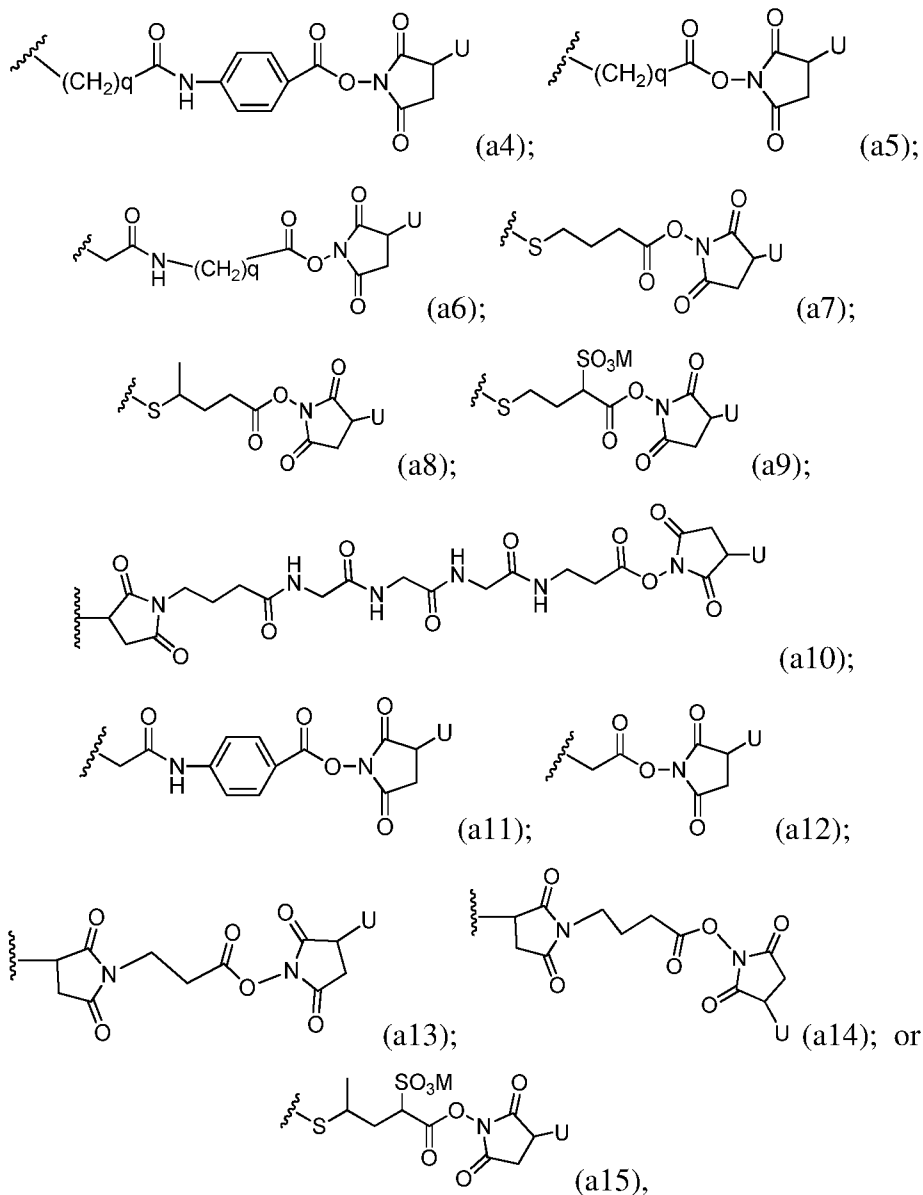
(a1);



(a2);



(a3);



wherein:

R^d is a linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 6 carbon atoms or is selected from phenyl, nitrophenyl (*e.g.*, 2 or 4-nitrophenyl), dinitrophenyl (*e.g.*, 2 or 4-nitrophenyl), carboxynitrophenyl (*e.g.*, 3-carboxy-4-nitrophenyl), pyridyl or nitropyridyl (*e.g.*, 4-nitropyridyl);

R^{dl} is a linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 6 carbon atoms;

q is an integer from 1 to 5;

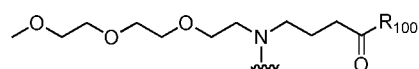
n is an integer from 2 to 6;

n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

U is -H or -SO₃M;

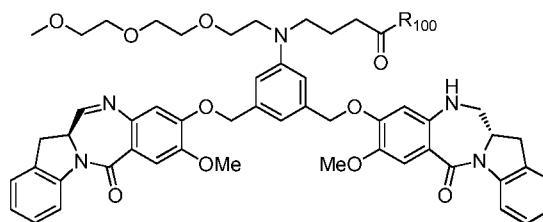
M is -H or a cation, such as Na⁺ or K⁺.

293. The method of claim 292, wherein one of L', L'' and L''' is represented by formula (C), and the others are each independently -H, an linear or branched alkyl having from 1 to 6 carbon atoms, halogen, -OH, (C₁-C₆)alkoxy, or -NO₂.
294. The method of claim 292, wherein wherein one of L', L'' and L''' is represented by formula (C), and the others are -H.
295. The method of claim 292, wherein L' is represented by formula (C); and L'' and L''' are both -H.
296. The method of any one of claims 292–295, wherein Z^s is -SR^d and R^d is a (C₁-C₃)alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl.
297. The method of claims 292–296, wherein R^e is -(CH₂-CH₂-O)_n-R^k, wherein R^k is -H, or a linear, branched, or cyclic alkyl having 1 to 6 carbon atoms.
298. The method of claim 297, wherein R^k is -H or -Me, and n is 3.
299. The method of any one of claims 292–298, wherein R^x is a linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 6 carbon atoms.
300. The method of claim 299, wherein R^x is -(CH₂)_p-(CR^fR^g)-, wherein R^f and R^g are each independently selected from -H or a linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms; and p is 0, 1, 2 or 3.
301. The method of claim 300, wherein R^f and R^g are the same or different, and are selected from -H and -Me; and p is 1.
302. The method of any one of claims 1–253, wherein L' is represented by the following formula:



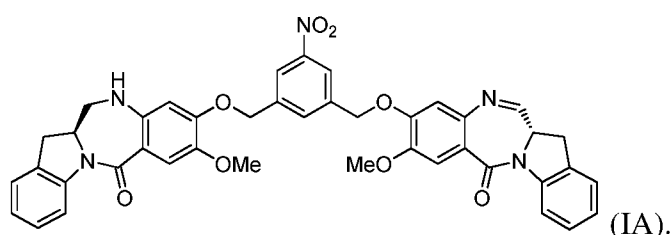
L'' and L''' are both H; and R₁₀₀ is a (C₁-C₃)alkoxy.

303. The method of any one of claims 62, 66, 67, 85, 91, 94, 95, 113, 114, 116, 118, 119, 179, 182, 230, 233, 238, 240, 244, 246, 247, 248, and 249, wherein the compound of formula (I') is represented by any one of the following:

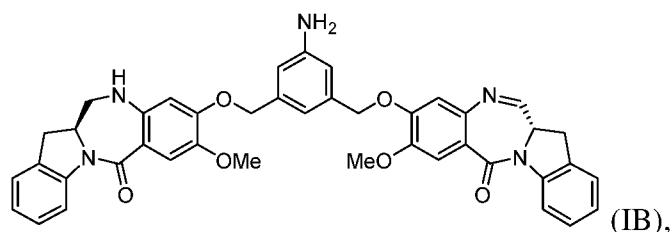


or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein R_{101} is a (C_1-C_3) alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl; and R_{100} is a (C_1-C_3) alkoxy.

304. The method of claim 302 or 303, wherein R_{101} is Me or pyridyl; and R_{100} is - OMe.
305. The method of any one of claims 1–253, wherein L' –NO₂; and L'' and L''' are both H..
306. The method of any one of claims 62, 66, 67, 85, 91, 94, 95, 113, 114, 116, 118, 119, 179, 182, 230, 233, 238, 240, 244, 246, 247, 248, and 249, wherein the compound of formula (I') is represented by formula (IA):



307. The method of claim 306, wherein the compound of formula (IA) is reacted with a reducing agent to form a compound of formula (IB):



- or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.
308. The method of claim 307, wherein the reducing agent is selected from the group consisting of: hydrogen gas, sodium hydrosulfite, sodium sulfide, stannous chloride, titanium (II) chloride, zinc, iron and samarium iodide.

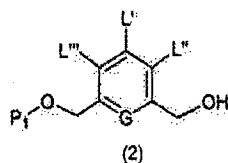
309. The method of claim 308, wherein the reducing agent is Fe/NH₄Cl or Zn/NH₄Cl.

AMENDED CLAIMS

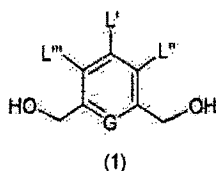
received by the International Bureau on 10 January 2017 (10.01.2017)

We claim:

1. A method of preparing a compound of formula (2),



or a salt thereof, said method comprising introducing an alcohol protecting group onto one of the primary alcohols of a compound of formula (1) by reacting the compound of formula (1) with an alcohol protecting reagent,



wherein:

L' , L'' , and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that only one of L' , L'' , and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is -H or a cation;

R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -N(R)₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit -(CH₂CH₂O)_n-, R^c, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

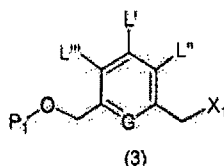
R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

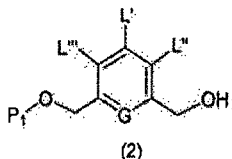
G is selected from -CH- or -N-; and

P₁ is the alcohol protecting group.

2. A method of preparing a compound of formula (3),



or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a halogenating reagent, a sulfonating reagent or an esterification reagent with a compound of formula (2),



wherein:

L', L'', and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit -(OCH₂CH₂)_n-, R^c, halogen, guanidinium [-NH(C=NH)NH₂], -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that only one of L', L'', and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is -H or a cation;

R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl

having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from $-H$, $-OH$, $-OR$, $-NHR$, $-N(R)_2$, $-COR$, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is $-H$ or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

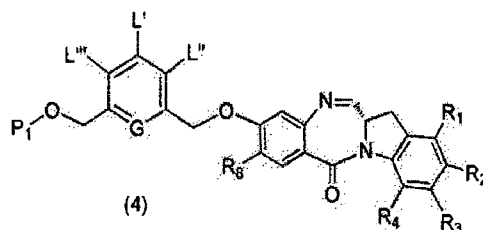
n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

G is selected from $-CH-$ or $-N-$;

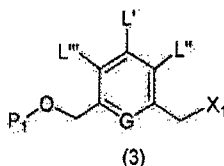
P_1 is an alcohol protecting group; and,

X_1 is a leaving group selected from the group consisting of: $-Br$, $-I$, $-Cl$, a sulfonate ester, and an activated ester (preferably, X_1 is $-Br$, $-I$, or a sulfonate ester).

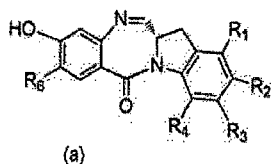
3. A method of preparing a compound of formula (4),



or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula (3)



with a monomer compound of the formula (a),



wherein:

L' , L'' , and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that only one of L' , L'' , and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is -H or a cation;

R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -N(R)₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

P_1 is an alcohol protecting group;

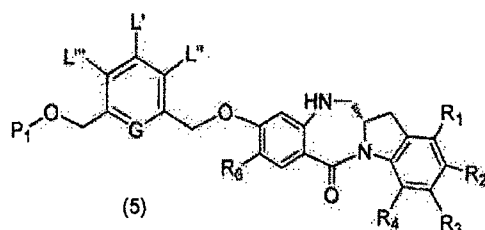
X_1 is a leaving group selected from the group consisting of: -Br, -I, -Cl, a sulfonate ester, and an activated ester (preferably, X_1 is -Br, -I, or a sulfonate ester);

R_1 , R_2 , R_3 , and R_4 are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$,

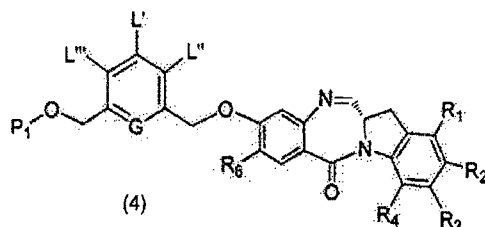
halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, $-OR$, $-NR'R''$, $-NO_2$, $-NCO$, $-NR'COR''$, $-SR$, $-SOR'$, $-SO_2R'$, $-SO_3H$, $-OSO_3H$, $-SO_2NR'R''$, cyano, an azido, $-COR'$, $-OCOR'$, and $-OCONR'R''$; and,

R_6 is $-H$, $-R$, $-OR$, $-SR$, $-NR'R''$, $-NO_2$, or halogen.

4. A method of preparing a compound of formula (5),



or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula (4),



with an imine reducing agent, wherein:

L' , L'' , and L''' are the same or different, and are independently $-H$, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, $-OR$, $-NR'R''$, $-NO_2$, $-NR'COR''$, $-SR$, $-SOR'$, $-SO_2R'$, $-SO_3M$, $-OSO_3M$, $-SO_2NR'R''$, cyano, an azido, $-COR'$, $-OCOR'$, $-OCONR'R''$, or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that only one of L' , L'' , and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is $-H$ or a cation;

R , for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of $-H$, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently

selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -N(R)₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit -(CH₂CH₂O)_n-, R^c, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

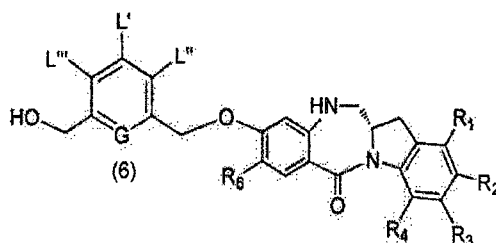
G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

P₁ is an alcohol protecting group;

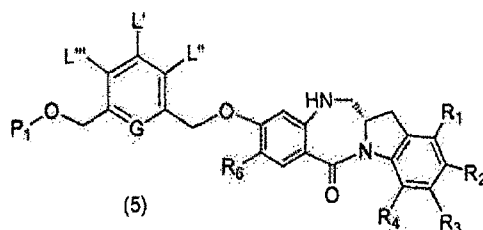
R₁, R₂, R₃, and R₄ are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit -(CH₂CH₂O)_n-, R_c, halogen, guanidinium [-NH(C=NH)NH₂], -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R''; and,

R₆ is -H, -R, -OR, -SR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, or halogen.

5. A method of preparing a compound of formula (6),



or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula (5),



with an alcohol deprotecting reagent, wherein:

L' , L'' , and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that only one of L' , L'' , and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is -H or a cation;

R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -N(R)₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

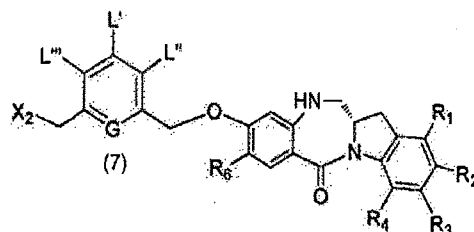
G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

P₁ is an alcohol protecting group;

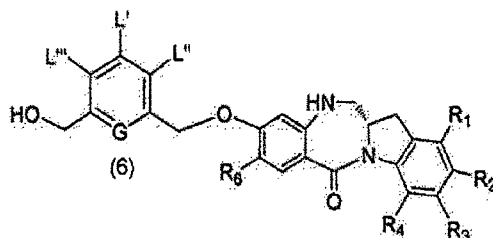
R₁, R₂, R₃, and R₄ are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R''; and

R_6 is -H, -R, -OR, -SR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, or halogen.

6. A method of preparing a compound of formula (7),



or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a halogenating reagent, a sulfonating reagent or an esterification reagent with the primary alcohol compound of formula (6),



wherein:

L' , L'' , and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that only one of L' , L'' , and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is -H or a cation;

R , for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected

from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -N(R)₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit -(CH₂CH₂O)_n-, R^c, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

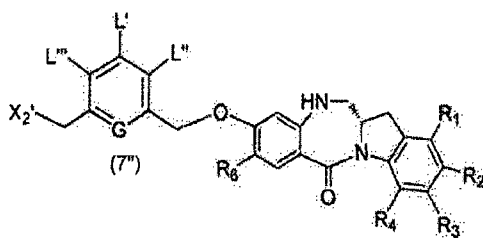
G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

R₁, R₂, R₃, and R₄ are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit -(CH₂CH₂O)_n-, R₆, halogen, guanidinium [-NH(C=NH)NH₂], -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R'';

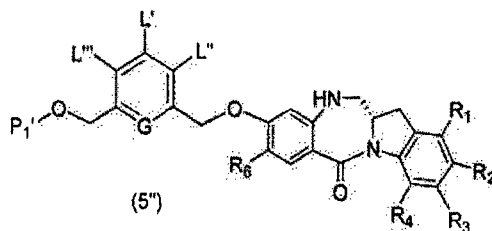
R₆ is -H, -R, -OR, -SR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, or halogen; and,

X₂ is a leaving group selected from the group consisting of: -Br, -I, -Cl, a sulfonate ester, and an activated ester (preferably, X₂ is -Br, -I, a sulfonate ester).

7. A method of preparing a compound of formula (7'')



or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula (5'')



with an alcohol deprotecting reagent and a halogenating reagent, wherein:

L', L'', and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that only one of L', L'', and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is -H or a cation;

R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -N(R)₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

P₁' is an acid labile alcohol protecting group;

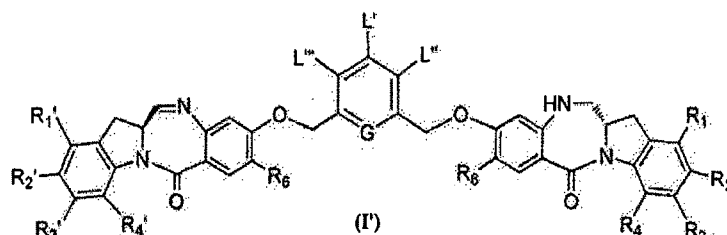
X₂' is -Br or -I;

R₁, R₂, R₃, and R₄ are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -

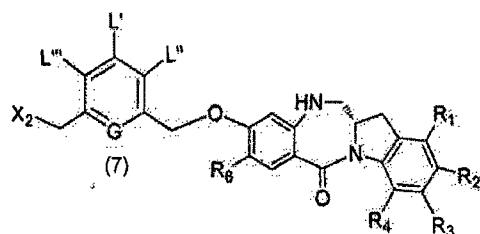
SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R''; and

R₆ is -H, -R, -OR, -SR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, or halogen.

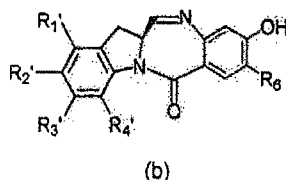
8. A method of preparing a compound of formula (I'),



or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula (7)



with a monomer compound of the formula (b),



wherein:

L', L'', and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit -(OCH₂CH₂)_n-R^c, halogen, guanidinium [-NH(C=NH)NH₂], -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that only one of L', L'', and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is -H or a cation;

R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of

-H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -N(R)₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

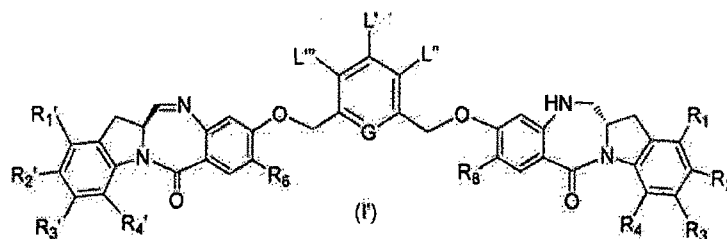
G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

$R_1, R_2, R_3, R_4, R_1', R_2', R_3',$ and R_4' are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R'';

R_6 is -H, -R, -OR, -SR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, or halogen; and,

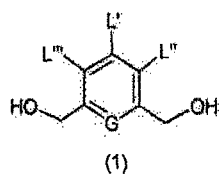
X_2 is a leaving group selected from the group consisting of: -Br, -I, -Cl, a sulfonate ester and an activated ester (preferably, X_2 is -Br, -I, or a sulfonate ester).

9. A method of preparing a compound of formula (I'),

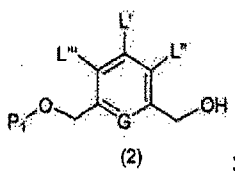


or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:

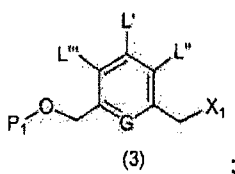
(1) introducing an alcohol protecting group onto one of the primary alcohols of a compound of formula (1),



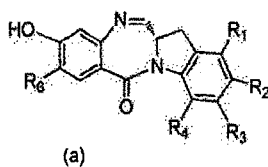
to form a compound of formula (2),



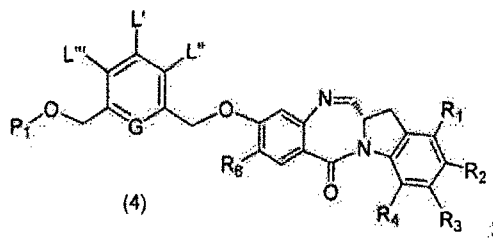
(2) reacting the compound of formula (2) with a halogenating reagent, a sulfonating reagent or an esterification reagent to form a compound of formula (3),



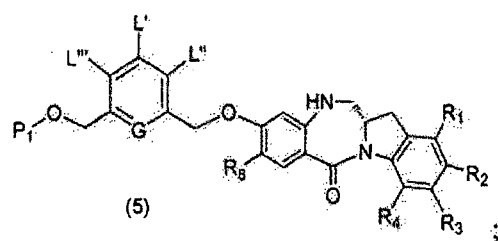
(3) reacting the compound of formula (3) with a monomer compound of the formula (a),



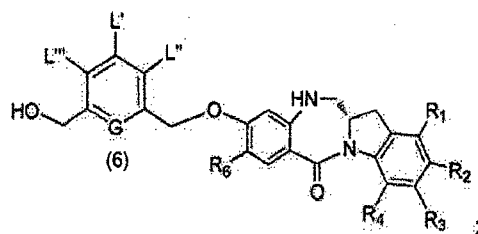
to form a compound of formula (4),



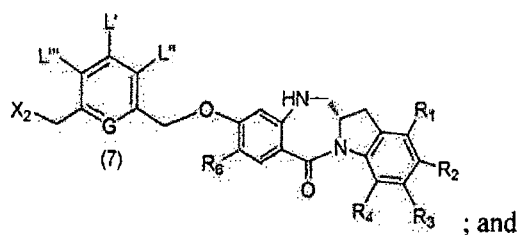
(4) reacting the compound of formula (4) with an imine reducing agent to form a compound of formula (5),



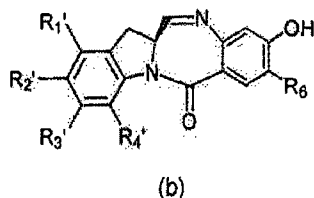
(5) reacting the compound of formula (5) with an alcohol deprotecting reagent to form a compound of formula (6),



(6) reacting the compound of formula (6) with a second halogenating reagent, a second sulfonating reagent or a second esterification reagent to form a compound of formula (7),



(7) reacting the compound of formula (7) with a monomer compound of the formula (b),



to form the compound of formula (I'); wherein:

L' , L'' , and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that

only one of L', L'', and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is -H or a cation;

R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -N(R)₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

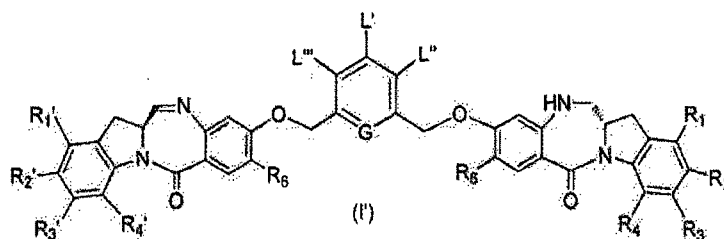
R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₁', R₂', R₃', and R₄' are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R'';

R₆ is -H, -R, -OR, -SR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, or halogen;

P₁ is an alcohol protecting group; and,

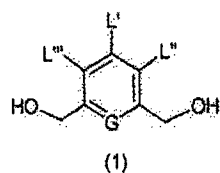
X₁ and X₂ are each independently a leaving group selected from the group consisting of: -Br, -I, -Cl, a sulfonate ester and an activated ester (preferably, X₁ and X₂ are each independently -Br, -I, or a sulfonate ester).

10. A method of forming a compound of formula (I'),

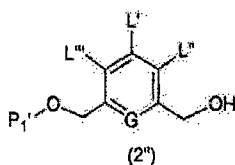


or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:

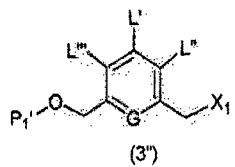
(1) introducing an alcohol protecting group onto one of the primary alcohols of a compound of formula (1),



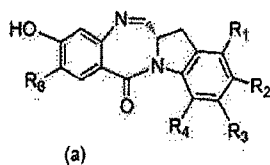
to form a compound of formula (2''),



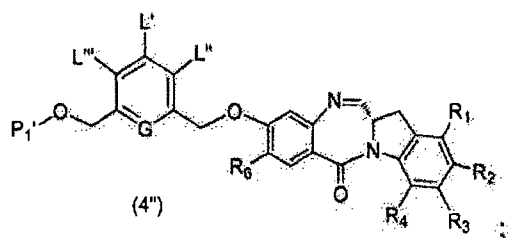
(2) reacting the compound of formula (2'') with a halogenating reagent, a sulfonating reagent or an esterification reagent to form a compound of formula (3''),



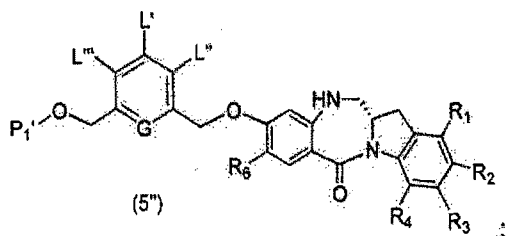
(3) reacting the compound of formula (3'') with a monomer compound of the formula (a),



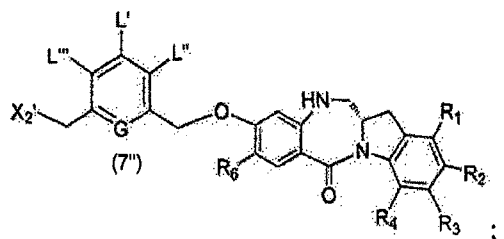
to form a compound of formula (4''),



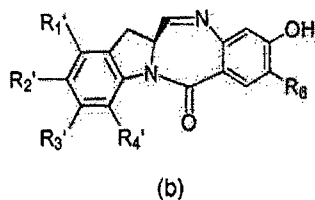
(4) reacting the compound of formula (4'') with an imine reducing agent to form a compound of formula (5''),



(5) reacting the compound of formula (5'') with an alcohol deprotecting reagent and a halogenating reagent to form a compound of formula (7''),



(6) reacting a compound of formula (7'') with a monomer compound of the formula (b),



to form the compound of formula (I'), wherein:

L' , L'' , and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that

only one of L', L'', and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is -H or a cation;

R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-$, R^c , an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -N(R)₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-$, R^c , and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₁', R₂', R₃', and R₄' are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-$, R^c , halogen, guanidinium [$-NH(C=NH)NH_2$], -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R'';

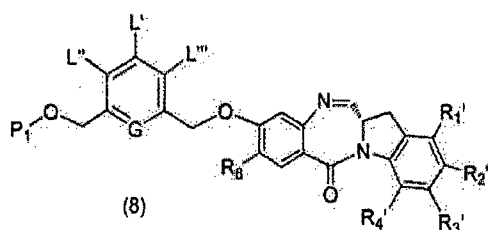
R₆ is -H, -R, -OR, -SR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, or halogen;

P₁' is an acid labile alcohol protecting group;

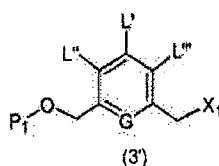
X₁ is a leaving group selected from the group consisting of: -Br, -I, -Cl, a sulfonate ester and an activated ester (preferably, -Br, -I, a sulfonate ester); and

X₂' is -Br or -I.

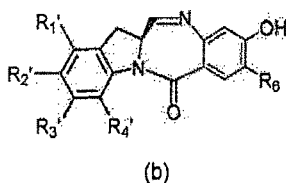
11. A method of preparing a compound of formula (8),



or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula (3')



with a monomer compound of the formula (b),



wherein:

L' , L'' , and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that only one of L' , L'' , and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is -H or a cation;

R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -N(R)₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit -(CH₂CH₂O)_n-, R^c, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

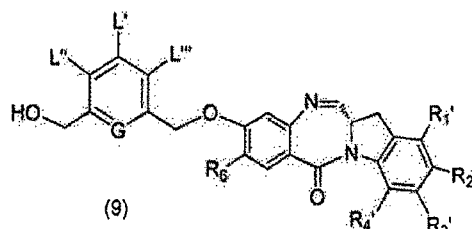
P₁ is an alcohol protecting group;

X₁ is a leaving group selected from the group consisting of: -Br, -I, and a sulfonate ester;

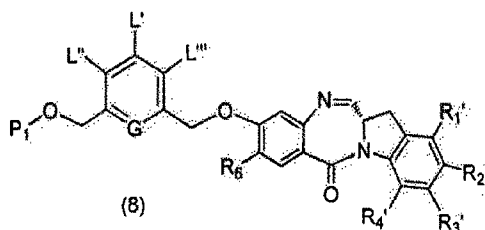
R₁', R₂', R₃', and R₄' are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit -(CH₂CH₂O)_n-, R_c, halogen, guanidinium [-NH(C=NH)NH₂], -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R''; and,

R₆ is -H, -R, -OR, -SR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, or halogen.

12. A method of preparing a compound of formula (9),



or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula (8),



with an alcohol deprotecting reagent; wherein:

L', L'', and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an

optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, $-OR$, $-NR'R''$, $-NO_2$, $-NR'COR''$, $-SR$, $-SOR'$, $-SO_2R'$, $-SO_3M$, $-OSO_3M$, $-SO_2NR'R''$, cyano, an azido, $-COR'$, $-OCOR'$, $-OCONR'R''$, or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that only one of L' , L'' , and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is $-H$ or a cation;

R , for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of $-H$, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from $-H$, $-OH$, $-OR$, $-NHR$, $-N(R)_2$, $-COR$, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is $-H$ or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

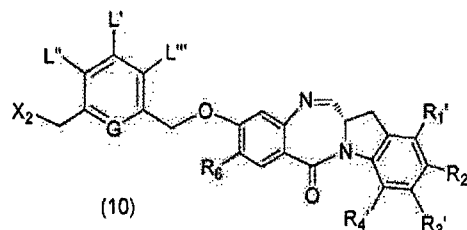
G is selected from $-CH-$ or $-N-$;

P_1 is an alcohol protecting group;

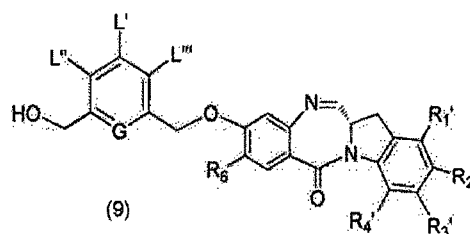
R_1' , R_2' , R_3' , and R_4' are each independently selected from the group consisting of $-H$, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, $-OR$, $-NR'R''$, $-NO_2$, $-NCO$, $-NR'COR''$, $-SR$, $-SOR'$, $-SO_2R'$, $-SO_3H$, $-OSO_3H$, $-SO_2NR'R''$, cyano, an azido, $-COR'$, $-OCOR'$, and $-OCONR'R''$; and,

R_6 is $-H$, $-R$, $-OR$, $-SR$, $-NR'R''$, $-NO_2$, or halogen.

13. A method of preparing a compound of formula (10),



or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a halogenating reagent, a sulfonating reagent or an esterification reagent with the compound of formula (9),



wherein:

L' , L'' , and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that only one of L' , L'' , and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is -H or a cation;

R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -N(R)₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or

alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-$, R^c , and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

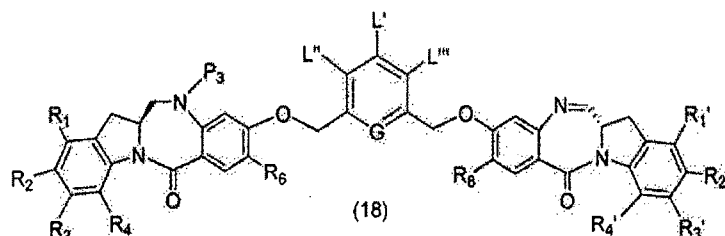
G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

R_1' , R_2' , R_3' , and R_4' are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-$, R_c , halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R'';

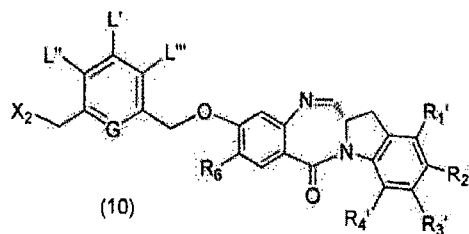
R_6 is -H, -R, -OR, -SR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, or halogen; and,

X_2 is a leaving group selected from the group consisting of -Br, -I, -Cl, a sulfonate ester, and an activated ester (preferably, X_2 is -Br, -I, or a sulfonate ester).

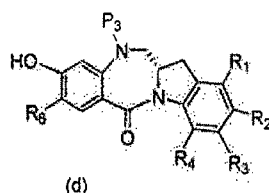
14. A method of preparing a compound of formula (18),



or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula (10)



with a monomer compound of the formula (d),



wherein:

L' , L'' , and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that only one of L' , L'' , and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is -H or a cation;

R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -N(R)₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

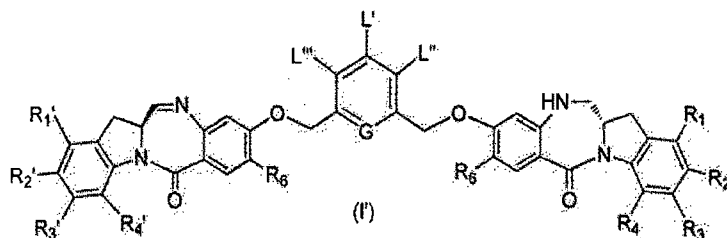
R_1 , R_2 , R_3 , R_4 , R_1' , R_2' , R_3' , and R_4' are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R'';

R_6 is -H, -R, -OR, -SR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, or halogen;

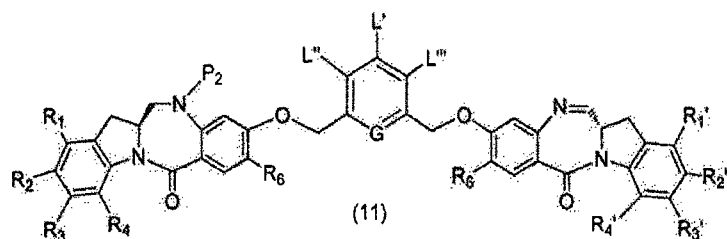
X_2 is a leaving group selected from the group consisting of: -Br, -I, -Cl, a sulfonate ester, and an activated ester (preferably, X_2 is -Br, -I, or a sulfonate ester); and,

P_3 is H or P_2 ; and P_2 is an amine protecting group.

15. A method of preparing a compound of formula (I'),



or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula (11),



with an amine deprotecting reagent; wherein:

L' , L'' , and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that only one of L' , L'' , and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is -H or a cation;

R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to

18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -N(R)₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit -(CH₂CH₂O)_n-, R^c, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

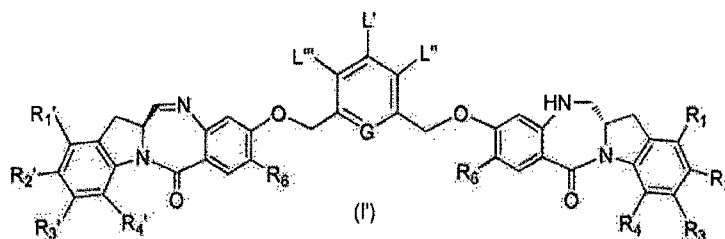
G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₁', R₂', R₃', and R₄' are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit -(CH₂CH₂O)_n-, R_c, halogen, guanidinium [-NH(C=NH)NH₂], -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R'';

R₆ is -H, -R, -OR, -SR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, or halogen; and,

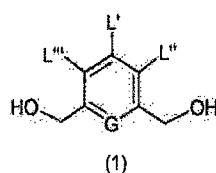
P₂ is an amine protecting group.

16. A method of preparing a compound of formula (I'),

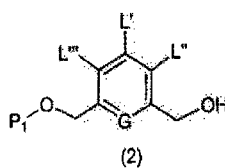


or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:

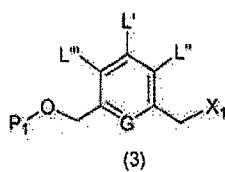
- (1) introducing an alcohol protecting group onto one of the primary alcohols of the compound of formula (1),



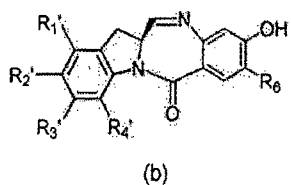
to form a compound of formula (2),



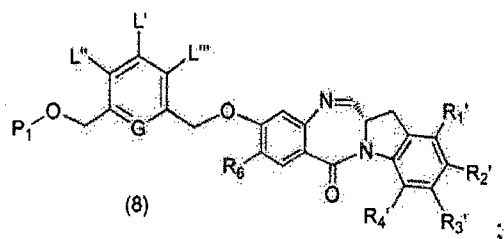
(2) reacting a halogenating reagent, a sulfonating reagent or an esterification reagent with the compound of formula (2) to form a compound of formula (3),



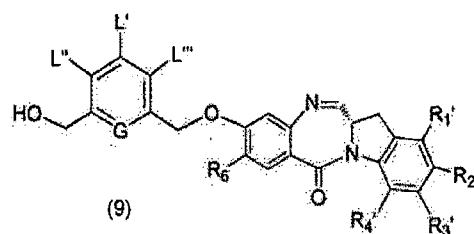
(3) reacting the compound of formula (3) with a monomer compound of the formula (b),



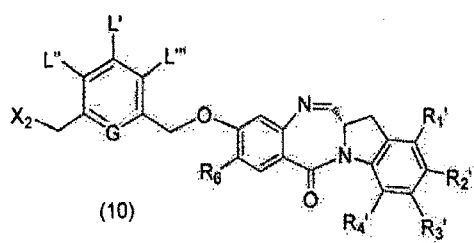
to form a compound of formula (8),



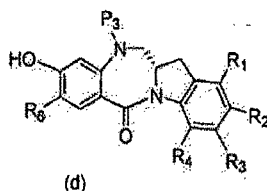
(4) reacting the compound of formula (8) with an alcohol deprotecting reagent to form a compound of formula (9),



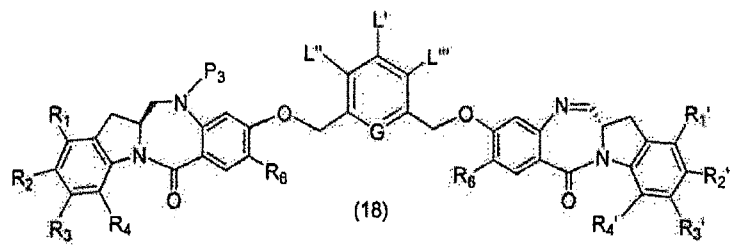
(5) reacting a second halogenating reagent, a second sulfonating reagent or a second esterification reagent with the compound of formula (9) to form a compound of formula (10),



(6) reacting the compound of formula (10) with a monomer compound of the formula (d)



to form a compound of formula (18),



(7) when P₃ is an amine protecting group; reacting the compound of formula (18) with an amine deprotecting reagent to form the compound of formula (I'), wherein:

L', L'', and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from

1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}_2)_n-\text{R}^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-\text{NH}(\text{C}=\text{NH})\text{NH}_2]$, $-\text{OR}$, $-\text{NR}'\text{R}''$, $-\text{NO}_2$, $-\text{NR}'\text{COR}''$, $-\text{SR}$, $-\text{SOR}'$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{R}'$, $-\text{SO}_3\text{M}$, $-\text{OSO}_3\text{M}$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{NR}'\text{R}''$, cyano, an azido, $-\text{COR}'$, $-\text{OCOR}'$, $-\text{OCONR}'\text{R}''$, or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that only one of L' , L'' , and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is $-\text{H}$ or a cation;

R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of $-\text{H}$, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O})_n-\text{R}^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from $-\text{H}$, $-\text{OH}$, $-\text{OR}$, $-\text{NHR}$, $-\text{N}(\text{R})_2$, $-\text{COR}$, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O})_n-\text{R}^c$, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is $-\text{H}$ or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

G is selected from $-\text{CH}-$ or $-\text{N}-$;

R_1 , R_2 , R_3 , R_4 , R_1' , R_2' , R_3' , and R_4' are each independently selected from the group consisting of $-\text{H}$, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O})_n-\text{R}^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-\text{NH}(\text{C}=\text{NH})\text{NH}_2]$, $-\text{OR}$, $-\text{NR}'\text{R}''$, $-\text{NO}_2$, $-\text{NCO}$, $-\text{NR}'\text{COR}''$, $-\text{SR}$, $-\text{SOR}'$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{R}'$, $-\text{SO}_3\text{H}$, $-\text{OSO}_3\text{H}$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{NR}'\text{R}''$, cyano, an azido, $-\text{COR}'$, $-\text{OCOR}'$, and $-\text{OCONR}'\text{R}''$;

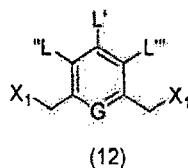
R_6 is $-\text{H}$, $-\text{R}$, $-\text{OR}$, $-\text{SR}$, $-\text{NR}'\text{R}''$, $-\text{NO}_2$, or halogen;

P_3 is H or an amine protecting group;

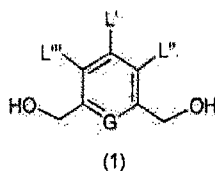
P_1 is an alcohol protecting group; and

X_1 and X_2 are each independently a leaving group selected from the group consisting of: -Br, -I, -Cl, a sulfonate ester, and an activated ester (preferably, -Br, -I, a sulfonate ester).

17. A method of preparing a compound of formula (12),



or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula (1),



with a halogenating reagent, a sulfonating reagent, or an esterification reagent, wherein:

L' , L'' , and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that only one of L' , L'' , and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is -H or a cation;

R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -

$N(R)_2$, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-$, R^c , and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

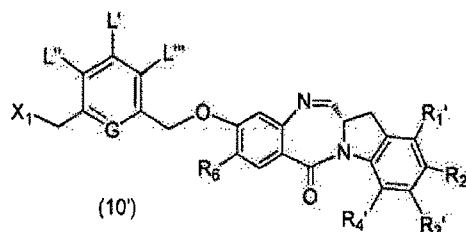
R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

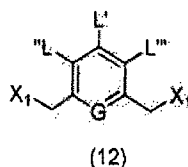
G is selected from -CH- or -N-; and,

X_1 is -Br, -I, -Cl, a sulfonate ester, or an activated ester (preferably, X_1 is -Br, -I, or a sulfonate ester).

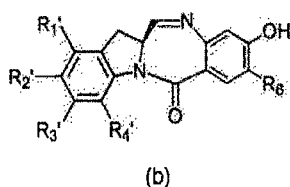
18. A method of preparing a compound of formula (10'),



or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula (12),



with a monomer compound of the formula (b),



wherein:

L' , L'' , and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-$, R^c , halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of

covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that only one of L', L'', and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is -H or a cation;

R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-$, R^c , an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -N(R)₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-$, R^c , and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

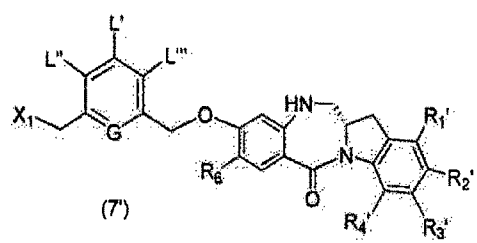
G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

X_1 is -Br, -I, -Cl, a sulfonate ester, or an activated ester (preferably, X_1 is -Br, -I, or a sulfonate ester)

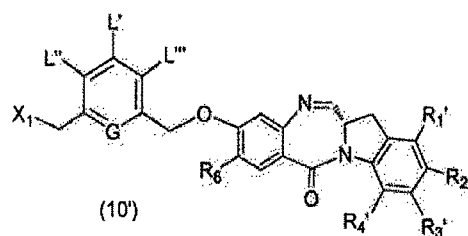
R_1' , R_2' , R_3' , and R_4' are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-$, R^c , halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R''; and,

R_6 is -H, -R, -OR, -SR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, or halogen.

19. A method of preparing a compound of formula (7'),



or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula (10'),



or a salt thereof, with an imine reducing agent,

wherein:

X_1 is -Br, -I, -Cl, a sulfonate ester, or an activated ester (preferably, X_1 is -Br, -I, a sulfonate ester);

L' , L'' , and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that only one of L' , L'' , and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is -H or a cation;

R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected

from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -N(R)₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit -(CH₂CH₂O)_n-, R^c, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

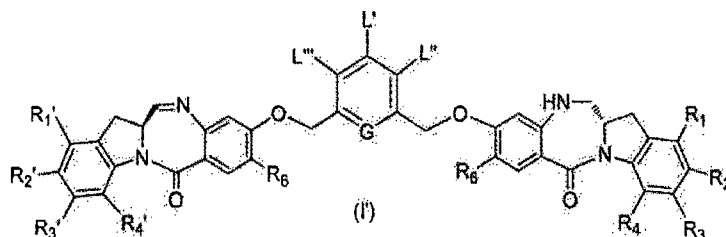
n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

R₁, R₂, R₃, and R₄ are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit -(CH₂CH₂O)_n-, R_c, halogen, guanidinium [-NH(C=NH)NH₂], -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R''; and

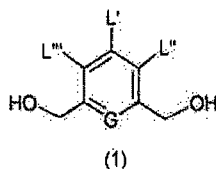
R₆ is -H, -R, -OR, -SR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, or halogen.

20. A method of preparing a compound of formula (I'),

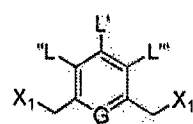


or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:

- (1) reacting a halogenating reagent, a sulfonating reagent or an esterification reagent with a compound of formula (1),

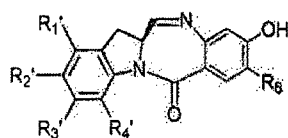


to form a compound of formula (12),



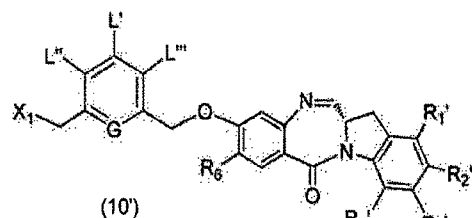
(12) ;

(2) reacting the compound of formula (12) with a monomer compound of the formula (b),



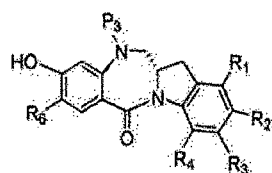
(b)

to form a compound of a formula (10'),



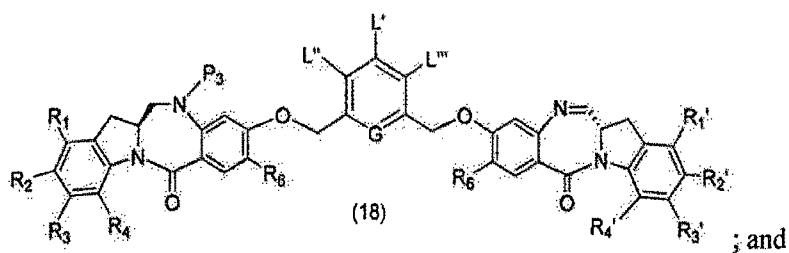
(10')

(3) reacting the compound of formula (10') with a monomer compound of the formula (d),



(d)

to form a compound of formula (18),



(18)

; and

(4) when P_3 is an amine protecting group, reacting the compound of formula (18) with an amine deprotecting reagent to form the compound of formula (I'); wherein:

X_1 is -Br, -I, -Cl, a sulfonate ester, or an activated ester (preferably, X_1 is -Br, -I, or a sulfonate ester);

P_3 is H or an amine protecting group;

L' , L'' , and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that only one of L' , L'' , and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is -H or a cation;

R , for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -N(R)₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

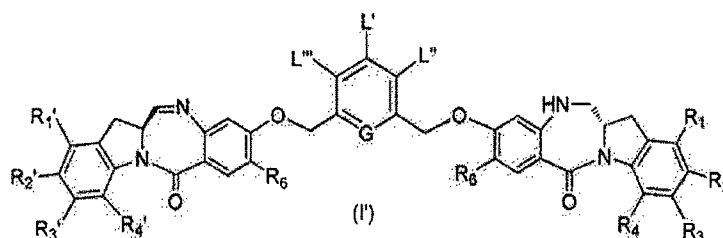
G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

R_1 , R_2 , R_3 , and R_4 are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl

having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R_6$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, $-OR$, $-NR'R''$, $-NO_2$, $-NCO$, $-NR'COR''$, $-SR$, $-SOR'$, $-SO_2R'$, $-SO_3H$, $-OSO_3H$, $-SO_2NR'R''$, cyano, an azido, $-COR'$, $-OCOR'$, and $-OCONR'R''$; and

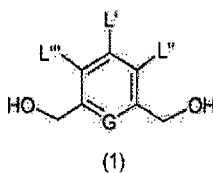
R_6 is $-H$, $-R$, $-OR$, $-SR$, $-NR'R''$, $-NO_2$, or halogen.

21. A method of preparing a compound of formula (I'),

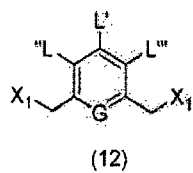


or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:

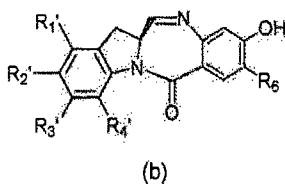
- (1) reacting a halogenating reagent, a sulfonating reagent or an esterification reagent with a compound of formula (1),



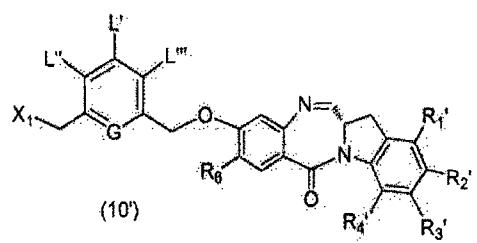
to form a compound of formula (12),



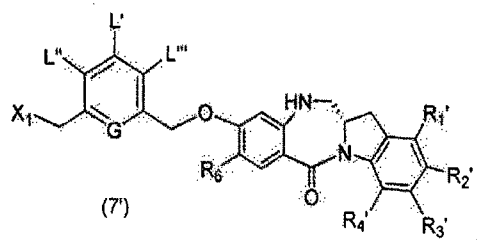
- (2) reacting the compound of formula (12) with a monomer compound of the formula (b),



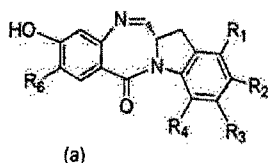
to form a compound of a formula (10'),



(3) reacting the compound (10') with an imine reducing reagent to form a compound (7'),



(4) reacting the compound of formula (7') with a monomer compound of the formula (a),



to form a compound of formula (I'), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein:

X_1 is -Br, -I, -Cl, a sulfonate ester, or an activated ester (preferably, X_1 is -Br, -I, or a sulfonate ester);

L' , L'' , and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that only one of L' , L'' , and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is -H or a cation;

R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl

having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -N(R)₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

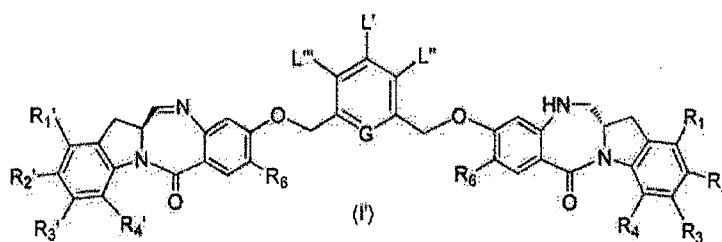
n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

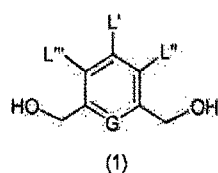
R_1 , R_2 , R_3 , and R_4 are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R''; and

R_6 is -H, -R, -OR, -SR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, or halogen.

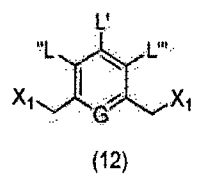
22. A method of preparing a compound of formula (I'),



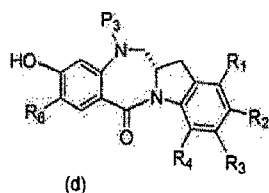
or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:
 (I) reacting a halogenating reagent, a sulfonating reagent or an esterification reagent with a compound of formula (I),



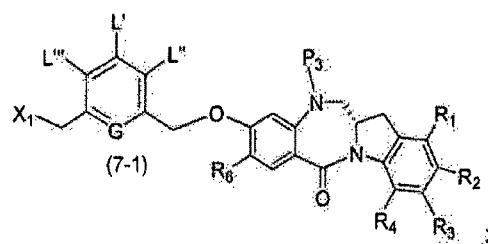
to form a compound of formula (12),



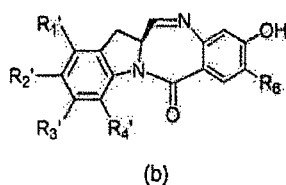
(2) reacting the compound of formula (12) with a monomer compound of the formula (d),



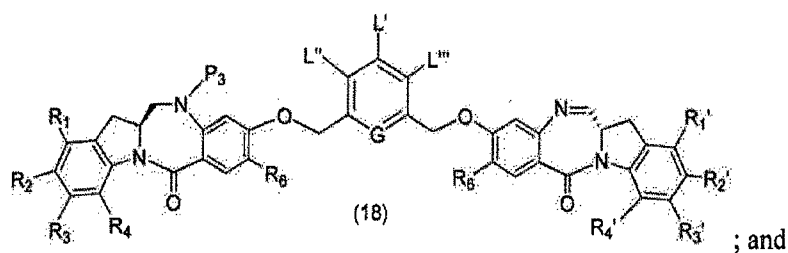
to form a compound of a formula (7-1),



(3) reacting the compound of formula (7-1) with a monomer compound of the formula (b),



to form a compound of formula (18),



(4) when P_3 is an amine protecting group, reacting the compound of formula (18d) with an amine deprotecting reagent to form the compound of formula (Id'); wherein:

X_1 is -Br, -I, -Cl, a sulfonate ester, or an activated ester (preferably, X_1 is -Br, -I, or a sulfonate ester);

P_3 is H or an amine protecting group;

L' , L'' , and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that only one of L' , L'' , and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is -H or a cation;

R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -N(R)₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

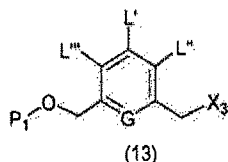
G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

R_1 , R_2 , R_3 , and R_4 are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl

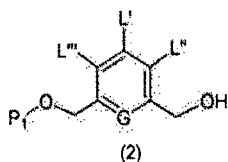
having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, $-OR$, $-NR'R''$, $-NO_2$, $-NCO$, $-NR'COR''$, $-SR$, $-SOR'$, $-SO_2R'$, $-SO_3H$, $-OSO_3H$, $-SO_2NR'R''$, cyano, an azido, $-COR'$, $-OCOR'$, and $-OCONR'R''$; and

R_6 is $-H$, $-R$, $-OR$, $-SR$, $-NR'R''$, $-NO_2$, or halogen.

23. A method of preparing a compound of formula (13),



or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a chlorinating reagent with a compound of formula (2),



wherein:

L' , L'' , and L''' are the same or different, and are independently $-H$, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, $-OR$, $-NR'R''$, $-NO_2$, $-NR'COR''$, $-SR$, $-SOR'$, $-SO_2R'$, $-SO_3M$, $-OSO_3M$, $-SO_2NR'R''$, cyano, an azido, $-COR'$, $-OCOR'$, $-OCONR'R''$, or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that zero or one of L' , L'' , and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is $-H$ or a cation;

R , for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of $-H$, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected

from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -N(R)₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit -(CH₂CH₂O)_n-, R^c, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

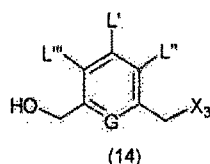
n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

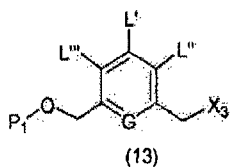
P₁ is an alcohol protecting group; and,

X₃ is -Cl.

24. A method of preparing a compound of formula (14),



or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula (13)



with an alcohol deprotecting reagent, wherein:

L', L'', and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit -(OCH₂CH₂)_n-, R^c, halogen, guanidinium [-NH(C=NH)NH₂], -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that zero or one of L', L'', and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is -H or a cation;

R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of

-H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -N(R)₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

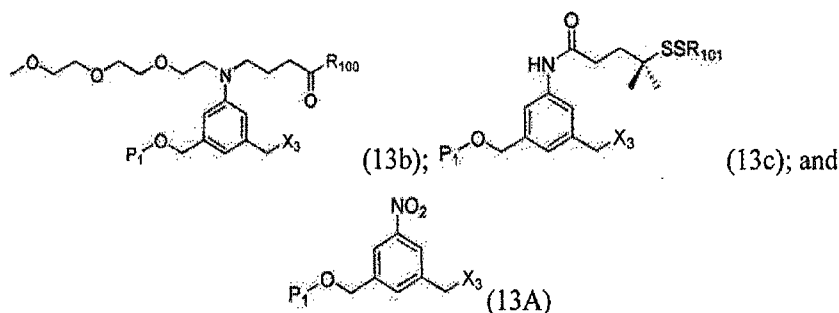
n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

P_1 is an alcohol protecting group; and,

X_3 is -Cl.

25. The method of claim 24, wherein the compound of formula (13) is selected from the group consisting of:

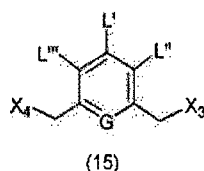


wherein R_{100} is a (C_1-C_3) alkoxy; and R_{101} is a (C_1-C_3) alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl (e.g., 4-nitropyridyl).

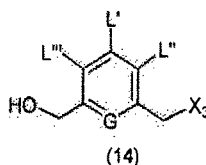
26. The method of claim 24 or 25, wherein the alcohol protecting group is a silyl protecting group.
27. The method of claim 26, wherein the silyl protecting group is the silyl protecting

group is dimethylisopropylsilyl, diethylisopropylsilyl, dimethylhexylsilyl, trimethylsilyl, triisopropylsilyl, tribenzylsilyl, triphenylsilyl, 2-norbornyldimethylsilyl, *tert*-butyldimethylsilyl, *tert*-butyldiphenylsilyl, 2-trimethylethylsilyl (TEOC), or [2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxy]methyl.

28. The method of claim 27, wherein the silyl protecting group is triethylsilyl, triisopropylsilyl, or *tert*-butyldimethylsilyl.
29. The method of claim 28, wherein the silyl protecting group is *tert*-butyldimethylsilyl.
30. The method of any one of claims 24-29, wherein the alcohol deprotecting reagent is tetra-*n*-butylammonium fluoride, tris(dimethylamino)sulfonium difluorotrimethylsilicate, hydrogen fluoride or a solvate thereof, hydrogen fluoride pyridine, silicon tetrafluoride, hexafluorosilicic acid, cesium fluoride, hydrochloric acid, acetic acid, trifluoroacetic acid, pyridinium *p*-toluenesulfonate, *p*-toluenesulfonic acid (*p*-TsOH), formic acid, periodic acid.
31. The method of claim 30, wherein the alcohol deprotecting agent is hydrogen fluoride pyridine.
32. A method of preparing a compound of formula (15):



or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a sulfonating reagent or an esterification reagent with a compound of formula (14),



wherein:

L', L'', and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit -(OCH₂CH₂)_n·-R^c, halogen, guanidinium [-NH(C=NH)NH₂], -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -

SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that zero or one of L', L'', and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is -H or a cation;

R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit -(CH₂CH₂O)_n-R^c, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -N(R)₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit -(CH₂CH₂O)_n-R^c, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

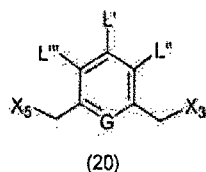
n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

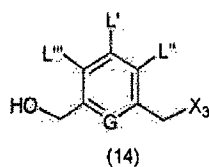
X₃ is -Cl; and

X₄ is a sulfonate ester or an activated ester (preferably, a sulfonate ester).

33. A method of preparing a compound of formula (20):



or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a brominating or iodinating reagent with a compound of formula (14),



wherein:

L' , L'' , and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that zero or one of L' , L'' , and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is -H or a cation;

R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -N(R)₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

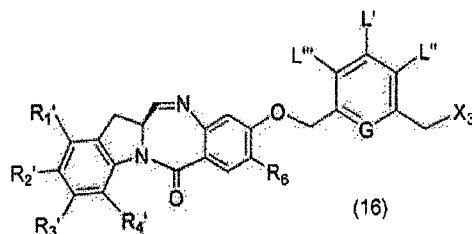
n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

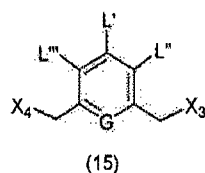
X_3 is -Cl; and

X_5 is -Br or -I.

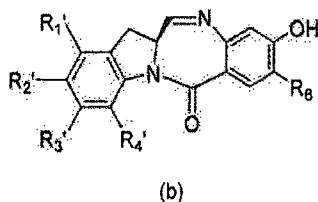
34. A method of preparing a compound of formula (16):



or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula (15)



with a monomer compound of formula (b),



wherein:

R_1' , R_2' , R_3' , and R_4' are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-$, R_c , halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R'';

L' , L'' , and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-$, R_c , halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that zero or one of L' , L'' , and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is -H or a cation;

R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -NR₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

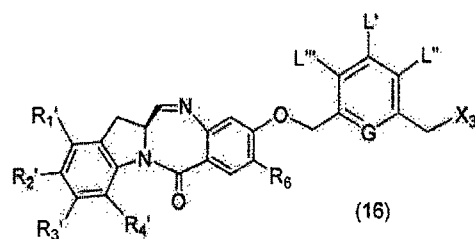
n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

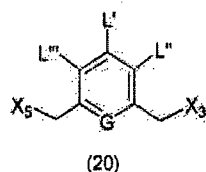
X₃ is -Cl; and

X₄ is a sulfonate ester or an activated ester (preferably, a sulfonate ester).

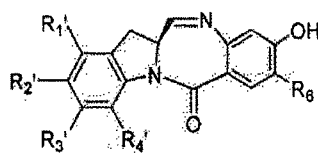
35. A method of preparing a compound of formula (16):



or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula (20)



with a monomer compound of formula (b),



(b)

wherein:

R_1' , R_2' , R_3' , and R_4' are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-$, R_c , halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R'';

L' , L'' , and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that zero or one of L' , L'' , and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is -H or a cation;

R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -NR₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6

heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

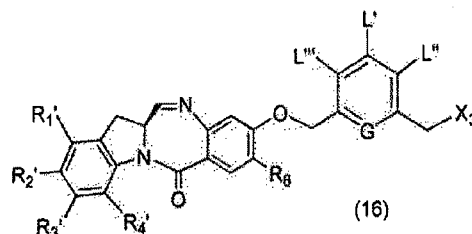
n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

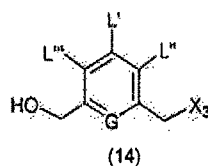
X_3 is -Cl; and

X_5 is -Br or -I.

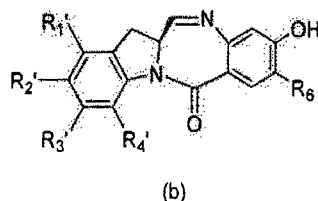
36. A method of preparing a compound of formula (16):



or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula (14)



with a monomer compound of formula (b),



wherein:

R_1' , R_2' , R_3' , and R_4' are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-$, R^c , halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R'';

L' , L'' , and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-$, R^c , halogen,

guanidinium $[-\text{NH}(\text{C}=\text{NH})\text{NH}_2]$, $-\text{OR}$, $-\text{NR}'\text{R}''$, $-\text{NO}_2$, $-\text{NR}'\text{COR}''$, $-\text{SR}$, $-\text{SOR}'$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{R}'$, $-\text{SO}_3\text{M}$, $-\text{OSO}_3\text{M}$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{NR}'\text{R}''$, cyano, an azido, $-\text{COR}'$, $-\text{OCOR}'$, $-\text{OCONR}'\text{R}''$, or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that zero or one of L' , L'' , and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is $-\text{H}$ or a cation;

R , for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of $-\text{H}$, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O})_n-\text{R}^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from $-\text{H}$, $-\text{OH}$, $-\text{OR}$, $-\text{NHR}$, $-\text{NR}_2$, $-\text{COR}$, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O})_n-\text{R}^c$, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

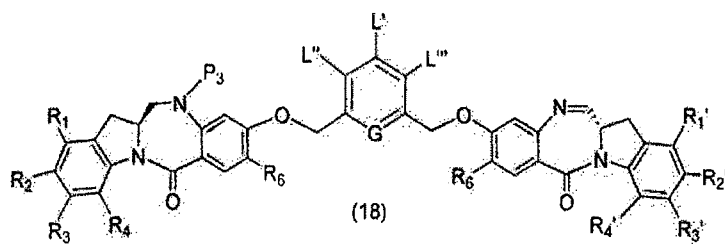
R^c is $-\text{H}$ or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

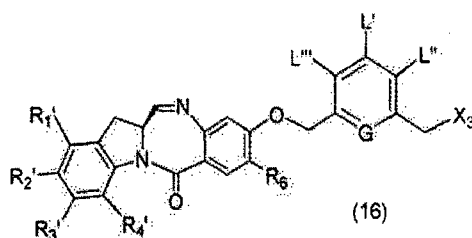
G is selected from $-\text{CH}-$ or $-\text{N}-$; and

X_3 is $-\text{Cl}$.

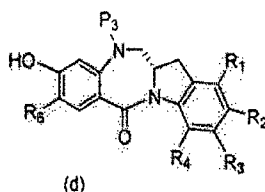
37. A method of preparing a compound of formula (18):



or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula of (16):



with a reduced monomer of formula (d):



wherein:

L' , L'' , and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that zero or one of L' , L'' , and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is -H or a cation;

R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -N(R)₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6

heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

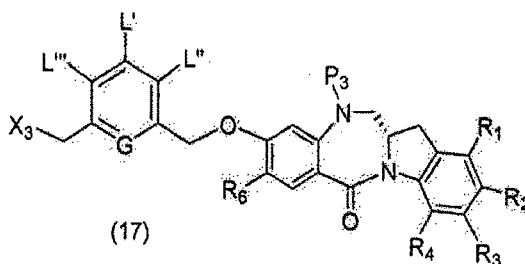
R_1 , R_2 , R_3 , R_4 , R_1' , R_2' , R_3' , and R_4' are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R'';

R_6 is -H, -R, -OR, -SR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, or halogen;

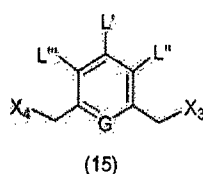
X_3 is -Cl; and

P_3 is H or an amine protecting group.

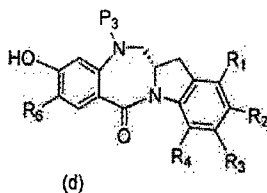
38. A method of preparing a compound of formula (17):



or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula (15)



with a monomer compound of formula (d),



wherein:

R_1 , R_2 , R_3 , and R_4 are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl

having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, $-OR$, $-NR'R''$, $-NO_2$, $-NCO$, $-NR'COR''$, $-SR$, $-SOR'$, $-SO_2R'$, $-SO_3H$, $-OSO_3H$, $-SO_2NR'R''$, cyano, an azido, $-COR'$, $-OCOR'$, and $-OCONR'R''$;

L' , L'' , and L''' are the same or different, and are independently $-H$, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, $-OR$, $-NR'R''$, $-NO_2$, $-NR'COR''$, $-SR$, $-SOR'$, $-SO_2R'$, $-SO_3M$, $-OSO_3M$, $-SO_2NR'R''$, cyano, an azido, $-COR'$, $-OCOR'$, $-OCONR'R''$, or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that zero or one of L' , L'' , and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is $-H$ or a cation;

R , for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of $-H$, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from $-H$, $-OH$, $-OR$, $-NHR$, $-NR_2$, $-COR$, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is $-H$ or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

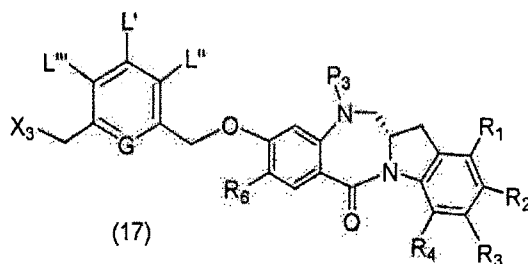
G is selected from $-CH-$ or $-N-$;

X_3 is $-Cl$;

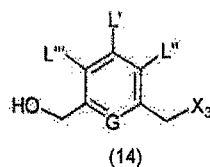
X_4 is a sulfonate ester or an activated ester (preferably, a sulfonate ester); and

P_3 is H or an amine protecting group.

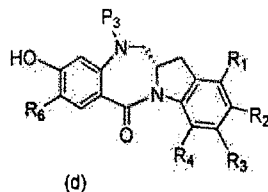
39. A method of preparing a compound of formula (17):



or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula (14)



with a monomer compound of formula (d),



wherein:

R_1 , R_2 , R_3 , and R_4 are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R_c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R'';

L' , L'' , and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that zero or one of L' , L'' , and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is -H or a cation;

R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -NR₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

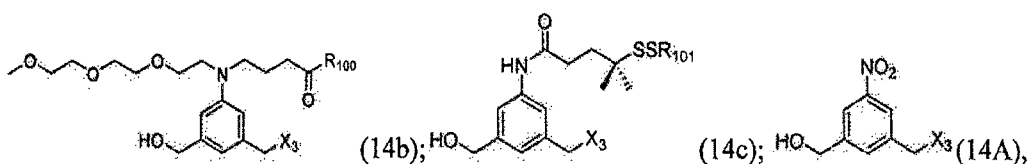
n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

X₃ is -Cl; and

P₃ is H or an amine protecting group.

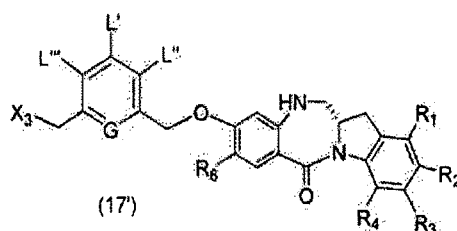
40. The method of claim 39, wherein the compound of formula (14) is selected from the group consisting of:



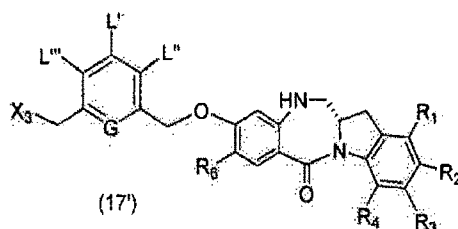
wherein R₁₀₀ is a (C₁-C₃)alkoxy; and R₁₀₁ is a (C₁-C₃)alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl (e.g., 4-nitropyridyl).

41. The method of claim 39 or 40, wherein the compound of formula (14) is reacted with a monomer of formula (d) in the presence of an alcohol activating agent.
42. The method of claim 41, wherein the alcohol activating agent is triphenylphosphine.

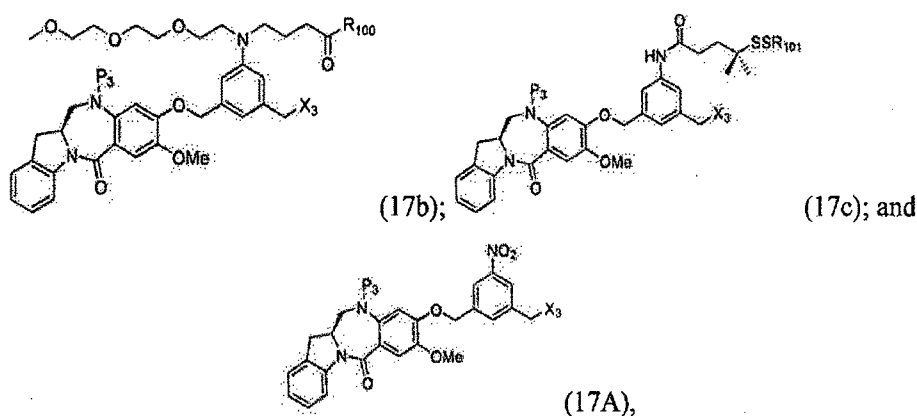
43. The method of any one of claims 39-42, wherein the compound of formula (14) is reacted with a monomer of formula (d) in the presence of an azodicarboxylate.
44. The method of claim 43, wherein the azodicarboxylate is selected from the group consisting of: diethyl azodicarboxylate (DEAD), diisopropyl azodicarboxylate (DIAD), 1,1'-(azodicarbonyl)dipiperidine (ADDP), and ditertbutyl azodicarboxylate (DTAD).
45. The method of any one of claims 39-44, wherein the compound of formula (14) is reacted with the monomer compound of formula (d), wherein P_3 is H, to form a compound of formula (17'):



46. The method of any one of claims 39-45, wherein P_3 is an amine protecting group.
47. The method of claim 46, further comprising the step of reacting the compound of formula (17) with an amine deprotecting reagent to form a compound of formula (17'):

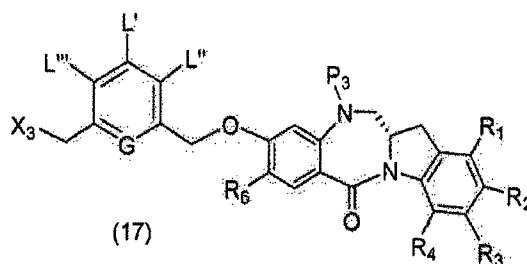


48. The method of claim 47, wherein the compound of formula (17) is selected from the group consisting of:

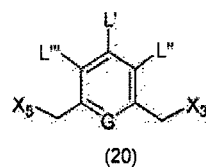


wherein R_{100} is a (C₁-C₃)alkoxy; and R_{101} is a (C₁-C₃)alkyl, pyridyl or nitropyridyl (e.g., 4-nitropyridyl).

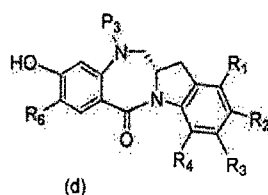
49. The method of claim 47 or 48, wherein the amine deprotecting reagent is selected from the group consisting of tetra-n-butylammonium fluoride, acetic acid, hydrogen fluoride pyridine, cesium fluoride, piperidine, morpholine, or trifluoroacetic acid.
50. A method of preparing a compound of formula (17):



or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula (20)



with a monomer compound of formula (d),



wherein:

R_1 , R_2 , R_3 , and R_4 are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R'';

L' , L'' , and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that zero or one of L' , L'' , and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is -H or a cation;

R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -NR₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

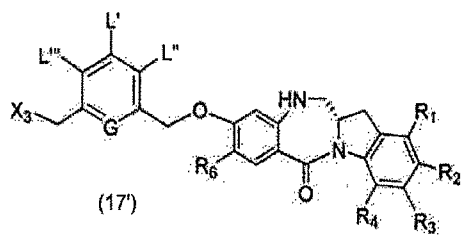
G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

X_3 is -Cl;

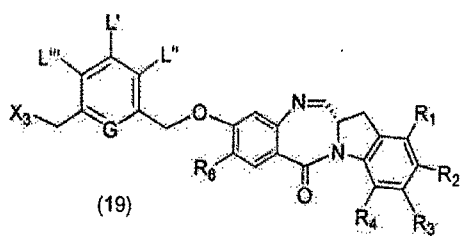
X_5 is -Br or -I; and

P_3 is H or an amine protecting group.

51. A method of preparing a compound of formula (17'):



or a salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula (19)



with an imine reducing agent, wherein:

R_1 , R_2 , R_3 , and R_4 are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R_c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R'';

L' , L'' , and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that zero or one of L' , L'' , and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is -H or a cation;

R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl

having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from $-H$, $-OH$, $-OR$, $-NHR$, $-NR_2$, $-COR$, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

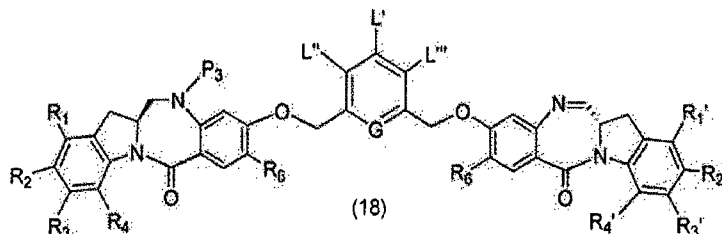
R^c is $-H$ or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

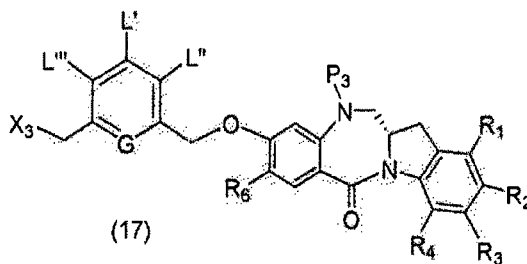
G is selected from $-CH-$ or $-N-$; and

X_3 is $-Cl$.

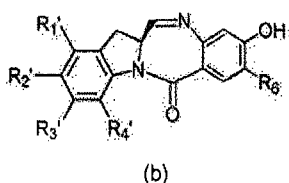
52. A method of preparing a compound of formula (18),



or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising reacting a compound of formula of (17):



with a monomer of formula (b):



wherein:

X_3 is $-Cl$;

P_3 is H or an amine protecting group;

L' , L'' , and L''' are the same or different, and are independently $-H$, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, $-OR$, $-NR'R''$, $-NO_2$, $-NR'COR''$, $-SR$, $-SOR'$, $-SO_2R'$, $-SO_3M$, $-OSO_3M$, $-SO_2NR'R''$, cyano, an azido, $-COR'$, $-OCOR'$, $-OCONR'R''$, or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that zero or one of L' , L'' , and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is $-H$ or a cation;

R , for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of $-H$, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from $-H$, $-OH$, $-OR$, $-NHR$, $-N(R)_2$, $-COR$, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is $-H$ or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

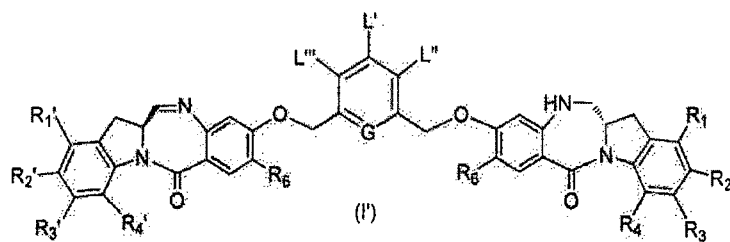
n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

G is selected from $-CH-$ or $-N-$;

$R_1, R_2, R_3, R_4, R_1', R_2', R_3',$ and R_4' are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R_c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R''; and

R_6 is -H, -R, -OR, -SR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, or halogen;

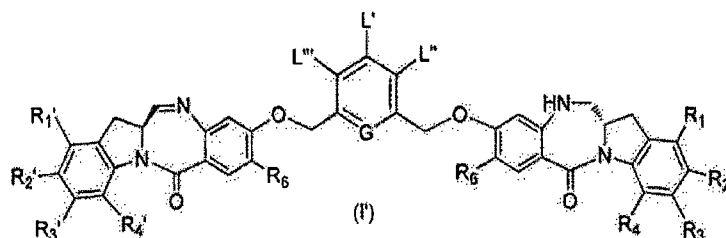
53. The method of claim 52, wherein the compound of formula (17) is reacted with a monomer compound of formula (b) in the presence of a base.
54. The method of claim 53, wherein the base is sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, cesium carbonate, sodium hydride, or potassium hydride.
55. The method of claim 54, wherein the base is potassium carbonate.
56. The method of any one of claims 52-55, wherein the compound of formula (17) is reacted with a monomer compound of formula (b) in the presence of a polar aprotic solvent.
57. The method of claim 56, wherein the polar aprotic solvent is dimethylformamide or dimethylacetamide.
58. The method of any one of claims 52-57, wherein the compound of formula (17) is reacted with monomer of formula (b), wherein P_3 is H, to form a compound of formula (I')



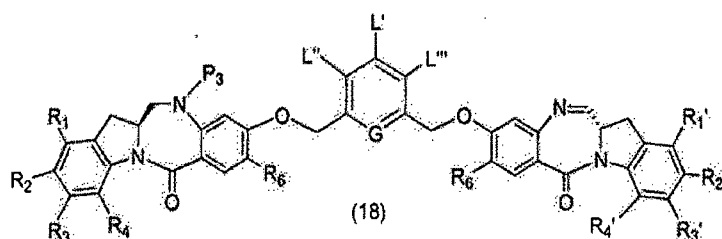
59. The method of any one of claims 52-57, wherein P_3 is an amine protecting group.
60. The method of claim 59, wherein the amine protecting group is selected from the group consisting of 2-trimethylsilylethyl, (2-phenyl-2-trimethylsilyl)ethyl,

triisopropylsiloxy, 2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxymethyl, allyloxycarbonyl, 9-fluorenylmethoxycarbonyl, 2-(trimethylsilyl)ethoxycarbonyl, and 2, 2,2,2-trichloroethoxycarbonyl.

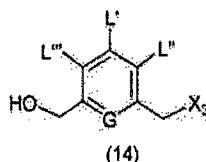
61. The method of claim 59 or 60, wherein the compound of formula (18) is further reacted with an amine deprotecting reagent to form a compound of formula (I'):



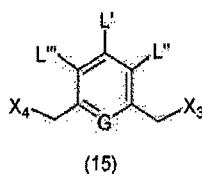
62. The method of claim 59, wherein the amine deprotecting reagent is selected from the group consisting of tetra-n-butylammonium fluoride, acetic acid, hydrogen fluoride pyridine, cesium fluoride, piperidine, morpholine, or trifluoroacetic acid.
63. A method of preparing a compound of formula (18),



or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:
(1) reacting a sulfonating reagent or an esterification reagent with the compound of formula (14),

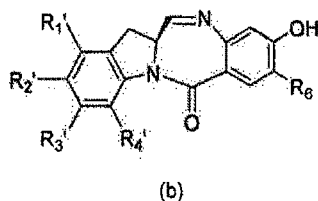


to form a compound of formula (15):

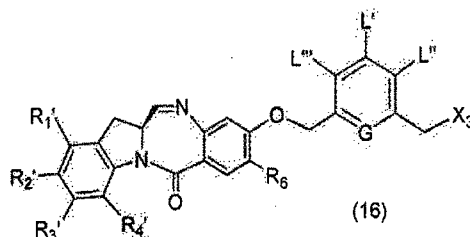


or a salt thereof;

(2) reacting the compound of formula (15) with a monomer compound of formula (b),

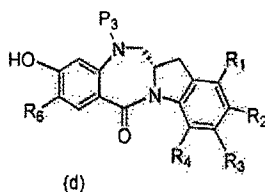


to form a compound of formula (16):



or a salt thereof; and

(3) reacting the compound of formula (16) with a reduced monomer of formula (d):



to form a compound of formula (19), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein:

L' , L'' , and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that zero or one of L' , L'' , and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is -H or a cation;

R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to

18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -N(R)₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit -(CH₂CH₂O)_n-, R^c, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₁', R₂', R₃', and R₄' are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit -(CH₂CH₂O)_n-, halogen, guanidinium [-NH(C=NH)NH₂], -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R'';

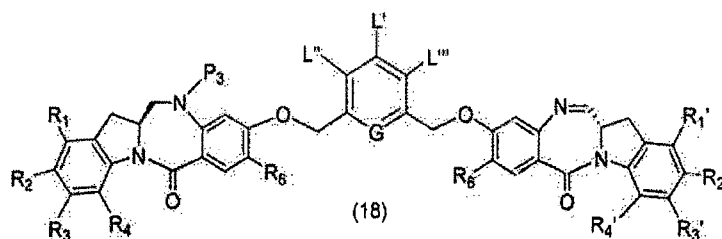
R₆ is -H, -R, -OR, -SR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, or halogen;

X₃ is -Cl;

X₄ is a sulfonate ester or an activated ester (preferably, a sulfonate ester); and

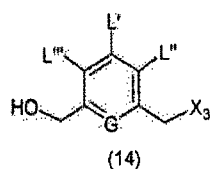
P₃ is H or an amine protecting group.

64. A method of preparing a compound of formula (18),

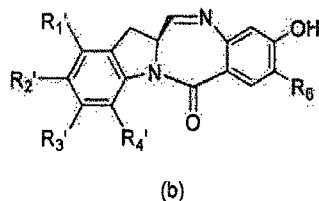


or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:

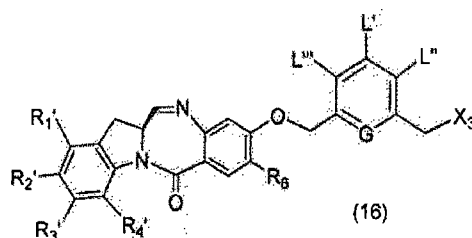
- (1) reacting the compound of formula (14)



with a monomer compound of formula (b),

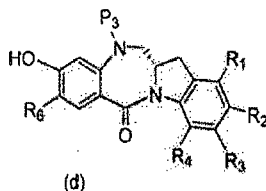


to form a compound of formula (16):



or a salt thereof; and

(2) reacting the compound of formula of (16) with a reduced monomer of formula (d):



to form a compound of formula (18), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof,
wherein:

L' , L'' , and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-$, R^c , halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that zero or one of L' , L'' , and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is -H or a cation;

R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -N(R)₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

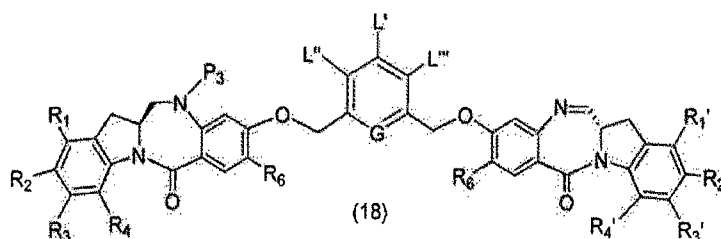
R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₁', R₂', R₃', and R₄' are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R'';

R₆ is -H, -R, -OR, -SR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, or halogen;

X₃ is -Cl; and

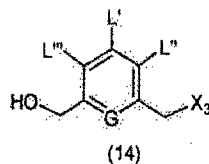
P₃ is H or an amine protecting group.

65. A method of preparing a compound of formula (18),

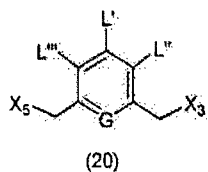


or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:

(1) reacting a halogenating reagent with the compound of formula (14)

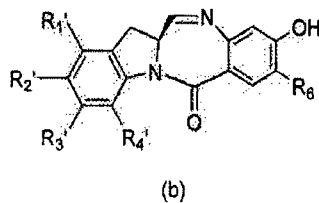


to form a compound of formula (20):

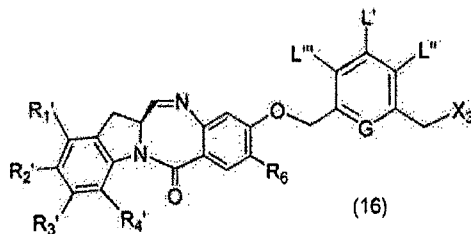


or a salt thereof;

(2) reacting a compound of formula (20) or a salt thereof with a monomer compound of formula (b),

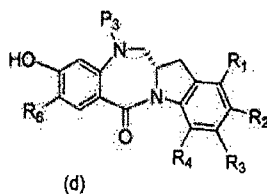


to form a compound of formula (16):



or a salt thereof; and

(3) reacting the compound of formula of (16) with a reduced monomer of formula (d):



to form a compound of formula (18), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein:

L', L'', and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from

1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(\text{OCH}_2\text{CH}_2)_n-\text{R}^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-\text{NH}(\text{C}=\text{NH})\text{NH}_2]$, $-\text{OR}$, $-\text{NR}'\text{R}''$, $-\text{NO}_2$, $-\text{NR}'\text{COR}''$, $-\text{SR}$, $-\text{SOR}'$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{R}'$, $-\text{SO}_3\text{M}$, $-\text{OSO}_3\text{M}$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{NR}'\text{R}''$, cyano, an azido, $-\text{COR}'$, $-\text{OCOR}'$, $-\text{OCONR}'\text{R}''$, or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that zero or one of L' , L'' , and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is $-\text{H}$ or a cation;

R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of $-\text{H}$, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O})_n-\text{R}^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from $-\text{H}$, $-\text{OH}$, $-\text{OR}$, $-\text{NHR}$, $-\text{N}(\text{R})_2$, $-\text{COR}$, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O})_n-\text{R}^c$, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is $-\text{H}$ or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

G is selected from $-\text{CH}-$ or $-\text{N}-$;

R_1 , R_2 , R_3 , R_4 , R_1' , R_2' , R_3' , and R_4' are each independently selected from the group consisting of $-\text{H}$, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{O})_n-\text{R}^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-\text{NH}(\text{C}=\text{NH})\text{NH}_2]$, $-\text{OR}$, $-\text{NR}'\text{R}''$, $-\text{NO}_2$, $-\text{NCO}$, $-\text{NR}'\text{COR}''$, $-\text{SR}$, $-\text{SOR}'$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{R}'$, $-\text{SO}_3\text{H}$, $-\text{OSO}_3\text{H}$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{NR}'\text{R}''$, cyano, an azido, $-\text{COR}'$, $-\text{OCOR}'$, and $-\text{OCONR}'\text{R}''$;

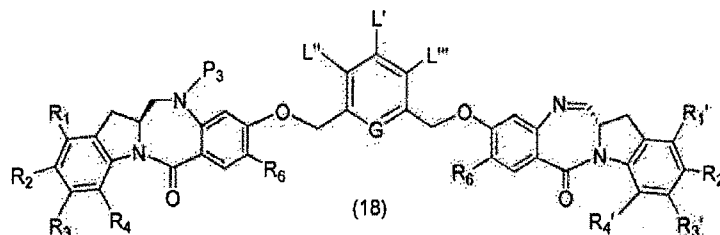
R_6 is $-\text{H}$, $-\text{R}$, $-\text{OR}$, $-\text{SR}$, $-\text{NR}'\text{R}''$, $-\text{NO}_2$, or halogen;

X_3 is $-\text{Cl}$;

X_5 is $-\text{Br}$ or $-\text{I}$; and

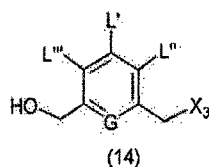
P_3 is H or an amine protecting group.

66. A method of preparing a compound of formula (18),

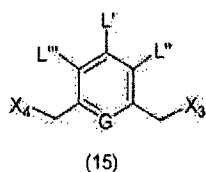


or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:

(1) reacting a sulfonating reagent or an esterification reagent with the compound of formula (14)

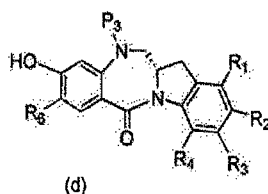


to form a compound of formula (15):

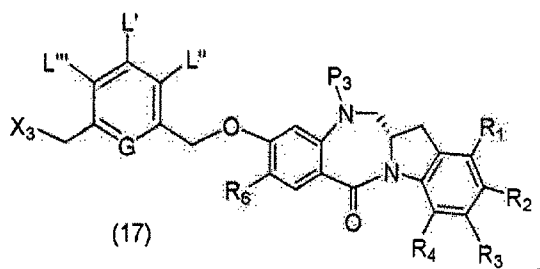


or a salt thereof;

(2) reacting the compound of formula (15) with a reduced monomer compound of formula (d),

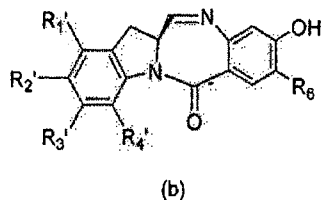


to form a compound of formula (17):



or a salt thereof; and

(3) reacting the compound of formula of (17) with a monomer of formula (b):



to form a compound of formula (18), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein:

L' , L'' , and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that zero or one of L' , L'' , and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is -H or a cation;

R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -N(R)₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

$R_1, R_2, R_3, R_4, R_1', R_2', R_3',$ and R_4' are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R_c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R'';

R_6 is -H, -R, -OR, -SR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, or halogen;

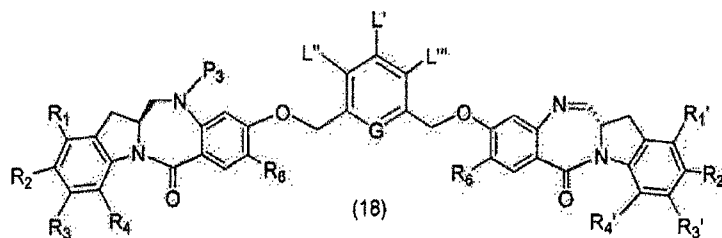
X_3 is -Cl;

X_4 is a sulfonate ester or an activated ester (preferably, a sulfonate ester);

P_1 is an alcohol protecting group; and

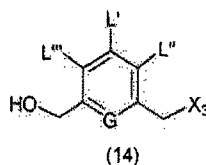
P_3 is H or an amine protecting group.

67. A method of preparing a compound of formula (18),

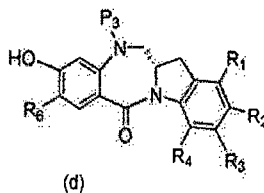


or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:

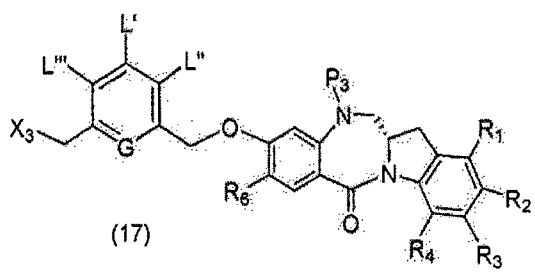
(1) reacting the compound of formula (14)



with a reduced monomer compound of formula (d),

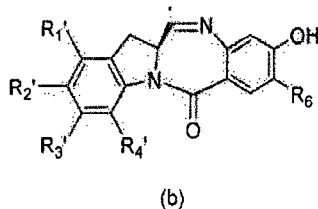


to form a compound of formula (17):



or a salt thereof; and

(2) reacting the compound of formula of (17) with a monomer of formula (b):



to form a compound of formula (18), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein:

L' , L'' , and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that zero or one of L' , L'' , and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is -H or a cation;

R , for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -N(R)₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or

alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-$, R^c , and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

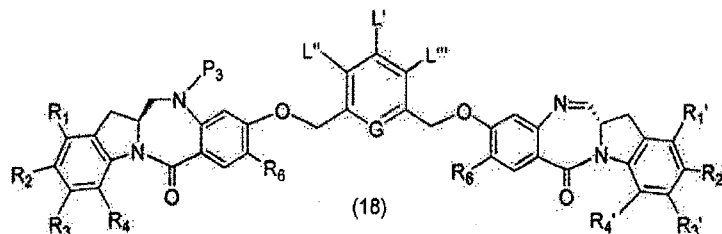
R_1 , R_2 , R_3 , R_4 , R_1' , R_2' , R_3' , and R_4' are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-$, R^c , halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R'';

R_6 is -H, -R, -OR, -SR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, or halogen;

X_3 is -Cl; and

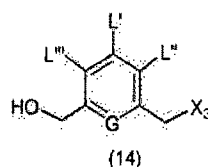
P_3 is H or an amine protecting group.

68. A method of preparing a compound of formula (18),

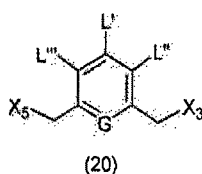


or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:

(1) reacting a halogenating reagent with the compound of formula (14)

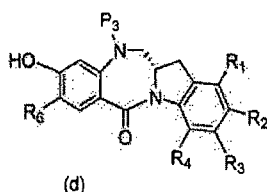


to form a compound of formula (20):

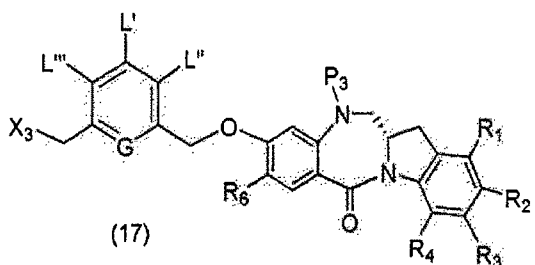


or a salt thereof;

(2) reacting the compound of formula (20) with a reduced monomer compound of formula (d),

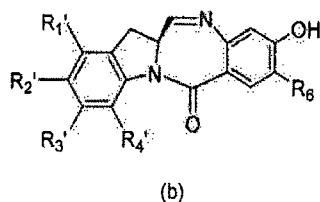


to form a compound of formula (17):



or a salt thereof; and

(3) reacting the compound of formula (17) with a monomer of formula (b):



to form a compound of formula (18), or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, wherein:

L', L'', and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that zero or one of L', L'', and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is -H or a cation;

R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl

having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from $-H$, $-OH$, $-OR$, $-NHR$, $-N(R)_2$, $-COR$, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is $-H$ or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

G is selected from $-CH-$ or $-N-$;

R_1 , R_2 , R_3 , R_4 , R_1' , R_2' , R_3' , and R_4' are each independently selected from the group consisting of $-H$, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, $-OR$, $-NR'R''$, $-NO_2$, $-NCO$, $-NR'COR''$, $-SR$, $-SOR'$, $-SO_2R'$, $-SO_3H$, $-OSO_3H$, $-SO_2NR'R''$, cyano, an azido, $-COR'$, $-OCOR'$, and $-OCONR'R''$;

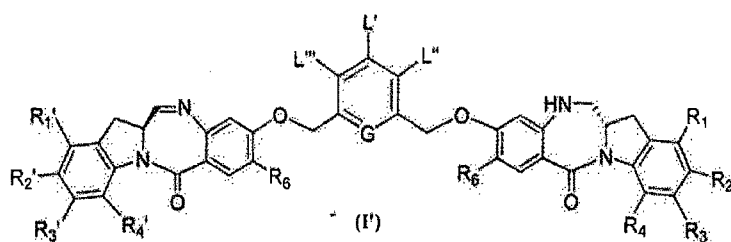
R_6 is $-H$, $-R$, $-OR$, $-SR$, $-NR'R''$, $-NO_2$, or halogen;

X_3 is $-Cl$;

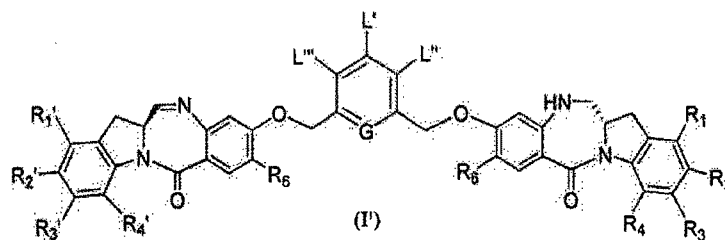
X_5 is $-Br$ or $-I$; and

P_3 is H or an amine protecting group.

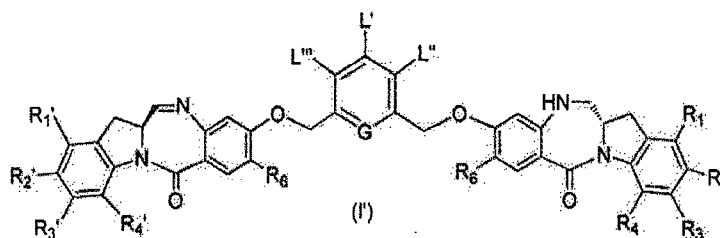
69. The method of claim 66, 67 or 68, wherein the compound of formula (17) is reacted with monomer of formula (b), wherein P_3 is H , to form a compound of formula (I'):



70. The method of any one of claims 66-68, wherein P_3 is an amine protecting group.
71. The method of claim 70, wherein the compound of formula (18) is further reacted with an amine deprotecting reagent to form a compound of formula (I'):

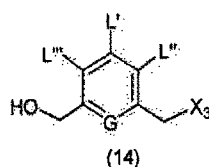


72. A method of preparing a compound of formula (I'),

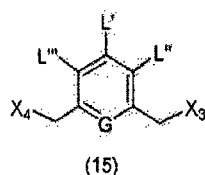


or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:

- (1) reacting a sulfonating reagent or an esterification reagent with the compound of formula (14)

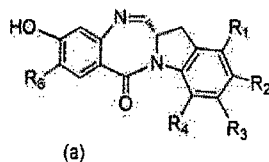


to form a compound of formula (15):

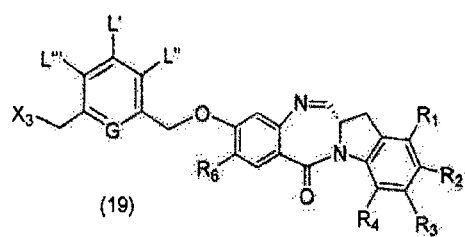


or a salt thereof;

- (2) reacting the compound of formula (15) with a monomer compound of formula (a),

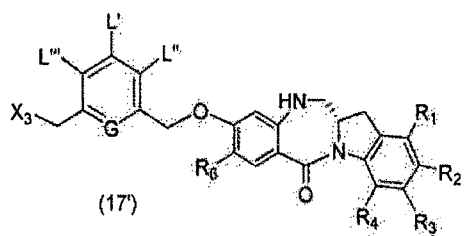


to form a compound of formula (19):



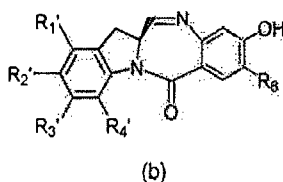
or a salt thereof;

(3) reacting the compound of formula (19) with an imine reducing agent to form a compound of formula (17'):



or a salt thereof; and

(4) reacting the compound of formula (17') with a monomer of formula (b):



to form the compound of formula (I');

wherein:

L' , L'' , and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that zero or one of L' , L'' , and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is -H or a cation;

R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, an

optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -N(R)₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit -(CH₂CH₂O)_n-, R^c, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₁', R₂', R₃', and R₄' are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit -(CH₂CH₂O)_n-, halogen, guanidinium [-NH(C=NH)NH₂], -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R'';

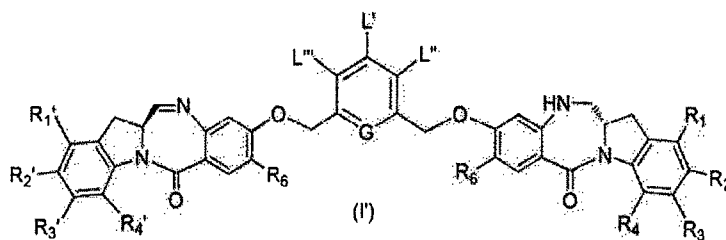
R₆ is -H, -R, -OR, -SR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, or halogen;

X₃ is -Cl;

X₄ is a sulfonate ester or an activated ester (preferably, a sulfonate ester); and

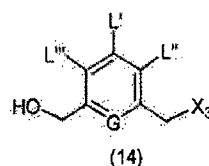
P₂ is an amine protecting group.

73. A method of preparing a compound of formula (I'),

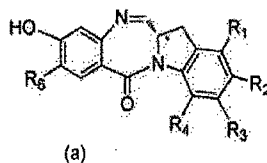


or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:

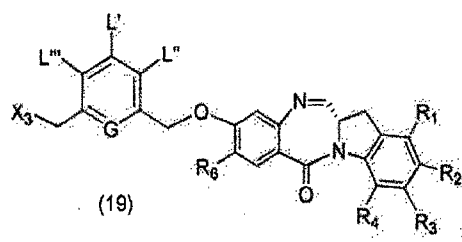
- (1) reacting the compound of formula (14)



with a monomer compound of formula (a),

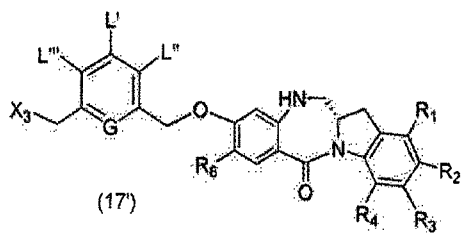


to form a compound of formula (19):



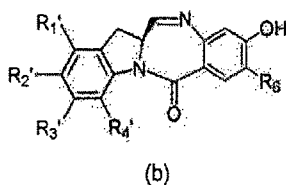
or a salt thereof;

(2) reacting the compound of formula (19) with an imine reducing agent to form a compound of formula (17'):



or a salt thereof; and

(3) reacting the compound of formula (17') with a monomer of formula (b):



to form the compound of formula (I'); wherein:

L', L'', and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -

SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that zero or one of L', L'', and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is -H or a cation;

R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit -(CH₂CH₂O)_n-R^c, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -N(R)₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit -(CH₂CH₂O)_n-R^c, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

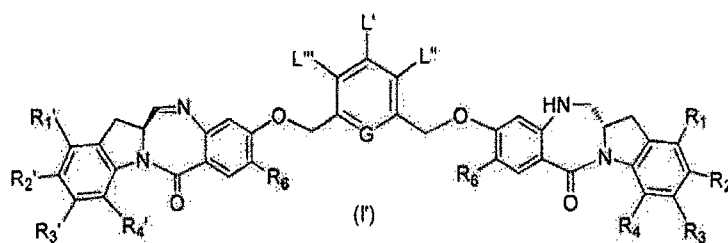
G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

R₁, R₂, R₃, R₄, R₁', R₂', R₃', and R₄' are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit -(CH₂CH₂O)_n-R_c, halogen, guanidinium [-NH(C=NH)NH₂], -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R'';

R₆ is -H, -R, -OR, -SR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, or halogen;

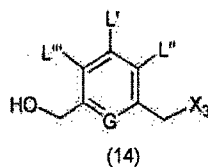
X₃ is -Cl.

74. A method of preparing a compound of formula (I'),

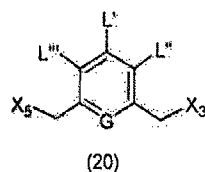


or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, said method comprising the steps of:

(1) reacting a brominating or iodinating reagent with a compound of formula (14):

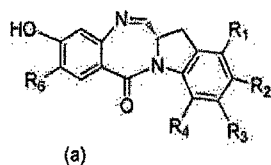


or a salt thereof, to form a compound of formula (20):

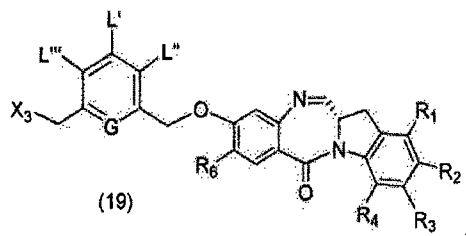


or a salt thereof;

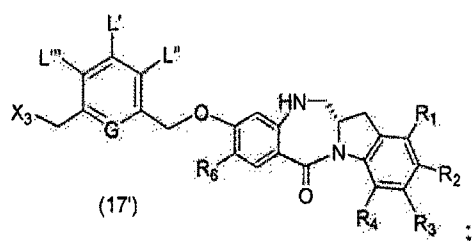
(2) reacting a compound of formula (20) or a salt thereof with a monomer compound of formula (a):



to form a compound of formula (19):

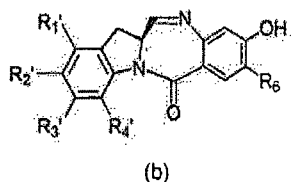


(3) reacting the compound of formula (19) with an imine reducing agent to form a compound of formula (17'):



or a salt thereof, and

(4) reacting the compound of (17') with a monomer of formula (b):



to form the compound of formula (I'), wherein

L', L'', and L''' are the same or different, and are independently -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(OCH_2CH_2)_n-R^c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃M, -OSO₃M, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', -OCONR'R'', or a linking group with a reactive group bonded thereto capable of covalently linking a cytotoxic compound to a cell binding agent (CBA), provided that zero or one of L', L'', and L''' is the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

M is -H or a cation;

R, for each occurrence, is independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, an optionally substituted aryl having 6 to 18 carbon atoms, an optionally substituted 5- to 18-membered heteroaryl ring containing one or more heteroatoms independently selected from nitrogen, oxygen, and sulfur, or an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring containing 1 to 6 heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R' and R'' are each independently selected from -H, -OH, -OR, -NHR, -N(R)₂, -COR, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R^c$, and an optionally substituted 3- to 18-membered heterocyclic ring having 1 to 6

heteroatoms independently selected from O, S, N and P;

R^c is -H or a substituted or unsubstituted linear or branched alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, or the linking group with the reactive group bonded thereto;

n' is an integer from 1 to 24;

G is selected from -CH- or -N-;

R_1 , R_2 , R_3 , R_4 , R_1' , R_2' , R_3' , and R_4' are each independently selected from the group consisting of -H, an optionally substituted linear, branched or cyclic alkyl, alkenyl or alkynyl having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, a polyethylene glycol unit $-(CH_2CH_2O)_n-R_c$, halogen, guanidinium $[-NH(C=NH)NH_2]$, -OR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, -NCO, -NR'COR'', -SR, -SOR', -SO₂R', -SO₃H, -OSO₃H, -SO₂NR'R'', cyano, an azido, -COR', -OCOR', and -OCONR'R'';

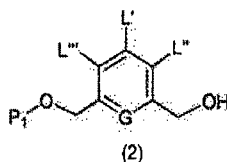
R_6 is -H, -R, -OR, -SR, -NR'R'', -NO₂, or halogen;

X_3 is -Cl; and

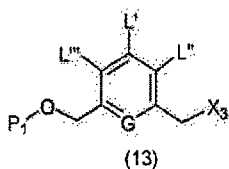
P_1 is an alcohol protecting group.

75. The method of any one of claims 63-74, wherein the compound of formula (14) or a salt thereof is prepared by a method comprising the steps of:

(1) reacting a chlorinating reagent with a compound of formula (2):



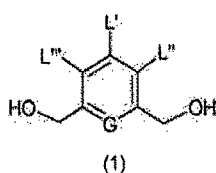
to form a compound of formula (13):



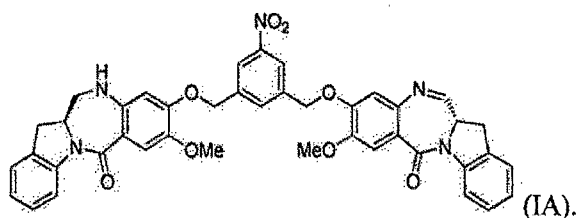
or a salt thereof; and

(2) reacting the compound of formula (13) with an alcohol deprotecting reagent to form the compound of formula (14) or a salt thereof.

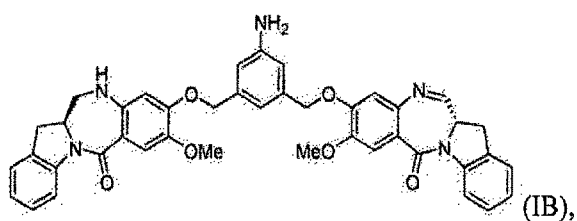
76. The method of claim 75, wherein the compound of formula (2) is prepared by reacting a compound of formula (1) with an alcohol protecting reagent



77. The method of any one of claims 8-10, 15, 16, 20-22, 58, 61, 69, and 71-74, wherein the compound of formula (I') is represented by formula (IA):



78. The method of claim 77, wherein the compound of formula (IA) is reacted with a reducing agent to form a compound of formula (IB):



or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

79. The method of claim 78, wherein the reducing agent is selected from the group consisting of: hydrogen gas, sodium hydrosulfite, sodium sulfide, stannous chloride, titanium (II) chloride, zinc, iron and samarium iodide.
80. The method of claim 79, wherein the reducing agent is Fe/NH₄Cl or Zn/NH₄Cl.

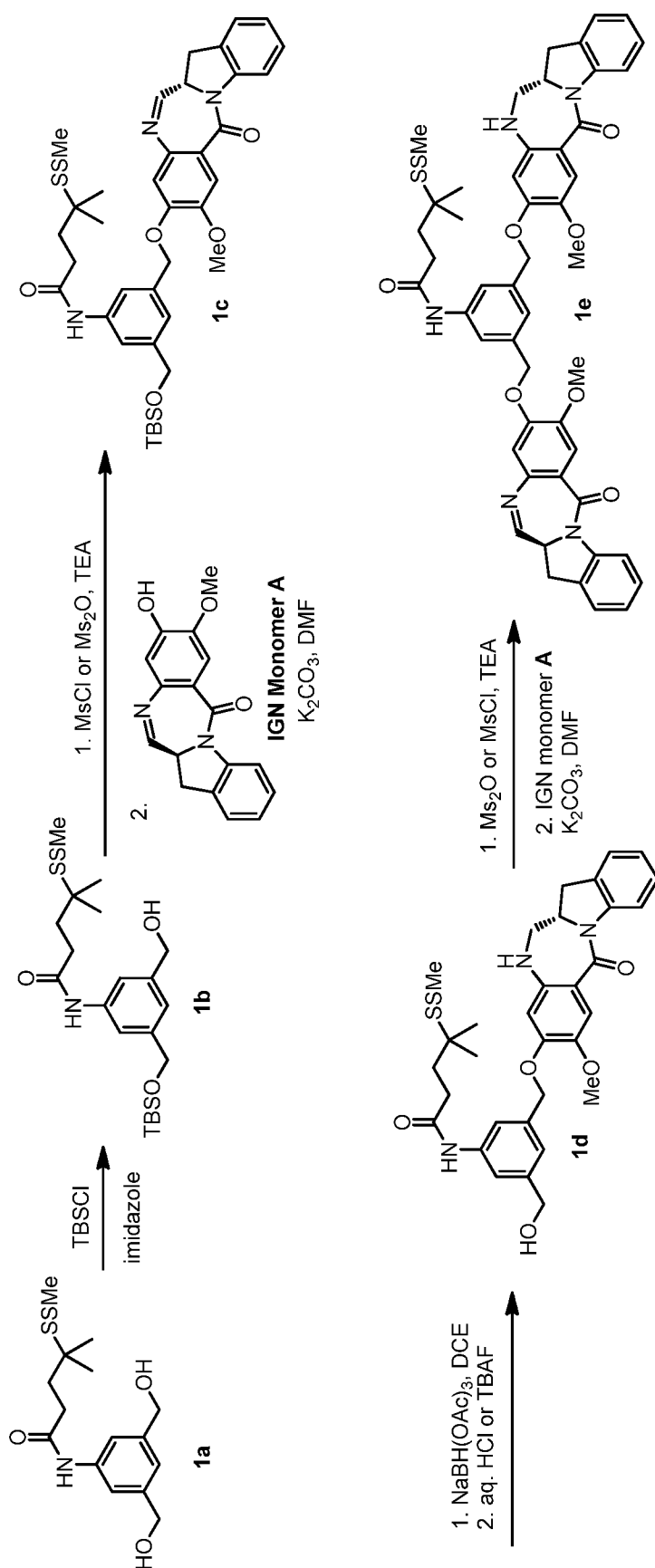


FIG. 1

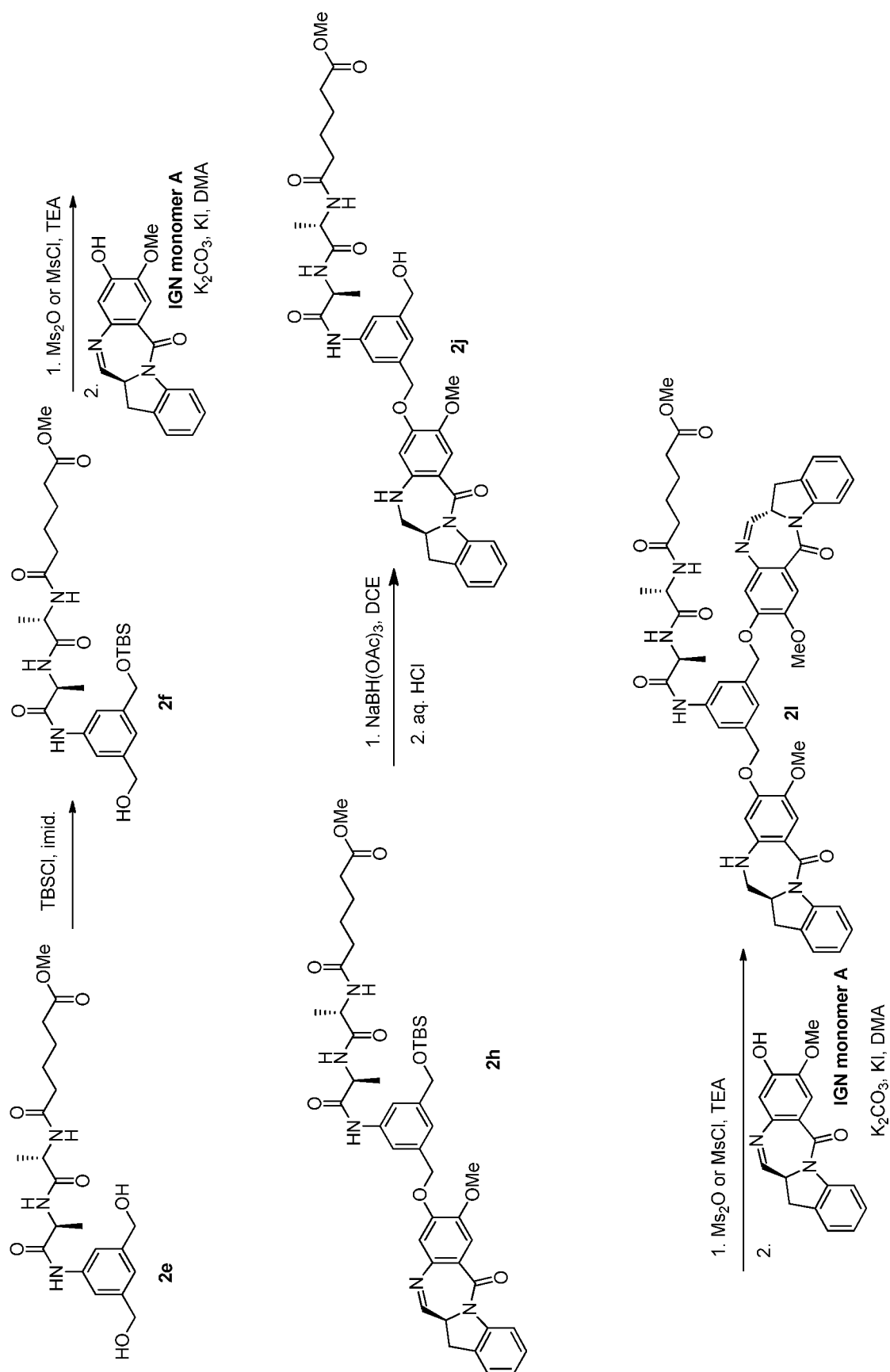


FIG. 2

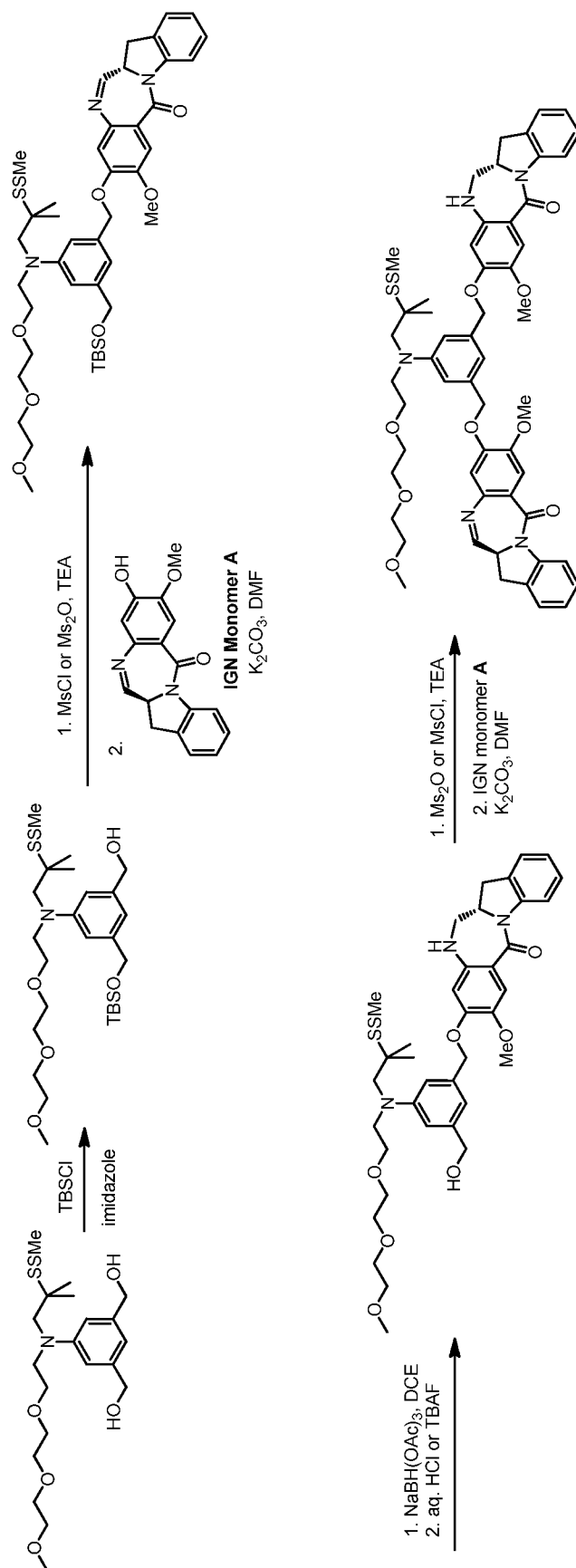


FIG. 3

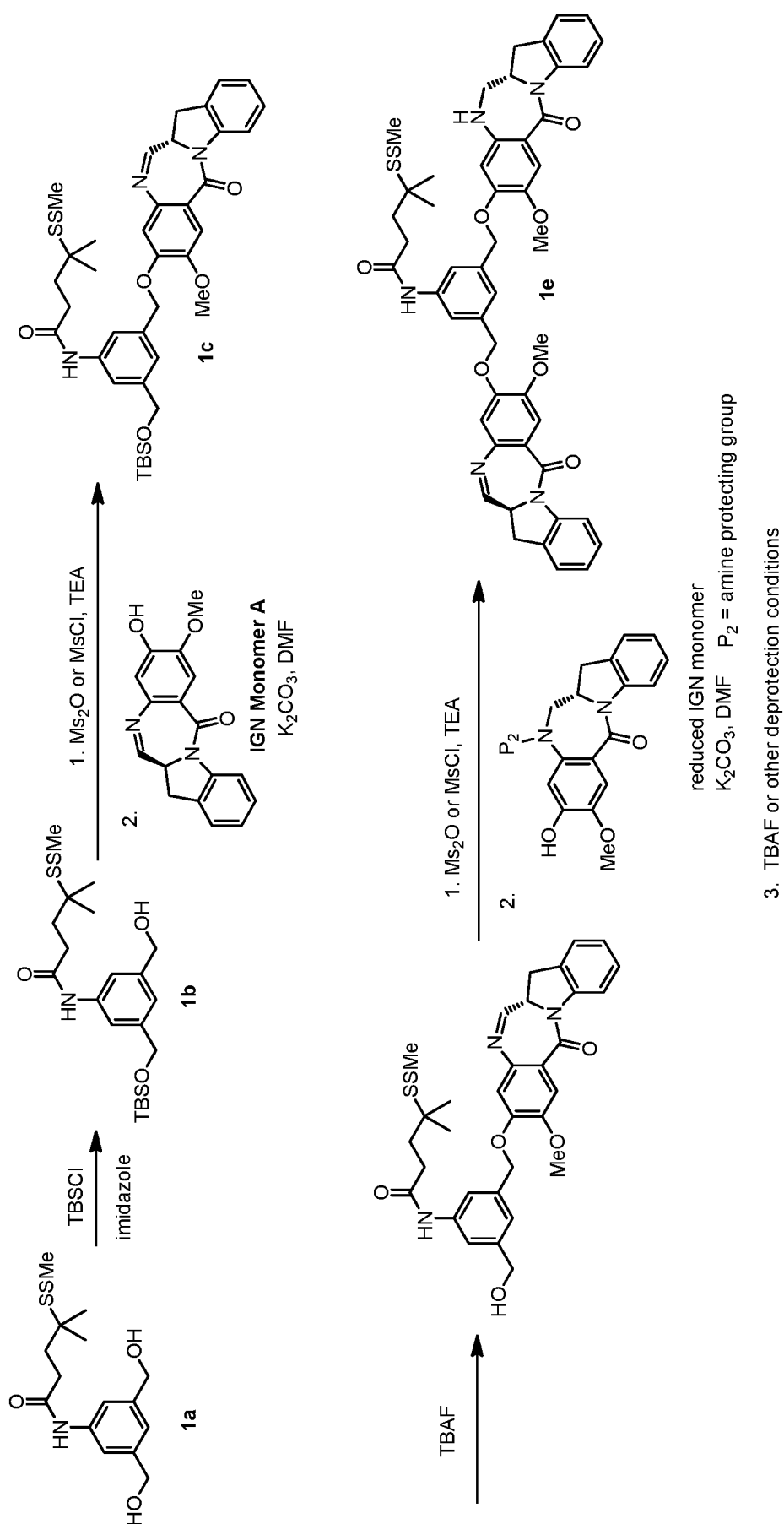


FIG. 4

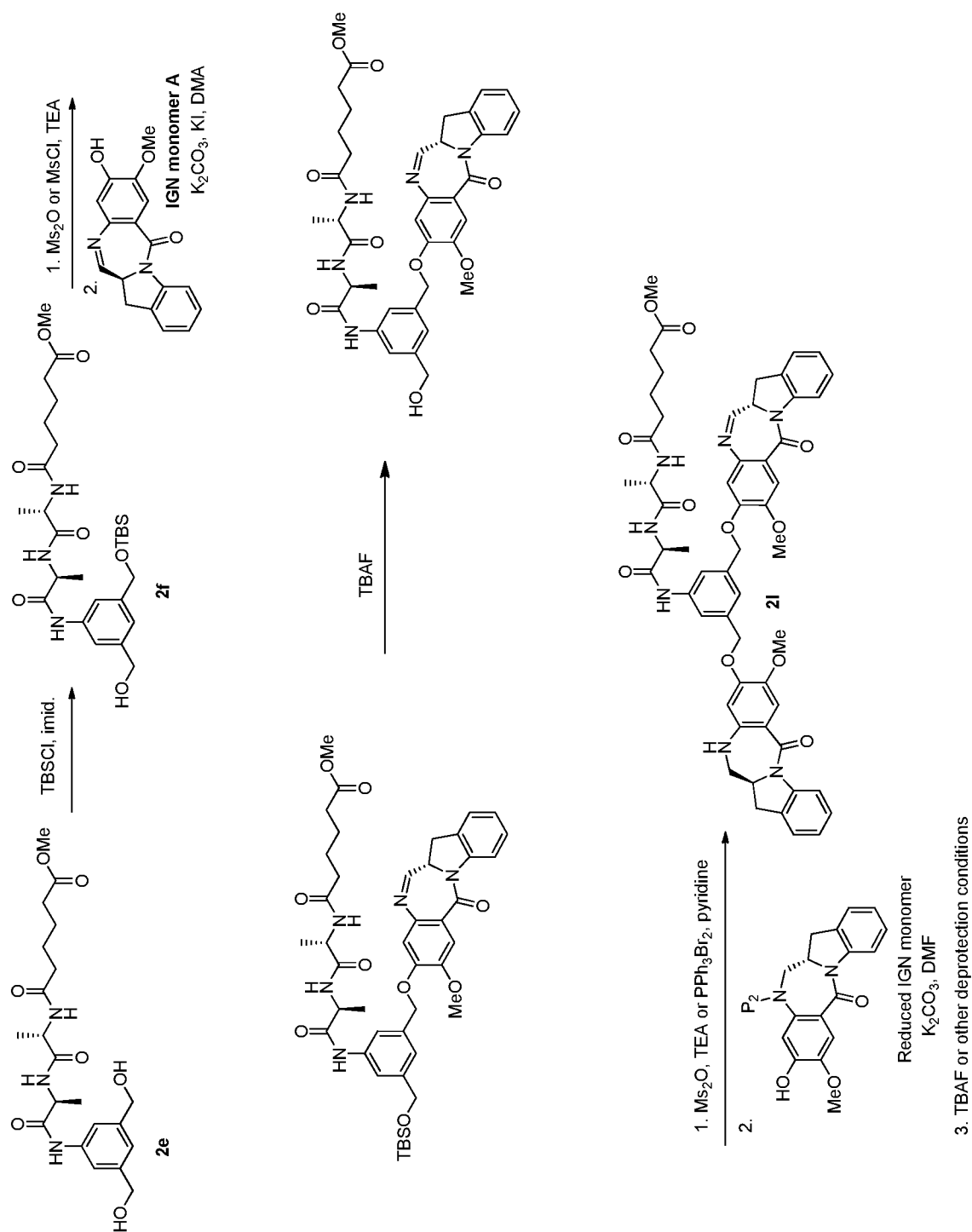


FIG. 5

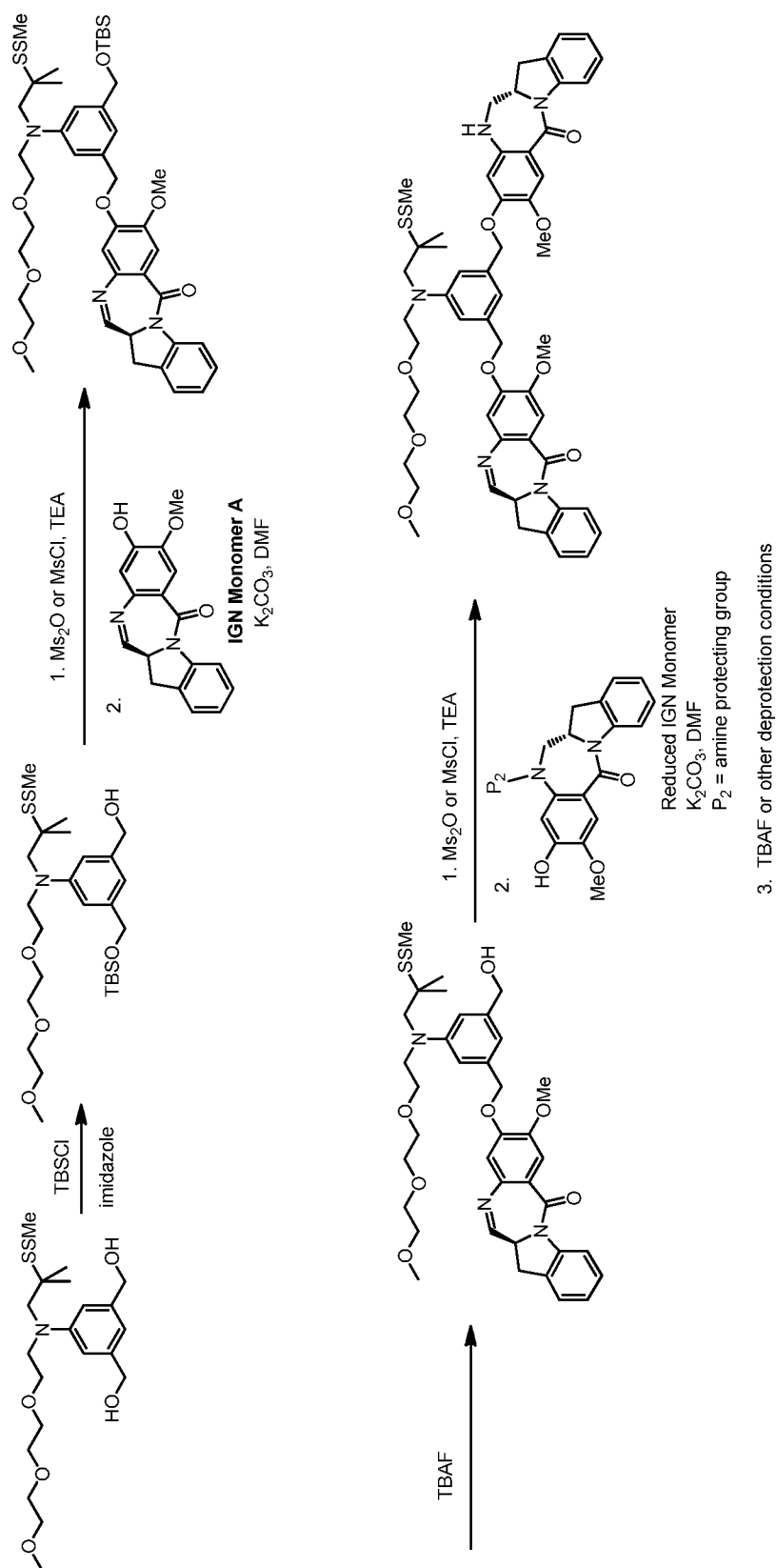


FIG. 6

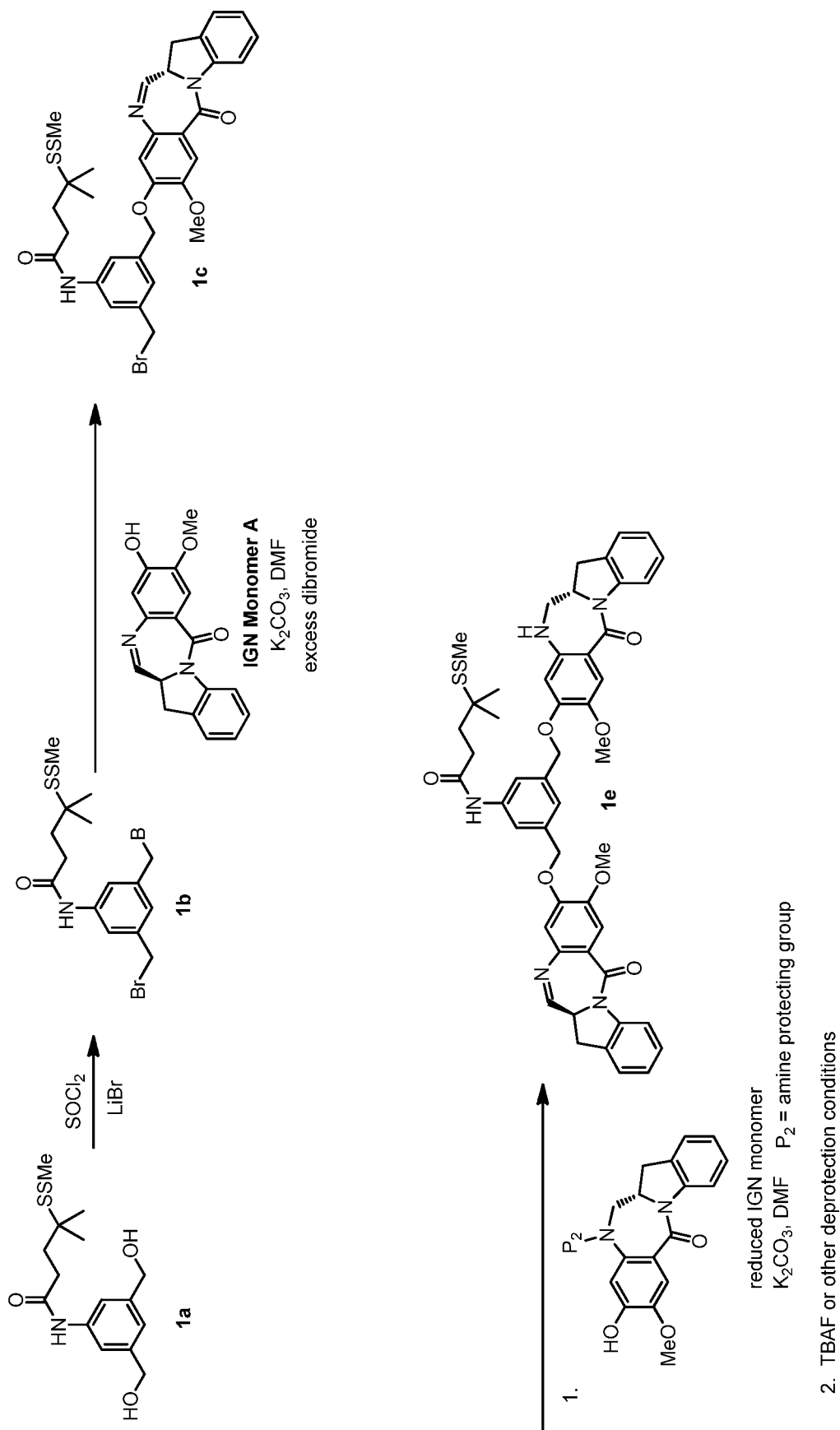


FIG. 7

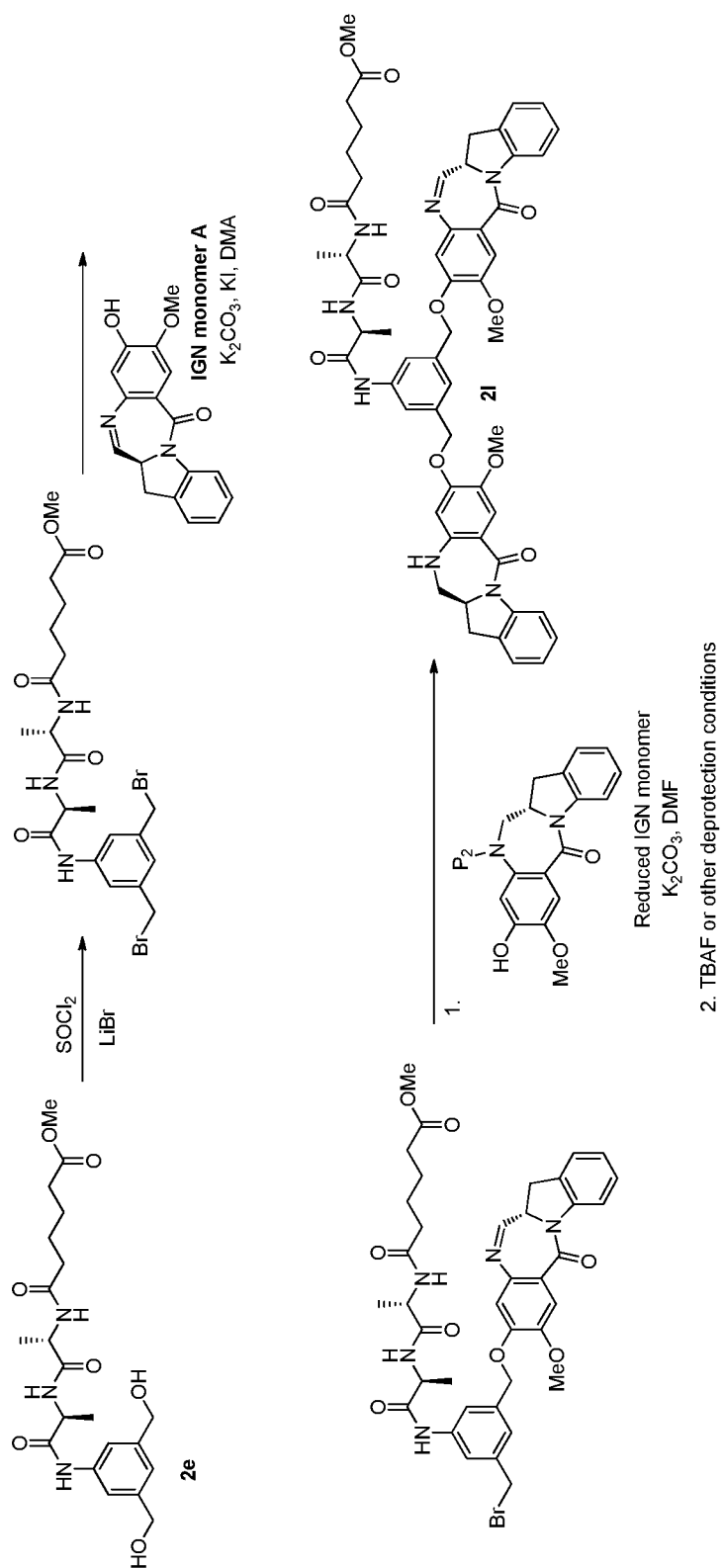


FIG. 8

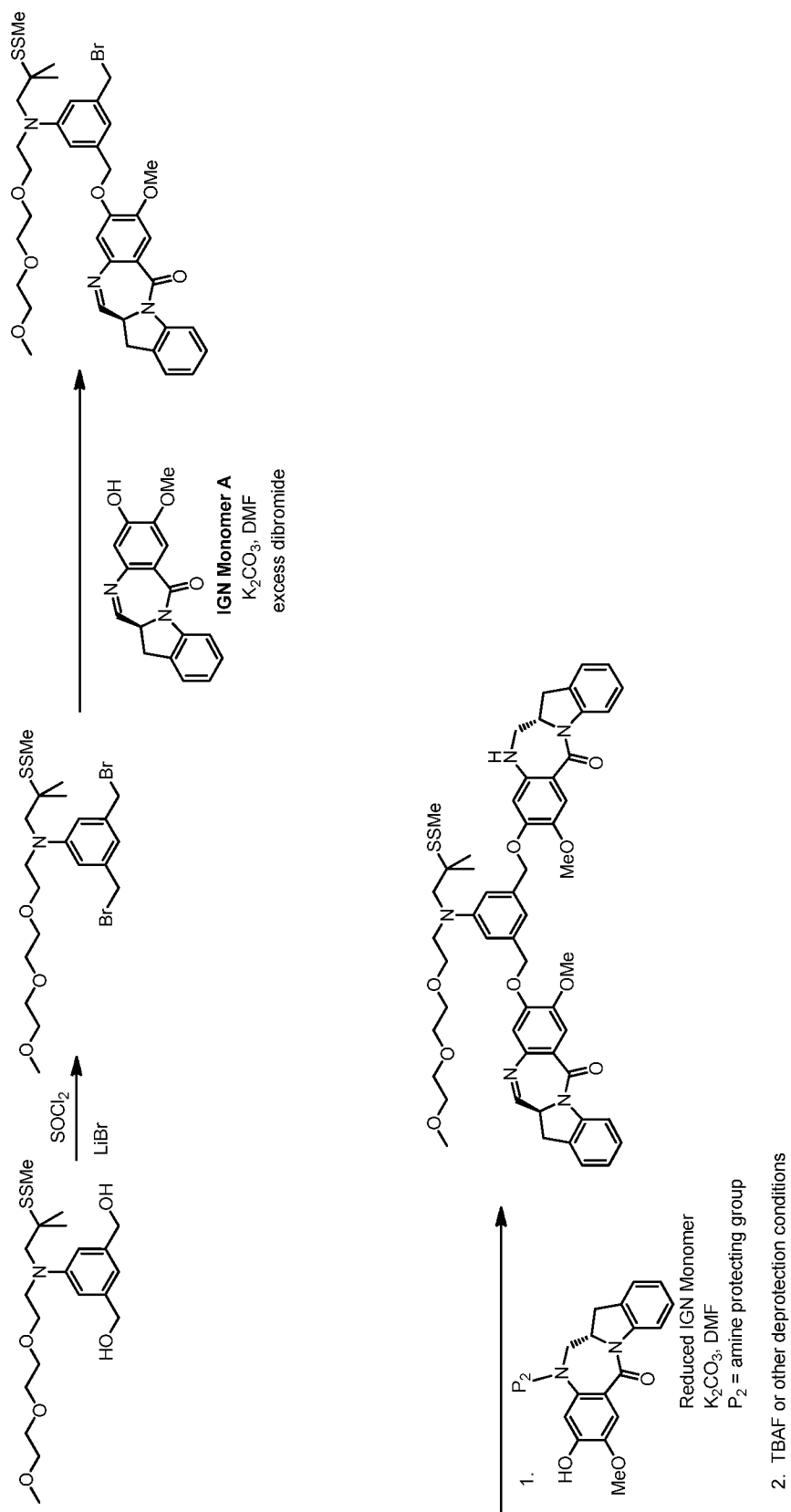


FIG. 9

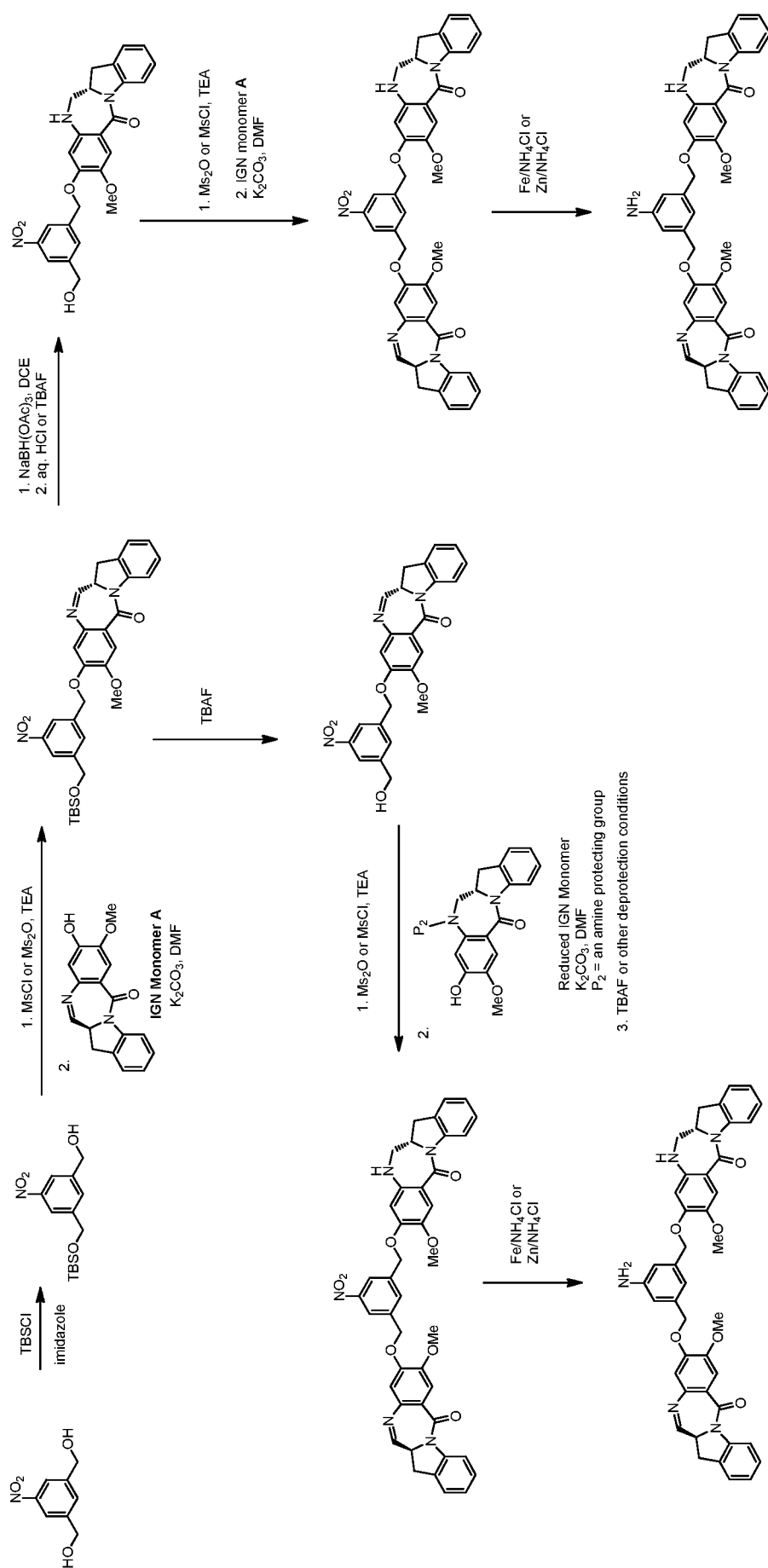


FIG. 10

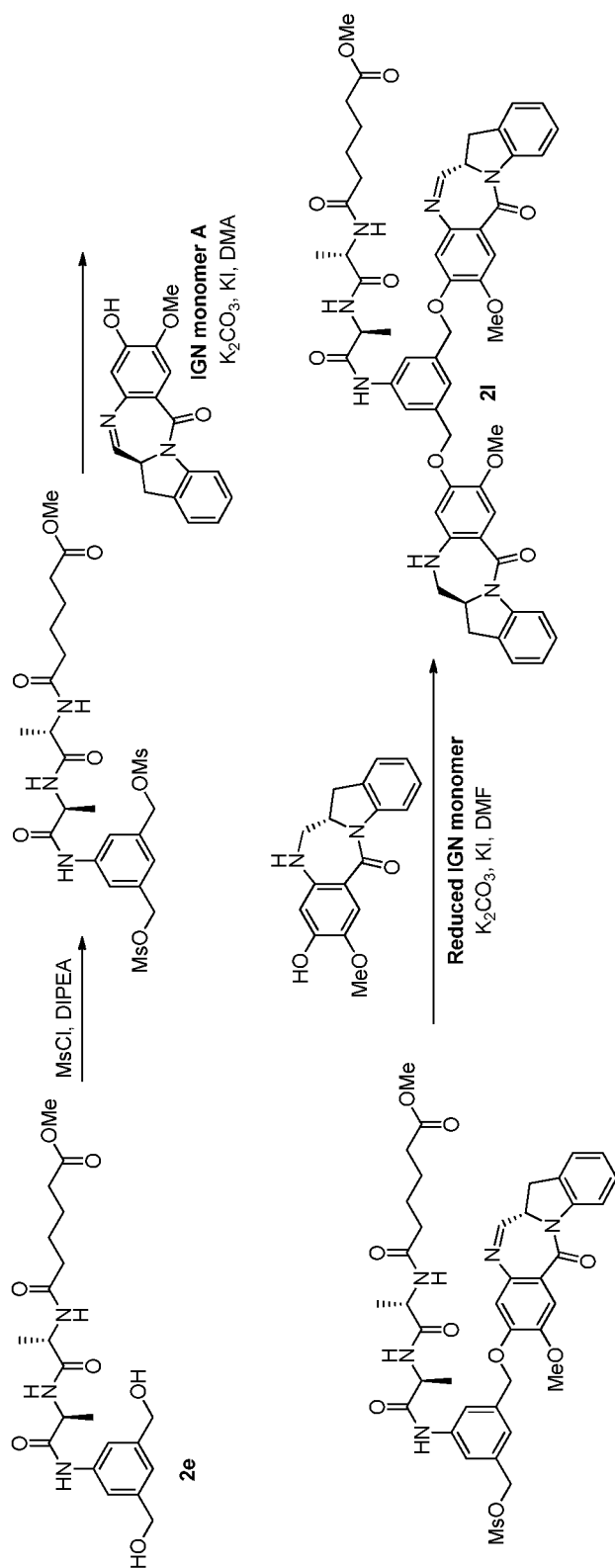


FIG. 11

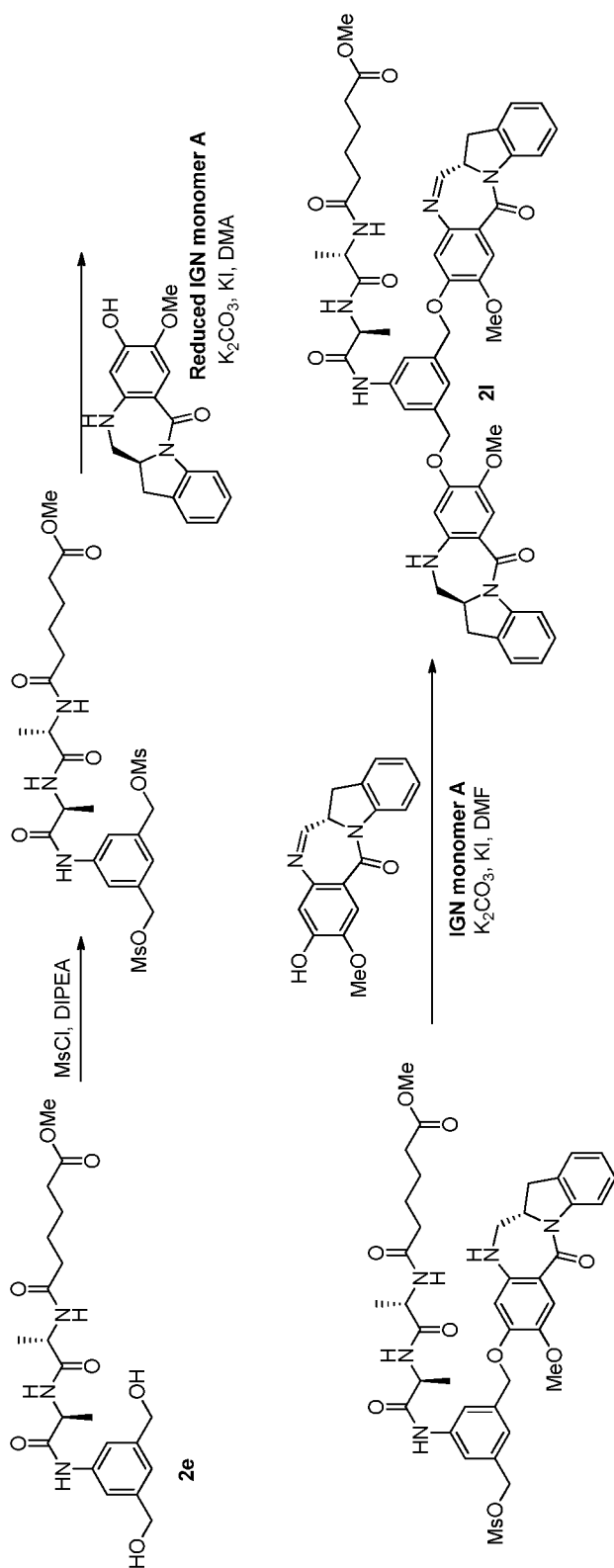


FIG. 12

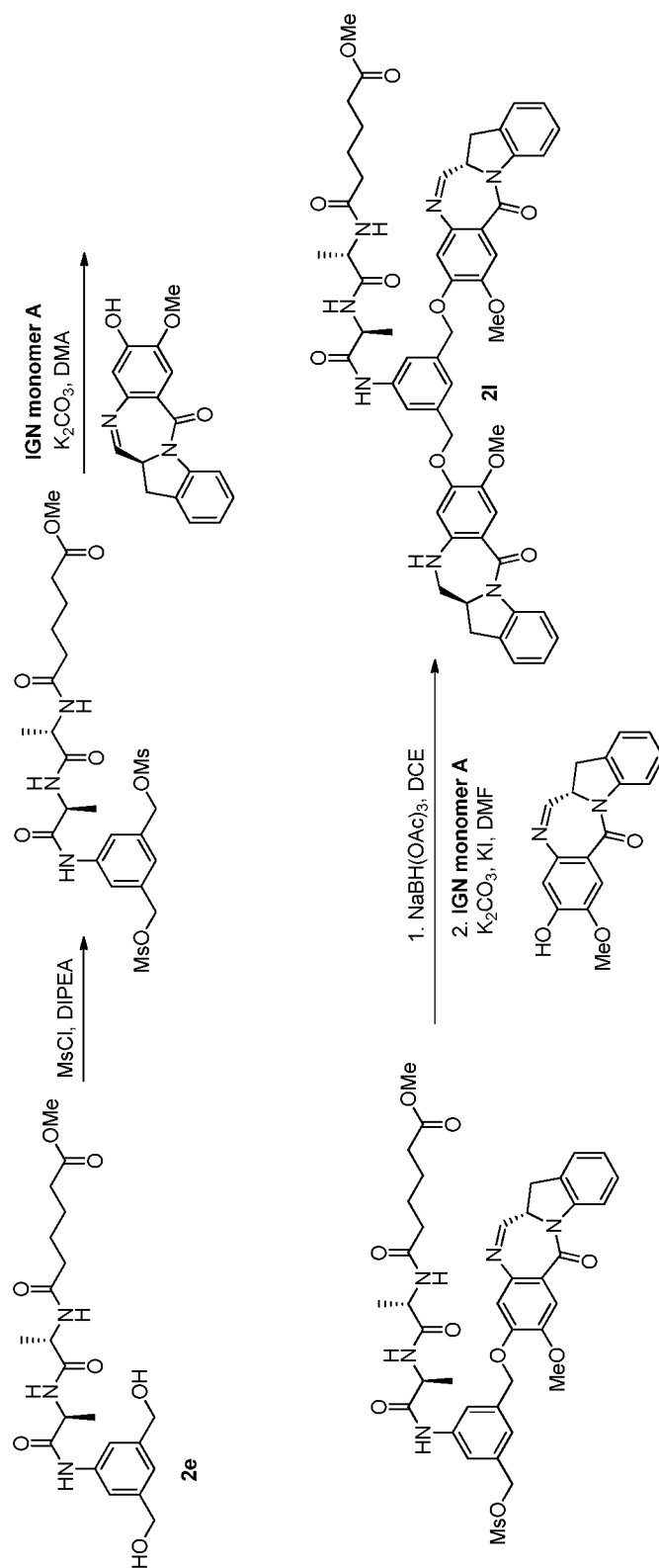


FIG. 13



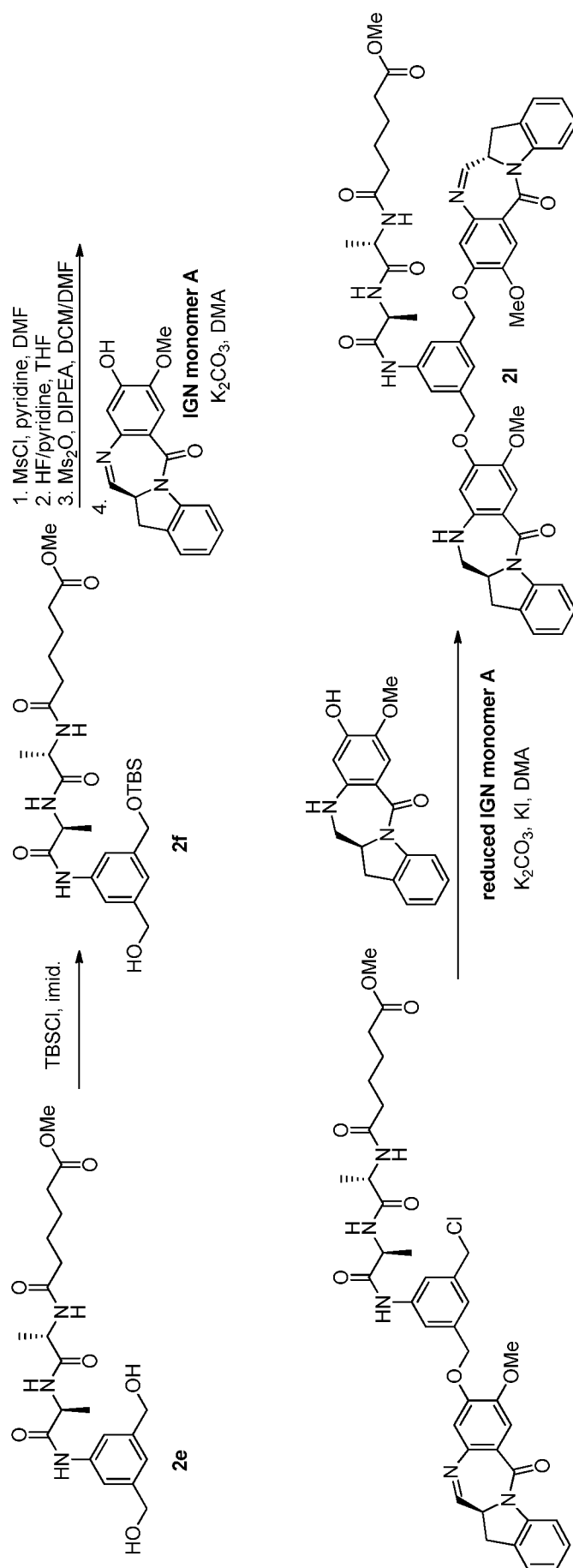


FIG. 15

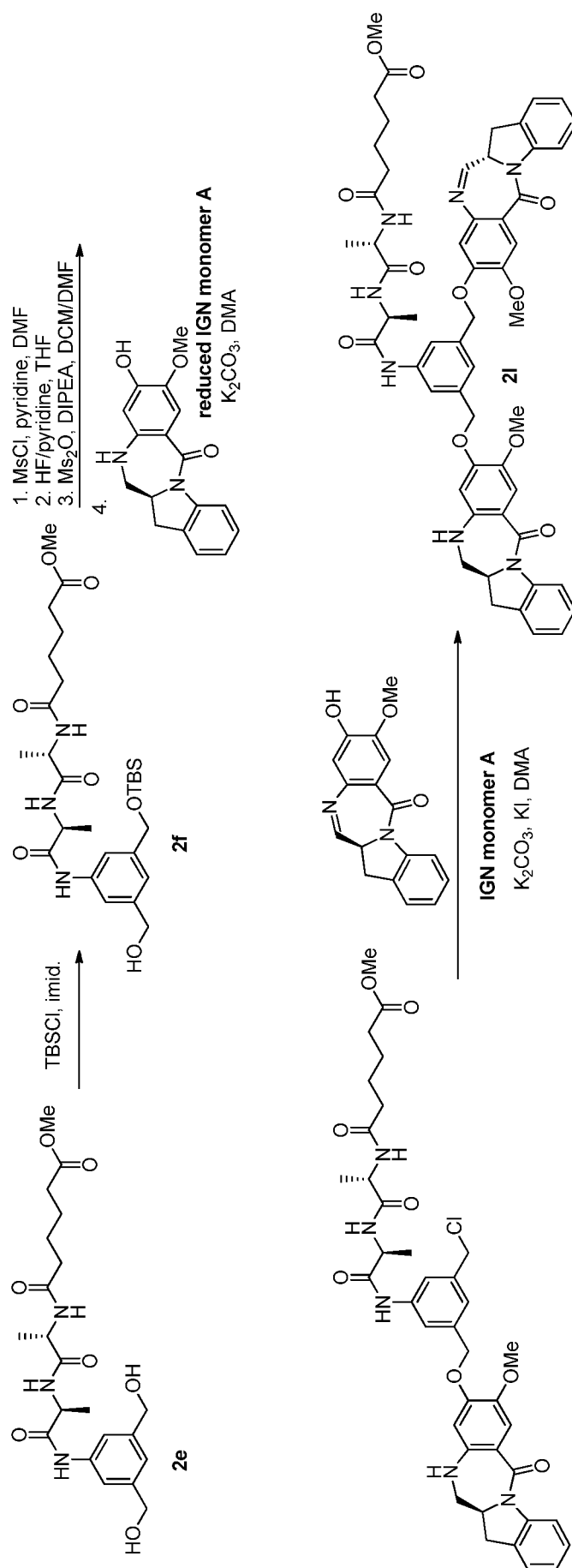


FIG. 16

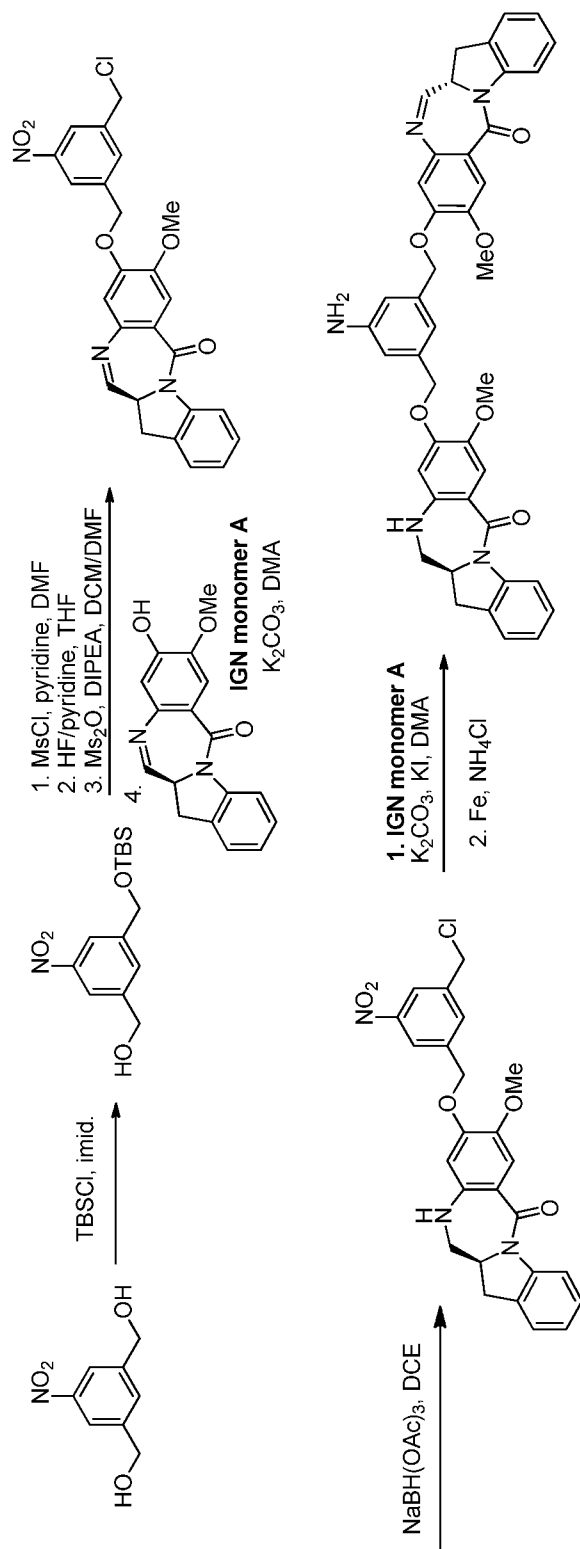


FIG. 17

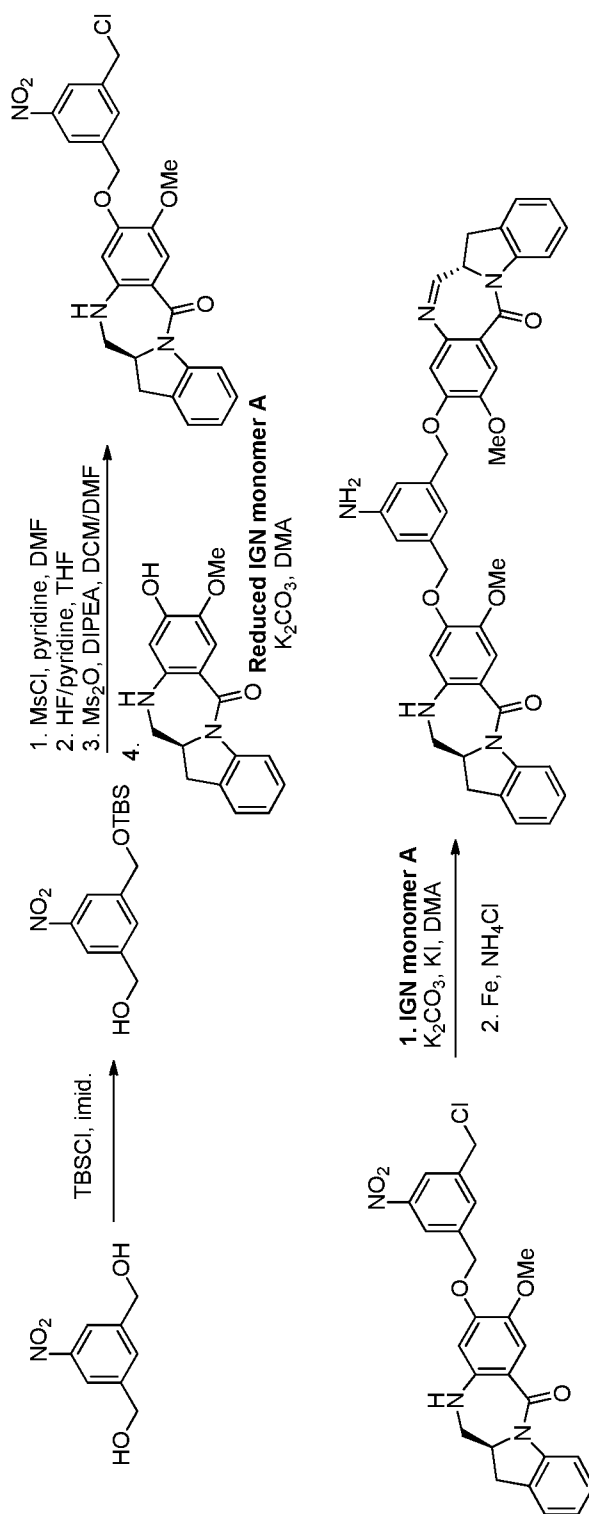


FIG. 18

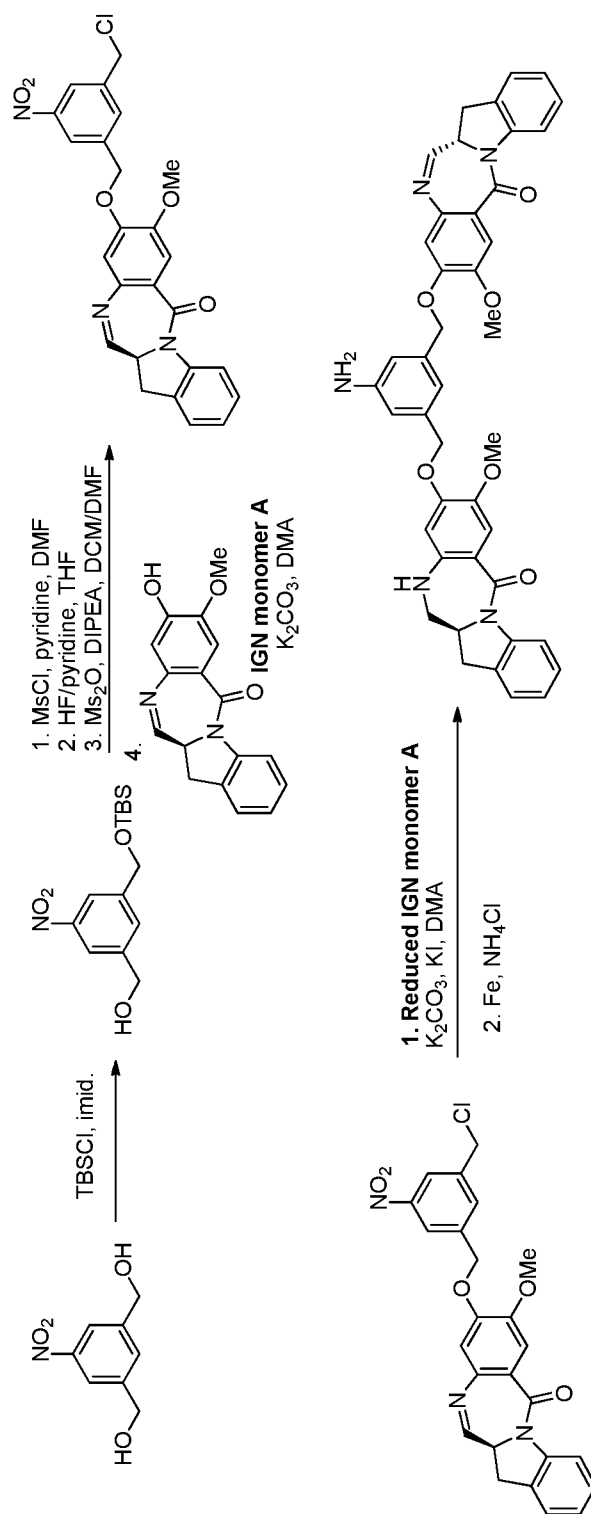


FIG. 19

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No
PCT/US2016/043414

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER
INV. C07D487/04
ADD.

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)
C07D

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practicable, search terms used)

EPO-Internal, WPI Data

C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	WO 2010/091150 A1 (IMMUNOGEN INC [US]; LI WEI [US]; FISHKIN NATHAN ELLIOTT [US]; ZHAO ROB) 12 August 2010 (2010-08-12) Reaction of 249a to make 249b; page 174	1-18
X	----- WO 2015/051045 A2 (NOVARTIS AG [CH]; BARYZA JEREMY LEE [US]; BLOMMERS MARCEL [CH]; FERNAN) 9 April 2015 (2015-04-09) Reaction of 1 to make on page 197; example 2M	1-18
X	----- WO 2011/064141 A1 (HOFFMANN LA ROCHE [CH]; ANDERSON KEVIN WILLIAM [US]; GILLESPIE PAUL [U]) 3 June 2011 (2011-06-03) step 1; example 35 ----- -/-	1-18



Further documents are listed in the continuation of Box C.



See patent family annex.

* Special categories of cited documents :

"A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance

"E" earlier application or patent but published on or after the international filing date

"L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)

"O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means

"P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

"T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention

"X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone

"Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art

"&" document member of the same patent family

Date of the actual completion of the international search

7 September 2016

Date of mailing of the international search report

15/11/2016

Name and mailing address of the ISA/

European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2
NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk
Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040,
Fax: (+31-70) 340-3016

Authorized officer

Gettins, Marc

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No

PCT/US2016/043414

C(Continuation). DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	CARSTEN BEHRENS ET AL: "Synthesis of Achiral Linker Reagents for Direct Labelling of Oligonucleotides On Solid Supports", NUCLEOSIDES & NUCLEOTIDES, vol. 18, no. 2, 1 February 1999 (1999-02-01), pages 291-305, XP055299325, US ISSN: 0732-8311, DOI: 10.1080/15257779908043075 Scheme 1 conversion of 4 to 5 -----	1-18
X	UENO Y ET AL: "Synthesis and Properties of Nucleic Acid Analogues Consisting of a Benzene-Phosphate Backbone", THE JOURNAL OF ORGANIC CHEMISTRY, AMERICAN CHEMICAL SOCIETY, US, vol. 70, no. 20, 1 January 2005 (2005-01-01), pages 7925-7935, XP003016648, ISSN: 0022-3263, DOI: 10.1021/J0050635M Scheme 1 conversion of 1 to 12 -----	1-18
X	EP 2 511 260 A1 (UNIV GIFU [JP]) 17 October 2012 (2012-10-17) paragraph [0054] -----	1-18

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.
PCT/US2016/043414

Box No. II Observations where certain claims were found unsearchable (Continuation of item 2 of first sheet)

This international search report has not been established in respect of certain claims under Article 17(2)(a) for the following reasons:

1. ☐ Claims Nos.:
because they relate to subject matter not required to be searched by this Authority, namely:
2. ☐ Claims Nos.:
because they relate to parts of the international application that do not comply with the prescribed requirements to such an extent that no meaningful international search can be carried out, specifically:
3. ☐ Claims Nos.:
because they are dependent claims and are not drafted in accordance with the second and third sentences of Rule 6.4(a).

Box No. III Observations where unity of invention is lacking (Continuation of item 3 of first sheet)

This International Searching Authority found multiple inventions in this international application, as follows:

see additional sheet

1. ☐ As all required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this international search report covers all searchable claims.
2. ☐ As all searchable claims could be searched without effort justifying an additional fees, this Authority did not invite payment of additional fees.
3. ☐ As only some of the required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this international search report covers only those claims for which fees were paid, specifically claims Nos.:
4. ☒ No required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant. Consequently, this international search report is restricted to the invention first mentioned in the claims; it is covered by claims Nos.:

1-18

Remark on Protest

- ☐ The additional search fees were accompanied by the applicant's protest and, where applicable, the payment of a protest fee.
- ☐ The additional search fees were accompanied by the applicant's protest but the applicable protest fee was not paid within the time limit specified in the invitation.
- ☐ No protest accompanied the payment of additional search fees.

FURTHER INFORMATION CONTINUED FROM PCT/ISA/ 210

This International Searching Authority found multiple (groups of) inventions in this international application, as follows:

1. claims: 1-18

Process where (1) is converted to (2)

2. claims: 19-27, 122-134

Process where (2) is converted to (3) or process where (2) is converted to (13)

3. claims: 28-31, 68-70

Process where (3) is converted to (4) or process where (3') is converted to (8)

4. claims: 32-36, 71-74

Process where (4) is converted to (5) or process where (8) is converted to (9)

5. claims: 37-40

Process where (5) is converted to (6)

6. claims: 41-49

Process where (6) is converted to (7)

7. claims: 50-61

Process where (5') is converted to (7)

8. claims: 62-65(completely); 275-309(partially)

Process where (7) is converted to (I')

9. claims: 66, 67(completely); 275-309(partially)

Process where (1) is converted to (I') via (2)-(7) or
Process where (1) is converted to (I') via (2')-(7')

10. claims: 75-83

Process where (9) is converted to (10)

FURTHER INFORMATION CONTINUED FROM PCT/ISA/ 210

11. claims: 84-90(completely); 275-309(partially)

Process where (10) is converted to (18)

12. claims: 91-93(completely); 275-309(partially)

Process where (11) is converted to (I')

13. claims: 94-96(completely); 275-309(partially)

Process where (1) is converted to (I') via (2)-(3),(8)-10)
and (18)

14. claims: 97-102

Process where (1) is converted to (12)

15. claims: 103-107

Process where (10') is converted to (12)

16. claims: 108-112

Process where (7') is converted to (10')

17. claims: 113-115(completely); 275-309(partially)

Process where (1) is converted to (I') via (12), (10') and
(18)

18. claims: 116, 117(completely); 275-309(partially)

Process where (1) is converted to (I') via (12), (10') and
(7)

19. claims: 118-121(completely); 275-309(partially)

Process where (1) is converted to (I') via (12), (7-1) and
(18)

20. claims: 135-142

Process where (13) is converted to (14)

FURTHER INFORMATION CONTINUED FROM PCT/ISA/ 210

21. claims: 143-150

Process where (14) is converted to (15)

22. claims: 151-153

Process where (14) is converted to (20)

23. claims: 154-159

Process where (15) is converted to (16)

24. claims: 160-166

Process where (20) is converted to (16)

25. claims: 167-172

Process where (14) is converted to (16)

26. claims: 173-183(completely); 275-309(partially)

Process where (16) is converted to (18)

27. claims: 184-195

Process where (15) is converted to (17)

28. claims: 196-206

Process where (14) is converted to (17)

29. claims: 207-218

Process where (20) is converted to (17)

30. claims: 219-223

Process where (19) is converted to (17)

31. claims: 224-234(completely); 275-309(partially)

Process where (17) is converted to (18)

FURTHER INFORMATION CONTINUED FROM PCT/ISA/ 210

32. claims: 235(completely); 238-240, 275-309(partially)

Process where (14) is converted to (18) via (15)-(16)

33. claims: 236(completely); 238-240, 250-309(partially)

Process where (14) is converted to (18) via (16)

34. claims: 237(completely); 238-240, 250-309(partially)

Process where (14) is converted to (18) via (20) and (16)

35. claims: 241(completely); 244-246, 250-309(partially)

Process where (14) is converted to (18) via (15) and (17)

36. claims: 242(completely); 244-246, 250-309(partially)

Process where (14) is converted to (18) via (17)

37. claims: 243(completely); 244-246, 250-309(partially)

Process where (14) is converted to (18) via (17)

38. claims: 247(completely); 250-309(partially)

Process where (14) is converted to (I')) via (15), (19) and (17')

39. claims: 248(completely); 250-309(partially)

Process where (14) is converted to (I')) via (19), (17')

40. claims: 249(completely); 250-309(partially)

Process where (14) is converted to (I')) via (20), (19) and (17')

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Information on patent family members

International application No

PCT/US2016/043414

Patent document cited in search report	Publication date	Patent family member(s)	Publication date
WO 2010091150	A1	12-08-2010	
		AU 2010210646 A1	11-08-2011
		BR PI1008749 A2	25-08-2015
		CA 2750519 A1	12-08-2010
		CN 102365021 A	29-02-2012
		CN 105175434 A	23-12-2015
		CN 105198908 A	30-12-2015
		EP 2393362 A1	14-12-2011
		EP 3100745 A1	07-12-2016
		IL 214475 A	29-10-2015
		JP 5977522 B2	24-08-2016
		JP 2012516896 A	26-07-2012
		JP 2015017095 A	29-01-2015
		JP 2015187144 A	29-10-2015
		KR 20110120308 A	03-11-2011
		NZ 594177 A	28-02-2014
		NZ 620649 A	25-09-2015
		RU 2011136686 A	20-03-2013
		RU 2015103852 A	10-11-2015
		SG 173152 A1	29-08-2011
		SG 2014009138 A	28-03-2014
		US 2010203007 A1	12-08-2010
		US 2013266596 A1	10-10-2013
		US 2013302357 A1	14-11-2013
		US 2015030616 A1	29-01-2015
		US 2016222013 A1	04-08-2016
		WO 2010091150 A1	12-08-2010
		ZA 201105352 B	25-09-2014
WO 2015051045	A2	09-04-2015	
		AU 2014329560 A1	07-04-2016
		CA 2925129 A1	09-04-2015
		CN 105683163 A	15-06-2016
		EP 3052464 A2	10-08-2016
		KR 20160067901 A	14-06-2016
		US 2016304863 A1	20-10-2016
		WO 2015051045 A2	09-04-2015
WO 2011064141	A1	03-06-2011	
		CA 2779089 A1	03-06-2011
		CN 102753538 A	24-10-2012
		EP 2504324 A1	03-10-2012
		ES 2536210 T3	21-05-2015
		HK 1175181 A1	26-02-2016
		JP 5559346 B2	23-07-2014
		JP 2013511492 A	04-04-2013
		KR 20120085334 A	31-07-2012
		RU 2012125843 A	27-12-2013
		US 2011124686 A1	26-05-2011
		WO 2011064141 A1	03-06-2011
EP 2511260	A1	17-10-2012	
		CN 102666480 A	12-09-2012
		EP 2511260 A1	17-10-2012
		JP 5721180 B2	20-05-2015
		US 2012245341 A1	27-09-2012
		WO 2011071078 A1	16-06-2011